

see also [AhfFo#1]



Copyright © 1999-2013 **Antenna House, Inc.** All rights reserved.
Antenna House is a trademark of Antenna House, Inc.

- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Microsoft Internet Explorer are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Adobe, Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader, PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.
- SPARC is a trademark of SPARC International, Inc.
- UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.
- Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds.
- Macintosh, Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
- Unicode is a trademark of Unicode, Inc.
- PANTONE Colors displayed in the software application may not match PANTONE-identified standards. Consult current PANTONE Color Publications for accurate color. PANTONE and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone, Inc. © Pantone, Inc., 2005.

Pantone, Inc. is the copyright owner of color data and/or software which are licensed to Antenna House, Inc. to distribute for use only in combination with AH Formatter. PANTONE Color Data and/or Software shall not be copied onto another disk or into memory unless part of the execution of AH Formatter.



- All other trademarks on this document are property of their respective owners.
- The symbols needed in the trademarks such as ™, ® may be omitted in this document.

 **Table of Contents**

Overview	18
Highlights	18
Antenna House Workflow	19
Enhancements and New Features	20
System Requirements	20
Languages	21
Encodings	23
XSLT Processor	24
About AH Formatter V6.2 Lite	24
About Evaluation Version	25
Support	26
Graphical User Interface	27
Main Window	27
Menu	29
Popup Menu	32
Document/Stylesheet Dialog	33
Save AreaTree Dialog	33
Save FOTree Dialog	33
Save FO Dialog	34
Print Dialog	34
PDF Output Dialog	35
SVG Output Dialog	36
PostScript Output Dialog	37
XPS Output Dialog	37
INX Output Dialog	38
MIF Output Dialog	39
Text Output Dialog	40
Document Information Dialog	40
Search String Dialog	41
Search Property Dialog	41
Go To Page Dialog	42
Zoom Dialog	42
Format Option Setting Dialog	42
Font	43
Format	44
Color, Border, Unit	45
Page	46
XSLT	47
CSS	48
PDF Option Setting Dialog	48
Version	49
Font	50
Security	51
Compression	52
Others	54
Other Settings Dialog	56
SVG Option	56
Editors	57
Window	57
Others	58
Import Option Setting Dialog	59
Export Option Setting Dialog	59
About Dialog	59
Run with Parameters	59

Restrictions	60
Command-line Interface	61
Executable File Name	61
Running Command-line program on Windows	61
Running Command-line program from a shell script	61
Command-line Parameters	61
Parameters for Printer	64
Parameters for PDF Output	64
Parameters for SVG Output	67
Parameters for INX Output	68
Parameters for MIF Output	68
Parameters for TEXT Output	69
Return Value	69
How to specify the Printer Name	69
How to create a Printer Setting file	70
Restrictions for Printing	71
.NET Interface	72
Component Registration	72
Classes	72
Properties	72
Properties – PDF Settings	76
Properties – SVG Settings	80
Properties – INX Settings	81
Properties – MIF Settings	81
Properties – Printer Settings	81
Methods	82
PDF Output to the Web Browser	82
Programming Example	83
COM Interface	84
Object Class Name	84
Properties	84
Properties – PDF Settings	86
Properties – SVG Settings	91
Properties – INX Settings	92
Properties – MIF Settings	92
Properties – Printer Settings	92
Methods	93
Event	93
PDF Output to the Web Browser	93
Programming Example	93
Java Interface	95
Library files	95
Java VM issues	95
Using the interface in an application server	95
Running the Sample Program	95
API Specification	96
C/C++ Interface	97
Header files	97
Library files	97
Compiler issues	97
Building the sample programs	97
API Specification	98
PDF Output	99
PDF/X	99
PDF/A	101
Tagged PDF	101

PDF Embedding	104
Font Output	106
Character Sets, Encoding	106
Font Embedding	107
Image Output	107
Vector Images	107
Raster Images	108
Down sampling	108
Multimedia	108
Miscellaneous	110
SVG Output	111
SVG Output Format	111
Image Output	111
Font Output	112
Restrictions	112
SVG Tiny	112
PostScript Output	113
Font Output	113
Image Output	113
Vector Images	113
Raster Images	113
XPS Output	115
Font Output	115
Image Output	115
Other Restrictions	115
INX Output	116
Features of INX Output	116
INX output mode	116
Limitations	116
Table	116
Border	116
Graphics	117
Texts	117
Fonts	117
Leader	117
Others	117
MIF Output	118
Features of MIF Output	118
MIF output mode	118
Image Output	118
Limitation	119
Table	119
Border	119
Graphics	119
Texts	119
Fonts	119
Leader	119
Others	119
TEXT Output	121
Restrictions	121
Fonts	122
Supported font formats	122
Font Configuration File	122
Initial Font Configuration File	123
Font Configuration File elements and attributes	123
Adobe Type1 font	126
Font organization and necessary condition	126
How to use Adobe Type1 fonts	127

Mapping rule in .AFM file	127
Mapping rule in .PFM file	127
Embedding Adobe Type1 fonts	128
Unicode and glyph mapping using the .AFM file	128
Unicode and glyph mapping using the .PFM file	128
Changing the glyph name mapping	129
Glyph list file	129
Skipping the glyph name mapping	130
Define the alias name of the font family	131
WindowsName mode	132
PDF Standard 14 Fonts	132
TrueType font, OpenType (TrueType outline) font	132
Font organization and necessary condition	133
How to use TrueType fonts	133
Embedding TrueType fonts	134
OpenType (PostScript outline) font	134
Font organization and necessary condition	134
How to use OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts	134
Embedding OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts	134
Integrate the family name using the alias name	134
EUDC	135
Restrictions	135
Graphics	137
BMP	137
JPEG	137
JPEG2000	138
PNG	138
TIFF	138
GIF	138
WMF	139
EMF	139
EPS	139
SVG	140
MathML	140
CGM	141
PDF	141
Video/Audio	142
Option Setting File	143
Formatter Settings	143
Font Settings	152
PDF Output Settings	154
PostScript Output Settings	162
SVG Output Settings	163
INX Output Settings	165
MIF Output Settings	165
TEXT Output Settings	165
MathML Settings	166
Fonts for Math Expression	172
STIX Fonts	172
Cambria Math Fonts	172
BaKoMa Fonts	172
MathType Fonts	172
XSLT Settings	173
Example for Option Setting File	174
XSL-FO Conformance	176
5.9 Expressions	176
5.9.13 Definitions of Units of Measure	176
5.10 Core Function Library	176

5.10.1 Number Functions	176
5.10.2 Color Functions	177
5.10.3 Font Functions	177
5.10.4 Property Value Functions	177
6 Formatting Objects	177
6.4 Declarations and Pagination and Layout Formatting Objects	177
6.5 Block-level Formatting Objects	178
6.6 Inline-level Formatting Objects	178
6.7 Formatting Objects for Tables	179
6.8 Formatting Objects for Lists	179
6.9 Dynamic Effects: Link and Multi Formatting Objects	179
6.10 Formatting Objects for Indexing	179
6.11 Formatting Objects for Bookmarks	180
6.12 Out-of-Line Formatting Objects	180
6.13 Other Formatting Objects	180
7 Formatting Properties	180
7.5 Common Accessibility Properties	180
7.6 Common Absolute Position Properties	180
7.7 Common Aural Properties	180
7.8 Common Border, Padding, and Background Properties	181
7.9 Common Font Properties	182
7.10 Common Hyphenation Properties	183
7.11 Common Margin Properties-Block	183
7.12 Common Margin Properties-Inline	183
7.13 Common Relative Position Properties	183
7.14 Area Alignment Properties	183
7.15 Area Dimension Properties	184
7.16 Block and Line-related Properties	184
7.17 Character Properties	185
7.18 Color-related Properties	185
7.19 Float-related Properties	185
7.20 Keeps and Breaks Properties	185
7.21 Layout-related Properties	185
7.22 Leader and Rule Properties	186
7.23 Properties for Dynamic Effects Formatting Objects	186
7.24 Properties for Indexing	186
7.25 Properties for Markers	186
7.26 Properties for Number to String Conversion	187
7.27 Pagination and Layout Properties	187
7.28 Table Properties	187
7.29 Writing-mode-related Properties	188
7.30 Miscellaneous Properties	188
7.31 Shorthand Properties	189
CSS Conformance	190
CSS Level 2 Revision 1 (CSS2.1)	190
4 Syntax and basic data types	190
5 Selectors	190
6 Assigning property values, Cascading, and Inheritance	191
7 Media types	191
8 Box model	191
9 Visual formatting model	191
10 Visual formatting model details	192
11 Visual effects	192
12 Generated content, automatic numbering, and lists	192
13 Paged media	192
14 Colors and Backgrounds	192
15 Fonts	193
16 Text	193
17 Tables	193
18 User interface	193
CSS3	193
Selectors	194
@ rules	194

Pseudo Classes	194
Pseudo Elements	195
Functions	195
XSL/CSS Properties List	197
XSL/CSS Extensions	215
Extended Elements	215
Extended Values	216
Extended Functions	216
Extended Units	217
Other Extensions	217
Document Information for PDF Output	218
<axf:document-info> / HTML <meta>	218
axf:pdftag / CSS -ah-pdftag	220
PDF Output in Multi Separate Volume	220
<axf:output-volume-info>	220
axf:bookmark-include	221
axf:document-info-include	222
axf:initial-volume-number	222
axf:output-volume-break	222
axf:output-volume-filename	223
Bookmark and Link in PDF Output	223
Making Bookmark	223
axf:outline-expand / CSS -ah-outline-expand	225
axf:outline-group / CSS -ah-outline-group	225
axf:outline-level / CSS -ah-outline-level	225
axf:outline-title / CSS -ah-outline-title	225
axf:outline-color / CSS -ah-outline-color	225
axf:outline-font-style / CSS -ah-outline-font-style	226
axf:outline-font-weight / CSS -ah-outline-font-weight	226
Remarks	226
Making Link	226
axf:action-type / CSS -ah-action-type	227
axf:destination-type / CSS -ah-destination-type	228
axf:outline-external-destination / CSS -ah-outline-external-destination	229
axf:outline-internal-destination / CSS -ah-outline-internal-destination	229
ID in the External Link	229
ID in the Internal Link	230
Page Number in the External Link	230
Page Number in the Internal Link	230
Bookmark with the External Link	230
Bookmark with the Internal Link	230
Remarks	230
Annotation in PDF Output	231
axf:annotation-type / CSS -ah-annotation-type	231
axf:annotation-author / CSS -ah-annotation-author	231
axf:annotation-title / CSS -ah-annotation-title	231
axf:annotation-contents / CSS -ah-annotation-contents	231
axf:annotation-color / CSS -ah-annotation-color	232
axf:annotation-flags / CSS -ah-annotation-flags	232
axf:annotation-open / CSS -ah-annotation-open	232
axf:annotation-icon-name / CSS -ah-annotation-icon-name	233
axf:annotation-position-horizontal / CSS -ah-annotation-position-horizontal	233
axf:annotation-position-vertical / CSS -ah-annotation-position-vertical	234
axf:annotation-width / CSS -ah-annotation-width	234
axf:annotation-height / CSS -ah-annotation-height	234
axf:annotation-font-family / CSS -ah-annotation-font-family	234
axf:annotation-font-size / CSS -ah-annotation-font-size	234
axf:annotation-font-weight / CSS -ah-annotation-font-weight	235
axf:annotation-font-style / CSS -ah-annotation-font-style	235
axf:annotation-text-color / CSS -ah-annotation-text-color	235
axf:annotation-text-align / CSS -ah-annotation-text-align	235
axf:annotation-file-attachment / CSS -ah-annotation-file-attachment	235

Acroform in PDF Output	235
<axf:form>	236
<axf:form-field>	236
<axf:form-field-option>	236
axf:field-type	237
axf:field-name	237
axf:field-description	237
axf:field-value	237
axf:field-readonly	237
axf:field-required	238
axf:field-default-text	238
axf:field-multiline	238
axf:field-scroll	238
axf:field-password	239
axf:field-maxlen	239
axf:field-format-category	239
axf:field-format	240
axf:field-button-layout	241
axf:field-button-face	242
axf:field-button-icon	242
axf:field-button-face-down	242
axf:field-button-icon-down	242
axf:field-button-face-rollover	242
axf:field-button-icon-rollover	242
axf:field-checked	242
axf:field-checked-style	243
axf:field-top-index	243
axf:field-multiple	243
axf:field-editable	243
axf:field-submit-method	243
axf:field-submit-coordinates	244
Form Fields	244
Text field	244
Push Button field	245
Checkbox field	245
Radio Button field	245
Listbox field	245
Combobox field	245
Form Actions	246
Reset	246
Submit	246
Link	246
Layer in PDF Output	246
axf:layer-settings / CSS (-ah-)layer-settings	247
axf:layer / CSS (-ah-)layer	247
Extension for European Rule	247
<axf:space-after-punctuation>	247
<axf:space-before-punctuation>	247
<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation>	247
<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit>	248
language	248
space	248
code	248
Appending a Font	248
<axf:font-face> / CSS @font-face	249
src	249
font-family	250
font-style	250
font-weight	250
Appending Option Setting Information	250
<axf:formatter-config>	250
Remarks	251
Printer Marks	251

axf:crop-offset	251
axf:crop-offset-top	251
axf:crop-offset-bottom	251
axf:crop-offset-left	251
axf:crop-offset-right	251
axf:crop-area-visibility / CSS -ah-crop-area-visibility	252
axf:bleed	252
axf:bleed-top	252
axf:bleed-bottom	252
axf:bleed-left	252
axf:bleed-right	252
axf:printer-marks / CSS (-ah-)marks	252
axf:printer-marks-line-color / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-color	252
axf:printer-marks-line-length / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-length	253
axf:printer-marks-line-width / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-width	253
axf:printer-marks-zero-margin / CSS -ah-printer-marks-zero-margin	253
axf:printer-marks-spine-width / CSS -ah-printer-marks-spine-width	253
Printing Control	254
axf:printer-bin-selection / CSS -ah-printer-bin-selection	254
axf:printer-duplex / CSS -ah-printer-duplex	254
axf:overprint / CSS -ah-overprint	254
Page Control Extensions	255
axf:repeat-page-sequence-master	255
axf:reverse-page	256
Block Extensions	256
axf:suppress-if-first-on-page / CSS -ah-suppress-if-first-on-page	256
Transformation	256
axf:transform / CSS (-ah-)transform	256
axf:transform-origin / CSS (-ah-)transform-origin	257
Baseline Grid	257
axf:baseline-grid / CSS -ah-baseline-grid	257
axf:baseline-block-snap / CSS -ah-baseline-block-snap	258
Line Breaking	259
axf:line-break / CSS (-ah-)line-break	259
axf:append-non-starter-characters / CSS -ah-append-non-starter-characters	260
axf:except-non-starter-characters / CSS -ah-except-non-starter-characters	261
axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters / CSS -ah-append-non-end-of-line-characters	261
axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters / CSS -ah-except-non-end-of-line-characters	261
axf:word-break / CSS (-ah-)word-break	261
axf:word-wrap / CSS (-ah-)word-wrap	262
axf:abbreviation-character-count / CSS -ah-abbreviation-character-count	262
Extension for Hyphenations	263
axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count / CSS -ah-hyphenation-minimum-character-count	263
axf:hyphenation-zone / CSS -ah-hyphenation-zone	263
axf:hyphenate-hyphenated-word / CSS -ah-hyphenate-hyphenated-word	263
CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-after	264
CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-before	264
CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-character	264
CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-lines	264
CSS (-ah-)hyphens	264
<axf:hyphenation-info>	264
Output Glyph by SOFT HYPHEN	265
axf:soft-hyphen-treatment / CSS -ah-soft-hyphen-treatment	265
Trimming and Hanging	266
axf:punctuation-trim / CSS (-ah-)punctuation-trim	266
axf:text-justify-trim / CSS (-ah-)text-justify-trim	267
axf:kerning-mode / CSS -ah-kerning-mode	268
axf:punctuation-spacing / CSS -ah-punctuation-spacing	269
axf:hanging-punctuation / CSS (-ah-)hanging-punctuation	269
axf:avoid-widow-words / CSS -ah-avoid-widow-words	270
Spacing and Alignment	270
Adding Space	270
axf:text-autospace / CSS (-ah-)text-autospace	270

axf:text-autospace-width / CSS -ah-text-autospace-width	271
axf:letter-spacing-side / CSS -ah-letter-spacing-side	271
axf:auto-letter-spacing / CSS -ah-auto-letter-spacing	272
CSS -ah-margin-break	272
CSS -ah-ignore-leading-newline	272
Text Alignment	273
axf:text-align-string / CSS -ah-text-align-string	273
axf:text-align-first / CSS -ah-text-align-first	273
axf:leader-expansion / CSS -ah-leader-expansion	274
axf:text-kashida-space / CSS -ah-text-kashida-space	275
axf:justify-nbsp / CSS -ah-justify-nbsp	275
axf:indent-here / CSS -ah-indent-here	275
Character and Text Decoration	276
axf:text-line-color / CSS -ah-text-line-color	276
axf:text-line-style / CSS -ah-text-line-style	276
axf:text-line-width / CSS -ah-text-line-width	276
axf:text-underline-position / CSS (-ah-)text-underline-position	276
axf:vertical-underline-side / CSS -ah-vertical-underline-side	277
CSS (-ah-)text-decoration	277
CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-color	277
CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-line	277
CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-style	278
axf:text-orientation / CSS (-ah-)text-orientation	278
axf:text-combine-horizontal / CSS (-ah-)text-combine-horizontal	278
Emphasis Marks	280
axf:text-emphasis-style / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-style	280
axf:text-emphasis-position / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-position	281
axf:text-emphasis-offset / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-offset	281
axf:text-emphasis-skip / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-skip	281
axf:text-emphasis-font-family / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-family	282
axf:text-emphasis-font-size / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-size	282
axf:text-emphasis-font-style / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-style	282
axf:text-emphasis-font-weight / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-weight	282
axf:text-emphasis-font-stretch / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-stretch	282
axf:text-emphasis-color / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-color	282
Text Shadow	283
text-shadow / CSS (-ah-)text-shadow	283
Text Transformation	283
axf:normalize / CSS -ah-normalize	283
axf:normalize-exclude / CSS -ah-normalize-exclude	284
axf:text-replace / CSS (-ah-)text-replace	284
axf:number-transform / CSS -ah-number-transform	284
CSS (-ah-)list-style-type	285
Japanese Numerals	287
axf:kansuji-style / CSS -ah-kansuji-style	287
axf:kansuji-letter / CSS -ah-kansuji-letter	287
axf:kansuji-grouping-letter / CSS -ah-kansuji-grouping-letter	288
Ligature	289
axf:ligature-mode / CSS -ah-ligature-mode	289
axf:japanese-glyph / CSS -ah-japanese-glyph	290
axf:alt-glyph / CSS -ah-alt-glyph	290
URI and Link	291
axf:base-uri / CSS -ah-base-uri	291
CSS -ah-link	291
Page Number	291
axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number / CSS -ah-suppress-duplicate-page-number	291
axf:page-number-prefix	293
axf:physical-page-number	293
axf:origin-id	293
axf:assumed-page-number / CSS -ah-assumed-page-number	293
axf:number-type	294
axf:column-number-format	294
axf:suppress-folio-prefix	294

axf:suppress-folio-suffix	294
Line Numbering	295
axf:line-number / CSS -ah-line-number	295
axf:line-number-background-color / CSS -ah-line-number-background-color	295
axf:line-number-color / CSS -ah-line-number-color	295
axf:line-number-display-align / CSS -ah-line-number-display-align	296
axf:line-number-font-family / CSS -ah-line-number-font-family	296
axf:line-number-font-size / CSS -ah-line-number-font-size	296
axf:line-number-font-style / CSS -ah-line-number-font-style	296
axf:line-number-font-weight / CSS -ah-line-number-font-weight	296
axf:line-number-format / CSS -ah-line-number-format	297
axf:line-number-initial / CSS -ah-line-number-initial	297
axf:line-number-interval / CSS -ah-line-number-interval	297
axf:line-number-offset / CSS -ah-line-number-offset	297
axf:line-number-orientation / CSS -ah-line-number-orientation	298
axf:line-number-position / CSS -ah-line-number-position	298
axf:line-number-prefix / CSS -ah-line-number-prefix	298
axf:line-number-reset / CSS -ah-line-number-reset	298
axf:line-number-start / CSS -ah-line-number-start	299
axf:line-number-text-align / CSS -ah-line-number-text-align	299
axf:line-number-text-decoration / CSS -ah-line-number-text-decoration	300
axf:line-number-width / CSS -ah-line-number-width	300
Line Continued Mark	300
axf:line-continued-mark / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark	300
axf:line-continued-mark-background-color / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-background-color	301
axf:line-continued-mark-color / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-color	301
axf:line-continued-mark-font-family / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-family	301
axf:line-continued-mark-font-size / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-size	301
axf:line-continued-mark-font-style / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-style	301
axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-weight	301
axf:line-continued-mark-offset / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-offset	302
Revision Bar	302
axf:revision-bar-color / CSS -ah-revision-bar-color	302
axf:revision-bar-offset / CSS -ah-revision-bar-offset	302
axf:revision-bar-position / CSS -ah-revision-bar-position	302
axf:revision-bar-style / CSS -ah-revision-bar-style	303
axf:revision-bar-width / CSS -ah-revision-bar-width	303
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-class	303
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-color	303
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-offset	304
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-side	304
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-style	304
CSS (-ah-)change-bar-width	304
Footnote	304
Footnote Positioning	304
axf:footnote-align	304
axf:footnote-stacking	305
axf:footnote-position	305
axf:footnote-keep	306
axf:footnote-max-height	306
axf:suppress-duplicate-footnote	307
Footnote Numbering	307
<axf:footnote-number>	307
<axf:footnote-number-citation>	307
axf:footnote-number-format	307
axf:footnote-number-initial	308
axf:footnote-number-reset	308
Columns	308
CSS (-ah-)columns	308
column-count / CSS (-ah-)column-count	309
column-gap / CSS (-ah-)column-gap	309
CSS (-ah-)column-span	309
CSS (-ah-)column-width	309

axf:column-fill / CSS (-ah-)column-fill	309
Column Rule	309
CSS (-ah-)column-rule	310
axf:column-rule-align / CSS -ah-column-rule-align	310
axf:column-rule-color / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-color	310
axf:column-rule-display / CSS -ah-column-rule-display	310
axf:column-rule-length / CSS -ah-column-rule-length	311
axf:column-rule-style / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-style	311
axf:column-rule-width / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-width	311
Borders	311
CSS -ah-border-after	311
CSS -ah-border-before	311
CSS -ah-border-end	311
CSS -ah-border-start	312
CSS -ah-border-after-color	312
CSS -ah-border-before-color	312
CSS -ah-border-end-color	312
CSS -ah-border-start-color	312
CSS -ah-border-after-style	312
CSS -ah-border-before-style	313
CSS -ah-border-end-style	313
CSS -ah-border-start-style	313
CSS -ah-border-after-width	313
CSS -ah-border-before-width	313
CSS -ah-border-end-width	313
CSS -ah-border-start-width	314
CSS (-ah-)border-length	314
Diagonal Border	314
axf:diagonal-border-color / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-color	314
axf:diagonal-border-style / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-style	314
axf:diagonal-border-width / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-width	315
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-color	315
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-style	315
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-width	315
Rounding Border	315
axf:border-radius	315
axf:border-top-left-radius	315
axf:border-top-right-radius	315
axf:border-bottom-left-radius	315
axf:border-bottom-right-radius	315
Box Shadow	316
axf:box-shadow / CSS (-ah-)box-shadow	316
Table	316
<axf:table-cell-repeated-marker>	316
axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break / CSS -ah-repeat-cell-content-at-break	316
axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-footer / CSS -ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-footer	317
axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-header / CSS -ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-header	317
axf:table-summary / CSS -ah-table-summary	317
CSS (-ah-)table-column-span	317
CSS (-ah-)table-row-span	318
Images, Multimedia	318
axf:alttext / CSS -ah-alttext / HTML alt	318
axf:image-resolution / CSS (-ah-)image-resolution	318
axf:image-smoothing / CSS -ah-image-smoothing	318
axf:background-content-width	319
axf:background-content-height	319
axf:background-content-type	319
axf:background-scaling	319
axf:background-image-resolution / CSS -ah-background-image-resolution	319
CSS (-ah-)background-clip	319
CSS (-ah-)background-origin	319
CSS (-ah-)background-size	319
axf:poster-image / CSS -ah-poster-image	320

axf:poster-content-type / CSS -ah-poster-content-type	320
axf:show-controls / CSS -ah-show-controls	320
axf:media-volume / CSS (-ah-)media-volume	321
axf:media-play-mode / CSS (-ah-)media-play-mode	321
axf:media-duration / CSS (-ah-)media-duration	321
axf:media-extraction-policy / CSS (-ah-)media-extraction-policy	321
Overflow Extensions	322
axf:overflow-align / CSS -ah-overflow-align	322
axf:overflow-condense / CSS -ah-overflow-condense	322
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size / CSS -ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-size	323
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch / CSS -ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch	323
axf:overflow-replace / CSS -ah-overflow-replace	324
axf:overflow-limit / CSS -ah-overflow-limit	324
axf:overflow-limit-inline / CSS -ah-overflow-limit-inline	324
axf:overflow-limit-block / CSS -ah-overflow-limit-block	324
Extended Applies	325
<fo:change-bar-begin>	325
Page Background	325
background-color	325
background-image	325
background-position-horizontal	325
background-position-vertical	325
background-repeat	325
Extended Values	326
display-align / CSS -ah-display-align	326
font-size-adjust / CSS (-ah-)font-size-adjust	326
font-stretch / CSS (-ah-)font-stretch	326
font-variant / CSS (-ah-)font-variant	326
force-page-count	327
format	328
internal-destination	331
leader-alignment	331
overflow	332
size / CSS (-ah-)size	332
table-omit-footer-at-break / CSS -ah-table-omit-footer-at-break	333
table-omit-header-at-break / CSS -ah-table-omit-header-at-break	333
text-transform / CSS (-ah-)text-transform	333
Extended Functions	333
rgb-icc()	333
linear-gradient() no-LT	334
radial-gradient() no-LT	334
repeating-linear-gradient() no-LT	335
repeating-radial-gradient() no-LT	335
CSS counter()	335
CSS attr()	335
CSS -ah-attr-from()	335
CSS3 Properties	335
CSS (-ah-)alignment-adjust	336
CSS (-ah-)alignment-baseline	336
CSS (-ah-)baseline-shift	336
CSS (-ah-)bookmark-label	336
CSS (-ah-)bookmark-level	336
CSS (-ah-)bookmark-state	336
CSS (-ah-)box-decoration-break	337
CSS (-ah-)box-sizing	337
CSS (-ah-)break-after	337
CSS (-ah-)break-before	337
CSS (-ah-)break-inside	337
CSS (-ah-)crop	337
CSS (-ah-)dominant-baseline	337
CSS -ah-logical-height	338
CSS -ah-logical-width	338
CSS -ah-margin-after	338

CSS -ah-margin-before	338
CSS -ah-margin-end	338
CSS -ah-margin-start	338
CSS -ah-max-logical-height	339
CSS -ah-max-logical-width	339
CSS -ah-min-logical-height	339
CSS -ah-min-logical-width	339
CSS -ah-padding-after	339
CSS -ah-padding-before	339
CSS -ah-padding-end	340
CSS -ah-padding-start	340
CSS (-ah-)page	340
CSS (-ah-)string-set	340
CSS (-ah-)text-align	340
CSS (-ah-)text-align-last	341
CSS (-ah-)text-combine	341
CSS (-ah-)vertical-align	341
CSS (-ah-)writing-mode	341
Float Extension	342
Float Extension Properties	342
axf:float / CSS (-ah-)float	342
axf:float-x / CSS -ah-float-x	343
axf:float-y / CSS -ah-float-y	343
axf:float-reference / CSS -ah-float-reference	344
axf:float-move / CSS -ah-float-move	345
axf:float-wrap / CSS -ah-float-wrap	345
axf:float-min-wrap-x / CSS -ah-float-min-wrap-x	345
axf:float-min-wrap-y / CSS -ah-float-min-wrap-y	346
axf:float-centering-x / CSS -ah-float-centering-x	346
axf:float-centering-y / CSS -ah-float-centering-y	346
axf:float-margin-x / CSS -ah-float-margin-x	347
axf:float-margin-y / CSS -ah-float-margin-y	347
axf:float-float-margin-x / CSS -ah-float-float-margin-x	347
axf:float-float-margin-y / CSS -ah-float-float-margin-y	347
axf:float-offset-x / CSS -ah-float-offset-x	347
axf:float-offset-y / CSS -ah-float-offset-y	348
Unit 'gr' to specify spanning columns	348
Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS	348
Extended Float Examples	349
Page Float Examples	349
Column Float Examples	349
Multi-column Float Examples	349
Float Move Example	350
Restrictions	350
Ruby Extension	351
Ruby Extended Elements	353
<axf:ruby> / CSS display: ruby	353
<axf:ruby-base> / CSS display: ruby-base	353
<axf:ruby-text> / CSS display: ruby-text	353
Ruby Extended Properties	354
axf:ruby-align / CSS (-ah-)ruby-align	354
axf:ruby-position / CSS (-ah-)ruby-position	355
axf:ruby-offset / CSS -ah-ruby-offset	355
axf:ruby-overhang / CSS (-ah-)ruby-overhang	356
axf:ruby-limit-overhang / CSS -ah-ruby-limit-overhang	356
axf:ruby-limit-space / CSS -ah-ruby-limit-space	357
axf:ruby-small-kana / CSS -ah-ruby-small-kana	357
axf:ruby-font-family / CSS -ah-ruby-font-family	358
axf:ruby-font-size / CSS -ah-ruby-font-size	358
axf:ruby-minimum-font-size / CSS -ah-ruby-minimum-font-size	358
axf:ruby-font-style / CSS -ah-ruby-font-style	358
axf:ruby-font-weight / CSS -ah-ruby-font-weight	358

axf:ruby-font-stretch / CSS -ah-ruby-font-stretch	359
axf:ruby-condense / CSS -ah-ruby-condense	359
axf:ruby-color / CSS -ah-ruby-color	359
SVG Conformance	360
Restrictions	362
CGM Conformance	363
Delimiter	363
Metafile Descriptor	364
Picture Descriptor	367
Control	369
Graphical Primitive	370
Attribute	374
Escape	377
External	377
Segment Control and Segment Attribute	377
Application Structure Descriptor	378
MathML Conformance	379
Presentation Markup	379
Content Markup	384
Mixing Markup	389
Operator Dictionary	389
Conformance Limitations	389
Hyphenation	390
Languages	390
Example	391
Exception Dictionary	391
TeX Dictionary	392
Dictionary Name and Location	392
Contents of Hyphenation Dictionary	393
Restrictions	393
PANTONE® Option	394
Color Names	394
Barcode Generator Option	400
QR / MicroQR	400
Customer Barcode	401
Japan Post Customer Barcode	402
Intelligent Mail® Barcode	402
POSTNET	402
Linear Barcode	402
EAN / JAN	403
UPC	403
Interleaved 2of5	403
Codabar / NW-7	403
Code39	404
Code128	404
GS1-128 / EAN-128	405
Environment Variables	407
Symbolic Links	408
Installed Modules	410
Windows version	410
Solaris / Linux version	411
Macintosh version	413
Error Messages	415
Technical Notes	425
Formatting HTML	425
Cascading Order of CSS	425
Default CSS for HTML	426

Detection of Formatting Type	426
Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.1	427
Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0	427
Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5	428
Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4	429
Incompatibility of XSL1.0 and XSL1.1	430
Shorthand	431
URI	431
Table Auto Layout	432
Line Breaking	433
Variation Sequence	433
Font Selection	433
Upright Rendering of Text in Vertical Writing Mode	435
Formatting Large Document	437
Temporary File	437
Index	438



Overview

AH Formatter V6.2 is a software to format XML/HTML documents and output them to paged media such as PDF, XPS and paper. It now supports page layouts specified using either XSL-FO (Extensible Stylesheet Language - Formatting Objects) and CSS (Cascading StyleSheets) including CSS3 (Cascading Style Sheets Level3) which is under development by W3C.

The following six products are prepared according to the formatting capability of **AH Formatter V6.2**

- **AH Formatter V6.2**

XSL-FO formatting, HTML formatting using CSS are available. As long as there is no notice especially in this document, when it is called **AH Formatter V6.2**, it is a generic term of six types of all products in many cases, but it may point an individual product guessing from the context.

- **AH XSL Formatter V6.2**

XSL-FO formatting is available. HTML formatting using CSS is not available.

- **AH CSS Formatter V6.2**

HTML formatting using CSS is available. XSL-FO formatting is not available.

- **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**

This is a function limited version of **AH Formatter V6.2**. Please refer to [About AH Formatter V6.2 Lite](#). As long as there is no notice especially in this document, when it is called **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**, it is a generic term including **AH XSL Formatter V6.2 Lite** and **AH CSS Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

- **AH XSL Formatter V6.2 Lite**

This is a function limited version of **AH XSL Formatter V6.2**. Please refer to [About AH Formatter V6.2 Lite](#).

- **AH CSS Formatter V6.2 Lite**

This is a function limited version of **AH CSS Formatter V6.2**. Please refer to [About AH Formatter V6.2 Lite](#).

Highlights

AH Formatter V6.2 provides the following features:

- **Compliant with XSL 1.1**

Corresponds to XSL 1.1 which is a XSL-FO specification. **AH Formatter V6.2** faithfully implements quite almost elements of the XSL specification and properties. Please refer to "[XSL-FO Conformance](#)".

- **Compliant with CSS**

AH Formatter V6.2 supports CSS2.1 and CSS3. Page models of CSS3 is also supported, now that high-quality page formatting will be available. Please refer to "[CSS Conformance](#)" for detail. HTML/XHTML formatting is also available except for frames, etc., in HTML. Please refer to "[Formatting HTML](#)".

- **Passes Acid2**

AH Formatter V6.2 has passed the [Acid2](#) test published by "[The Web Standard Project \(WaSP\)](#)" that measures the conforming level to CSS.

- **Format virtually any size document**

AH Formatter V6.2 can now format a document of virtually any size whether it is a publication, tens of thousands of invoices, reports, technical manuals, or personalized one to one documents. Please refer to "[Formatting Large Document](#)".

- **High speed formatting**

AH Formatter V6.2 processes the formatting at high speed, and generates PDF. It is the best suited for applying to the Web application such as the PDF delivery on Web etc.

- **Multilingual language**

AH Formatter V6.2 supports over 50 different languages, almost any language which is supported by Unicode including and also supports surrogate pairs. It offers the abilities to write in vertical mode, to run the text from right to left as in Arabic and Hebrew and also to create multilingual documents with language mixtures on the same page and even on the same line. It also offers the hyphenation processing, and the adjustment of white space before and behind the punctuation which differs according to the language. Moreover, **AH Formatter V6.2** makes it possible to [hyphenate more than 40 languages](#).

- **Outputs to the various file format**

[PDF output](#) can be done for an unlimited number of users on a server by utilizing the Antenna House developed PDF direct creation engine. The license of Acrobat is unnecessary. **AH Formatter PostScript Output Option**, **INX Output Option**, **MIF Output Option**, **XPS Output Option** and **SVG Output Option** make PostScript® output, INX output, MIF output, XPS output and SVG output available.

- **Supports PDF/X and PDF/A**

AH Formatter V6.2 supports [PDF/X](#). PDF/X is a specification that places much value on exchanging data and defined by ISO for printing purpose. [PDF/A](#) is also supported. PDF/A is a format for long-term preservation of an electronic document and it is also defined by ISO.

- **Accessible PDF**

AH Formatter V6.2 can generate the [Tagged PDF](#) for enhancing the accessibility to people with disabilities. This is a function indispensable to comply with [Section 508](#), the law of the United States enforced on June 21, 2001.

- **Direct Printer output**

The Windows version also supports the ability to send the converted results directly to any Windows based printer without the need to first create a PDF document. It's also possible to get the formatted result and print it immediately by using [GUI](#).

- **Native rendering of vector Graphics**

With AH Formatter V6.2 [SVG](#), [MathML](#), [EMF](#), [WMF](#) and [CGM](#) image is rendered into PDF as vector thus retaining the quality of output images. [AH Formatter CGM Option](#) is required for rendering CGM as vector graphic.

- **Supports the embedding of PDF into PDF**

An arbitrary page of other [PDF](#) can be embedded into PDF. It is possible to convert EPS into PDF and embed into PDF using this function. In the environment where Adobe Distiller and Ghostscript are installed, it can be performed automatically.

- **Supports PANTONE® color**

The color name of PANTONE® can be directly specified by using [AH Formatter PANTONE® Option](#).

- **Wide array of Integration Interface**

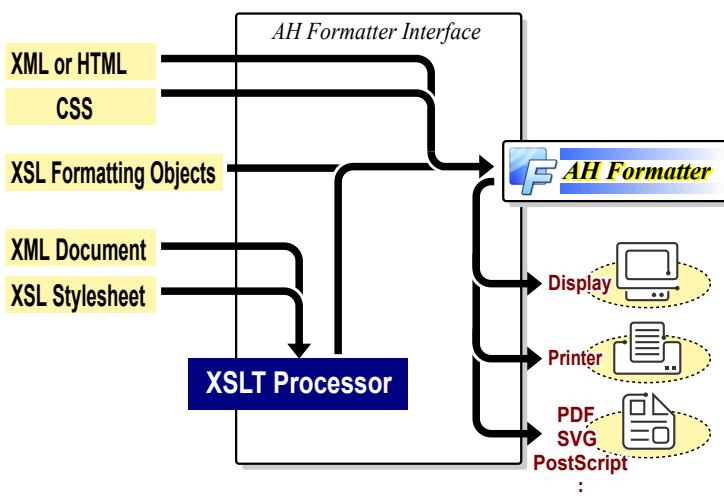
As integration interface AH Formatter V6.2 provides [Command-line](#), [.NET](#), [COM](#), [Java](#) and [C/C++](#) interface. (.NET and COM interfaces are available only for Windows.) All interfaces support streaming input/output which makes for the easy system integration. Also the output of the native parser of .NET (XML and XSLT output) can be directly received without going through a file. It is possible to receive DOM directly and process it with not only .NET interface but also COM interface.

- **Flexible float features**

By implementing the advanced float features, it's now available to arrange the float content in an arbitrary place of the page, or in multi-column layout with column spanning of the float. See also [Float Extension](#).

Antenna House Workflow

AH Formatter V6.2 formats XSL Formatting Objects (XSL-FO), XML with XSL stylesheet, or HTML with CSS. The formatted result will be displayed in [GUI](#) and outputted or printed to PDF. (Display and printing are available only with the Windows version). The work flow is as shown below.



- When an (X)HTML document is inputted, **AH Formatter V6.2** formats it immediately using a default HTML stylesheet.
- When an XML document or an (X)HTML document with a CSS are inputted, **AH Formatter V6.2** formats it immediately.
- When an XSL Formatting Object is inputted, **AH Formatter V6.2** formats it immediately.
- When an XML document and an XSL stylesheet are inputted, **AH Formatter V6.2** transforms them to XSL Formatting Object using XSLT Processor and formats the XSL Formatting Object or XHTML.

Please find a list of implemented XSL-FO/CSS and properties in "[XSL/CSS Properties List](#)".

Enhancements and New Features

New Enhancements of **AH Formatter V6.2** from **AH Formatter V6.1** are as follows:

- The [MathML](#) rendering engine is completely rewritten.
- Support for [Sinhala characters](#). [V6.2MR1]
- It's now available to search fonts in the subfolder under the font folder in the font configuration file settings. [recursive]
- Values that can be specified to [font-variant](#) are added.
- Support for the box-shadow property. [axf:box-shadow]
- Support for the text-shadow property. [axf:text-shadow]
- Support for the baseline-grid property. [axf:baseline-grid]
- It's now possible to place a footnote that extends over multiple pages. [axf:footnote-max-height]
- It's now possible to add line numbers to each column of a table independently. [axf:line-number-*]
- It's now possible to specify the contents of a cell when a cell is split by a page break. [axf:table-cell-repeated-marker]
- Support for the [tab-size](#) property.
- The [rgba\(\)](#) function is now available to use.
- It's now possible to specify the spine width of the facing page to the printer mark. [axf:printer-marks-spine-width]
- It's now possible to specify the overprint. [axf:overprint] [V6.2MR2]
- It's now possible to specify the [unit](#) of the page size displayed on GUI.
- It's now possible to change the [language](#) displayed on GUI.
- The type of @media evaluated by CSS can now be specified. [css-media-type]
- It's now possible to specify the author of the annotation. [axf:annotation-author] [V6.2MR2]
- It's now possible to specify the PDF layer. [axf:layer-settings]
- Annotations, such as linking in the PDF can be maintained when the PDF is embedded in PDF. [import-annotation-types]
- The following properties for multimedia embedded in PDF are added:
 - axf:media-volume
 - axf:media-play-mode
 - axf:media-duration
 - axf:media-extraction-policy
- The following default values of the formatter settings are revised:
 - pair-kerning
 - latin-ligature
- The following default values of the PDF output settings are revised:
 - embed-all-fonts
 - error-on-embed-fault
 - pdf-version
 - grayscale-downsampling-above-dpi
 - grayscale-downsampling-target-dpi
 - image-downsampling-above-dpi
 - image-downsampling-target-dpi
 - monochrome-downsampling-above-dpi
 - monochrome-downsampling-target-dpi

System Requirements

AH Formatter	OS
Windows version	Windows Vista Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2008 Windows 7 Windows 8
Windows x64 version	Windows Vista x64 Edition Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition Windows Server 2008 x64 Edition Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Edition Windows Server 2012 [V6.2] Windows 7 x64 Edition

AH Formatter	OS
Windows x64 version	Windows 8 x64 Edition
Solaris version	Oracle Solaris 10, 11 (SPARC version) Oracle Solaris 10 (x86 version)
Linux version	Built by GCC4.1. (required libstdc++.so.6 runtime library)
Linux 64bit version	
Macintosh version	Mac OS X Version 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8 (Intel version)

- All but "x64 edition" and the "64-bit version" are compiled with 32-bit.
- Windows version (32-bit version) can be installed on Windows x64 Edition. When you use each interface, please note the following points.
 - .NET Interface : Specify /platform:x86.
 - COM Interface : Use WSH (C:\Windows\SysWOW64\cscript.exe) 32-bit version.
 - Java Interface : Use JDK 32-bit version.
 - C/C++ Interface : Compile to be run on Win32 platform.
- Hereinafter unless otherwise explicitly mentioned, the phrase "Windows version" includes both Windows x32 version and Windows x64 version.
- Hereinafter unless otherwise explicitly mentioned, the phrase "Linux version" includes both Linux version and Linux 64bit version.
- Please see "[Font Setting](#)" for supported fonts. In addition, fonts are not included in the Windows version.
- Standard 14 Fonts in non-Windows version have the metrics information file only. They do not contain the file of the outline information. If you want to embed these fonts to PDF or PS file, please prepare whole fonts by yourself.
- Please confirm the necessary environment variables at "[Environment Variable](#)" in this manual.
- Please confirm the installed modules at "[Installed Modules](#)" in this manual.
- The printing function on the Windows version depends on Windows-based printer drivers.
- In Windows version, the run time library of Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 is required. This run time library is installed when you have the product installed on your system. It is also possible to download it from the following site When you need the package of the library separately.
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x86\)](#)
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x64\)](#)
- When using .NET Framework 3.5 (XfoDotNet35Ctl60.dll, Visual Studio C++ 2008 redistribution package needs to be installed. Please download it from the following site:
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x86\)](#)
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x64\)](#)
- When using .NET Framework 2.0 (XfoDotNet20Ctl60.dll, Visual Studio C++ 2005 redistribution package needs to be installed. Please download it from the following site:
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x86\)](#)
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x64\)](#)

See also [Antenna House Website](#) for more details.

Languages

AH Formatter V6.2 supports languages expressed with the following scripts among the scripts specified by ISO 15924.

- Latn : Latin
- Grek : Greek
- Cyril : Cyrillic
- Arab : Arabic
- Hebr : Hebrew
- Deva : Devanagari
- Beng : Bengali no-LT
- Guru : Gurmukhi no-LT
- Gujr : Gujarati no-LT
- Orya : Oriya no-LT
- Tamil : Tamil no-LT
- Telu : Telugu no-LT

- Knda : Kannada [no-LT]
- Mlym : Malayalam [no-LT]
- Sinh : Sinhala [V6.2MR1] [no-LT]
- Thai : Thai
- Khmr : Khmer [no-LT]
- Lao : Lao [no-LT]
- Kana : Katakana
- Hira : Hiragana
- Hang : Hangul
- Hani : Han (Kanji)
- Hans : Han (Chinese Simplified)
- Hant : Han (Chinese Traditional)
- Jpan : Japanese (Hani+Hira+Kana)

Depending on the language, it's possible to [hyphenate](#) the Latin script, the Greek script and the Cyrillic script.

Some of the language codes which is defined by [ISO 639-2](#) can be specified. The main codes are as follows. The corresponding scripts show the major example.

code		language	script	hyphenation
af	afr	Afrikaans	Latn	yes
ar	ara	Arabic	Arab	n/a
az	aze	Azerbaijani	Latn	no
bg	bul	Bulgarian	Cyrl	yes
bn	ben	Bengali [no-LT]	Beng	n/a
ca	cat	Catalan	Latn	yes
cs	ces	Czech	Latn	yes
cy	cym	Welsh	Latn	yes
da	dan	Danish	Latn	yes
de	deu	German / Swiss German	Latn	yes
el	ell	Greek	Grek	yes
en	eng	English	Latn	yes
en-US	eng-US	American	Latn	yes
eo	epo	Esperanto	Latn	yes
es	spa	Spanish	Latn	yes
et	est	Estonian	Latn	yes
eu	eus	Basque	Latn	yes
fa	fas	Persian	Arab	n/a
fi	fin	Finnish	Latn	yes
fr	fra	French / Canadian French	Latn	yes
ga	gle	Irish (Erse or Gaelic)	Latn	yes
gu	guj	Gujarati [no-LT]	Gujr	n/a
he	heb	Hebrew	Hebr	n/a
hi	hin	Hindi	Deva	n/a
hr	hrv	Croatian	Cyrl / Latn	yes
hu	hun	Hungarian	Latn	yes
id	ind	Indonesian	Latn	yes
is	isl	Icelandic	Latn	yes
it	ita	Italian	Latn	yes

code		language	script	hyphenation
ja	jpn	Japanese	Hani, Hira, Kana, Jpan	n/a
kk	kaz	Kazakh	Cyril / Latn	no
km	khm	Khmer [no-LT]	Khmr	n/a
kn	kan	Kannada [no-LT]	Knda	n/a
ko	kor	Korean	Hang, Hani	n/a
la	lat	Latin	Latn	yes
lo	lao	Lao [no-LT]	Lao0	n/a
lt	lit	Lithuanian	Latn	yes
lv	lav	Latvian	Latn	yes
ml	mal	Malayalam [no-LT]	Mlym	n/a
ms	msa	Bahasa Malay	Latn	yes
mt	mlt	Maltese	Latn	yes
nl	nld	Dutch / Flemish	Latn	yes
no	nor	Norwegian	Latn	yes
or	ori	Oriya [no-LT]	Orya	n/a
pa	pan	Punjabi [no-LT]	Guru	n/a
pl	pol	Polish	Latn	yes
pt	por	Portuguese / Brazilian	Latn	yes
ro	ron	Romanian / Moldavian	Latn	yes
ru	rus	Russian	Cyril	yes
si	sin	Sinhalese [V6.2MR1] [no-LT]	Sinh	n/a
sk	slk	Slovak	Latn	yes
sl	slv	Slovenian	Latn	yes
sr	srp	Serbian	Cyril / Latn	yes
sv	swe	Swedish	Latn	yes
sw	swa	Swahili	Latn	yes
ta	tam	Tamil [no-LT]	Taml	n/a
te	tel	Telugu [no-LT]	Telu	n/a
th	tha	Thai	Thai	yes
tr	tur	Turkish	Latn	yes
uk	ukr	Ukrainian	Cyril	yes
ur	urd	Urdu [V6.2]	Arab	no
vi	vie	Vietnamese	Latn	no
zh-CN	zho-CN	Chinese	Hani, Hans	n/a
zh-TW	zho-TW	Chinese (Taiwanese)	Hani, Hant	n/a

Encodings

AH Formatter V6.2 supports the following HTML, CSS or FO Encodings. These are registered in [CHARACTER SETS](#) of IANA. However, the list includes some encodings which are not registered there.

- UTF-8
- UTF-16
- UTF-32
- ISO-10646-UCS-2
- ISO-8859-1
- latin1
- ISO-8859-2
- latin2

- ISO-10646-UCS-4
- ANSI_X3.4
- ISO_646.irv
- ISO646-US
- US-ASCII
- Windows-31J
- Shift_JIS
- EUC-JP
- ISO-2022-JP
- GB18030
- GBK
- GB2312
- Big5
- KS_C_5601-1987
- iso-ir-149
- korean
- ISO-8859-3
- latin3
- ISO-8859-4
- latin4
- ISO-8859-5
- cyrillic
- ISO-8859-6
- arabic
- ISO-8859-7
- greek
- ISO-8859-8
- hebrew
- ISO-8859-9
- latin5
- ISO-8859-10
- latin6
- ISO-8859-11
- ISO-8859-13
- ISO-8859-14
- latin8
- ISO-8859-15
- Latin-9
- ISO-8859-16
- latin10

Windows-31J is regarded as Shift_JIS.

The encoding of the XML document and XSL stylesheet depends on the XSLT Processor you use when the XML document and XSL stylesheet are converted into XSL-FO by using the XSLT Processor.

XSLT Processor

AH Formatter V6.2 uses an XSLT Processor for converting XML documents and XSL stylesheets into XSL Formatting Objects (XSL-FO) or XHTML. In the Windows version, the higher version available from MSXML6 to MSXML3 is used as the standard XSLT Processor. Windows users have the option to use a different XSLT Processor if desired. In non-Windows version users set their desired XSLT Processor through the "[Environment Variable](#)" or "[Option Setting File](#)". For Windows MSXML is already installed.

About AH Formatter V6.2 Lite

AH Formatter V6.2 Lite is a popular version of **AH Formatter V6.2**, it limits some of the professional functions of V6.2 (hereafter Standard) and is a lower-cost alternative to V6.2 Standard. V6.2 Lite is suitable for customers who don't need advanced handling of PDF, formatting of a great deal of pages, etc. But it's still full of many other attractive functions.

- Total page number of the formatted pages are limited to 300 per 1 document. The watermark that shows the limited version is displayed and the URL of our Website is displayed at the bottom of the pages which exceed 300.
- Cannot support newly added Indian scripts.
- [PDF/X](#), [PDF/A](#) and [Tagged PDF](#) are not supported.
- Embedding [multimedia](#) is not supported.
- Cannot embed annotations, like [3D objects](#), in PDF.
- Cannot linearize PDF for [Fast Web View](#).
- Cannot perform [2-pass format](#).
- Cannot [save and load the area tree](#).
- Cannot [output TEXT](#).
- [MathML rendering](#) is not supported. In order to use the function of MathML, you will have to purchase the [AH Formatter MathML Option](#) separately.
- The following [extensions](#) are not supported. (When there is no specification written, they are common for XSL extension and CSS extension.)
 - [Printer marks such as a crop mark](#)
 - [Dynamic addition of a font](#)

- Bookmarks (If a bookmark is basic, it's available.)
- PDF Forms
- PDF annotation
- Specify the page number of the link destination
- PDF output in multi separate volume
- Line continued marks
- Line numbers
- Foot note numbers
- Printer control
- Leader expansion
- Repeat page sequence
- Suppress a block on the first page
- Character string conversion such as Japanese numerals
- Set the prefix for line numbers
- Omit header/footer on column breaks, not on page breaks
- Embed the document information in PDF
- Transform the block
- Gradation expressions
- Rendering of characters to be upright and horizontal-in-vertical composition
- Unicode normalization forms
- Lite doesn't include 90 day warranty. Customers may purchase an annual maintenance agreement to get the customer service.

FYI: [no-LT] sign is applied to the restricted items or described as restriction in this Online Manual.

About Evaluation Version

AH Formatter V6.2 Evaluation version has the following restrictions as compared to the product version.

- The URL of Antenna House website is shown at the bottom of all pages.
- The watermark image, "Evaluation Version", is placed on each page.
- The weight of the font may look changed a little and the color of the image may look different a little with the watermark. There is cause in Adobe Acrobat or Reader for this problem. In addition, the printing speed decreases for the amount of the watermark.
- PDF1.3 cannot be output with the evaluation version.
- Impossible to input/output the Area Tree.
- The function of **PostScript output** is effective. PostScript output has the following restrictions.
 - Only the first one page can be outputted.

This function with the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function with the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter Postscript Output Option** separately.

- The function of **SVG output** is effective. SVG output has the following restrictions.
 - Only the first one page can be outputted.
 - Font embedding is not available.

The SVG output function in the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function in the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter SVG Output Option** separately.

- The function of **INX output** is effective. INX output has the following restrictions.
 - Only the first one page can be outputted.

The INX output function in the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function in the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter INX Output Option** separately.

- The function of **MIF output** is effective. MIF output has the following restrictions.
 - Only the first one page can be outputted.

The MIF output function in the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function in the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter MIF Output Option** separately.

- The function of **XPS output** is effective. XPS output has the following restrictions.
 - Only the first one page can be outputted.

The XPS output function in the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function in the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter XPS Output Option** separately.

- The function of **CGM** rendering by utilizing our direct creation module is effective. This function in the product version is provided as an option. In order to use this function with the product version, customers must purchase **AH Formatter CGM Option** separately.
- The evaluation copy expires after 90 days.
- Use of the evaluation version for live production or commercial purposes is expressly prohibited.
- Removal of the watermark and/or our website URL at the bottom of the page in the evaluation version is prohibited.

There are no restrictions on formatting functions except for the above mentioned. However, the optional features that are not explicitly stated above are invalid.

Support

For further information about **AH Formatter V6.2**, please refer to Q&A Page on [our web site](#).

- [AH Formatter / XSL Formatter Q&A](#)

Antenna House provides numerous XSL-FO samples for testing and learning purpose. Please see:

- [Stylesheet Tutorial, Sample Files of Formatting Objects and Sample Stylesheets](#)

For more information, technical support and service needs, please contact us by e-mail.

- info@antennahouse.com

The following information is necessary for the mail to our support. Please cooperate with us to do your support smoothly.

- Version of AH Formatter
- License information (Serial No., Company name, Section and User name)
- OS environment

If you are a user of the evaluation version, please enter "evaluation version" for the serial number. In the Windows product version, you can put the required information for support to the mail text automatically by using [\[Help\]-\[Mail to Support\]](#) on the menu bar in GUI.

Graphical User Interface

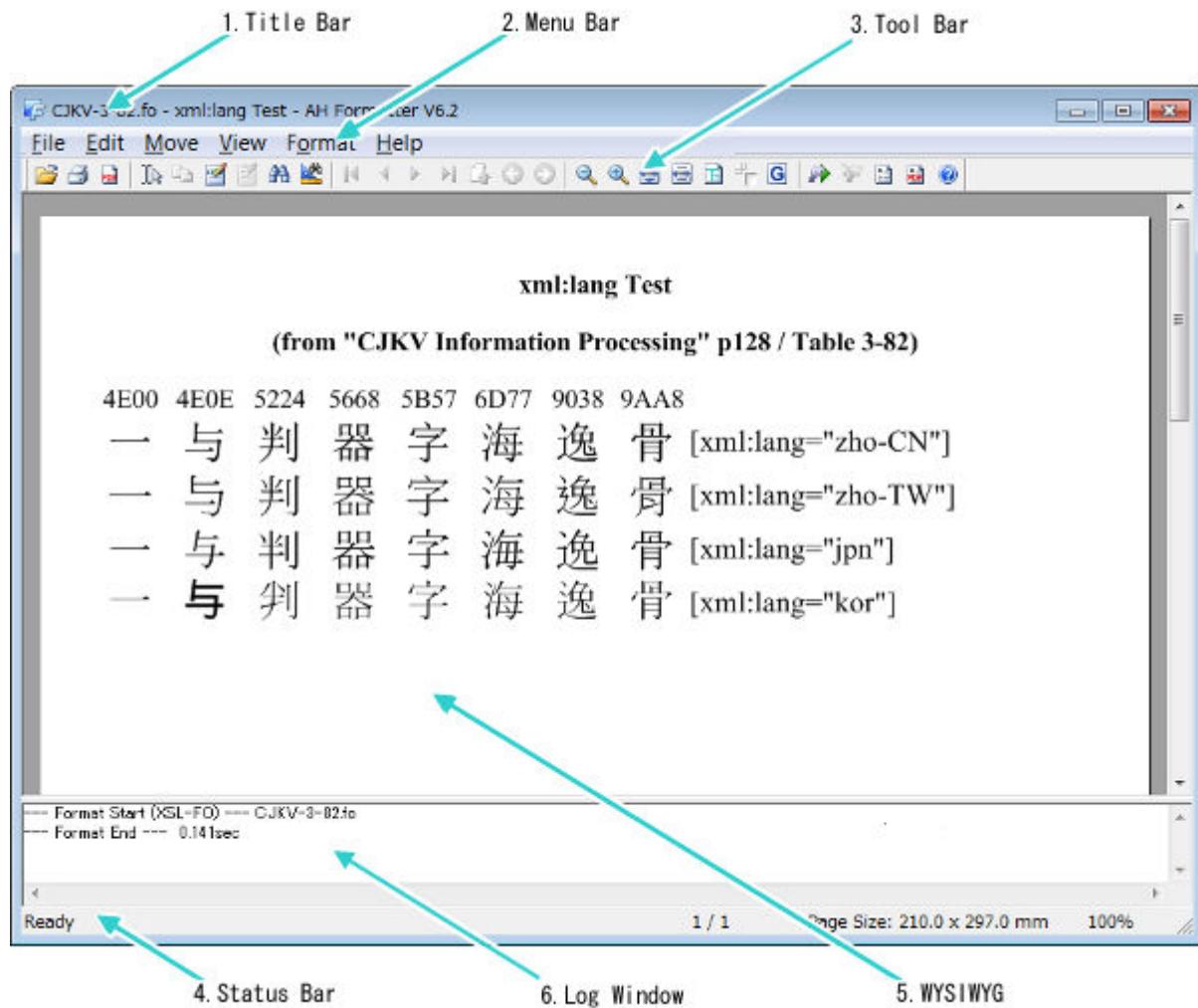
AH Formatter V6.2 Windows version has a Graphical User Interface (GUI). By using the GUI, you can easily initiate formatting and then view the formatted results on the browser prior to outputting to PDF or print. You also have control over a number of formatting options, can set the options for PDF output and can direct files to any connected printer.

For developers the GUI provides quick visual feedback of formatting results and has the added ability to save Area and FO Trees to aid in the development processes. In a large multi page document the pages can be browsed as they are formatted. If errors are detected Formatting can be stopped prior to completion, thus on very large runs saving considerable time.

The GUI also lets you save the resulting XSL-FO file from XSLT. This is very useful when you want to transmit a file for formatting, but not the XML or XSL files.

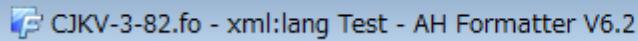
Main Window

The application window of **AH Formatter V6.2** consists of following elements.



1. Title Bar

The title bar shows the name of the original file being formatted; the stylesheet (XSL file) if formatting an XML file; and if in the <title> of HTML, FO file <fo:title> or if <axf:document-info> extension property, the content will also be shown (HTML's <title> or <fo:title> takes priority).



2. Menu Bar

The menu bar contains the following 6 pull-down menus:

- File
- Edit

- Move
- View
- Format
- Help

3. Tool Bar

The most commonly used menu functions are available as buttons on the Tool Bar. You can easily execute these functions by one click of the mouse. ↗ [View]-[Tool Bar]

4. Status Bar

The Status Bar displays the following information. ↗ [View]-[Status Bar]

- Current status of Formatter or the tool bar button function as you pass over the button with the pointer.
- Current page number/total number of pages (based on physical page count).
- The physical page size of the displayed page.
- Zoom ratio.



5. WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get)

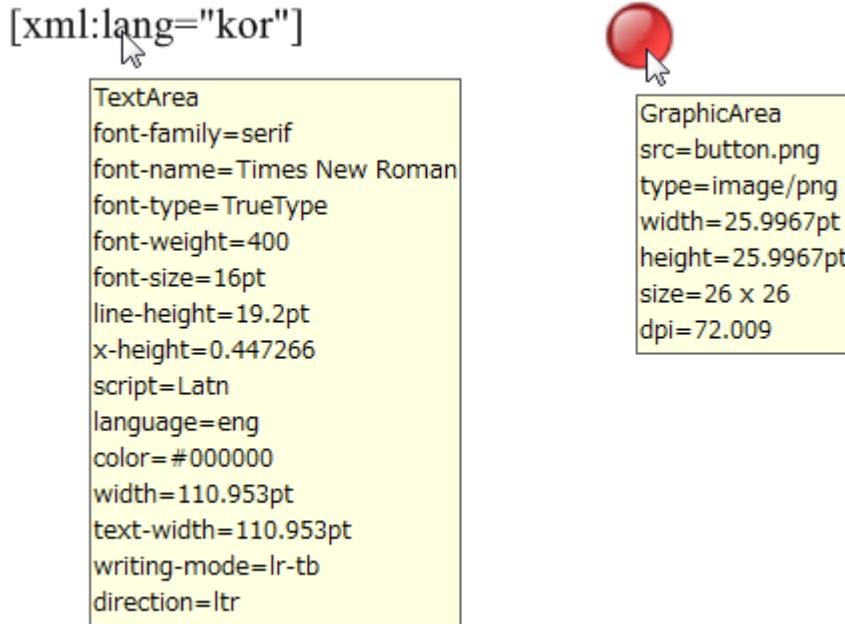
The WYSIWYG displays the formatted results. When the scroll bar is displayed, you can use the hand tool ⓘ as the mouse pointer on the WYSIWYG window to move the page around so that you can view all the areas on it while pressing the left mouse button. In addition, it does not become a hand tool when the [Text Select] mode is selected in the Edit menu.

You can format various files by dropping on this window. When you drop a file on this window, the type of file will be detected automatically. If you'd like to specify the file type, please open the file using the Document/Stylesheet Dialog. The dropped file will be added to the <Recent File> of a File menu and the file type will also be memorized. Therefore, when you choose the file dropped and saved in the Recent File, the file type will be detected again automatically. Formatting pattern by the file type is as follows: (See also Detection of Formatting Type to learn about the automatic detection.)

- FO file
Starts formatting immediately.
- Stylesheet (XSL/CSS)
When you drop the associated stylesheet on the formatted result, formatting starts with the dropped stylesheet. If not, it starts formatting after dropping an XML/HTML document combined with the stylesheet together.
- HTML file (without XSL/CSS specification in HTML)
Formats the document using a default stylesheet.
- XML/HTML file (with XSL/CSS specification in XML/HTML)
Formats the document using the stylesheet specified in XML/HTML.
- XML/HTML file (without XSL/CSS specification in XML/HTML) + Stylesheet (XSL/CSS)
Formats the document using the stylesheet dropped together.
- XML/HTML file (with XSL/CSS specification in XML/HTML) + Stylesheet (XSL/CSS)
Formats the document using the stylesheet dropped together.
- Graphics file
The graphics file is rendered in the window when it is the **Graphics** supported by **AH Formatter V6.2**.

If another stylesheet is dropped when formatting the file except for FO or a graphics file, the file can be again formatted using the stylesheet. Moreover, if the Internet shortcut (.url) file, a URL character string or a Shortcut link (.lnk) to a file is dropped, the URL and the target file can be opened.

When a mouse is pointed on an area on the screen such as a character string or an image, the information about the area is displayed as a ToolTip. Font name, size, format and size of an image that are actually used can be checked.



As for the font name, some font names are displayed in order to show the difference between the specified font and the font actually adopted. Also refer to [Display Glyph] in the menu.

- font-family= The font-family specified by FO is displayed.
- font-name= The font name actually selected is displayed. If it is the same as font-family, it is not displayed.
- display-name= To display the character on the screen, the font name that Windows selected is displayed. If it is the same as font-name, it is not displayed.

CAUTION: Although some unsupported drawing elements may not be displayed in the GUI, there may be no problem with the output to other devices, such as PDF.

6. Log Window

The log window shows a running status as the document is formatted. Minor warnings are shown here. Serious warnings are shown in a popup dialog box. The log window can hold a significant amount of status information. Older information is discarded if the information becomes too much. The final line of information is the time it took to format the document. The log window has its own scroll bar for viewing the information.

```
-- Format Start -- xsl:intro.fo
4E04:Graphic file not found: "file:///C:/My%20Documents/XSL%20Formatter/two-process.jpg" Line 54, Col 397, C:\My Docu
4E04:Graphic file not found: "file:///C:/My%20Documents/XSL%20Formatter/tree1-2.jpg" Line 61, Col 361, C:\My Documents
-- Format End -- 3.014sec
```

The content in the log window can now automatically be saved to a file by click the [Others](#) tab in the [Other Settings Dialog](#) and then checking the [Output Log File] check box.

When exiting **AH Formatter V6.2**, the position and the size of the GUI are stored. Formatter restarts at that same position and size.

Menu

1. File

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Open...	Ctrl+ O	Displays the Document/Stylesheet Dialog .
Close	Ctrl+ W	Close the displaying formatted results.
Save AreaTree...		Displays the Save AreaTree Dialog . <small>[no-LT]</small>
Save FOTree...		Displays the Save FOTree Dialog .
Save FO...		Displays the Save FO Dialog .
Print...	Ctrl+ P	Displays the Print Dialog .

Menu	Shortcut	Description
PDF Output	Ctrl+ D	Displays the PDF Output Dialog .
SVG Output...		Displays the SVG Output Dialog .
PostScript Output...		Displays the PostScript Output Dialog .
XPS Output...		Displays the XPS Output Dialog .
INX Output...		Displays the INX Output Dialog .
MIF Output...		Displays the MIF Output Dialog .
Text Output...		Displays the Text Output Dialog . <small>[no-LT]</small>
Document Information...		Display the Document Information Dialog .
<Recent File>		Displays the files that are recently formatted.
Exit	Alt+ F4	Exits AH Formatter V6.2 .

2. Edit

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Text Select		Enables you to select the text on the WYSIWYG window with the mouse.
Copy	Ctrl+ C	Copies the selected text to the clipboard.
Select All	Ctrl+ A	Makes all the texts on the WYSIWYG window into selection mode.
Deselect		Cancels selection mode of the text.
Edit Document	Ctrl+ U	Edits the target XML document or stylesheet using the editor specified in the external editor page in the Other Settings Dialog .
Edit StyleSheet	Shift+Ctrl+ U	
Search String...	Ctrl+ F	Displays the Search String Dialog .
Search Property...	Shift+Ctrl+ F	Display the Search Property Dialog .
Search Previous	Shift+ F3	Searches previous from the position just before the search position.
Search Next	F3	Searches next from the position just before the search position.

3. Move

Menu	Shortcut	Description
First Page	Ctrl+ Home	Goes to the first page.
Previous Page	Ctrl+ PageUp	Goes to the previous page.
Next Page	Ctrl+ PageDown	Goes to the next page.
Last Page	Ctrl+ End	Goes to the last page. When you stop formatting before finishing, the last formatted page will be displayed.
Go To Page...	Ctrl+ G	Displays the Go To Page Dialog . This only functions in multi page documents. The current page position is shown in the Status Bar .
Back	Alt+ ←	
Forward	Alt+ →	As you move through the pages of a document Formatter stores up to 10 moves. By using the Back and Forward you can step backwards or forwards through the pages viewed.

4. View

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Fit in Window	Ctrl+ 0	Zooms the displayed size of the formatted page to automatically fit the entire page in the WYSIWYG window.
Actual Size	Ctrl+ 1	Sets the zoom ratio as 100%.

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Fit Page Width	Ctrl+ 2	Automatically zooms the width of the formatted page to the width of the WYSIWYG window.
Zoom In	Ctrl+ +	Changes the zoom ratio as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ...• 400%• 300%• 200%• 150%• 125%• 100%• 75%• 66.7%• 50%• 33.3%• 25%• 12.5% Values from 5% to 2000% can be entered in the Zoom Dialog . The current zoom ratio is shown in the Status Bar .
Zoom Out	Ctrl+ -	
Zoom...	Ctrl+ M	Displays the Zoom Dialog .
Facing Page		Specifies whether to display the formatted pages with Facing Pages or Single Page on the WYSIWYG window.
Continuous		Specifies whether to display the formatted pages on the WYSIWYG window continuously or not.
Show Border	Ctrl+ B	Used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas. The border does not affect PDF Output or Print .
Border Color...		Displays the Color Dialog . Possible to specify the border color.
Show Ruler	Ctrl+ L	Displays the ruler to confirm the position of the character, etc., in the document. The ruler can be moved to anywhere you like.
Show Printer Mark		Effective when formatting the document that includes printer marks . Specifies whether to display printer marks or not. <code>[no-LT]</code>
Display Glyph		Specifies whether the character is displayed dependent on Windows or displayed all with glyph outlines. In Windows, when displaying dependent on Windows, a font may be replaced and there is no guarantee that the font is displayed with the actually specified font.
Tool Bar		Specifies whether to show or hide the Tool Bar .
Status Bar		Specifies whether to show or hide the Status Bar .
Log Window		Specifies whether to show or hide the Log Window . The log window is automatically displayed when execute formatting.

5. Format

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Format	F5	Formats the current document (FO or XML+XSL etc.).
Stop Format	ESC	Stops formatting. In a large multi page document the pages can be browsed as they are formatted. If errors are detected Formatting can be stopped prior to completion.
Format Option Setting...	Shift+Ctrl+ O	Displays the Format Option Setting Dialog .
PDF Option Setting...	Shift+Ctrl+ P	Displays the PDF Option Setting Dialog .
Other Settings...		Displays the Other Settings Dialog .
Import Option Setting...		Displays the Import Option Setting Dialog .
Export Option Setting...		Displays the Export Option Setting Dialog .

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Reset Option Setting...		Resets the Option Setting File back to the default and reload the setting.
Reloads Hyphenation Dic		Reload Hyphenation Dictionary and format the document again.

6. Help

Menu	Shortcut	Description
Online Manual	F1	Displays this Online Manual.
Q&A		Displays the Q&A on the Internet.
Mail to Support		Sends mail to Antenna House Support. The necessary information such as serial number, etc., is embedded automatically. It's not available with the evaluation version and AH Formatter V6.2 Lite .
Antenna House website		Displays the Antenna House website on the Internet.
About AH Formatter V6.2...	Shift+ F1	Displays the About Dialog of AH Formatter V6.2 .

Popup Menu

The following popup menu/boxes are displayed in the GUI.

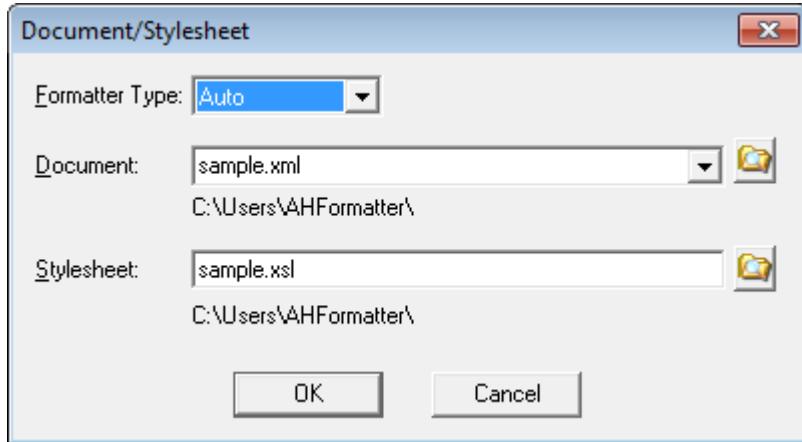
Menu	Description
Copy	Copies text selected.
Format	Formats the current document (FO or XML+XSL etc.).
Stop Format	Stops formatting.
Open	Opens the destination file in the formatted result on the current window.
Open New Window	Opens a link destination in the formatted result, or current document with a new window.
Shell Open	Opens a link destination in the formatted result, or current document with a shell.

The content in the Log Window depends on what function Formatter is performing.

The following popup menu/boxes are displayed on the Ruler.

Menu	Description
cm	Sets the units of the ruler to cm.
mm	Sets the units of the ruler to mm.
in	Sets the units of the ruler to in.
pt	Sets the units of the ruler to pt.
pc	Sets the units of the ruler to pc.
px	Sets the units of the ruler to px.
q	Sets the units of the ruler to q.
Reset	Resets the position of the ruler to default.
Hide	Hides the ruler.

Document/Stylesheet Dialog



- Format Type

Specify the type of target document and stylesheet in the Formatter Type combo box. By specifying the type of format, you can avoid the misdetection of the type of format. For example, it's effective when you want to specify the type of format as XML, which might be detected as XHTML by the auto detection. When the specified type of format differs from the actual type, it is considered as AUTO and the type of format is detected automatically. The following five types can be defined:

- Auto
- HTML
- XHTML
- XML+CSS
- XSL-FO

See also [Detection of Formatting Type](#)

- Document

Used to specify the target FO, XML or HTML. Recent used files are listed in the Document drop-down list. Only the XML documents are listed even though the stylesheets are also specified in pairs. However the target stylesheet can be inserted in the Stylesheet combo box automatically when the document is selected. Specified files can reside on the local file system, the network or over the internet. Files over the internet can be specified with a URL via HTTP. Local files can also be specified by a URL format starting with file://.

- Stylesheet

Used to specify the XSL stylesheet or CSS. FO files can only be specified in the document box.

Under the each edit box, the directory or the base URL is displayed, which indicate the base directory when the relative path is specified.

Click [OK] to start formatting.

AH Formatter V6.2 determines the file type based on its content. If from within an document a stylesheet is called, then it is not necessary to separately specify a stylesheet. The specified stylesheet is automatically adopted.

Save AreaTree Dialog

The AreaTree is an XML representation of the formatted document that includes all the page geometry and layout information. Since all formatting information and all information necessary for formatting is included in the area tree it is a very useful tool for stylesheet developers. Press the [Save] button to save the area tree. An area tree XML file can be opened using the current browser. It's possible to format an area tree by specifying it in the document combo box of the [Document/Stylesheet Dialog](#). Caution: Area trees can be very large. Under normal circumstances they should not be modified as the reformatted results cannot be guaranteed.

It's not available to save and load the area tree with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

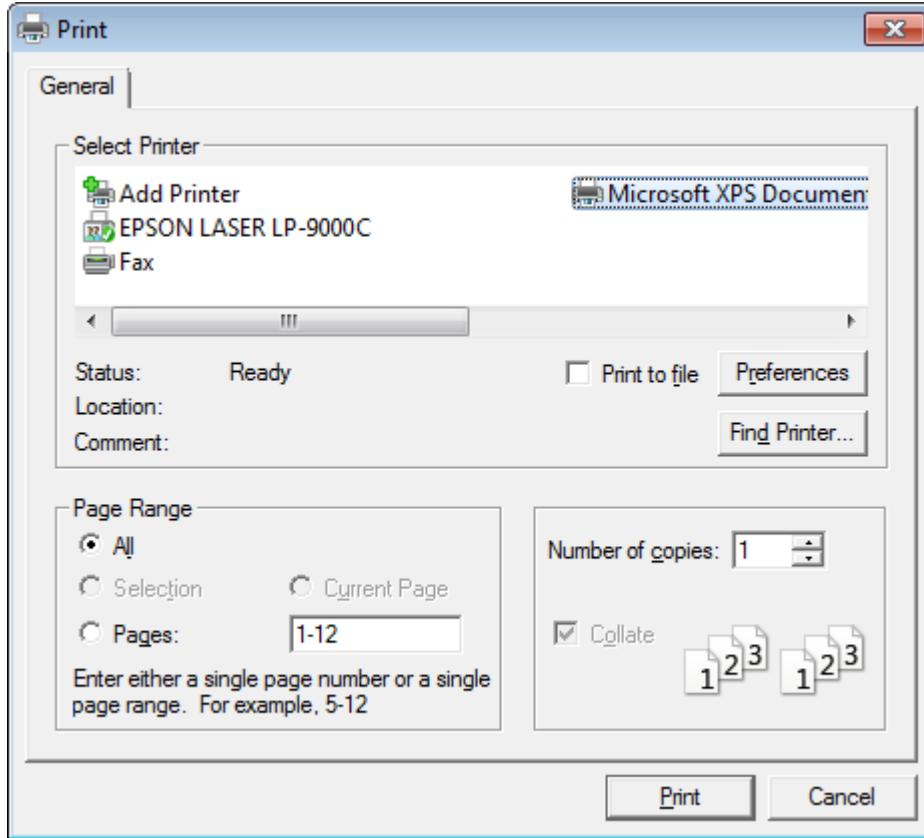
Save FOTree Dialog

In processing an FO or XML and XSL file Formatter first complete the FO file by adding properties, adding the elements omitted in the loaded FO or the resulting FO of the XSLT transformation and removing unused elements. The area tree is generated by evaluating this completed FO. Press the [Save] button to save the FO that was made at this time. If you format a document from the area tree or when you format with CSS, this menu cannot be selected.

Save FO Dialog

This menu item lets you save an FO file that is the result of the XSLT transformation of the XML and XSL files that is being formatted. This menu is only available for files formatted from XML and XSL files.

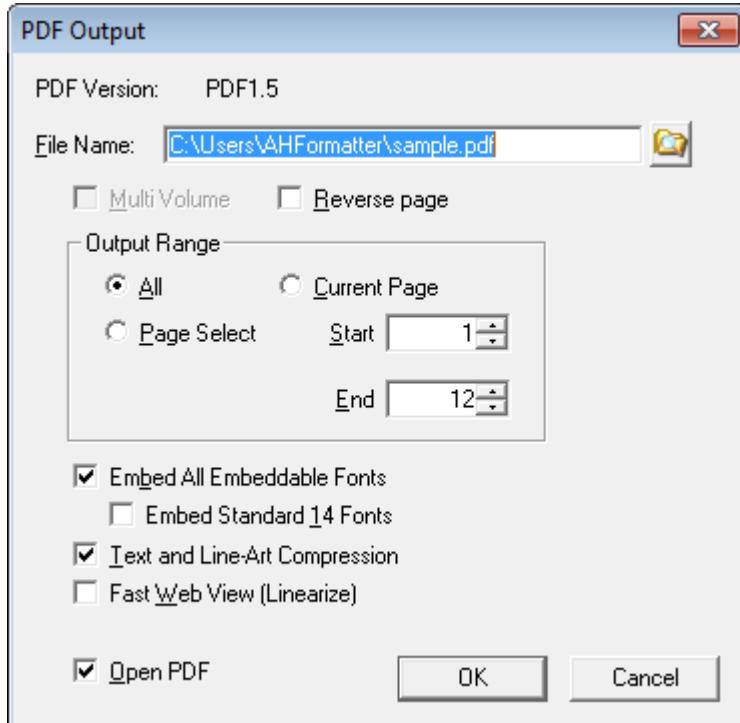
Print Dialog



The print Dialog lets you output the formatted result to any printer installed or accessible from your Windows system. The user can select to print all pages, a range of pages, or selected pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to the printer. For this reason it may take more time to output to a printer than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect Print Output.

See also [Restrictions](#) regarding print.

PDF Output Dialog



The PDF Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to PDF by using the PDF output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to PDF. For this reason it may take more time to output to a PDF file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect PDF Output.

- Multi Volume [no-LT]

When FO includes the [axf:output-volume-info](#) extension property which enables to output the volume separately, it's effective to check. By checking here, the output volume can be separated.

CAUTION: The volume cannot be output separately with the CSS formatting.

- Reverse page

Outputs pages in reverse order to PDF, from the end page to the start page.

- Output Range

Specifies the number of volumes when outputting in multi separate volume, and specifies the number of pages for others. If the specified value in [End(E)] is 0 or greater than the actual number of volumes or pages, the output range continues to the end.

- Embed All Embeddable Fonts

Embedding fonts in a PDF makes it possible to create a PDF that can be browsed anywhere and independent of the fonts available on the local machine. This is particularly important when generating multilingual PDF files. The negative is that is can substantially increase the size of the PDF file. When [PDF/X](#) is specified to create, all embeddable fonts are embedded. At that time, the check box is displayed in gray color.

- Embed Core 14 Fonts

Usually, [Standard 14 Fonts](#) are not embedded even if the [Embed All Embeddable Fonts] check box is checked. However, by checking the [Embed Standard 14 Fonts] check box, Standard 14 Fonts can be embedded. When [PDF/X](#) is specified to create, Standard 14 fonts are embedded. At that time, the check box is displayed in gray color.

- Text and Line-Art Compression

Selecting this option makes the PDF file more compact by compressing the text and line-art.

- Fast Web View [no-LT]

Generates Linearized PDF. In PDF's character, it cannot be optimized unless once usual PDF is generated. Therefore, although the generation of the Linearized PDF requires time rather than usual, the display of the generated PDF on the Web will be in high-speed.

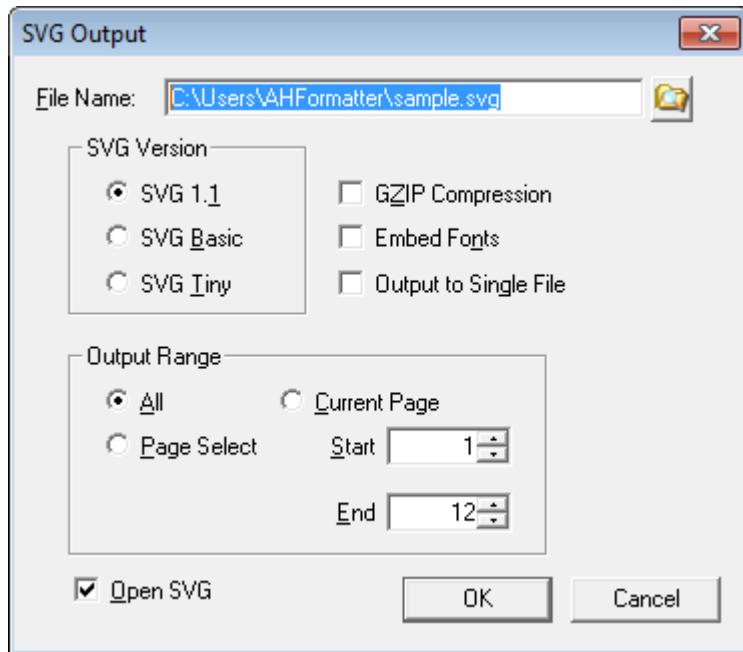
- Open PDF

Opens the created PDF using the application associated with extension [.pdf](#) (in many cases, it is Adobe Acrobat or Reader).

Changes made in PDF Output Dialog are temporary and do not affect the much more comprehensive PDF Option Setting File under the Format Menu. Please specify the detailed settings regarding PDF output in the [PDF Option Setting Dialog](#).

Please refer to [PDF output](#) to learn more about the outputted PDF.

SVG Output Dialog



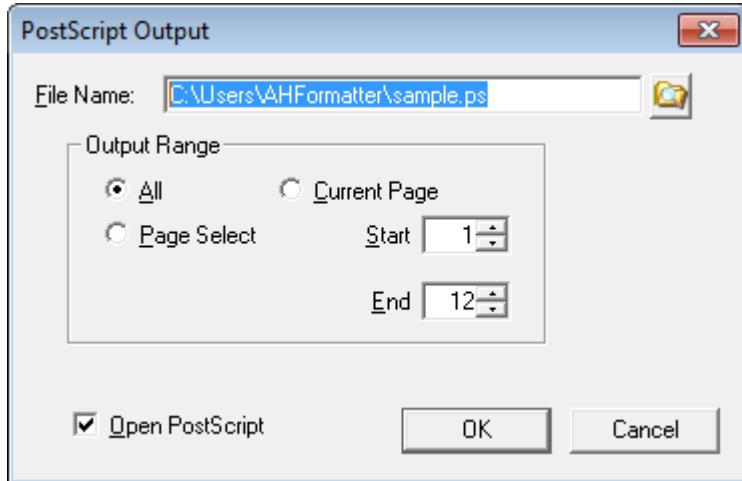
The SVG Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to SVG by using the SVG output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to SVG. For this reason it may take more time to output to a SVG file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect SVG Output.

- **SVG Version**
Selects the version of SVG to output from the followings:
 - SVG 1.1
 - SVG Basic
 - SVG Tiny
- **Output Range**
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- **GZIP Compression**
Outputs GZIP compressed svgz. The extension is set to `.svgz`.
- **Embed Fonts**
Embeds fonts in SVG. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- **Output to Single File**
Specifies whether pages are outputted as one SVG file, or each page is outputted as an individual file when outputting two or more pages. When outputting two or more SVG, page numbers are placed before the extension of the output file name. For example, if the specified file name is `document.svg`, page numbers are put as `document1.svg, document2.svg, ...`. The number format can be set in [Option Setting File](#), etc.
- **Open SVG**
Opens the created SVG using the application associated with extension `.svg`.

Changes in SVG Output Dialog are temporary and are not reflected to the [Option Setting File](#). See also **SVG Option** in the [Other Settings Dialog](#).

Please refer to [SVG output](#) to learn more about the outputted SVG.

PostScript Output Dialog

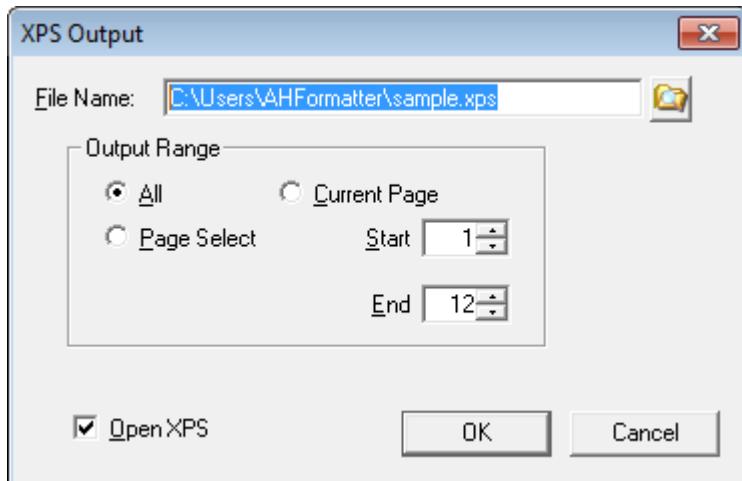


The PostScript Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to PostScript by using the PostScript output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to PostScript. For this reason it may take more time to output to a PostScript file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect PostScript Output.

- Output Range
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- Open PostScript
Opens the created PostScript using the application associated with extension .ps.

Please refer to [PostScript Output](#) to learn more about the outputted PostScript.

XPS Output Dialog

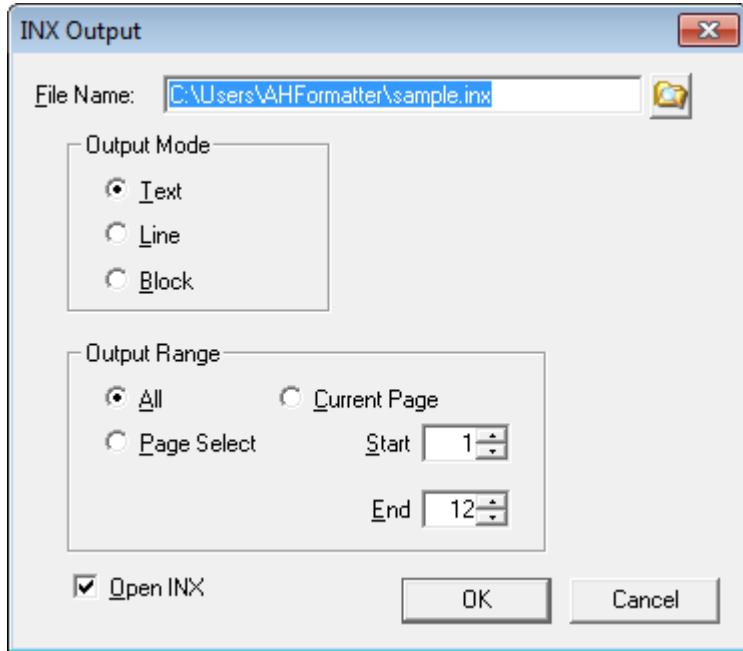


The XPS Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to XPS (XML Paper Specification) file by using the XPS output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to XPS. For this reason it may take more time to output to a XPS file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect XPS Output.

- Output Range
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- Open XPS
Opens the created XPS using the application associated with extension .xps.

Please refer to [XPS Output](#) to learn more about the outputted XPS.

INX Output Dialog

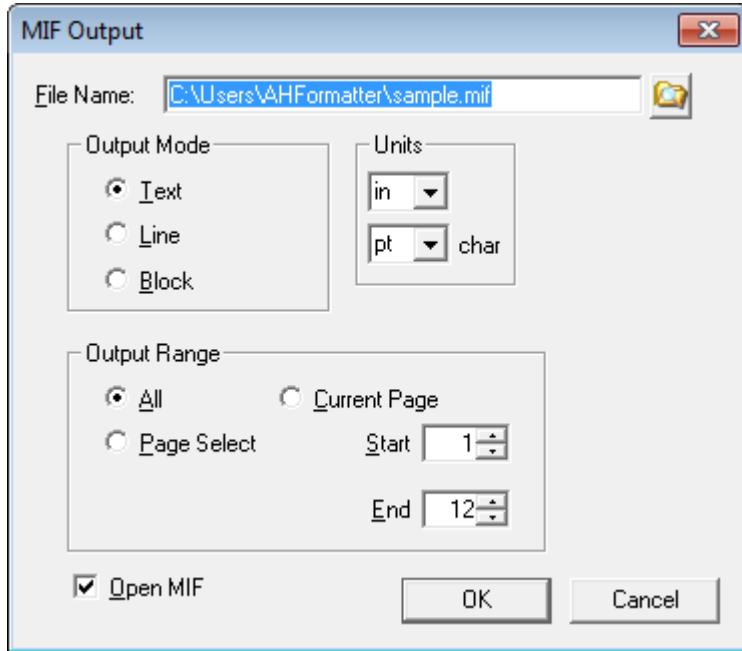


The INX Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to INX (InDesign Interchange File) by using the INX output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to INX. For this reason it may take more time to output to a INX file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect INX Output.

- Output Mode
Selects the mode of text frame to output from the followings: Please refer to [INX Output](#) to learn more about Output Mode.
 - Text
 - Line
 - Block
- Output Range
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- Open INX
Opens the created INX using the application associated with extension `.inx`.

Please refer to [INX Output](#) to learn more about the outputted INX.

MIF Output Dialog



The MIF Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to MIF (Maker Interchange Format) by using the MIF output engine developed by Antenna House. Through the menu a user can select to output the entire document or selected range of pages. If formatting is not completed in the GUI then Formatter reformats the document from the beginning for output to MIF. For this reason it may take more time to output to a MIF file than the GUI. The border used to confirm how the formatted result is divided in areas does not affect MIF Output.

- **Output Mode**

Selects the mode of text frame to output from the followings: Please refer to [MIF Output](#) to learn more about Output Mode.

- Text
- Line
- Block

- **Units**

Specifies the unit of the size used with MIF. The upper list box is for a unit which specifies the size and the position (Units). The lower list box is for a unit which specifies the font size and the space between lines, etc. (CharUnits).

- Units
 - in
 - cm
 - mm
 - pt
 - pc
 - dd
 - cc
- CharUnits
 - pt
 - q

- **Output Range**

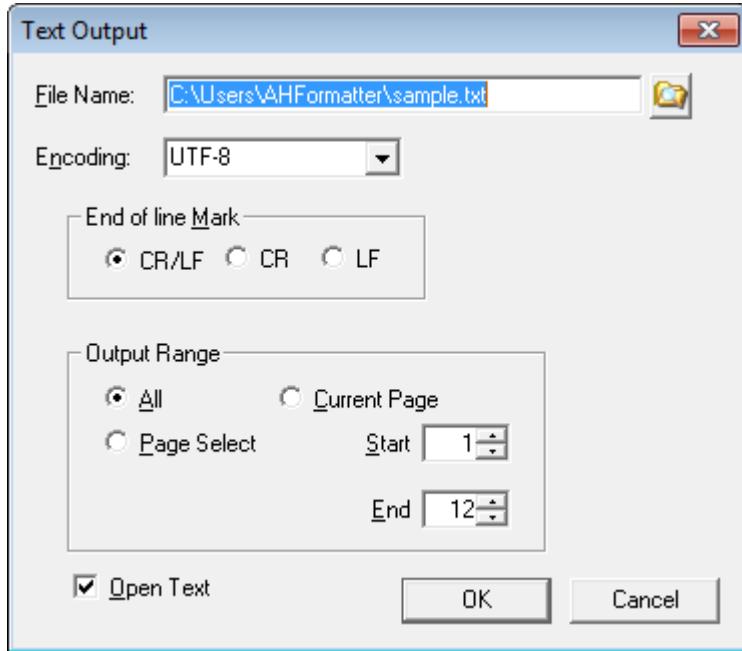
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.

- **Open MIF**

Opens the created MIF using the application associated with extension [.mif](#).

Please refer to [MIF Output](#) to learn more about the outputted MIF.

Text Output Dialog

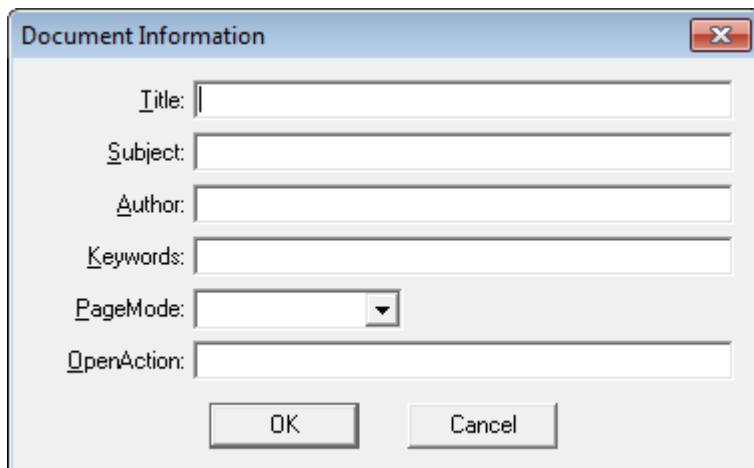


The TEXT Output Menu enables outputting the formatted results to plain text format. [no-LT]

- Encoding
Specifies the encoding of the output text. The defaults value is UTF-8. Please choose one from the list or input a encoding you want to specify. Refer to encoding attribute on [TEXT Output Settings](#) about the value which can be specified.
- End of line Mark
Selects the type of 'End of line Mark' from the followings:
 - CR/LF
 - CR
 - LF
- Output Range
Specifies the range to output. This feature is not available with the evaluation version.
- Open Text
Opens the created Text file using the application associated with extension .txt.

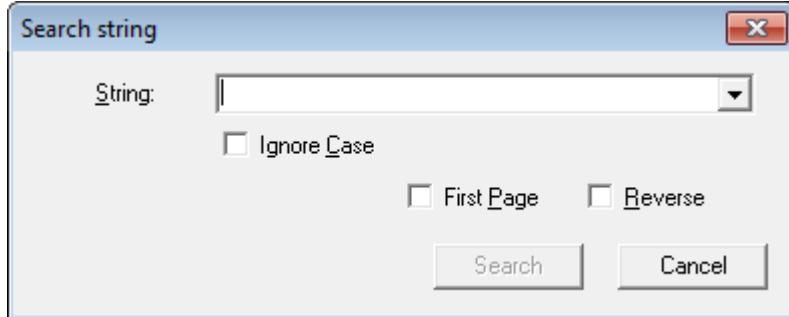
Please refer to [TEXT Output](#) to learn more about the outputted TEXT. Text output cannot be performed with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Document Information Dialog



The information of [axf:document-info](#) in FO is displayed. The content can be changed here, and it can be reflected to the output PDF. The content of the change is not reflected in former FO. Refer to [axf:document-info](#) for details.

Search String Dialog



Specify a sequence of characters to search. This dialog continues being displayed until it closes. When some characters have found in the last searching, It start searching from the following character. For example, when ABCDE is searched and is found, the next searching starts from B. When having found nothing, the searching begins from the first or the last page. In order to cancel the highlight of a searching result, please click anywhere on the GUI screen.

- **Ignore Case**

Searches a sequence of characters without distinguishing upper-case and lower-case. It is applied to all Latin alphabets, Cyrillic alphabets, etc. that have upper and lower case characters.

- **First Page / Last Page**

When these check boxes are checked, It starts searching from the first or the last page. When the Reverse check box is unchecked, the display of the check box on the left side changes to [First Page]. When the Reverse check box is checked, the display of the check box on the left side changes to [Last Page].

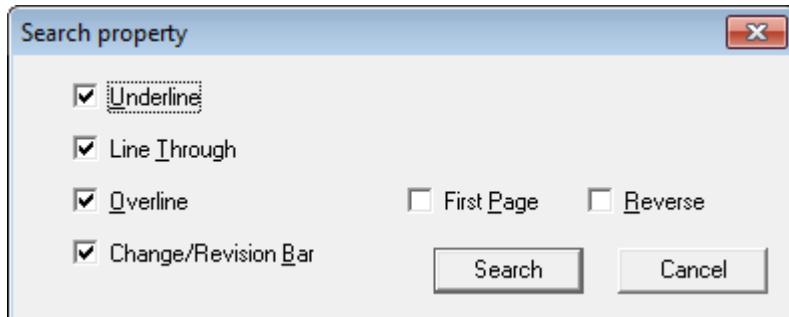
- **Reverse**

When the [Reverse] check box is checked, it starts searching toward the first page.

This search function has the following limitations.

- Impossible to search neither what has been deleted such as a white space, nor the strings summarized to one.
- Impossible to search the strings whose spelling has changed by the hyphenation.
- Impossible to search the strings whose spelling has changed by the hyphenation.

Search Property Dialog



Specify a property to search. This dialog continues being displayed until it closes.

- **Underline / Line Through / Overline / Change/Revision Bar**

Specify a property to search.

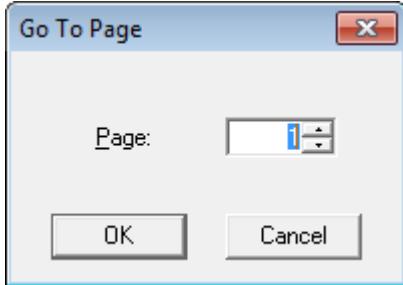
- **First Page / Last Page**

When these check boxes are checked, It starts searching from the first or the last page. When the Reverse check box is unchecked, the display of the check box on the left side changes to [First Page]. When the Reverse check box is checked, the display of the check box on the left side changes to [Last Page].

- **Reverse**

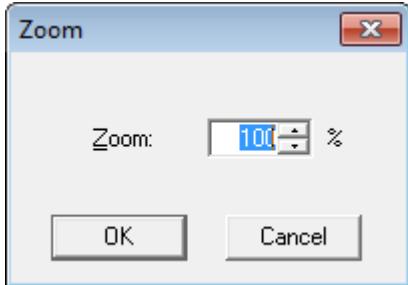
When the [Reverse] check box is checked, it starts searching toward the first page.

Go To Page Dialog



Used to specify the page number to go to and can be from 1 to the total number of formatted pages displayed in the Status Bar.

Zoom Dialog

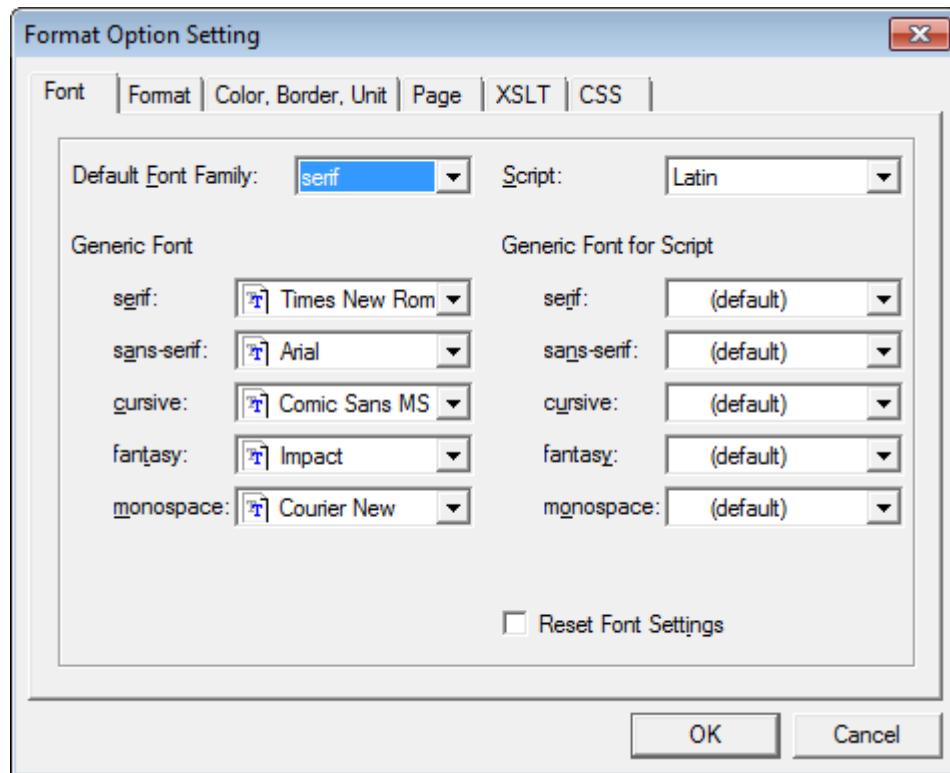


Specifies the zoom ratio. Can be set from 5% to 2000%.

Format Option Setting Dialog

By default if the [AHFSettings.xml](#) ([AHFSettings\(x64\).xml](#) for Windows x64 version) file exists in the application data directory this file is automatically loaded at startup as the [Options Setting File](#). The application data directory is indicated by the environment variable, APPDATA. [\[APPDATA\]\AntennaHouse\AHFormatter\6.2\](#) If you want to load the other setting file, click [Import Setting Files](#) on the Format menu. Through the Format Option Setting Dialog, formatting items in the [Option Setting File](#) can be modified. Once changes are made through the [Format Option Setting Dialog](#), click [OK] to write the changed items to the [AHFSettings.xml](#) ([AHFSettings\(x64\).xml](#) for Windows x64 version) file that exists in the application data directory. Next time **AH Formatter V6.2** is started the saved settings will be used.

Font



- Default Font Family

Specifies the generic font family to use automatically when there is no setting of the font family in the FO or CSS. If a generic font family is specified in the FO or CSS, this setting is ignored. The following five generic font families can be defined:

- serif
- sans-serif
- cursive
- fantasy
- monospace

Please refer to the following [Generic Font] for more detail.

- Generic Font

Maps actual fonts to each generic font family. Generic font families specified in the FO replace those specified here. These settings are adopted for those generic font families not specified in the FO or CSS.

```
<fo:block font-family="serif">
```

Generic font families are symbolic names defined in [CSS2 Specification](#). XSL Specification derives the generic font family from the CSS2 Specification.

Serif font families are fonts which have a slight projection at the end of a letters/glyphs such as Mincho (Japanese) and Times New Roman. Sans-serif font families have plain stroke endings for their letters/glyphs and corresponds to fonts such as Gothic (Japanese), Helvetica and Arial. Cursive font families that have connected strokes and Italic typefaces for its glyphs such as Soushotai (Japanese). Fantasy fonts are primarily decorative. Monospace is a font family that its font pitch is fixed, such as Courier.

- Script

The Script setting lets you set the generic font families to be used for 10 different writing systems. This includes Japanese, Chinese Simplified, Chinese Traditional, Korean, Latin, Cyrillic, Greek, Arabic, Hebrew and Thai. Each of the 10 writing systems can have its own set of generic font families defined.

- Generic Font for Script

Fonts specified in the FO or CSS supersede the Generic font settings. When fonts are not defined in the FO or CSS then these settings are adopted.

The following examples illustrate which fonts would be used if serif was specified as the generic Font, the font-family and script properties are not specified in FO or CSS, and the script for the text is unclear.

1. <fo:block>TEXT...

The font specified in the serif combo box in Generic Font is used for the TEXT.

2. <fo:block font-family="sans-serif">TEXT...

The font specified in the sans-serif combo box in Generic Font is used for the TEXT.

3. <fo:block script="ja">TEXT...

The font specified in the serif combo box in Generic Font for Serif for Japanese is used. If it is not specified, the font specified in the serif combo box in Generic Font is then used.

4. <fo:block script="ja" font-family="sans-serif">TEXT...

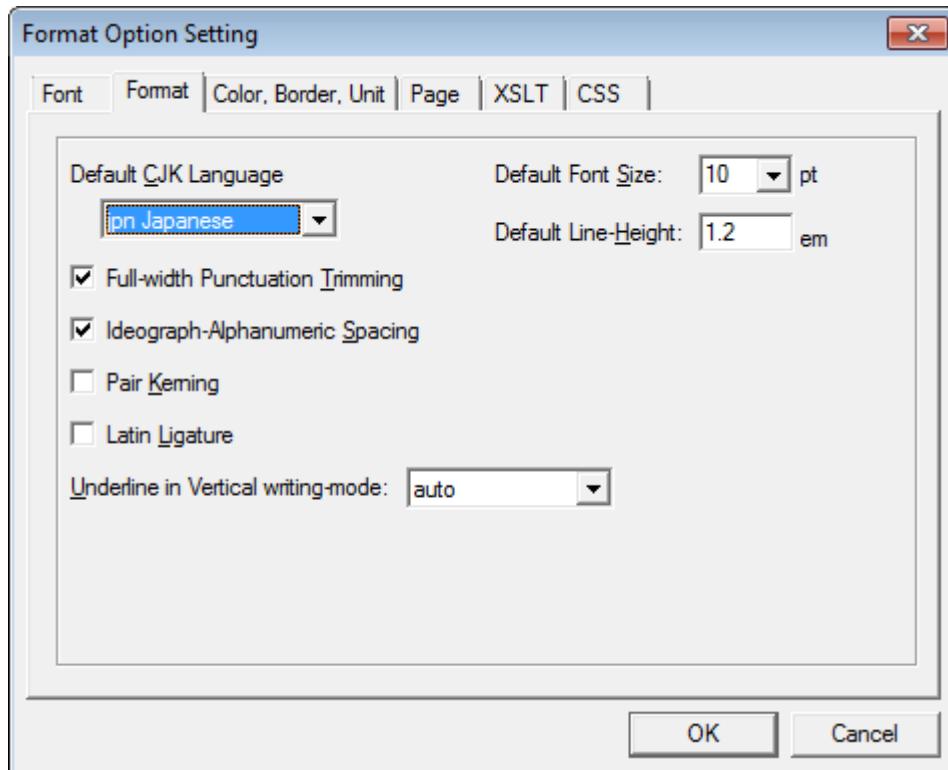
The font specified in the sans-serif combo box in Generic Font for sans-serif for Japanese is used. If it is not specified, the font specified in the sans-serif combo box in Generic Font is then used.

Please refer to [Font Selection](#) to learn how to select fonts for more details.

- Reset Font Settings

Check Reset Font Settings to reset all font settings to the default. Press [OK] to execute the setting.

Format



- Default CJK Language

When the script is not explicitly specified, there may be cases where it is hard to distinguish CJK (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) in Kanji. In such cases, the setting here is adopted. Select the appropriate CJK language from the followings.

- jpn Japanese
- kor Korean
- zho-CN Chinese Simplified
- zho-TW Chinese Traditional

- Full width Punctuation Trimming

Specifies whether to trim the full-width punctuation in Japanese. This setting affects the value of the extension properties, [axf:punctuation-trim="auto"](#) and [axf:text-justify-trim="auto"](#).

- Ideograph-alphanumeric Spacing

Specifies whether to add space between Japanese text and Western text. This setting affects the value of the extension properties [axf:text-autospace="auto"](#). When checked this, it is equivalent to [axf:text-autospace="ideograph-numeric ideo-graph-alpha"](#).

- Pair Kerning

Specifies whether to process pair kerning for European languages. This setup affects the value of the [axf:kerning-mode="auto"](#) extension property.

- Latin Ligature

Specifies whether to process ligatures for European languages. This setup affects the value of the [axf:ligature-mode="auto"](#) extension property.

- Underline in Vertical Writing-mode

Specifies whether to place the underline on the right side of the text or on the left side of the text in vertical writing-mode. When 'auto' is specified, if the language in the language property is Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor), the underline is placed

on the right side. If there is no language property specified, it depends on the standard CJK language setting. This setting affects the value of the extension property `axf:vertical-underline-side="auto"`.

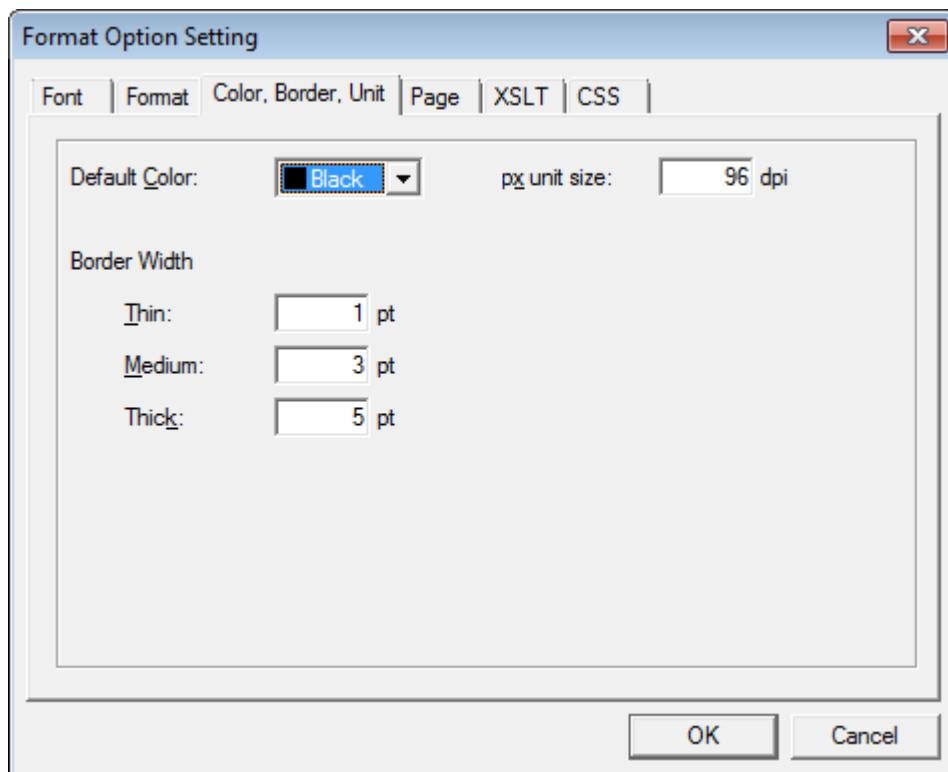
- Default Font Size

This setting is used to specify the font size when the font size is not specified in the FO or CSS. The value must be specified in point.

- Default Line-Height

This setting is used to specify the line-height to be used when specified as a property in the FO or CSS. The value must be specified as a ratio against the font size in ems.

Color, Border, Unit



- Default Color

Specifies the foreground color to be used when the color property is not specified in the FO or CSS. The following values can be used:

Black	color="#000000"
Blue	color="#0000FF"
Aqua	color="#00FFFF"
Lime	color="#00FF00"
Fuchsia	color="#FF00FF"
Red	color="#FF0000"
Yellow	color="#FFFF00"
White	color="#FFFFFF"
Navy	color="#000080"
Teal	color="#008080"
Green	color="#008000"
Purple	color="#800080"
Maroon	color="#800000"
Olive	color="#808000"
Gray	color="#808080"
Silver	color="#C0C0C0"

- Border Width

Specifies the actual border width of the three symbolic values; thin, medium and thick that can be written in FO or CSS. The value must be specified in pts (points).

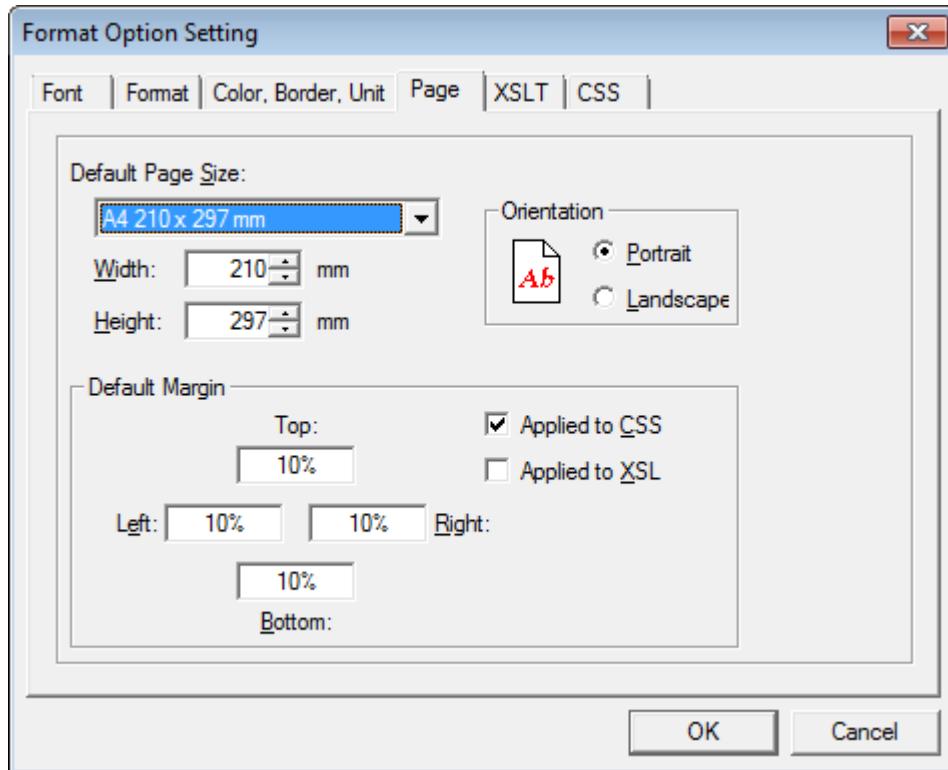
```
<fo:block border-width="thin">
```

- px unit size

Specifies the conversion factor for px (pixel) units written in FO or CSS as a point number per inch. This value is actually used when the formatted results are outputted to a browser or PDF. In XSL, you can specify 'pixel' as a unit of measure-

ment. Pxpi specifies the coefficient, which converts the value of the specified pixel, as "the number of pixels per inch" when formatting. It's specified with the real-type numeric value. The initial value is 96.

Page



- Default Page Size

Specifies the page size to be used when the page-width and page-height properties are not specified in the FO or CSS. The page size selected from the combo boxes reflects the [Width] and [Height]. The page size can be changed arbitrarily. If you change the orientation of the page in the [Orientation] in this dialog, the value of the [Width] and [Height] are swapped.

- Default Margin

Specify the margin of a page applied to FO or CSS when there is no specification of the margin.

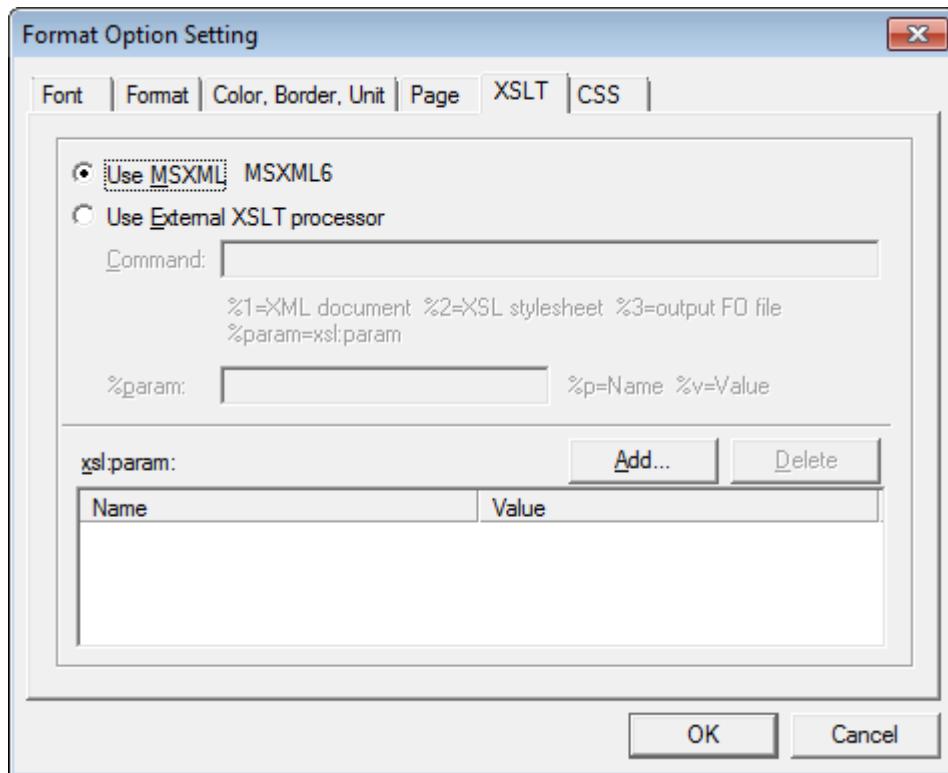
- Applied to CSS

When there is no margin specification by @page in CSS, the value specified in Default Margin is applied to CSS. The margin becomes zero when there is no check.

- Applied to XSL

When there is no margin specification in fo:simple-page-master in XSL, the value specified in Default Margin is applied to XSL. The margin becomes zero when there is no check.

XSLT



Specifies the settings regarding XSLT Processors. See also [XSLT Settings](#) for more details.

- Use MSXML

Check [Use MSXML] to use MSXML as an XSLT Processor.

XSLT conversion may fail with the security strengthening with MSXML6. For example, XSLT which includes **CAUTION:** <xsl:script language="JScript"> may produce an error. Please adjust the [MSXML settings](#) in the [Option Setting File](#).

- Use External XSLT Processor

Check [Use External XSLT Processor] to use an external XSLT Processor. You have to specify the command-line format of a XSLT Processor to use to [Command] and specify the Parameter format of xsl:param to [%param]. It is considered that MSXML is used when the command-line is not specified.

- xsl:param

Specifies the parameter name and the parameter value of xsl:param given to an XSLT Processor. Press [Add...] to add parameters, press [Delete] to delete the selected parameter.

Below shows examples of setting for some major XSLT Processors.

- msxsl

```
command: msxsl %1 %2 -o %3 %param
%param: %p=%v
```

- Xalan

```
command: java -cp xalan.jar org.apache.xalan.xslt.Process -IN %1 -XSL %2 -OUT %3 %param
%param: -PARAM %p %v
```

- Saxon

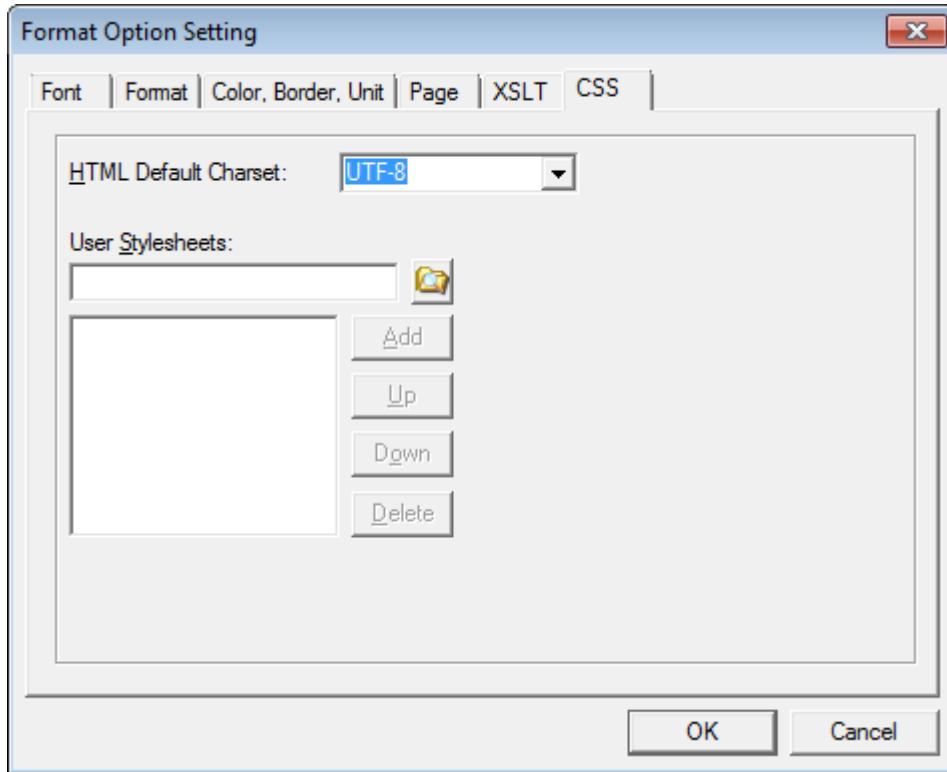
```
command: java -cp saxon.jar com.icl.saxon.StyleSheet -o %3 %1 %2 %param
%param: %p=%v
```

- libxslt

```
command: xsltproc --output %3 %param %2 %1
%param: --param %p %v
```

CAUTION: The example shown here may be inaccurate. Please refer to each site and document.

CSS



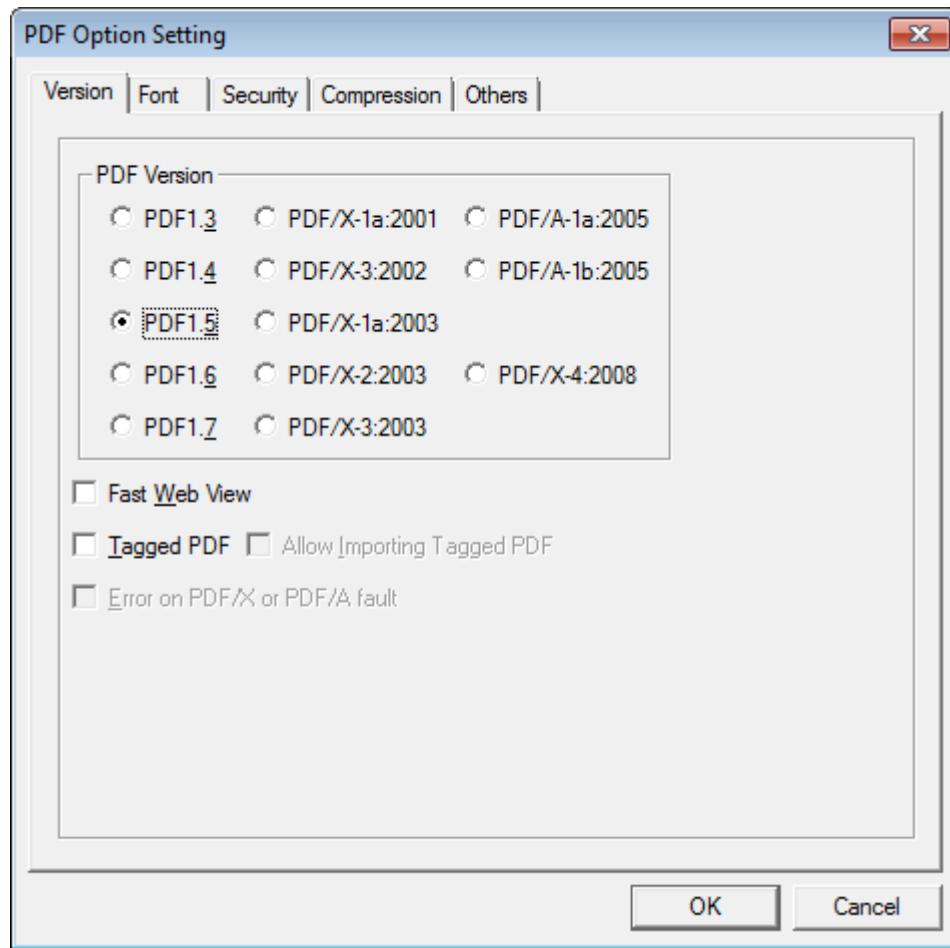
Settings of CSS for HTML.

- **HTML Default Charset**
Specifies the default charset of HTML. The defaults value is UTF-8. Please choose one from the list or input a charset you want to specify. The character set in the [Supported Encoding](#) can be specified.
- **User Stylesheets**
Set CSS the user uses. The stylesheet specified here is applied by the specification order posterior to the default stylesheet (html.css). Sample user stylesheets are included in [\[Install directory\]/UserStylesheets](#) (Windows version) or in [\[Install directory\]/etc/UserStylesheets](#) (Non Windows version). See also [Cascading Order of CSS](#).

PDF Option Setting Dialog

In PDF Option in the Other Setting Dialog, the item concerning PDF set in the [Option Setting File](#) is adjusted. The contents changed here are written out to [AHFSettings.xml](#) ([AHFSettings\(x64\).xml](#) for Windows x64 version) which exists in the application data directory by clicking the [OK] button. Therefore, it is reflected next time of the starting.

Version



- PDF Version

Selects the PDF version to output from the followings:

- PDF1.3 – Acrobat 4.0
- PDF1.4 – Acrobat 5.0
- PDF1.5 – Acrobat 6.0
- PDF1.6 – Acrobat 7.0
- PDF1.7 – Acrobat 8.0
- PDF/X-1a:2001 – ISO 15930-1:2001 (based on PDF1.3) [no-LT]
- PDF/X-3:2002 – ISO 15930-3:2002 (based on PDF1.3) [no-LT]
- PDF/X-1a:2003 – ISO 15930-4:2003 (based on PDF1.4) [no-LT]
- PDF/X-2:2003 – ISO 15930-5:2003 (based on PDF1.4) [no-LT]
- PDF/X-3:2003 – ISO 15930-6:2003 (based on PDF1.4) [no-LT]
- PDF/X-4:2008 – ISO 15930-7:2008 (based on PDF1.6) [no-LT]
- PDF/A-1a – ISO 19005-1:2005 (based on PDF1.4) [no-LT]
- PDF/A-1b – ISO 19005-1:2005 (based on PDF1.4) [no-LT]

In the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [pdf-version](#).

PDF/X or PDF/A cannot be selected with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**

- Fast Web View

Generates Linearized PDF. Linearized PDF enables PDF files to be viewed much faster over the Web by enabling viewing of the PDF as soon as the first page is downloaded rather than requiring that the entire PDF file be downloaded before it can be viewed. To linearize a PDF file is a two-step process: First, a standard PDF file is produced. Second, the standard PDF file is linearized. generated first and then that file is linearized. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [linearized](#).

- Tagged PDF [no-LT]

Creates the [Tagged PDF](#). Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [tagged-pdf](#). When the created PDF is PDF1.3, or with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite** Tagged PDF cannot be selected.

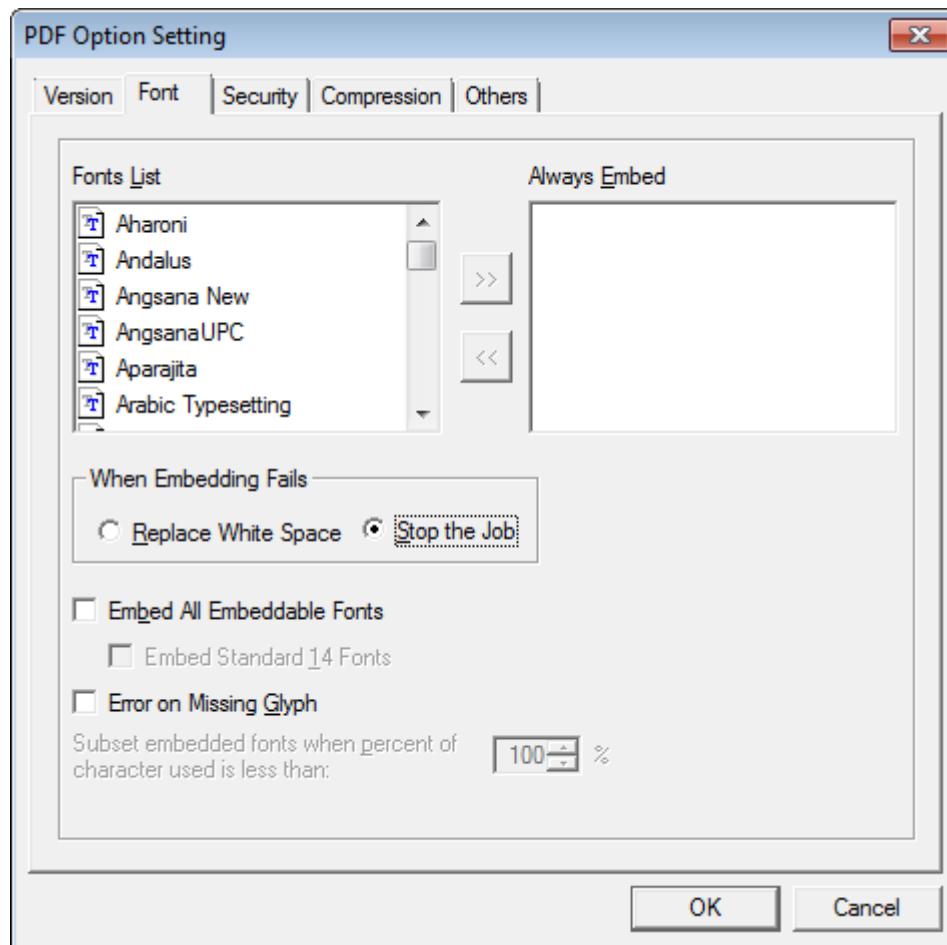
- Allow Importing Tagged PDF [no-LT]

Specifies whether to allow tagged PDF to be embedded in tagged PDF. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [import-tagged-pdf](#). See also [PDF Embedding](#) for more details. This setting is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**. [V6.2MR2]

- Error on PDF/X or PDF/A fault [no-LT]

Specifies whether to stop formatting as an error or ignore the unsuitable content and continue formatting when a content which is unsuitable for PDF/X or PDF/A is detected while creating PDF/X or PDF/A, such like PDF/X or PDF/A that contains non-embeddable fonts. If false is specified, the processing is continued, a generated PDF may be incongruent as PDF/X or PDF/A. If true is specified, PDF will not be generated as an error. When the unsuitable content is avoidable, the formatting continues. For example, annotations in PDF/X are thrown away. When an incongruent image is specified, the processing of an image differ by false or true. If false is specified, an image will be embedded as is, a generated PDF may be incongruent as PDF/X or PDF/A. When true is specified, the image format, the color space, etc. will be changed to make it suit. Note that the color may be changed in this case. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [error-on-pdfx-fault](#).

Font



Select the target fonts you want to embed in PDF from the [Fonts List]. Press the [>>] button to move the selected font to [Always Embed]. If you want to delete the font from Always Embed. Press the [<<] button.

Gray-colored fonts are not available to embed. Also there may be a case that a font that cannot be embedded is included in the Font list if you edited the font originally in the [Option Setting File](#). Despite being in the list the font cannot be embedded

When **PDF/X** or **PDF/A** is specified to create, The items regarding embedding fonts in this page are displayed in gray color.

- This option lets you select what you want the system to do if embedding of a font fails.

Select either:

[Replace White Space] to continue embedding font. The font is replaced with white space and will be embedded.

[Stop the Job] to stop embedding. An error will be reported and the PDF generation will be stopped. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [error-on-embed-fault](#).

- Embed All Embeddable Fonts

Check [Embed All Embeddable Fonts] to embed all embeddable fonts in PDF. If this option is checked the fonts in the [Font List] and [Always Embed] are displayed in gray color. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [embed-all-fonts](#).

- Embed Standard 14 Fonts

Usually, Standard 14 Fonts are not embedded even if the [Embed All Embeddable Fonts] check box is checked. However, by checking the [Embed Standard 14 Fonts] check box, Standard 14 Fonts can be embedded.

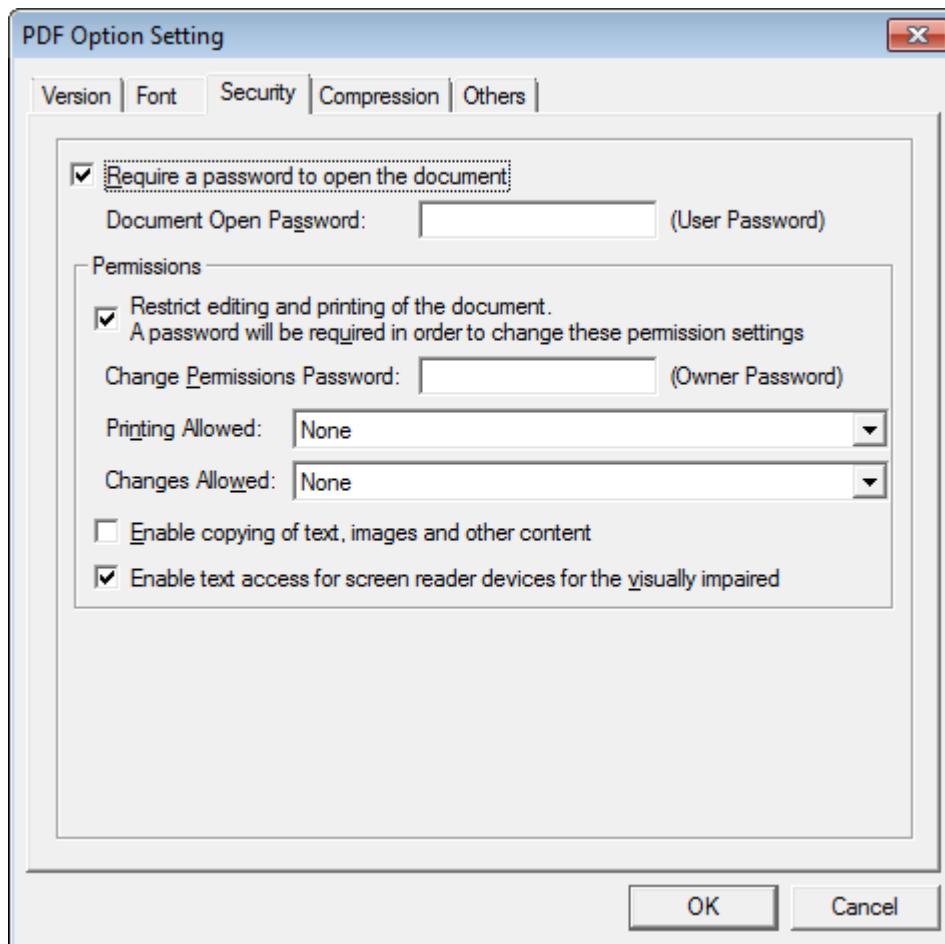
- Error on Missing Glyph

When the corresponding glyph for certain character to be displayed does not exist in the specified font, specifies whether to break off the processing as an error. Even if PDF is generated without checking this item, the character will be displayed as a white space or a small box in PDF for missing glyph. Also the glyph might actually not be existing in the specified font even when being able to be displayed on the screen of GUI. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [error-on-missing-glyph](#).

- Subset embedded fonts when percent of character used is less than:

Embeds all fonts when the percent of characters used is greater than or equal to the specified value, subsets embedded fonts when the percent of characters used is less than the specified value. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [embed-subset-font-percentage](#).

Security



When the outputted PDF format is [PDF/X](#) or [PDF/A](#), many of items in this page are displayed in gray color.

- Require a password to open the document

Check here when specifying the password which opens a PDF document.

- Document Open Password

Specifies the password to open the PDF document. The contents of the setting here is not written out to the [Option Setting File](#).

- Restrict editing and printing of the document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settings

Check here when specifying the password which changes the authority regarding the restrictions on printing or editing PDF documents. When this is not checked, all the authority is given to those who open a PDF document.

- Change Permissions Password

Specify the password for changing the authority regarding the restrictions on printing or editing PDF documents. The contents of the setting here is not written out to the [Option Setting File](#).

- Printing Allowed

Specifies whether to allow printing the PDF document or not. Select the operation form the followings in PDF 1.3.

- None

- High Resolution

Select the operation form the followings in PDF 1.4 or later.

- None
- Low Resolution (150 dpi)
- High Resolution

- Changes Allowed

Specifies whether to allow changing the PDF document or not. Select the operation form the followings in PDF 1.3.

- None
- Commenting, filling in form fields, and signing signature fields
- Page layout, filling in form fields, and signing signature fields
- Any except extracting of pages

Select the operation form the followings in PDF 1.4 or later.

- None
- Inserting, deleting and rotating pages
- Filling in form fields, and signing signature fields
- Commenting, filling in form fields, and signing signature fields
- Any except extracting of pages

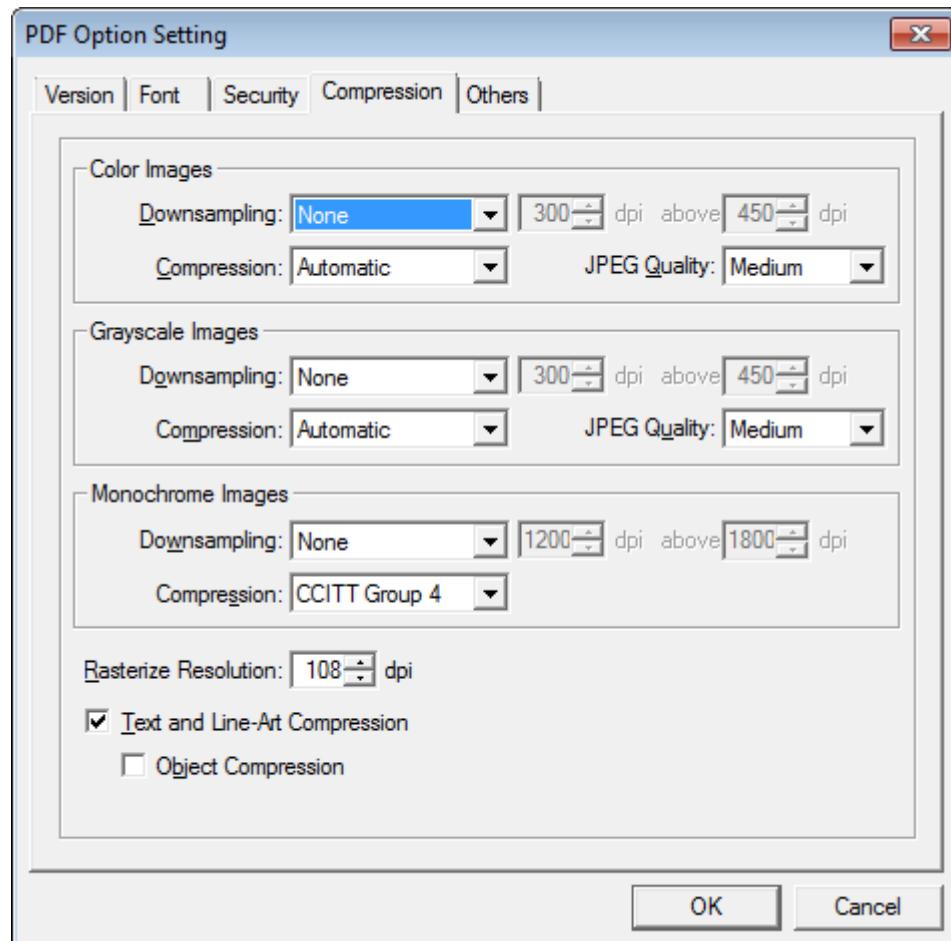
- Enable copying of text, images and other content

Specifies whether to allow copying of text, images and other contents in the PDF document to the clipboard or not. In PDF1.3, the expression on the dialog may somewhat differ.

- Enable text access for screen reader devices for the visually impaired

Specifies whether to allow text access for screen reader devices in the PDF document or not. This setting is effective with PDF 1.4 or later.

Compression



- Color Images, Grayscale Images, Monochrome Images

This item applies raster image only. Specifies the downsampling and compression method of a raster image for each color images, grayscale images and monochrome images.

- **Downsampling**

Selects the method of a down sampling from the following.

- None
- Average
- Bicubic
- Subsampling

In any case except for None, specifies an image of greater than what value of dpi is downsampled to what value of dpi. Also in the Option Setting File, Color Images can be specified by setting the value of the [image-downsampling](#), Grayscale Images can be specified by setting the value of the [grayscale-downsampling](#), Monochrome Images can be specified by setting the value of the [monochrome-downsampling](#).

- **Compression**

Selects the compression method from the following for color images and grayscale images.

- Automatic
- JPEG
- ZLIB
- JPEG2000
- KeepLZW

Select Automatic to operate both JPEG compression and ZLIB compression, and adopt the one that produces the smaller size. When KeepLZW is selected, if the original image is LZW compressed, it becomes the LZW compression. If not, it becomes the same as Automatic. JPEG2000 compression is not taken into consideration.

The JPEG compression is available with the following conditions. If not, it becomes the ZLIB compression.

- BitsPerComponent is 8
- The color space is any of CMYK, RGB, gray scale or CIE L*a*b *.

The JPEG2000 compression is available with the following conditions. If not, it becomes the ZLIB compression.

- PDF1.5 or later
- BitsPerComponent is 8
- The color space is any of RGB, gray scale or CIE L*a*b *.

Selects the compression method from the following for monochrome images.

- CCITT Group 4
- CCITT Group 3
- Run Length
- ZLIB
- None

When the size after processing is increased by these compressions, the compression will not be performed.

In the Option Setting File, Color Images can be specified by setting the value of the [image-compression](#), Grayscale Images can be specified by setting the value of the [grayscale-compression](#), Monochrome Images can be specified by setting the value of the [monochrome-compression](#).

- **JPEG Quality**

Selects the resolution from the following for color images and grayscale images.

- Minimum (50)
- Low (70)
- Medium (80)
- High (95)
- Maximum (100)

The numerical value on the right side indicates the value that corresponds to [-pjq](#) of the command-line interface, etc. Also in the Option Setting File, Color Images can be specified by setting the value of the [jpeg-quality](#), Grayscale Images can be specified by setting the value of the [grayscale-jpeg-quality](#).

- **Rasterize Resolution**

Some vector images are converted into a raster image, and are stored in PDF. The resolution of the raster image created by the conversion is specified with the value of 70 to 500dpi. SVG, MathML, EMF, and WMF are rendered in PDF, without being converted into a raster image. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [rasterize-resolution](#). However, MathML can be used only with "AH Formatter MathML Option" with AH Formatter V5.0 Lite.

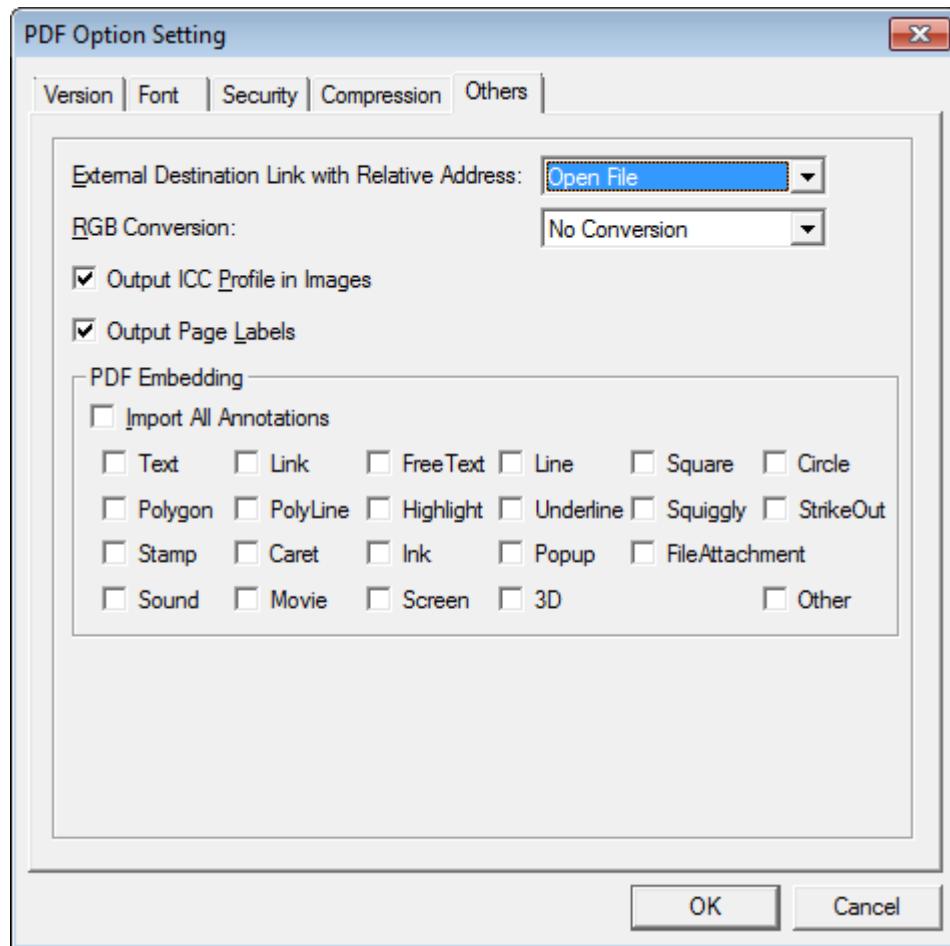
- **Text and Line-Art Compression**

Specifies whether to compress the text and the line art in the PDF to make the PDF size smaller or not. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [text-and-lineart-compression](#).

- **Object Compression**

Specifies whether to compress the object other than text and the line art in the PDF to make the PDF size smaller or not. It's effective only when the version of PDF to output is 1.5 or more and Text and Line Art Compression in the PDF Option Setting is checked. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [object-compression](#).

Others



- External Destination Link with Relative Address

Specifies the way to transform the external destination links with relative addresses to the PDF link property. Select from one of the following: Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [use-launch-for-relative-uri](#).

- Open File
- World Wide Web Link

- RGB Conversion

Specifies how to convert the RGB color space to DeviceGray or CMYK.

- No Conversion
Does no conversion. DeviceRGB is outputted.
- Black to DeviceGray
Converts Black to DeviceGray, converts the others to DeviceRGB before outputting.
- Gray to DeviceGray
Converts Gray color (mono tone) to DeviceGray, converts the others to DeviceRGB before outputting.
- All RGB to DeviceGray
Converts the RGB colors to DeviceGray before outputting. This conversion is based on the following formula: gray = $0.3 \times \text{red} + 0.59 \times \text{green} + 0.11 \times \text{blue}$ ($0.0 \leq \text{red}, \text{green}, \text{blue} \leq 1.0$).
- All RGB to CMYK
Converts the all RGB colors to CMYK before outputting.

In the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [rgb-conversion](#). As for the images other than SVG, CGM, MathML, EMF or WMF, which are rendered using their own rendering engine, there is no conversion. The same is applied to the color in raster images. When [PDF/X-1a](#) is specified to create, it is considered that all are converted to CMYK. At that time the combo box is displayed in gray color. See also [PDF/X](#) for the handling of RGB in PDF/X.

- Output ICC Profile in Images

Specifies whether to output a ICC profile of images contained in an original image also to PDF. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [image-color-profile](#).

- Output Page Labels

When FO with plural fo:page-sequence is outputted to PDF and displayed with Adobe Acrobat or Reader, the page number in the lower part of the window is shown like 1 (1/9). This is a function of the page label. If this check is turned OFF, the

page label is not displayed but only the page number can be displayed. Also in the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [page-labels](#).

- PDF Embedding [\[V6.2MR1\]](#)

Specifies the embedded PDF.

- Import All Annotations [\[V6.2MR1\]](#)

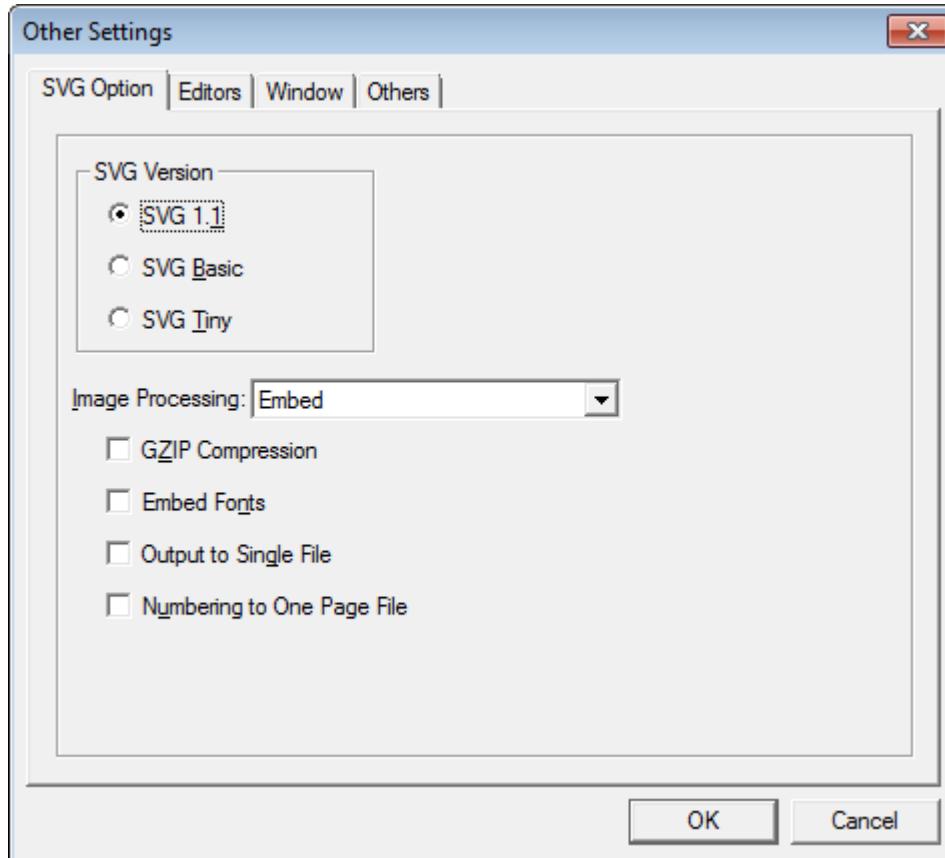
Imports all embeddable annotations contains in the embedded PDF. When specifying the embedded annotations individually, select them from the following: Specify Other when the embedded annotation is not included in the selections.

- Text
- Link
- FreeText
- Line
- Square
- Circle
- Polygon
- PolyLine
- Highlight
- Underline
- Squiggly
- StrikeOut
- Stamp
- Caret
- Ink
- Popup
- FileAttachment
- Sound
- Movie
- Screen
- 3D
- Other

In the Option Setting File, it can be specified by setting the value of the [import-annotation-types](#). See also [PDF Embedding](#) for more details.

Other Settings Dialog

SVG Option



In SVG Option in the Other Setting Dialog, the item concerning SVG set in the [Option Setting File](#) is adjusted. The contents changed here are written out to [AHFSettings.xml](#) ([AHFSettings\(x64\).xml](#) for Windows x64 version) which exists in the application data directory by clicking the [OK] button. Therefore, it is reflected next time of the starting.

- **SVG Version**

Selects the version of SVG to output from the followings:

- SVG 1.1
- SVG Basic
- SVG Tiny

- **Image Processing**

Specifies whether to embed or link images to SVG.

- Embed
- Copy and Link All Images
- Link External Images
- Copy and Link External Images

Please refer to [Image Output](#) in [SVG Output](#) for details.

- **GZIP Compression**

Outputs GZIP compressed svgz. The extension is set to [.svgz](#).

- **Embed Fonts**

Embeds fonts in SVG. Certain fonts might not be able to be embedded correctly.

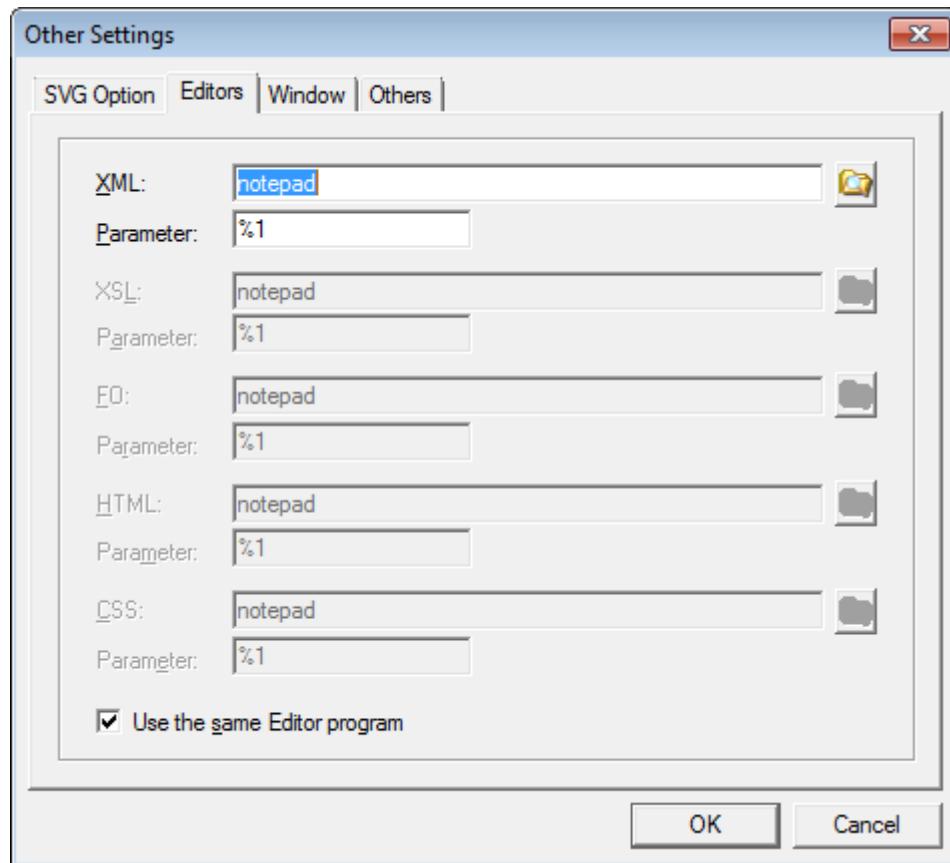
- **Output to Single File**

Specifies whether pages are outputted as one SVG file, or each page is outputted as an individual file when outputting two or more pages. When outputting two or more SVG, page numbers are placed before the extension of the output file name. For example, if the specified file name is [document.svg](#), page numbers are put as [document1.svg](#), [document2.svg](#),... The number format can be set in [Option Setting File](#), etc.

- **Numbering to One Page File**

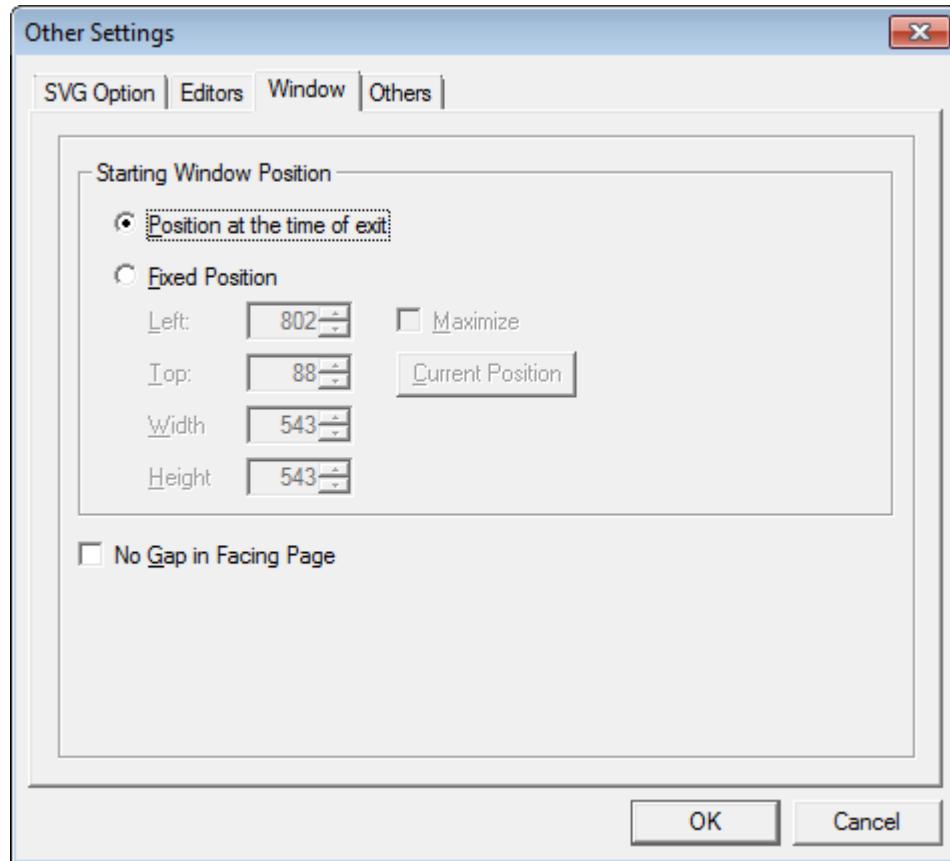
When Output to Single File is not specified, specifies whether the number is placed to the output file name even if SVG has only one page.

Editors



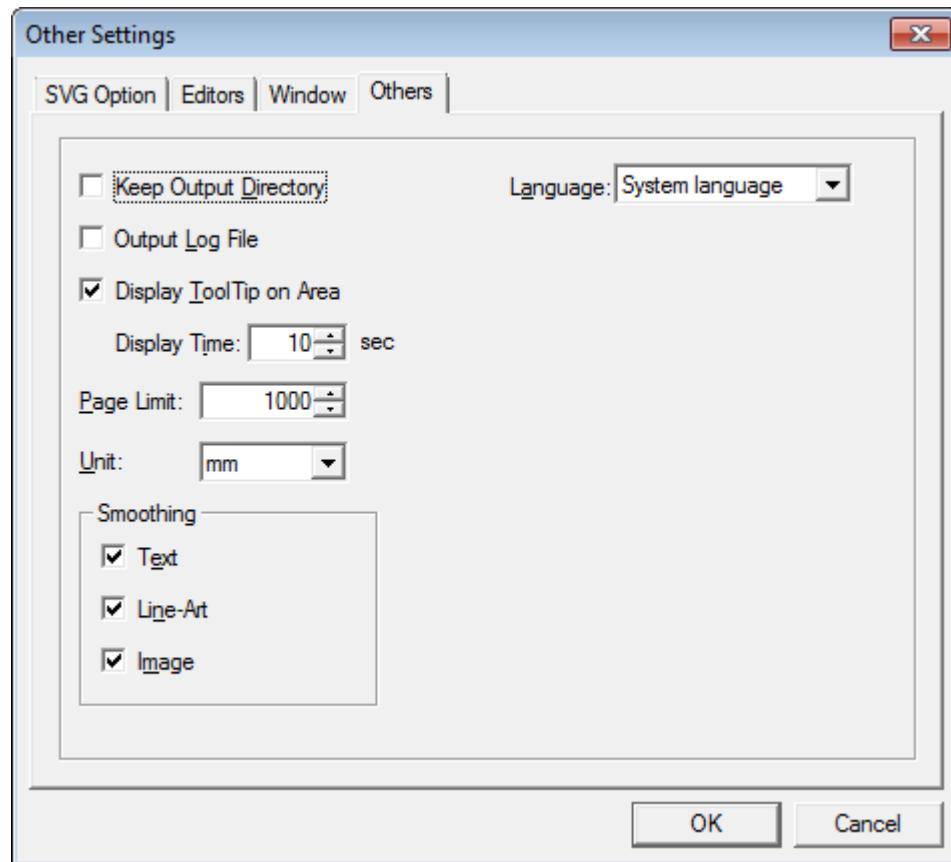
Edits the target document or stylesheet using the editor specified here. This setting can be used from [Edit Document] on the Edit menu or [Edit StyleSheet] on the Edit menu.

Window



- Starting Window Position
Specifies the position of Window in GUI when starting up. Select the [Fixed Position], click the [Current Position] button to input the current information.
- No Gutter Between Facing Pages
Specifies whether to apply the [gutter between the facing pages](#) or not.

Others



- Keep Output Directory
Specifies whether to remember the previous position of the directory used as the standard of a file name in the [PDF Output Dialog](#), etc. If it's not checked, the same directory as the formatted document is assumed.
- Output Log File
The information shown in the log window is saved as `AHFormatter.log` in the application data directory. The information in this file will be deleted when `AHFormatter.exe` is invoked.
- Display ToolTip on Area
Specifies whether to display the information about the area as a [ToolTip](#) when a mouse is pointed on an area on the screen such as a character string or an image. A ToolTip automatically disappears by moving a mouse or reaching the specified display time.
- Page Limit
This is used to control the maximum number of formatted pages for a very large document that a user wants to make available for display in the GUI. A large amount of memory is necessary to display a large number of pages. By specifying an appropriate value it is possible to improve the efficient working of the system. See also [Restrictions](#) for more detail. But, there is no such a restriction with other interfaces, such as Command-line Interface, etc.
- Unit
The unit shown in GUI can be selected from the following. The ruler can be displayed from the [view menu](#).
 - cm
 - mm
 - in
 - pt
 - pc
 - px
 - q

- Smoothing
 - Text
 - Line-Art
 - Image
- Language [V6.2]
 - English
 - Japanese
 - System language

CAUTION: It does not influence neither the [Cancel] button nor standard dialogs displayed by Windows.

Import Option Setting Dialog

This enables you to load an [Options Setting File](#) with previously saved main preferences from the [Option Setting Dialog](#). By default if the `AHFSettings.xml` (`AHFSettings(x64).xml` for Windows x64 version) file exists in the application data directory this file is automatically loaded at startup as the option setting file. The application data directory is indicated by the environment variable, APPDATA. `[APPDATA]\AntennaHouse\AHFormatter\6.2\`

Export Option Setting Dialog

Writes the current setting to the [Option Setting File](#). Main setting contents can be referred to in the [Option Setting Dialog](#).

About Dialog

Displays the version of **AH Formatter V6.2** and the license information. If you are using an evaluation license the evaluation period remaining can be confirmed here.

Run with Parameters

The GUI program `AHFormatter.exe` can be invoked with parameters.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-s		If AH Formatter V6.2 has already been invoked, The formatting will be executed with the already running AH Formatter V6.2 . If this parameter is not specified, another AH Formatter V6.2 will run.
-d XML-Document		Specifies the URI of the target XML document. GUI screen is displayed.
-t XSL-Stylesheet		Specifies the URI of the XSL stylesheet which is used for formatting. Invalid if one of the -d, -p, -pt parameters is not specified.
-p XML-Document		Prints the XML document by displaying the Print Dialog , without displaying the GUI screen. The -s parameter is invalid.
-pt XML-Document Printer-Name		Prints the XML document neither displaying the GUI screen nor displaying the Print Dialog . If Printer-Name is omitted, the standard printer is used. The -s parameter is invalid.
-pts XML-Document Printer-Name		Same as the -pt parameter, but prints the XML document neither displaying the stop dialog box under printing. If Printer-Name is omitted, the standard printer is used. The -s parameter is invalid.
-ps Printer-Setting-File		Specify the path name of the Printer Setting file. Please refer to " How to create a Printer Setting file ". When the XML document is specified by -d, please print the document by displaying the Print Dialog .
-c Copies	1	Specifies the number of copies when printing and effective only when the -pt or -pts parameter is specified. If it's omitted, the value is counted as 1.
-pdf XML-Document PDF-File		Outputs the XML document to PDF by displaying the PDF Output Dialog without displaying the GUI screen. PDF-File can be omitted. The -s parameter is invalid.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-pdft XML-Document PDF-File		Outputs the XML document to PDF in the specified file neither displaying the GUI screen nor displaying the PDF Output Dialog . The -s parameter is invalid.
-pdfts XML-Document PDF-File		Same as the -pdft parameter, but outputs the XML document to PDF neither displaying the stop dialog box under outputting PDF. The -s parameter is invalid.
-param name=value		Specifies the parameter name and the value of xsl:param. If the value contains a white space, please specify "name=value". -param can be specified multiply.

- Only one of the -d, -p, -pt, -pts, -pdf, -pdft, -pdfts parameters can be specified.

Restrictions

The GUI has certain formatting restrictions that do not apply when using the other interfaces.

- The maximum number of pages that can be formatted is controlled by the [Others](#) tab in the [Other Settings Dialog](#). This is because storing formatted pages for browsing in the GUI consumes memory. For very large documents the system would run out of memory without this restriction.

When using one of the other interfaces it's possible to format a very large number of pages because the information of already formatted pages is aggressively discarded while formatting.

In the GUI all pages can be outputted to PDF or the printer regardless of this limitation.

- Windows functions are used for EMF and WMF rendering on the GUI. For this reason there may be a case that the formatted results in GUI and the formatted results in the PDF may be different. The same applies to the printing of EMF and WMF using Windows printer drivers from GUI or the Command-line Interface.
- There may be a case that the SVG rendering in GUI and in the PDF may be different.
- There may be a case that fonts displayed in an image are dropped when outputting to PDF. This is because Windows might substitute the fonts. It is necessary to specify the proper font-family in the FO or CSS in order to avoid this.
- When the color set to output in black and white by postscript printers does not convert in black and white, please turn off all [Smoothing](#). In addition, the gradation may not become black and white even if all smoothing is turned off.

Command-line Interface

The Command-line Interface is provided as an executable file. You can call it from either a Windows batch file or a Solaris / Linux / Macintosh shell script.

AH Formatter V6.2 can be executed from the Command-line Interface by:

- Specifying an FO (XSL Formatting Objects) files to be formatted and the destination of the formatted file.
- Specifying an XML and XSL file which automatically starts transformation with XSLT, then formatting and finally outputting.
- As a filter that reads FO from standard in and writes PDF to standard out.

Executable File Name

The executable file names are as follows:

Windows	AHFCmd.exe
Solaris / Linux / Macintosh	AHFCmd

Environment Variables have to be set in order to execute these files. In the Windows version these are automatically set by the installer. In the non-Windows versions they have to be set. Please refer to [Environment Variables](#).

Running Command-line program on Windows

To run the command-line program of **AH Formatter V6.2** for Windows, enter the following command.

```
> cd [Install directory]
> AHFCmd -d samples\sample.fo -o \tmp\sample.pdf
```

If **AH Formatter V6.2** for Windows is successfully installed, the following message will be displayed.

```
AHFCmd : AH Formatter V6.2 XX for Windows (XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX)
Copyright (c) 1999-20XX Antenna House, Inc.
AHFCmd : Formatting finished normally.
```

Then you can view `sample.pdf` in the `\tmp` directory.

Running Command-line program from a shell script

In **AH Formatter V6.2** for non-Windows, the installation program will place the shell script file named `run.sh` in the `[Install directory]`. This is a sample shell script for running the command-line program `AHFCmd`. This script sets the necessary environment variables in the shell, and runs `AHFCmd`. To run the command-line program of **AH Formatter V6.2** for non-Windows using this script, enter the following command from your terminal window.

```
$ cd [Install directory]
$ ./run.sh -d samples/sample.fo -o /tmp/sample.pdf
```

If **AH Formatter V6.2** for non-Windows is successfully installed, the following message will be displayed. Then you can get `sample.pdf` in `/tmp` directory.

```
AHFCmd : AH Formatter V6.2 XX for XXXXXX (XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX)
Copyright (c) 1999-20XX Antenna House, Inc.
AHFCmd : Formatting finished normally.
```

The same parameters in the same formats apply to both `AHFCmd` and `run.sh`.

Command-line Parameters

The following parameters apply to the Command-line Interface: Parameters with * in the following table indicate a negative meaning if no is placed in the beginning of the command. For example, -nomultivol cancels to output PDF in separate volume.

When specifying a path name that contains a space, the path name must be enclosed in double quotation marks. If two conflicting parameters are specified, the last parameter on the line takes precedence.

The default parameter can be specified with the [environment variable](#). The setting with the environment variable is compensated before the parameter specified here and being evaluated. This feature does not function with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-d Document		<p>Specifies the URI of the target XML/FO/HTML document to be formatted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When -d @STDIN is specified, FO document is loaded from standard in. The document loaded from standard in is supposed to be an FO file. <p>If this parameter is omitted, a simple Command-line error message appears and processing stops without formatting.</p>
-s Stylesheet		<p>Specifies the URI of the target XSL/CSS document. If the specified XML document is FO, or the XML file contains the processing instruction <?xml-stylesheet ...?> and the stylesheet is specified, or the specified document is HTML, there is no need to specify a stylesheet.</p> <p>An XSLT Processor is necessary to use XSL stylesheets. In the Windows version, MSXML is used as the standard XSLT Processor. If you want to use another XSLT Processors or in non-Windows version, you need to set which XSLT Processor you are going to use. Setting the XSLT Processor is performed by "Environment Variables" or "Option Setting File".</p> <p>If the specified document is CSS, it will be the last user stylesheet. It is applied posterior to the stylesheet added by -css and the Option Setting File specified by -i.</p>
-f Formatter-Type	AUTO	<p>Specifies the formatter type from the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AUTO HTML XHTML XMLCSS XSLFO <p>If this parameter is omitted or invalid, it is considered as AUTO.</p>
-css User-Stylesheet		Specifies the CSS user stylesheet you want to add. -css can be specified any number of times. It is applied by specified order prior to the stylesheet specified by -s.
-htmlcs Decalt-HTML-Charset		Specifies the default encoding of HTML. This setting is applied to HTML whose encoding is unknown. If this parameter is omitted, UTF-8 is considered as default.
-o Output-File	@STDOUT	<p>Specifies the path name of the resulting output file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When -o @STDOUT is specified, the result is written to standard out. If both the printer name and this property are specified, the formatted result will be stored in the file using the printer driver. When -p @PDF or -p @TEXT or etc. is specified, the resulting PDF or text will be stored in the file specified by this parameter. <p>If this parameter is omitted, the result will be written to standard out.</p>
-i Option-Setting-File		Specifies the path name of " Option Setting File " which defines AH Formatter V6.2 options in XML-format. Any number of these parameters can be specified. If any content of this file is changed it automatically overwrites the previous settings. Because only a described parameter in the Option Setting File is evaluated, it is possible to change a part of setting by adding a file that describes those parameters that should be changed. If conflicting values for a parameter are specified in the Option Setting File and the Command-line, the last specified value overwrites the previous value.
-ix		<p>Imports AHFSettings.xml (AHFSettings(x64).xml for Windows x64 version) in the application data directory indicated as the environment variable APPDATA as the Option Setting File. This parameter is equivalent to</p> <pre>-i "[APPDATA]\AntennaHouse\AHFormatter\6.2\AHFSettings.xml"</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>-i "[APPDATA]\AntennaHouse\AHFormatter\6.2\AHFSettings(x64).xml"</pre> <p>Effective only for Windows version.</p>

Parameter	Default	Functions
-p Printer-Name	@PDF	<p>Specifies the printer name where the formatted result is outputted If this parameter is omitted, -p @PDF is automatically specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When -p @STDPRN is specified, the standard printer is used. • When -p @PDF is specified, the formatted result is not output to a printer but rather to PDF. • When -p @SVG is specified, the formatted result is output as SVG. • When -p @PS is specified, the formatted result is output as PostScript. • When -p @INX is specified, the formatted result is output as INX. • When -p @XPS is specified, the formatted result is output as XPS. • When -p @MIF is specified, the formatted result is output as MIF. • When -p @TEXT is specified, the formatted result will be outputted to the file as text format. [no-LT] • When -p @AreaTree is specified, the AreaTree will be outputted. [no-LT] <p>A printer name can only be specified in the Windows version. Please refer to "How to specify the Printer Name".</p> <p>Please refer to "PDF Output" for PDF output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "SVG Output" for SVG output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "PostScript Output" for PostScript output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "INX Output" for INX output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "XPS Output" for XPS output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "MIF Output" for MIF output info.</p> <p>Please refer to "TEXT Output" for text output info.</p> <p>@TEXT and @AreaTree are not effective with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
-start Start-Page	1	Specifies the start page and the end page of output document. If the start page is omitted or the specified value is 0 or less, the start page is considered the first page. If the end page is omitted or 0, or the specified value exceeds the actual page number, the end page is considered the last page. If the setting is inconsistent, (for example, -start 5 -end 3) an error occurs. When -multivol parameter is specified, the value does not mean the page number but the separate volume number. For example -start 3 outputs the third separate volume.
-end End-Page	0	
-prevp *		Outputs pages in reverse order to PDF.
-multivol *		Specifies to output PDF in separate volume. The error occurs when FO doesn't include the <code>axf:output-volume-info</code> extension property. When this parameter is specified, -start/-end can be specified as the unit of separate volume.
-2pass *		When formatting a huge document with a large amount of unresolved <code><fo:page-number-citation></code> , a large amount of memories are consumed because the cancellation of the page information is impossible. Therefore, the limit is caused in the number of pages to format. This parameter solves that problem by making the formatting two passes. Although its processing time may be increased, only the page number information which should be solved will consume the memory and the memory consumption will be extremely decreased. Please refer to " Formatting Large Document ". [no-LT]
-dpw Length	210mm	Specifies the default page width with a numerical value and its unit.
-dph Length	297mm	Specifies the default page height with a numerical value and its unit.
-base BaseURI		Specifies the default base URI.
-hypdic Directory		Specifies the directory where the hyphenation dictionary exists.
-param name=value		Specifies the parameter name and the value of <code>xsl:param</code> used with the XSLT transformation. If the value contains a white space, please specify "name=value". -param can be specified multiply.
-fontalias name=substname		Specifies font substitutions. If the option -fontalias A=B is specified, all of font family-name A in the FO file will be substituted with font B. If you are going to specify multiple substitutions, you must specify the -fontalias parameter for every substitution. You can also specify this option using the " Option Setting File ". The substitution is not recursive, or is done only once.
-x Error-Level	2	Permits setting the error level at which AH Formatter V6.2 will stop formatting and abort the job.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-x Error-Level	2	1. Information 2. Warning 3. Recoverable Error 4. Fatal Error If a fatal error occurs, the formatting process will always be aborted.
-silent		Suppresses the output of error information . Normally error information is sent to stdout or stderr.
-stdout		Error information is sent to stdout only if this parameter is specified. It is outputted to stderr by default.
-stderr		Error information is also sent to stderr if this parameter is specified. It is outputted to stderr by default.
-pgbar *		Outputs the progress of the page generation to the console. "." shows the progress of formatting, "-" shows the progress of the outputted page.
-v		Shows the version, copyright and license information. Cannot be used with any other parameter.
-h or -?		Displays a list of all the Command-line parameters.

Parameters for Printer

Parameter	Default	Functions
-ps Printer-Setting-File		Specifies the path name of the Printer Setting file. Please refer to " How to create a Printer Setting file ".
-copies Copies	1	Specifies the number of copies when outputting to a printer. The default value is 1.
-collate *		This parameter is effective only when outputting multiple copies. When -collate is specified, printing from the specified starting page to the ending page repeated. When -nocollate is specified, the same page is continuously printed as multiple copies.
-gdsmooth Value	0	Specifies whether anti-aliasing is performed or not when printing. The sum of the following values can be specified. 1. Text 2. Line-Art 3. Image

Parameters for PDF Output

Parameter	Default	Functions
-pdfver Version	PDF1.5	Specifies the PDF version from the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF1.3 • PDF1.4 (default) • PDF1.5 • PDF1.6 • PDF1.7 • PDF/X-1a:2001 [no-LT] • PDF/X-3:2002 [no-LT] • PDF/X-1a:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-2:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-3:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-4:2008 [no-LT] • PDF/A-1a:2005 [no-LT] • PDF/A-1b:2005 [no-LT] <p>Impossible to specify PDF/X or PDF/A with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>

Parameter	Default	Functions
-tpdf *		Generates Tagged PDF. Ignored if PDF cannot be tagged depending on the PDF versions. [no-LT]
-lpdf *		Generates linearized PDF optimized for the display on the Web. [no-LT]
-encrypt Key-Length	128rc4	<p>Specifies the key length when encrypting the PDF file. The key length can be specified from the following: When the specified key length is not applicable with the version of the created PDF, the key length is adjusted to be applicable one.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 40rc4 • 128rc4 • 128aes • 256aes <p>128aes is effective with PDF1.5 or later, 256aes is effective with PDF1.7 or later.</p>
-userpwd Password		Specifies the user password required to open the PDF. The password must be less than or equal to 32 bytes.
-ownerpwd Password		Specifies the owner password for PDF. The password must be within 32 bytes.
-npt *		<p>Prohibits printing the PDF file. Use -ppa when you specify PDF version 1.4 or later and -encrypt 40rc4 is not specified.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ownerpwd so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-ncg *		<p>Prohibits making changes of the PDF file.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ownerpwd so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-ncc *		<p>Prohibits copying the content of the PDF file.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ownerpwd so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-nca *		<p>Prohibits adding comments and form fields to the PDF file.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ownerpwd so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-nff *		<p>Prohibits filling in of form fields and signing of the PDF file. Ignored when you specify PDF1.3 or -encrypt 40rc4. In order to make this parameter effective, other parameter settings may be required. See also the 'PDF Reference' from Adobe Systems Incorporated for more details.</p>
-nab *		<p>Prohibits text access for screen reader devices of the PDF file. Ignored when you specify PDF1.3 or -encrypt 40rc4.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ncg so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-nad *		<p>Prohibits inserting, deleting and rotating the PDF pages. Ignored when you specify PDF1.3 or -encrypt 40rc4.</p> <p>It is necessary to specify -ncg so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-ppa Value	2	<p>Specifies whether to permit printing of the created PDF with one of the following values. Use -npt when you specify PDF version 1.3 or -encrypt 40rc4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Not Allowed 1. Low Resolution Printing 2. High Resolution Printing <p>It is necessary to specify -ownerpwd so that this parameter is effective.</p>
-peb Value	1	<p>Specifies whether to embed the embeddable fonts in PDF or not with one of the following values.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Specified font 1. All fonts excluding Base14 font 2. All fonts including Base14 font
-pee Fontname		Embeds the specified font in the PDF. If you want to specify multiple fonts, put commas between the fonts.
-pesub Percent	100%	Embeds all fonts when the percent of characters used is greater than or equal to specified value, subsets embedded fonts when the percent of characters used is less than the specified value. The value without unit or % value can be specified. (1.0 = 100%). If nothing is specified, it is considered as 100% and embedded fonts are always subset.
-pef *		An error is not issued when font embedding fails.
-peg *		An error is not issued when glyphs are missing.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-pex *		An error is not issued when PDF/X or PDF/Ais generating. [no-LT]
-picc Value	0	<p>Selects how to compress the color images embedded in PDF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression 4. Keep LZW <p>This parameter is effective for images that cannot be directly embedded into a PDF or -pidc value is not 0. JPEG2000 is effective only for PDF1.5 or later.</p>
-picg Value	0	<p>Selects how to compress the grayscale images embedded in PDF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression 4. Keep LZW <p>This parameter is effective for images that cannot be directly embedded into a PDF or -pidg value is not 0. JPEG2000 is effective only for PDF1.5 or later.</p>
-picm Value	1	<p>Selects how to compress the monochrome images embedded in PDF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. CCITT Group4 2. CCITT Group3 3. Run Length compression 4. ZLIB compression <p>This parameter is effective for images that cannot be directly embedded into a PDF or -pidm value is not 0.</p>
-pidc Value	0	Selects how to downsample the raster color images embedded in a PDF with the following values.
-pidca dpi	450	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling <p>When -pidc value (other than 0) is specified, a color image that has a resolution greater than -pidca dpi will be downsampled to the -pidct dpi value.</p>
-pidg Value	0	Selects how to downsample the raster grayscale images embedded in PDF using the following values.
-pidga dpi	450	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling <p>When -pidg value (other than 0) is specified, a grayscale image with resolution greater than -pidga dpi will be downsampled to the -pidgt dpi resolution.</p>
-pidm Value	0	Selects how to downsample the raster monochrome images embedded in PDF using the following values.
-pidma dpi	1800	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling <p>When -pidm value (other than 0) is specified, a monochrome image that has resolution greater than the -pidma dpi will be downsampled to the -pidmt dpi resolution.</p>
-pidmt dpi	1200	

Parameter	Default	Functions
-pjq Percent	80	Specifies the quality of the raster graphics when specified JPEG format by -picc or -picg using the range of 1-100(%). A higher % increases the image quality. However the file size also becomes larger. The initial value is 80.
-pcs *		Specifies not to compress text and line art in the PDF.
-pos *		Compresses the object in the PDF. The setting is invalid when -pcs is specified.
-plr *		Specifies whether the external link specified by the relative address is transformed into 'Open the file' or into 'World Wide Web link' in the PDF link properties. When -plr is specified, it is transformed to 'World Wide Web link'. When -noplr is specified, it is transformed to 'Open the file'. If the document is designed to be viewed on a browser then it is suggested to use the world wide web -plr as the default setting.
-prc Value	0	<p>Specifies how to convert the RGB color space (DeviceRGB) to DeviceGray.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. No Conversion 1. Black to DeviceGray 2. Gray to DeviceGray 3. All RGB to DeviceGray 4. All RGB to CMYK
-pcics *		Converts RGB images automatically into CMYK when outputting PDF/X and PDF/A. [no-LT]
-prr dpi	108	Specifies the resolution value of the transformed raster images from 70 to 500(dpi). This parameter is available only in the Windows version and should be set with consideration of on whether better image quality or file size is more important.
-p3da *		Imports 3D object. [no-LT]
-pdfscale scale	100%	Specifies the scaling ratio of the PDF to output. A value without a unit or % value can be specified as a scale (1.0 = 100%). When -pdfwidth is specified after - pdfscale, -pdfscale will take priority. The same applies to -pdfheight.
-pdfheight length	100%	Scales the output height of PDF. Height values can be specified as a unit or a % value.
-pdfwidth length	100%	Scales the output width of PDF. Width values can be specified as a unit or a % value.

Parameters for SVG Output

Parameter	Default	Functions
-svgver Profile	SVG1.1	<p>Specifies the SVG profile:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SVG1.1 (default) • SVGBasic • SVGTiny <p>If this parameter is omitted, SVG1.1 is outputted.</p>
-svgip Method	0	<p>Specifies how to treat images within the SVG file.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all image files. 1. Copies all image files to the destination that is specified by -svgicp, and then links. 2. Links images that can be linked and embeds images that have to be embedded. Raster images other than JPEG and PNG are always embedded. 3. Copies images that have been linked to the destination that is specified by -svgicp and links. <p>If this parameter is omitted, it is considered as 0 and all images are embedded. Refer to Image Output in SVG Output for details of the operation.</p>
-svgicp Directory		Specifies the destination for images when '1' or 3 is selected for the -svgip parameter (Outputs the image as an external file). When a relative path is used to specify the Directory, the path will be relative to the output path specified with -o. When -o is the standard output, an error will occur if the relative path is specified. Then it is necessary to specify an absolute path.
-svgiren *		Specifies whether to rename all file names to the prefix specified by -svgiprfx, or to use the original name when images are copied to the directory specified by -svgicp. When the file name is duplicated, a sequential number is added. When -svgiren is specified, all files are renamed.

Parameter	Default	Functions
-svgiprfix Prefix		When images are copied to the directory specified by -svgicp, specifies the prefix of the file name. The file name will be prefixed followed by sequence number. When it is not specified, they are only sequential numbers.
-svggzip *		Outputs SVG compressed in gzip.
-svgsingle *		A document composed of multiple pages is outputted as a single SVG file.
-svgfmt Format	1	When the original document has multiple pages and -svgsingle parameter is not specified, each page will be output as an SVG files that has a consecutive number at the end of the file name. This parameter specifies the format of those consecutive numbers. For example, when "document.svg" is specified as the name for the output file, by specifying "-01" for -svgfmt parameter the output files will be document-01.svg, document-02.svg and so on. If this parameter is omitted, "1" is considered as specified.
-svgspn *		When -svgsingle is not specified and the output SVG has only one-page, the sequential number specified by -svgfmt is not added.
-svgea *		Embeds all fonts that can be embedded in the SVG.
-svgee Font-Name		Embeds the specified font in SVG. If you want to specify multiple fonts, put commas between fonts.
-svgef *		An error is not issued when font embedding fails.
-svgic Value	0	<p>Selects how to convert the raster images which may not be directly embedded in the SVG.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG conversion 2. PNG conversion <p>When Auto is selected, monochrome, grayscale or 256-or-less-color images are converted into PNG and the rest are converted into JPEG. When this parameter is omitted, the default is Auto. Refer to Image Output in SVG Output for information on embeddable images.</p>
-svgjq Percent	80	Specifies the quality of the raster graphics with the range of 1-100(%) when JPEG format is specified to -svgic. The quality becomes higher in proportion to the increase in the number, however the file size also becomes larger. The initial value is 80.
-svgrr dpi	108	Specifies the rasterize-resolution value of the transformed raster images from 70 to 500(DPI). This parameter is available only in the Windows version.

Parameters for INX Output

Parameter	Default	Functions
-inxomode Value	0	<p>Specifies the INX output mode in INX Output option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block output mode <p>If this parameter is omitted, Text area output mode is adopted. Refer to INX Output Settings for details.</p>

Parameters for MIF Output

Parameter	Default	Functions
-mifomode Value	0	<p>Specify the MIF output mode in MIF Output option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block output mode <p>If this parameter is omitted, Text area output mode is adopted. Refer to MIF Output Settings for details.</p>
-mifip Method	0	Specifies how to treat the referred image. MIF Output option

Parameter	Default	Functions
-mifip Method	0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all images in MIF. 1. Links images as external files. <p>If this parameter is omitted, embedding image is adopted. Refer to MIF Output Settings for details.</p>

Parameters for TEXT Output

Parameter	Default	Functions
-tenc Encoding	UTF-8	Specifies the encoding for TEXT Output . If this parameter is omitted, UTF-8 is adopted. See also TEXT Output Setting for more detail.
-teol EOL-mark	CRLF or LF	Specifies the end-of-line code for TEXT Output . If this parameter is omitted, CRLF is adopted in Windows version, LF is adopted in non-Windows versions. See also TEXT Output Setting for more detail.

Text Output cannot be performed with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Values can be added using one of the following units.

Representation	Meanings
cm	centimeter
mm	millimeter. 1 mm = 1/10 cm
in	inch. 1 in = 2.54 cm
pt	point. 1 pt = 1/72 in
pc	pica. 1 pc = 12 pt
jpt	1 jpt = 0.3514 mm
q	1 q = 0.25 mm

The following sample illustrates formatting [sample.xml](#) using XSL stylesheet [sample.xsl](#) and outputting the formatted result to [sample.pdf](#).

```
AHFCmd -d "c:\My Documents\xml\sample.xml" -s "c:\My Documents\xml\sample.xsl" -p @PDF -o "c:\My Documents\xml\sample.pdf"
```

In order to use the stylesheet in the non-Windows environment, it's necessary to specify external XSLT processor in the [Option Setting File](#) using -i parameter.

The following sample illustrates how to load the Option Setting File [options.xml](#), format [sample.fo](#) and send the formatted result to a printer.

```
AHFCmd -d "c:\My Documents\xml\sample.fo" -i "c:\My Documents\xml\option.xml" -p "EPSON LP-7100"
```

Return Value

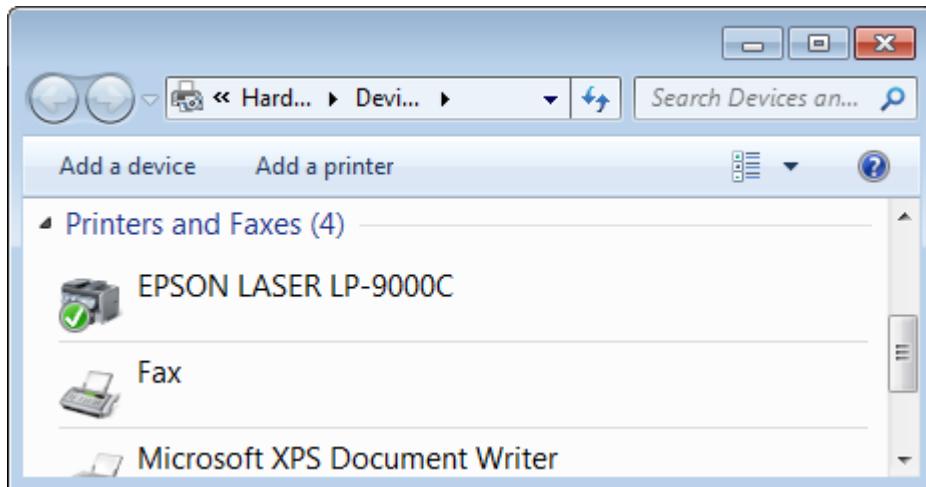
When executing formatting with a Command-line Interface, if the formatting is successful, it finishes the process with the return value of 0. If the formatting is not successful, the program finishes the process with a return value of 1. If the formatting is not performed by specifying -v, etc., the return value is 0.

How to specify the Printer Name

The followings parameter settings apply only to the Windows version.

To send a file to a printer use a printer name from the Printers dialog in the Windows start menu or from Printers and Faxes in the Control Panel.

```
-p "Adobe PDF"
-p "EPSON LASER LP-9000C"
```

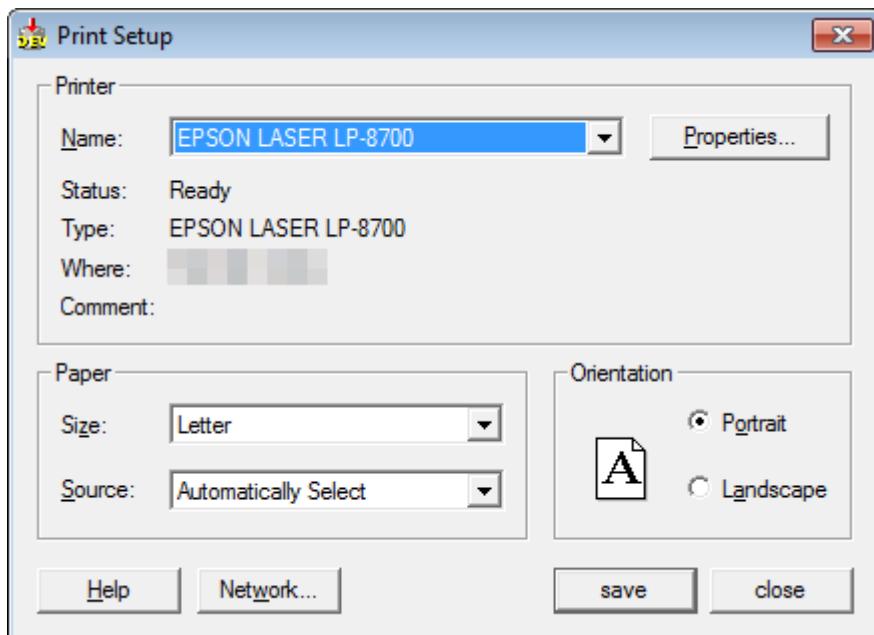


How to create a Printer Setting file

The followings are effective only in the Windows version.

In the Windows environment, applications use the DEVMODE structure to exchange information about the printer settings. Also Windows printer drivers initialize themselves according to the information of the DEVMODE structure. **AH Formatter V6.2** provides [AHFDev.exe](#) as a utility to save the DEVMODE structure to a file. 

When this program is launched, the "Print Setup" dialog will be displayed. You can choose printers from "Name" combo box or you can set various printer properties by clicking the "Properties" button. After you set up printer properties, click "save" button, the "Save As" dialog will be displayed. Specify a file name to save the print setup to. This will then modify DEVMODE structure as a "data file that records printer setup." You can specify this file name for the PrinterSetting property of the .NET/COM Interface or -ps Parameter of the command line interface or other interfaces. To quit this application, click "close" button.



When a printer setting file is specified, a document is printed unless -p option is specified. The following shows how it operates.

- AHFCmd -p printer-name -ps setting-file -d ...
Prints a document by applying DEVMODE specified in the setting-file to the printer-name.
- AHFCmd -p @PDF -ps setting-file -d ...
Outputs a document to PDF disregarding the -ps option.
- AHFCmd -ps setting-file -d ...
Prints a document using the DEVMODE specified in the setting-file. If the printer-name is not specified in DEVMODE, the default printer is used.

When -collate or -copies is specified, the content of DEVMODE is overwritten.

Restrictions for Printing

See also restrictions in the [Graphical User Interface](#).

.NET Interface

The .NET Interface makes it possible for **AH Formatter V6.2** to function through .NET applications developed using Visual Basic.NET, Visual C#.NET and similar programs.

The .NET Interface has been tried and tested in the Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0, Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 and Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 environments.

You cannot have both **AH Formatter V6.2** and another version of **AH Formatter** or **XSL Formatter** installed on your machine when the .NET interface is used. It is necessary to uninstall one version, or only set the path of **AH**

CAUTION: **Formatter** or **XSL Formatter** you want to use by deleting the unwanted path from the environment variables. 32-bit Windows version can be installed on Windows x64 Edition. In that case, please specify /platform:x86 when you use .NET interface.

Component Registration

AH Formatter .NET component is not registered automatically to the global assembly cache (GAC). It is necessary to create the path either by putting the .NET component in the current folder of the application, or by creating an application configuration file.

	for .NET Framework 4.0	XfoDotNet40Ctl62.dll
.NET Component File Name	for .NET Framework 3.5	XfoDotNet35Ctl62.dll
	for .NET Framework 2.0	XfoDotNet20Ctl62.dll

- When using .NET Framework 3.5 (XfoDotNet35Ctl60.dll), Visual Studio C++ 2008 redistribution package needs to be installed. Please download it from the following site:
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x86\)](#)
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x64\)](#)
- When using .NET Framework 2.0 (XfoDotNet20Ctl60.dll), Visual Studio C++ 2005 redistribution package needs to be installed. Please download it from the following site:
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x86\)](#)
 - [Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 SP1 Redistributable Package \(x64\)](#)

Classes

The following classes are contained in the .NET component.

Name	Functions
XfoObj	<p>AH Formatter V6.2 class (itself). This class implements an IDisposable interface. When exiting XfoObj class object, please be sure to call Dispose method in order to release the resource.</p> <p>Example for C#:</p> <pre>XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj obj = new XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj(); try { // some process } finally { obj.Dispose(); }</pre>
XfoException	AH Formatter V6.2 exception class. Throws the execute method of XfoObj class.

Properties

XfoException Class includes the following properties.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
ErrorLevel	Int32	R	<p>Indicates the level of the error that occurred during the formatting process.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Information Warning Recoverable Error Fatal Error

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
ErrorCode	Int32	R	Indicates the code of the exception error that occurred during the formatting process. Zero means no error. Non-zero indicates any error occurred.
Message	String	R	Get the message of the exception error that occurred during the formatting process.

XfoObj Class includes the following properties.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
Version	String	R	Get the version string of AH Formatter V6.2 .
DocumentURI	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the URI of the XML/FO/HTML documents you will format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If DocumentURI is omitted or "@STDIN" is specified, XML documents are loaded from stdin. <p>The documents loaded from stdin are supposed to be FO files.</p>
StylesheetURI	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the URI of XSL/CSS stylesheets for formatting. If the specified XML document is FO, or the XML file contains the processing instruction <?xml-stylesheet ...?> and the stylesheet is specified, or the specified document is HTML, there is no need to specify a stylesheet.</p> <p>If the specified document is CSS, it will be the last user stylesheet. It is applied posterior to the stylesheet added by AddUserStylesheetURI and the Option Setting File specified by AddOptionFileURI.</p>
FormatterType	Int32	R/W	<p>Specify formatter type. Use one of the following values to specify the formatter type. If this parameter is omitted or invalid, it is considered as AUTO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. AUTO 1. HTML 2. XHTML 3. XML+CSS 4. XSL-FO
HtmlDefaultCharset	String	R/W	Specifies the default encoding of HTML. This setting is applied to HTML whose encoding is unknown.
OptionFileURI	String	R/W	Specifies the URI of the XML-format Option Setting File which describes AH Formatter V6.2 options. The contents of the Option Setting File are evaluated immediately. When you set the property which is contrary to the already set property, the former setting will be overwritten. URI added by AddOptionFileURI will be canceled.
OptionFileCount	Int32	R	Counts the number of Option Setting Files you specified.
PrinterName	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the output format or the printer name to output.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a printer name is specified, the formatted result is outputted to that printer. When "@STDPRN" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to the currently used printer. When "@PDF" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to PDF. When "@SVG" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to SVG. When "@PS" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to PostScript. When "@INX" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to INX. When "@MIF" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to MIF. When "@XPS" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to XPS. When "@TEXT" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to a text format file. [no-LT]

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PrinterName	String	R/W	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When "@AreaTree" is specified, the AreaTree will be outputted. [no-LT] <p>If this parameter is omitted, -p @PDF is automatically specified. Please refer to "How to specify the printer name" for details.</p> <p>Please refer to "PDF Output" for the PDF output information.</p> <p>Please refer to "SVG Output" for the SVG output information.</p> <p>Please refer to "PostScript Output" for the PostScript output.</p> <p>Please refer to "INX Output" for the INX output.</p> <p>Please refer to "MIF Output" for the MIF output.</p> <p>Please refer to "XPS Output" for the XPS output.</p> <p>Please refer to "TEXT Output" for the text output information.</p> <p>@TEXT and @AreaTree are not effective with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
PrinterSettingURI	String	R/W	Specifies the URI of the Printer Setting File. Please refer to " How to create a Printer Setting File ".
OutputFilePath	String	R/W	Specifies the output file path of the formatted result. When a printer is specified as an output format by PrinterName, a printing result is saved to the specified file by the printer driver. When an output format other than a printer is specified, it is saved as the specified file with the specified output format. When omitted, or when "@STDOUT" is specified, it goes to standard output.
OutputFOPath	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the output FO (or HTML etc.) file as the result of XSLT when the input files are an XML document and XSL stylesheet.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the input file is FO, no file is outputted. When "@STDOUT" is specified, it is considered as stdout. <p>If the setting is omitted, nothing outputs.</p>
ExternalXSLT	String	R/W	<p>Command-line of External XSLT Processor. If this is omitted, default MSXML will be used. For example:</p> <pre>xslt %param -o %3 %1 %2</pre> <p>These meanings are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> %1 : XML document %2 : XSL stylesheet %3 : XSLT output file %param : xsl:param <p>%1 to %3 are used to express only parameter positions. Do not replace them with actual file names. In case you use XSL:param for external XSLT Processor, set the parameter in XSLTParamFormat and SetXSLTParam.</p>
XSLTParamFormat	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the parameter format of xsl:param when using External XSLT Processor. For example:</p> <pre>-p %p %v</pre> <p>These meanings are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> %p : Parameter Name %v : Parameter Value
BaseURI	String	R/W	Specifies the default base URI.
FormattedPages	Int32	R	Get the formatted total pages.
TwoPassFormatting	Boolean	R/W	<p>When formatting a huge document with a large amount of unresolved <fo:page-number-citation>, a large amount of memories are consumed because the cancellation of the page information is impossible.</p> <p>Therefore, the limit is caused in the number of pages to format. This parameter solves that problem by making the formatting two passes. Although its processing time may be increased, only the page number information which should be solved will consume the memory and the</p>

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
TwoPassFormatting	Boolean	R/W	memory consumption will be extremely decreased. Please refer to " Formatting Large Document ". [no- <u>LT</u>]
MultiVolume	Boolean	R/W	Specifies to output PDF in separate volume. The error occurs when FO doesn't include the axf:output-volume-info extension property. When the value false is specified, the StartVolume/EndVolume parameter is invalid, instead the parameter StartPage/EndPage is effective. When the value 'true' is specified, the parameter StartPage/EndPage is invalid, instead the parameter StartVolume/EndVolume is effective. [no- <u>LT</u>]
StartVolume EndVolume	Int32	R/W	Effective when MultiVolume=true is specified. Specifies the start and the end of separate volume to output. If the setting of start for separate volume is omitted or the value 'true' is less than or equal to 0, the start volume is accounted as the first volume. If the setting of start for separate volume is omitted or the value 'true' is greater than actual number of separate volume, the end volume is accounted as the last volume. If the setting is conflicted, an error occurs. (e.g. StartVolume=5 EndVolume=3) [no- <u>LT</u>]
TotalVolumeCount	Int32	R	Gets the number of all the separate volumes when outputting PDF to multiple separate volumes. [no- <u>LT</u>]
OutputVolumeCount	Int32	R	Gets the number of the actual separate volumes when outputting PDF to multiple separate volumes. [no- <u>LT</u>]
StartPage EndPage	Int32	R/W	Specifies the start page or the end page of the output document. If the start page is omitted or the specified value is 0 or less, the start page is considered the first page. If the end page is omitted or 0, or the specified value exceeds the actual number of pages, the end page is considered as the last page. If the setting is inconsistent, (for example, StartPage=5 EndPage=3) an error occurs.
ExitLevel	Int32	R/W	Specifies at which error level to abort the formatting process. AH Formatter V6.2 will stop formatting when the detected error level is equal to or higher than the ExitLevel property. The default value is 2 (Warning). Thus if a level 2 or higher error occurs and error level is 2 (Warning) or higher, the formatting process will be aborted. Acceptable values are from 1 to 4. When a value of 5 or higher is specified, it is considered to be a value of 4. If an error-level:4 (Fatal error) occurs, the formatting process will be aborted unconditionally. The ExitLevel does not cause an error message to be displayed no matter what value may be specified for this property.
ErrorLevel	Int32	R	Indicates the error level that occurred during the formatting process. 1. Information 2. Warning 3. Recoverable Error 4. Fatal Error
ErrorCode	Int32	R	Indicates the code of the error that occurred during the formatting process. Zero means no error. Non-zero indicates an error occurred.
ErrorMessage	String	R	Indicates the error message of the error that occurred during the formatting process.
ErrorStreamType	Int32	R/W	Outputs the error message to standard output or to standard error when the error level is less than the specified error level allowed while formatting. The error message is not outputted in default. 0. Not output 1. Standard output 2. Standard error output
XmldomDocument	System.Xml.XmlDocument	W	Specifies the target XML document by the System.Xml.XmlDocument class object.
Xmldomstylesheet	System.Xml.XmlDocument	W	Specifies the target XSL stylesheet by the System.Xml.XmlDocument class object.

Properties – PDF Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfVersion	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies PDF version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. PDF1.3 1. PDF1.4 2. PDF1.5 3. PDF1.6 4. PDF1.7 101. PDF/X-1a:2001 103. PDF/X-3:2002 104. PDF/X-1a:2003 105. PDF/X-2:2003 106. PDF/X-3:2003 107. PDF/X-4:2008 200. PDF/A-1a:2005 400. PDF/A-1b:2005 <p>Impossible to specify PDF/X or PDF/A with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
PdfEncryptLevel	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies the key length when encrypting the PDF file during output. The key length can be specified as follows: (Note: This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. 40bit RC4 1. 128bit RC4 2. 128bit AES 3. 256bit AES <p>128bit AES is effective with PDF1.5 or later, 256bit AES is effective with PDF1.7 or later.</p>
PdfTag	Boolean	R/W	Generates Tagged PDF. Ignored if PDF cannot be tagged depending on the PDF versions. <small>[no-LT]</small>
PdfReversePage	Boolean	R/W	Outputs pages in reverse order to PDF.
PdfUserPassword	String	W	Specifies the user password for PDF. The password must be 32 bytes or less.
PdfOwnerPassword	String	W	Specifies the owner password for PDF. The password must be 32 bytes or less.
PdfNoPrinting	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits printing the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoChanging	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits making changes to the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoContentCopying	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits copying the content of the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoAddingOrChangingComments	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits adding comments and form fields to the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoFillForm	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits filling in of form fields and signing of the PDF file. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later. In order to make this parameter effective, other parameter settings may be required. See also the 'PDF Reference' from Adobe Systems Incorporated for more details.</p>
PdfNoAccessibility	Boolean	R/W	Prohibits text access for screen reader devices of the PDF file. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfNoAssembleDoc	Boolean	R/W	Prohibits inserting, deleting and rotating the PDF pages. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later for the PdfVersion.
PdfEmbedAllFontsEx	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies whether or not to embed all embeddable fonts in the PDF output file. However, even if embed all fonts is specified, fonts which restrict embedding or fonts are unable to be embedded to PDF will not be embedded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Specified font 1. All fonts excluding Base14 font 2. All fonts including Base14 font
PdfEmbedFonts	String	R/W	Embeds the specified font in the created PDF. To specify multiple fonts, put commas between each font.
PdfEmbedSubsetFontPercentage	Int32	R/W	Embeds all fonts when the percent of characters used is greater than or equal to specified value, subsets embedded fonts when the percent of characters used is less than the specified value. If nothing is specified, it is considered as 100 and embedded fonts are always subset.
PdfErrorOnEmbedFault	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when font embedding fails.
PdfErrorOnMissingGlyph	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when there is a missing glyph.
PdfPrintingAllowed	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies whether and how to permit printing of the PDF. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Not Allowed 1. Low Resolution Printing 2. High Resolution Printing
PdfImageCompression	Int32	R/W	<p>When a color image format cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into a bitmap format which is compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of the data stored in a PDF file. When Auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of PdfJPEGQuality and PdfRasterizeResolution. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. These are the settings for color images. Specify PdfGrayscaleImageCompression for grayscale images and PdfMonochromeImageCompression for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression (it is effective only when PdfVersion is PDF1.5 or higher) 4. Keep LZW
PdfJPEGQuality	Int32	R/W	<p>With color image formats that cannot be stored directly in a PDF, if JPEG compression is specified for PdfImageCompression the image quality can be specified with a numeric value of 1-100. Higher values are proportional to increased image quality. However the file size also becomes larger. This is the setting for color images. PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality can also be specified for grayscale images.</p> <p>CAUTION: This is not for changing the quality of a JPEG formatted image.</p>
PdfPutImageColorProfile	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to embed the ICC profile (of the embedded color image) in the PDF.
PdfImageDownSampling	Int32	R/W	Specifies one of the following methods to downsample the raster color image in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution of greater than or equal to the one

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfImageDownSampling	Int32	R/W	<p>specified in PdfImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled to the resolution specified by PdfImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for color images. Specify PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling for grayscale images, and PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfImageDownSamplingTarget	Int32	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster color image is downsampled.
PdfImageDownSamplingDPI	Int32	R/W	Sets the resolution for the downsampled raster color image.
PdfGrayscaleImageCompression	Int32	R/W	<p>When a grayscale image format cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image is transformed into a bitmap format which is compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of the data stored in a PDF file. When Auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality and PdfRasterizeResolution. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. These are the settings for grayscale images. Specify PdfImageCompression for color images, and PdfMonochromeImageCompression for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression (it is effective only when PdfVersion is PDF1.5 or higher) 4. Keep LZW
PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality	Int32	R/W	<p>For grayscale image formats that cannot be stored directly in the PDF, if JPEG compression is specified in PdfGrayscaleImageCompression the image quality can be specified by a numerical value of 1-100. Higher values are proportional to increased image quality, however the file size also becomes larger. Specify PdfJPEGQuality for color images.</p> <p>CAUTION: This is not for changing the quality of a JPEG formatted image.</p>
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies one of the following methods to downsample raster grayscale images in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution of greater than or equal to the one specified in PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled to the resolution specified by PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for grayscale images. Specify PdfImageDownSampling for color images, and PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingTarget	Int32	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster grayscale image is downsampled.
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingDPI	Int32	R/W	Sets the resolution for raster grayscale image.
PdfMonochromeImageCompression	Int32	R/W	When monochrome image formats cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image is transformed and stored in a bitmap format compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of data stored in a PDF file. These are the settings for monochrome images. Specify

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfMonochromeImageCompression	Int32	R/W	<p>PdfGrayscaleImageCompression for grayscale images, and PdfImageCompression for color images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. CCITT Group4 1. CCITT Group3 2. Run Length compression 3. ZLIB compression 4. None
PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies one of the following methods to downsample raster monochrome images in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution of greater than or equal to the one specified in PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled into the resolution specified by PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for monochrome images. Specify PdfImageDownSampling for color images, and PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling for grayscale images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingTarget	Int32	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster monochrome image is downsampled.
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingDPI	Int32	R/W	Sets the resolution for the downsampled raster monochrome image.
PdfLinearize	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to output linearized PDF or not. [no-LT]
PdfCompressContentStream	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether the text and line art in a PDF are compressed in order to reduce the size of PDF.
PdfUseLaunchForRelativeURI	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether external links specified by the relative address are transformed into 'Open the file' or into a 'World Wide Web link' in the PDF link properties. If the value is set as true, it becomes 'Open the file'. If the value is false, it becomes 'World Wide Web link'
PdfRGBConversion	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies how to convert the RGB color space (DeviceRGB) to DeviceGray.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. No Conversion 1. Black to DeviceGray 2. Gray to DeviceGray 3. All RGB to DeviceGray 4. All RGB to CMYK
PdfConvertImageColorSpace	Boolean	R/W	Converts RGB images automatically into CMYK when outputting PDF/X and PDF/A. [no-LT]
PdfRasterizeResolution	Int32	R/W	Specifies the rasterize-resolution value of the transformed raster images from 70 to 500(DPI). SVG, EMF and WMF are rendered in PDF as vectors without being changed to raster images.
PdfColorProfile	String	R/W	When PDF/A-1b:2005 is specified to PdfVersion, the specification of the ICC profile is indispensable. Specify the ICC profile with its full path. This parameter is invalid with any PDF other than PDF/A-1b:2005.
PdfImport3DAnnotation	Boolean	R/W	Imports 3D object. [no-LT]
PdfOutputScale	String	W	Specifies the scaling ratio of the output PDF. A unit or % value can be specified.
PdfOutputHeight	String	R/W	Scales the height of the output PDF. A unit or % value can be specified.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfOutputWidth	String	R/W	Scales the width of the output PDF. A unit or % value can be specified.
PdfErrorOnPDFXFault	Boolean	R/W	An error is not issued when PDF/X or PDF/A is generating.

Properties – SVG Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
SvgVersion	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies the SVG version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. SVG 1.1 1. SVG Basic 2. SVG Tiny
SvgImageProcessingType	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies how to treat images contained in the output SVG.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all image files. 1. Copies all image files to the destination specified by SvgImageCopyPath, and then links. 2. Links images that can be linked and embeds images that have to be embedded. Raster images other than JPEG and PNG are always embedded. 3. Copies images that have been linked to the destination that is specified by SvgImageCopyPath, and links. The embedded image are embedded. <p>If this parameter is omitted, the default is 0 and all images are embedded.</p>
SvgImageCopyPath	String	R/W	Specifies the destination for the copied images if 1 or 3 is specified for SvgImageProcessingType.
SvgGzipCompression	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to compress the outputted SVG into gzip format.
SvgSingleFile	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether a formatted result composed of multiple pages is output as a single SVG file or as multiple SVG files. If the value is true, output is as a single SVG file. If the value is false, output is as multiple SVG files. When multiple files are output, the files are named as specified in SvgFormat. This takes effect only when outputting to a file and is not valid when output is without a file name such as when streaming.
SvgImageRename	Boolean	R/W	When images are copied to the directory specified by SvgImageCopyPath etc., specifies whether to rename all file names to the prefix specified in SvgImagePrefix, or use the original name. When the file name is duplicated, a sequential number is added. When true is specified, all files are renamed.
SvgImagePrefix	String	R/W	When images are copied to the directory specified by SvgImageCopyPath, specifies the prefix of the file name. The file name will be prefixed followed by a sequential numbers only if the Default is empty.
SvgSinglePageNumber	Boolean	R/W	When SvgSingleFile=false is specified, specifies whether to add sequential number to the output SVG even if it has only one-page. If false it is not added to the output SVG.
SvgFormat	String	R/W	When the original document has multiple pages and false is specified in SvgSingleFile, each page will be output as an SVG files that has a consecutive number at the end of the file name. This parameter specifies the format of those consecutive numbers. For example, when "document.svg" is specified as the name, by specifying "-01" for SvgFormat the output files will be document-01.svg, document-02.svg and so on. If this parameter is omitted, "1" is considered to have been specified.
SvgEmbedAllFonts	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to embed fonts in the outputted SVG.
SvgEmbedFonts	String	R/W	Embeds the specified font in the created SVG. place commas between fonts to specify multiple fonts.
SvgErrorOnEmbedFault	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when font embedding fails.
SvgImageConversion	Int32	R/W	<p>Selects how to convert the images embedded in the output SVG to the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG conversion

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
SvgImageConversion	Int32	R/W	2. PNG conversion
SvgJPEGQuality	Int32	R/W	For image formats which cannot be stored directly in SVG, if JPEG conversion is specified in SvgImageConversion, specifies the quality of the image from 1-100. Higher values are proportional to increased image quality, however the file size also increases. The initial value is set at 80.
SvgRasterizeResolution	Int32	R/W	Specifies the rasterize-resolution value of the raster image (Changed from a vector image) from 70 to 500(DPI). SVG, EMF and WMF are rendered in SVG as vectors without being changed to raster images.

Properties – INX Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
InxOutputMode	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies the INX output mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block area output mode

Properties – MIF Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
MifOutputMode	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies the MIF output mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block area output mode
MiflpMode	Int32	R/W	<p>Specifies the MIF image processing mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all images in MIF. 1. Links images as external files.

Properties – Printer Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PrnCopies	Int32	R/W	Specifies the number of copies when outputting to a printer. If nothing is specified, the value is considered as 1.
PrnCollate	Boolean	R/W	Indicates collation of multiple copies when outputting to a printer. If it is not specified or the value 'false' is specified, the same page is multi-copied continuously. If 'true' is specified, the pages specified from start to end are printed repeatedly.
BatchPrint	Boolean	R/W	When the value false is specified, the print dialog box is displayed when printing. If the setting is omitted or the value 'true' is specified, the print dialog is not displayed.

Values can be added using the following units.

Representation	Meanings
cm	centimeter
mm	millimeter. 1 mm = 1/10 cm
in	inch. 1 in = 2.54 cm
pt	point. 1 pt = 1/72 in
pc	pica. 1 pc = 12 pt
jpt	1 jpt = 0.3514 mm
q	1 q = 0.25 mm

Methods

XfoObj Class provides the following methods.

Name	Return Value	Arguments	Functions
Dispose	None	None	Releases the resource. Please be sure to call this method when you exit the object.
Execute	None	None	Execute formatting and outputs to a PDF specified in OutputFilePath or the printer specified in PrinterName.
Render	None	Stream inputStream Stream outputStream String outDevice	Executes the formatting of XSL-FO document specified for inputStream, and outputs it to outputStream in the output form specified for outDevice. If the outDevice parameter is omitted, @PDF is automatically specified.
Render	None	XmlDocument inputDoc Stream outputStream String outDevice	Executes the formatting of XSL-FO document specified for inputDoc, and outputs it to outputStream in the output form specified for outDevice. If the outDevice parameter is omitted, @PDF is automatically specified.
Render	None	Stream inputStream Stream xsltStream Stream outputStream String outDevice	Transforms an XML document specified to xmlSrc using an XSL stylesheet specified to xslSrc, then executes the formatting of XSL-FO document and outputs it to outputStream in the output form specified for outDevice. If the outDevice parameter is omitted, @PDF is automatically specified. A standard XSLT Processor of .NET Framework is used for the XSLT conversion. The ExternalXSLT property and the setting of XSLT Processor in the Option Setting File is disregarded.
Clear	None	None	Initializes formatting engine.
SetXSLTParam	None	String name String value	Sets parameter name and value for xsl:param.
ClearXSLTParam	None	None	Clears all parameter name and value for xsl:param.
SetFontAlias	None	String fontname String aliasname	Sets the substitution of font name. This substitution acts on the font names existing in FO. The font name 'fontName' is replaced to 'aliasName'.
EraseFontAlias	None	String fontname	Erases the substitution of font name 'fontName'.
ClearFontAlias	None	None	Clears all substitutions of font name.
GetFormattingError	None	Collections.ArrayList errlist	After the formatting finishes, collects the error information and stores it as an argument in Collections.ArrayList provided the error is not an exit level (fatal) error. ErrorLevel, ErrorCode and ErrorMessage are the XfoErrorInformation classes reported.
GetOptionFileURI	String	Int32 index	Gets the URL of Option Setting File from the index you specified
AddOptionFileURI	None	String fileURI	Adds the URL of the XML-based Option Setting File that indicates the options for AH Formatter V6.2 . The contents of Option Setting File are evaluated and if new properties are set, the former setting will be overwritten.
AddUserStylesheetURI	None	String fileURI	Specifies the CSS user stylesheet you want to add. AddUserStylesheetURI can be specified any number of times. It is applied by specified order prior to the stylesheet specified by StylesheetURI.

PDF Output to the Web Browser

It's possible to directly output PDF to the Web Browser, when you use ASP.NET application on a server and output the formatted result in PDF. The following is its sample of program.

```
public class TestPage : Page
{
    public void OnStreamPDF(Object sender, EventArgs ea)
```

```
{  
    XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj obj = new XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj();  
    obj.ExitLevel = 4;  
    FileStream fs = null;  
    try  
    {  
        fs = File.Open("c:\\temp\\sample.fo", FileMode.Open, FileAccess.Read);  
        Response.Clear();  
        Response.ContentType = "application/pdf";  
        obj.Render(fs, Response.OutputStream);  
        Response.End();  
    }  
    catch (Exception e)  
    {  
        throw e;  
    }  
    finally  
    {  
        if (fs != null)  
            fs.Close();  
    }  
}
```

Programming Example

The following is a C# programming sample. In addition, [\[Install directory\]/samples/dotnet](#) includes some useful sample files for C# and VisualBasic.NET.

```
using System;

public class MainApp
{
    static public void Main()
    {
        XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj obj = new XfoDotNetCtl.XfoObj();
        obj.DocumentURI = "c:\\temp\\test.xml";
        obj.StylesheetURI = "c:\\temp\\test.xsl";
        obj.OutputFilePath = "c:\\temp\\test.pdf";
        obj.ExitLevel = 4;
        try
        {
            obj.Execute();
        }
        catch(XfoException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ErrCode : " + e.ErrorCode + "\n" + e.Message);
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
        }
        finally
        {
            obj.Dispose();
        }
    }
}
```

COM Interface

The COM Interface makes it possible for **AH Formatter V6.2** to function through applications using COM-supported languages such as Visual Basic, Delphi and VBScript.

32-bit Windows version can be installed on Windows x64 Edition. In that case, please compile it for Win32 platform
CAUTION: when you use COM interface. For example, when you use the script language using WSH, please use WSH of the 32-bit version. (C:\Windows\SysWOW64\cscript.exe)

Object Class Name

The object class name is shown below. Use "XfoComCtl.XfoObj" as the object class name when invoking from the Create Object statement in Visual Basic.

namespace	XfoComCtl
Object Class Name	XfoObj
COM DLL File Name	XfoComCtl62.dll

In order to use the COM interface, Windows registration is required. When **AH Formatter V6.2** is installed correctly, the registration of COM is automatically done. To re-register the COM, please run regsvr32 from the console as follows.

```
> cd [Install directory]
> regsvr32 XfoComCtl62.dll
```

When running regsvr32, an error may occur if User Account Control (UAC) function is set to Windows. In such a case, please run a command prompt as an administrator by clicking "Run As Administrator" from the context menu, then run regsvr32.

Properties

XfoObj includes the following properties.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
Version	String	R	Get the version string of AH Formatter V6.2 .
DocumentURI	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the URI of the XML/FO/HTML documents you will format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If it is omitted or "@STDIN" is specified, XML documents are loaded from stdin. <p>The documents loaded from stdin are supposed to be FO files.</p>
StylesheetURI	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the URI of XSL/CSS stylesheets for formatting. If the specified XML document is FO, or the XML file contains the processing instruction <?xml-stylesheet ...?> and the stylesheet is specified, or the specified document is HTML, there is no need to specify a stylesheet.</p> <p>If the specified document is HTML, it will be the last user stylesheet. It is applied posterior to the stylesheet added by AddUserStylesheetURI and the Option Setting File specified by AddOptionFileURI.</p>
FormatterType	Long	R/W	<p>Specify formatter type. Use one of the following values to specify the formatter type. If this parameter is omitted or invalid, it is considered as AUTO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. AUTO 1. HTML 2. XHTML 3. XML+CSS 4. XSL-FO
HtmlDefaultCharset	String	R/W	Specifies the default encoding of HTML. This setting is applied to HTML whose encoding is unknown.
OptionFileURI	String	R/W	Specifies the URI of the XML-format Option Setting File which describes AH Formatter V6.2 options. The contents of the Option Setting File are evaluated immediately. When you set the property which is contrary to the already set property, the former setting will be overwritten. URI added by AddOptionFileURI will be canceled.
OptionFileCount	Long	R	Counts the number of Option Setting Files you specified.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PrinterName	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the output format or the printer name to output.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a printer name is specified, the formatted result is outputted to that printer. When "@STDPRN" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to the currently used printer. When "@PDF" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to PDF. When "@SVG" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to SVG. When "@PS" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to PostScript. When "@INX" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to INX. When "@MIF" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to MIF. When "@XPS" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to XPS. When "@TEXT" is specified, the formatted result is outputted to a text format file. [no-LT] When "@AreaTree" is specified, the AreaTree will be outputted. [no-LT] <p>If this parameter is omitted, -p @PDF is automatically specified. Please refer to "How to specify the printer name" for details.</p> <p>Please refer to "PDF Output" for the PDF output information.</p> <p>Please refer to "SVG Output" for the SVG output information.</p> <p>Please refer to "PostScript Output" for the PostScript output.</p> <p>Please refer to "INX Output" for the INX output.</p> <p>Please refer to "MIF Output" for the MIF output.</p> <p>Please refer to "XPS Output" for the XPS output.</p> <p>Please refer to "TEXT Output" for the text output information.</p> <p>@TEXT and @AreaTree are not effective with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
PrinterSettingURI	String	R/W	Specifies the URI of the Printer Setting File. Please refer to " How to create a Printer Setting File ".
OutputFilePath	String	R/W	Specifies the output file path of the formatted result. When the printer is specified as an output format by PrinterName, a printing result is saved to the specified file by the printer driver. When output format other than a printer is specified, it is saved as the specified file with the specified output format. When "@STDOUT" is specified, it goes to standard output. When omitted, it goes to standard output. However in cases in which ActiveServerPages requires, PDF data is output to the Web Browser .
OutputFOPath	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the output FO (or HTML etc.) file as the result of XSLT when the input files are an XML document and an XSL stylesheet.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the input file is FO, no file is outputted. When "@STDOUT" is specified, it is considered as stdout. <p>If the setting is omitted, nothing outputs.</p>
ExternalXSLT	String	R/W	<p>Command-line of External XSLT Processor. If this is omitted, default MSXML will be used.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>xslt %param -o %3 %1 %2</pre> <p>These meanings are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> %1 : XML document %2 : XSL stylesheet %3 : XSLT output file %param : xsl:param <p>%1 to %3 are used to express only parameter positions. Do not replace them with actual file names. In case you use XSL:param for an external XSLT Processor, set the parameter in XSLTParamFormat and SetXSLTParam.</p>
XSLTParamFormat	String	R/W	<p>Specifies the parameter format of xsl:param when using External XSLT Processor. For example:</p> <pre>-p %p %v</pre> <p>These meanings are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> %p : Parameter Name

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
XSLTParamFormat	String	R/W	• %v : Parameter Value
BaseURI	String	R/W	Specifies the default base URI.
FormattedPages	Long	R	Get the formatted total pages.
TwoPassFormatting	Boolean	R/W	When formatting a huge document with a large amount of unresolved <fo:page-number-citation>, a large amount of memories are consumed because the cancellation of the page information is impossible. Therefore, the limit is caused in the number of pages to format. This parameter solves that problem by making the formatting two passes. Although its processing time may be increased, only the page number information which should be solved will consume the memory and the memory consumption will be extremely decreased. Please refer to " Formatting Large Document ". [no-LT]
MultiVolume	Boolean	R/W	Specifies to output PDF in separate volume. The error occurs when FO doesn't include the axf:output-volume-info extension property. When the value false is specified, the StartVolume/EndVolume parameter is invalid, instead the parameter StartPage/EndPage is effective. When the value true is specified, the parameter StartPage/EndPage is invalid, instead the parameter StartVolume/EndVolume is effective. [no-LT]
StartVolume EndVolume	Long	R/W	Effective when MultiVolume=true is specified. Specifies the start and the end of separate volume to output. If the setting of start for separate volume is omitted or the value true is less than or equal to 0, the start volume is accounted as the first volume. If the setting of start for separate volume is omitted or the value true is greater than actual number of separate volume, the end volume is accounted as the last volume. If the setting is conflicted, an error occurs. (e.g. StartVolume=5 EndVolume=3) [no-LT]
TotalVolumeCount	Long	R	Gets the number of all the separate volumes when outputting PDF to multiple separate volumes. [no-LT]
OutputVolumeCount	Long	R	Gets the number of the actual separate volumes when outputting PDF to multiple separate volumes. [no-LT]
StartPage EndPage	Long	R/W	Specifies the start page number or the end page number of a document to output. If the start page is omitted or the specified value is 0 or less, the start page is considered the first page. If the end page is omitted or 0, or the specified value exceeds the actual page number, the end page is considered last page. If the setting is inconsistent, (for example, StartPage=5 EndPage=3) an error occurs.
ExitLevel	Long	R/W	Specifies error level to abort formatting process. AH Formatter V6.2 will stop formatting when the detected error level is equal to the specified ExitLevel property or higher. The default value is 2 (Warning). Thus if an error occurred and error level is 2 (Warning) or higher, the formatting process will be aborted. Legal values are from 1 to 4. When the value of 5 or higher is specified, it is considered to be the value of 4. If an error-level:4 (Fatal error) occurs, the formatting process will be aborted unconditionally. Note: Setting this value does not cause an error message to be displayed.
ErrorLevel	Long	R	Indicates the error level that occurred during the formatting process. 1. Information 2. Warning 3. Recoverable Error 4. Fatal Error
ErrorCode	Long	R	Indicates the error code of the error that occurred during the formatting process. Zero means no error. Non-zero indicates an error occurred.
ErrorMessage	String	R	Indicates the error message of the error that occurred during the formatting process.
XMLDOMDocument	Object	W	Specifies the target XML document used by the MSXML XMLDOMDocument object.
XMLDOMStylesheet	Object	W	Specifies the target XSL stylesheet used by the MSXML XMLDOMDocument object.

Properties – PDF Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfVersion	Long	R/W	Specifies PDF version: 0. PDF1.3 1. PDF1.4

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfVersion	Long	R/W	<p>2. PDF1.5 3. PDF1.6 4. PDF1.7 101. PDF/X-1a:2001 103. PDF/X-3:2002 104. PDF/X-1a:2003 105. PDF/X-2:2003 106. PDF/X-3:2003 107. PDF/X-4:2008 200. PDF/A-1a:2005 400. PDF/A-1b:2005</p> <p>Impossible to specify PDF/X or PDF/A with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
PdfEncryptLevel	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies the key length when encrypting the PDF file during outputting. The key length can be specified as follows: (Note: This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later with PdfVersion.)</p> <p>0. 40bit RC4 1. 128bit RC4 2. 128bit AES 3. 256bit AES</p> <p>128bit AES is effective with PDF1.5 or later, 256bit AES is effective with PDF1.7 or later.</p>
PdfTag	Boolean	R/W	Generates Tagged PDF. Ignored if PDF cannot be tagged depending on the PDF versions. [no-LT]
PdfReversePage	Boolean	R/W	Outputs pages in reverse order to PDF.
PdfUserPassword	String	W	Specifies the user password for PDF. The password must be within 32 bytes.
PdfOwnerPassword	String	W	Specifies the owner password for PDF. The password must be within 32 bytes.
PdfNoPrinting	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits printing the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoChanging	Boolean	R/W	Prohibits making changes to the PDF file.
PdfNoContentCopying	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits copying the content of the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoAddingOrChangingComments	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits adding comments and form fields to the PDF file. It is necessary to specify PdfOwnerPassword so that this parameter is effective.</p>
PdfNoFillForm	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits filling in of form fields and signing of the PDF file. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later for the PdfVersion. In order to make this parameter effective, the setting of the other parameter may be required. See also the 'PDF Reference' from Adobe Systems Incorporated for more details.</p>
PdfNoAccessibility	Boolean	R/W	<p>Prohibits text access for screen reader devices of the PDF file. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later for the PdfVersion.</p>
PdfNoAssembleDoc	Boolean	R/W	Prohibits inserting, deleting and rotating the PDF pages. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later for the PdfVersion.
PdfEmbedAllFontsEx	Long	R/W	Specifies whether or not to embed all embeddable fonts used in the file of the formatted result into PDF. However, even if all fonts

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfEmbedAllFontsEx	Long	R/W	are specified to embed, the font forbidden embedding or the font which is not able to be embedded to PDF cannot be embedded. 0. Specified font 1. All fonts excluding Base14 font 2. All fonts including Base14 font
PdfEmbedFonts	String	R/W	Embeds the specified font in the created PDF. If you want to specify plural fonts, put commas between each fonts.
PdfEmbedSubsetFontPercentage	Long	R/W	Embeds all fonts when the percent of characters used is greater than or equal to specified value, subsets embedded fonts when the percent of characters used is less than the specified value. If nothing is specified, it is considered as 100 and embedded fonts are always subset.
PdfErrorOnEmbedFault	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when font embedding fails.
PdfErrorOnMissingGlyph	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when there is a missing glyph.
PdfPrintingAllowed	Long	R/W	Specifies whether and how to permit printing of PDF. This parameter is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later with PdfVersion. 0. Not Allowed 1. Low Resolution Printing 2. High Resolution Printing
PdfImageCompression	Long	R/W	When a color image format cannot be stored directly in the PDF, an image is stored after being transformed into a bitmap format which is compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of the data stored in a PDF file. When Auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of PdfJPEGQuality and PdfRasterizeResolution. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. These are the settings for color images. Specify PdfGrayscaleImageCompression for grayscale images, and PdfMonochromeImageCompression for monochrome images. 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression (it is effective only when PdfVersion is PDF1.5 or higher) 4. Keep LZW
PdfJPEGQuality	Long	R/W	For color image formats that cannot be stored directly in PDF, the image quality can be specified by a numerical value within the range of 1-100 when JPEG compression is specified for the image-compression method. The quality becomes higher in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger. This is the setting for color images. Specify PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality for grayscale images. CAUTION: This is not for changing the quality of a JPEG formatted image.
PdfPutImageColorProfile	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to embed in the PDF the ICC profile of the color image that will be embedded.
PdfImageDownSampling	Long	R/W	Specifies either of the following methods to downsample the raster color image in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution greater than or equal to the one specified by PdfImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled into the resolution specified by PdfImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for color images. Specify PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling for grayscale

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfImageDownSampling	Long	R/W	<p>images, and PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfImageDownSamplingTarget	Long	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster color image is downsampled.
PdfImageDownSamplingDPI	Long	R/W	Sets the resolution for which a raster color image is to be downsampled.
PdfGrayscaleImageCompression	Long	R/W	<p>When a raster grayscale image format cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into a bitmap format which is compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of the data stored in a PDF file. When Auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality and PdfRasterizeResolution. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. These are the settings for grayscale images. Specify PdfImageCompression for color images and PdfMonochromeImageCompression for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG compression 2. ZLIB compression 3. JPEG2000 compression (it is effective only when PdfVersion is PDF1.5 or higher) 4. Keep LZW
PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality	Long	R/W	<p>For grayscale image formats that cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image quality can be specified by a numerical value within the range of 1-100 when JPEG compression is specified for PdfGrayscaleImageCompression. The quality becomes higher in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger. Specify PdfJPEGQuality for color images.</p> <p>CAUTION: This is not for changing the quality of a JPEG formatted image.</p>
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies either of the following methods to downsample raster grayscale images in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution greater than or equal to the one specified by PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled into the resolution specified by PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for grayscale images. Specify PdfImageDownSampling for color images and PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling for monochrome images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingTarget	Long	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster grayscale image is downsampled.
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingDPI	Long	R/W	Sets the resolution for which a raster grayscale image is to be downsampled.
PdfMonochromeImageCompression	Long	R/W	When monochrome image formats cannot be stored directly in the PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into a bitmap format which is compatible with PDF. Use one of the following values to specify the compression method of the data stored in a PDF file. These are the settings for monochrome images. Specify

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfMonochromeImageCompression	Long	R/W	<p>PdfGrayscaleImageCompression for grayscale images and PdfImageCompression for color images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. CCITT Group4 1. CCITT Group3 2. Run Length compression 3. ZLIB compression 4. None
PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies either of the following methods to downsample raster monochrome images in a PDF. When a value other than None is specified, an image that has a resolution greater than or equal to the one specified by PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingDPI will be downsampled to the resolution specified for PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingTarget. These are the settings for monochrome images. Specify PdfImageDownSampling for color images and PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling for grayscale images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Average 2. Bicubic 3. Subsampling
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingTarget	Long	R/W	Sets the target resolution when a raster monochrome image is downsampled.
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingDPI	Long	R/W	Sets resolution for which raster monochrome images are to be downsampled.
PdfLinearize	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to output linearized PDF or not. [no-LT]
PdfCompressContentStream	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether the text and the line art in PDF are compressed in order to make the size of PDF smaller or not.
PdfUseLaunchForRelativeURI	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether external links specified by the relative address are transformed into 'Open the file' or into 'World Wide Web link' in the PDF link properties. If the value is true, it is transformed to 'Open the file'. If the value is false, it is transformed to 'World Wide Web link'
PdfRGBConversion	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies how to convert the RGB color space (DeviceRGB) to DeviceGray.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. No Conversion 1. Black to DeviceGray 2. Gray to DeviceGray 3. All RGB to DeviceGray 4. All RGB to CMYK
PdfConvertImageColorSpace	Boolean	R/W	Converts RGB images automatically into CMYK when outputting PDF/X and PDF/A. [no-LT]
PdfRasterizeResolution	Long	R/W	Specifies the value of the rasterize-resolution of the transformed raster images in the range from 70 to 500(DPI). SVG, EMF and WMF are rendered in PDF as vectors without being transformed to raster images.
PdfColorProfile	String	R/W	When PDF/A-1b:2005 is specified to PdfVersion, the specification of the ICC profile is indispensable. Specify the ICC profile with its full path. This parameter is invalid with any PDF other than PDF/A-1b:2005.
PdfImport3DAnnotation	Boolean	R/W	Imports 3D object. [no-LT]
PdfOutputScale	String	W	Specifies the scaling ratio of the PDF to output. A value with a unit or % value can be specified as length.
PdfOutputHeight	String	R/W	Scales the height of PDF to output. A value with a unit or % value can be specified as length.

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PdfOutputWidth	String	R/W	Scales the width of PDF to output. A value with a unit or % value can be specified as length.
PdfErrorOnPDFXFault	Boolean	R/W	An error is not issued when PDF/X or PDF/A is generating.

Properties – SVG Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
SvgVersion	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies SVG version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. SVG 1.1 1. SVG Basic 2. SVG Tiny
SvgImageProcessingType	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies how to treat images contained in the SVG being created.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all image files. 1. Copies all image files to the destination that is specified by <code>SvgImageCopyPath</code>, and then links. 2. Links images that can be linked and embeds images that have to be embedded. Raster images other than JPEG and PNG are always embedded. 3. Copies images that have been linked to the destination that is specified by <code>SvgImageCopyPath</code>, and links. The embedded image are embedded. <p>If this parameter is omitted, it is considered as 0 and all images are embedded.</p>
SvgImageCopyPath	String	R/W	Specifies the destination to copy images to as specified in 1 or 3 for <code>SvgImageProcessingType</code> .
SvgGzipCompression	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to compress the outputted SVG into gzip format or not.
SvgSingleFile	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether a formatted result composed of multiple pages is output as a single SVG file or as multiple SVG files. If the value is true, outputs as a single SVG file. If the value is false, outputs as multiple SVG files. When multiple files are output, the files are named by the format specified by <code>SvgFormat</code> . This takes effect only when outputting to a file and is not valid when output is without a file name such as when streaming, etc.
SvgImageRename	Boolean	R/W	When images are copied to the directory specified by <code>SvgImageCopyPath</code> etc., specifies whether to rename all file names to the prefix specified by <code>SvgImagePrefix</code> , or use the original name. When the file name is duplicated a sequential number is added. When true is specified, all files are renamed.
SvgImagePrefix	String	R/W	When images are copied to the directory specified by <code>SvgImageCopyPath</code> , specifies the prefix of the file name. The file name will be prefixed followed by a sequential numbers only if the Default is empty.
SvgSinglePageNumber	Boolean	R/W	When <code>SvgSingleFile=false</code> is specified, specifies whether to add sequential number to the output SVG even if it has only one-page. If false it is not added.
SvgFormat	String	R/W	When the original document has multiple pages and false is specified in <code>SvgSingleFile</code> , each page will be output as an SVG file that has a consecutive number at the end of the file name. This parameter specifies the format of those consecutive numbers. For example, when "document.svg" is specified as the name for the output file, by specifying "-01" for <code>SvgFormat</code> the output files will be document-01.svg, document-02.svg and so on. If this parameter is omitted then "1" is considered to have been specified.
SvgEmbedAllFonts	Boolean	R/W	Specifies whether to embed fonts in the outputted SVG.
SvgEmbedFonts	String	R/W	Embeds the specified font in the created SVG. If you want to specify multiple fonts, put commas between fonts.
SvgErrorOnEmbedFault	Boolean	R/W	When true is specified, an error is issued when font embedding fails.
SvgImageConversion	Long	R/W	<p>Selects how to convert the images embedded in SVG from the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Auto 1. JPEG conversion

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
SvgImageConversion	Long	R/W	2. PNG conversion
SvgJPEGQuality	Long	R/W	For the image format which cannot be stored directly in SVG, when JPEG conversion is specified in SvgImageConversion, specifies the quality of the image using the range of 1-100. The quality becomes higher in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger. The initial value is 80.
SvgRasterizeResolution	Long	R/W	Specifies the value of the rasterize-resolution of the raster image which is transformed from vector image in the range from 70 to 500(DPI). SVG, EMF and WMF are rendered in SVG as vectors without being transformed to raster images.

Properties – INX Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
InxOutputMode	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies the INX output mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block area output mode

Properties – MIF Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
MifOutputMode	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies the MIF output mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Text area output mode 1. Line area output mode 2. Block area output mode
MiflpMode	Long	R/W	<p>Specifies the MIF image processing mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Embeds all images in MIF. 1. Links images as external files.

Properties – Printer Settings

Name	Type	R/W	Functions
PrnCopies	Long	R/W	Specifies the number of copies. Effective when outputting to a printer. If nothing is specified, the value is considered as 1.
PrnCollate	Boolean	R/W	Indicates collation of multiple copies. Effective when outputting to printer and the number of copies is more than 1. If it is not specified or the value 'false' is specified, the same page is multi-copied continuously. If true is specified, the pages specified print from start to end repeatedly.
BatchPrint	Boolean	R/W	When the value false is specified, the print dialog box is displayed when printing. If the setting is omitted or the value true is specified, the print dialog is not displayed.

Some values can be added one of the following units.

Representation	Meanings
cm	centimeter
mm	millimeter. 1 mm = 1/10 cm
in	inch. 1 in = 2.54 cm
pt	point. 1 pt = 1/72 in
pc	pica. 1 pc = 12 pt
jpt	1 jpt = 0.3514 mm
q	1 q = 0.25 mm

Methods

XfoObj provides the following methods.

Name	Return Value	Arguments	Functions
Execute	None	None	Executes the formatting and outputs to a PDF specified in OutputFilePath or printer specified in PrinterName.
Clear	None	None	Initializes the formatting engine.
SetXSLTParam	None	name : String value : String	Sets parameter name and value for xsl:param.
ClearXSLTParam	None	None	Clears all parameter names and values for xsl:param.
SetFontAlias	None	fontName : String aliasName : String	Sets the substitution of font name. This substitution acts on the font names existing in FO. The font name 'fontName' is replaced to 'aliasName'.
EraseFontAlias	None	fontName : String	Erases the substitution of font name 'fontName'.
ClearFontAlias	None	None	Clears all substitutions of font name.
GetOptionFileURI	String	index : Long	Gets the URL of Option Setting File from the index you specified.
AddOptionFileURI	None	fileURI : String	Adds the URL of the XML-based Option Setting File that indicates the options for AH Formatter V6.2 . The contents of Option Setting File are evaluated immediately. When you set a property which is contrary to a previously set property, the former setting will be overwritten.
AddUserStylesheetURI	None	String fileURI	Specifies the CSS user stylesheet you want to add. AddUserStylesheetURI can be specified any number of times. It is applied by specified order prior to the stylesheet specified by StylesheetURI.

Event

XfoObj provides the following event.

Name	Return Value	Arguments	Functions
onMessage	None	errLevel : Long errCode : Long errMsg : String	Events that returns error information (error level, error code, error message) in the formatting process.
onFormatPage	None	pageNo : Long	The number of pages that formatted during the formatting process can be received as an event. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Greater than or equal to 1 : Page number when formatting finished. • 0 : All page formatting has finished. • -1 : Start of the first pass of 2 pass formatting. • -2 : Start of the second pass of 2 pass formatting.

PDF Output to the Web Browser

It's possible to directly output PDF to the Web Browser, when you use ASP application on a server and output the formatted result in PDF. This output requires the following conditions:

1. Create a COM instance of AH Formatter using Server.CreateObject("XfoComCtl.XfoObj").
2. Specify "@PDF" to "PrinterName".
3. There is no "OutputFilePath" specified.
4. Perform "Response.End" after calling "Execute" method.

Programming Example

The following is a sample of VBScript programming. In addition, [\[Install directory\]/samples/com](#) included some useful sample files for COM.

```
dim obj
Set obj = CreateObject("XfoComCtl.XfoObj")

obj.DocumentURI = "c:\temp\test.xml"
obj.StyleSheetURI = "c:\temp\test.xsl"
obj.OutputFilePath = "c:\temp\test.pdf"
obj.ExitLevel = 4
obj.Execute()

if obj.ErrorCode <> 0 then
    MsgBox "ErrorCode : " & obj.ErrorCode & " " & obj.ErrorMessage
else
    MsgBox "Create PDF : " & obj.OutputFilePath

Set obj = Nothing
```

Java Interface

This interface allows **AH Formatter V6.2** to be invoked from Java programs. Please refer to [Java VM issues](#).

The Java Interface uses JNI (JavaNativeInterface).

CAUTION: 32-bit Windows version can be installed on Windows x64 Edition. In that case, please use JDK of the 31-bit version when you use Java interface.

Library files

The following library files are included in [\[Install directory\]](#) or [\[Install directory\]/lib](#).

Library file	Contents	Location
XfoJavaCtl.jar	Java Archiver	[Install directory]/lib
XfoJavaCtl62.dll	Java Interface Library for Windows	[Install directory]
libXfoJavaCtl62.so	Java Interface Library for Solaris	[Install directory]/lib
libXfoJavaCtl62.so	Java Interface Library for Linux	[Install directory]/lib
libXfoJavaCtl62.jnilib	Java Interface Library for Macintosh	[Install directory]/lib

In order to execute the Java Interface, directory of execute java and [\[Install directory\]/lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar](#) must be included in the CLASSPATH environment variable. In addition, from using JNI (JavaNativeInterface), in Windows version, [\[Install directory\]](#) must be included in the PATH environment variable. In the following environment, [\[Install directory\]/lib](#) must be included. In Solaris / Linux version, it must be included in the LD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variable. In Macintosh version, it must be included in the DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variable. See also [Environment Variables](#) for the necessary environment variables.

Windows version:

```
> set CLASSPATH=[Install directory]/lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar;%CLASSPATH%
> set PATH=[Install directory];%PATH%
```

Solaris / Linux version:

```
$ CLASSPATH=[Install directory]/lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar:${CLASSPATH}
$ export CLASSPATH
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH=[Install directory]/lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Java VM issues

Java Interface is built using J2SE5.0.

Using the interface in an application server

Since the native JNI library can be read by two or more Java VM class loaders, when using this interface in application servers, such as Tomcat, do not install the XfoJavaCtl.jar in the WEB-INF/lib of the WEB application. Set the interface to be read by class loaders (system class loader etc.) which only load once.

Running the Sample Program

[\[Install directory\]/samples/java](#) contains several simple sample programs.

The following shows how to execute these sample programs. In this case [\[Install directory\]/samples/java](#) must be included in CLASSPATH.

```
> cd [Install directory]/samples/java
> javac sample.java
> java sample sample.fo sample.pdf
```

API Specification

Please refer to the Javadoc documentation.

C/C++ Interface

The C/C++ Interface makes it possible to integrate **AH Formatter V6.2** into C/C++ programs.

CAUTION: 32-bit Windows version can be installed on Windows x64 Edition. In that case, please compile it for Win32 platform when you use C/C++ interface.

Header files

The following header files are included in [\[Install directory\]/include](#).

Header file	Contents	Location
xfoifc.h	Header for C++	[Install directory]/include
xfoifc_c.h	Header for C	

Library files

The following library files are included in [\[Install directory\]/lib](#) or [\[Install directory\]/lib](#).

Library file	Contents	Location
XfolInterface62.dll	C/C++ Interface Library for Windows	[Install directory]
libXfolInterface.so	C/C++ Interface Library for Solaris / Linux	[Install directory]/lib
libXfolInterface.dylib	C/C++ Interface Library for Macintosh	[Install directory]/lib

In the Windows version the following library file for link is included in [\[Install directory\]/lib](#).

Library file	Contents	Location
XfolInterface.lib	Library for DLL linking	[Install directory]/lib

Compiler issues

Windows

AH Formatter V6.2 Windows version is built using Microsoft Visual C++ 2010. MFC is not used without GUI. Please use a compatible compiler for your program.

Solaris

AH Formatter V6.2 Solaris version is built using Forte Developer 7 C++ 5.4 or Sun Studio 11. Please use a compatible compiler for your program.

Linux

AH Formatter V6.2 Linux and Linux 64bit version is built using GCC 4.1. Your program must be compiled using GCC 4.1 or later. For more detailed information about GCC, please refer to "[GCC, the GNU Compiler Collection](#)".

Macintosh

AH Formatter V6.2 Macintosh version is built using GCC 4.0 contained in Mac OS X Xcode Tools.

Building the sample programs

[\[Install directory\]/samples/cpp](#) and [\[Install directory\]/samples/c](#) includes some simple sample programs.

Windows

In order to build a sample with the command line of Visual C++ in the Windows environment, execute the compiler from the console as follows.

```
> cd [Install directory]/samples/cpp
> cl -EHsc -I ..\..\include sample.cpp ..\..\lib\xfoInterface.lib /MT
```

To build the executables for Windows, use the command prompt from [Start]-[Microsoft Visual Studio 2010]-[Visual Studio Tools].

[Install directory]/lib must be appended to the PATH environment variable in order to execute this program. The sample executes as follows.

```
> sample sample.fo sample.pdf
```

Solaris

The following command-line shows how to build the sample in the Solaris environment. Be sure to specify `libXfoInterface.so` to the linker as the library. [Install directory]/lib must be appended to LD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variable.

```
$ cd [Install directory]/samples/cpp
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH=../lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
$ CC sample.cpp -I../include -L../lib -lXfoInterface -oSamplecppcmd -mt
```

In order to execute the built sample program, a setup of other environment variables is necessary. Please refer to [Environment Variables](#) for more details.

Linux

The following command-line shows how to build the sample in the Linux environment using GCC.

```
$ cd [Install directory]/samples/cpp
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH=../lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
$ g++ sample.cpp -I../include -L../lib -lXfoInterface -oSamplecppcmd -lstdc++ -lpthread
```

In order to execute the built sample program, a setup of other environment variables is necessary. Please refer to [Environment Variables](#) for more details.

As mentioned previous, the GCC version is very important. Please check your GCC version using --version command-line option.

```
$ g++ --version
g++34 (GCC) 3.4.6 20060404 (Red Hat 3.4.6-4)
Copyright (C) 2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
This is free software; see the source for copying conditions. There is NO
warranty; not even for MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.
```

API Specification

Please refer to the document that was generated by Doxygen.

PDF Output

PDF output is a standard function of **AH Formatter V6.2**. The PDF versions that can be output are as follows:

- PDF1.3
PDF1.3 can be browsed by Adobe Acrobat (Reader) 4.0 or later.
- PDF1.4
PDF1.4 can be browsed by Adobe Acrobat (Reader) 5.0 or later.
- PDF1.5
PDF1.5 can be browsed by Adobe Acrobat (Reader) 6.0 or later.
- PDF1.6
PDF1.6 can be browsed by Adobe Acrobat (Reader) 7.0 or later.
- PDF1.7
PDF1.7 can be browsed by Adobe Acrobat (Reader) 8.0 or later.
- PDF/X [no-LT]
Possible to output [PDF/X](#) with **AH Formatter V6.2**.
- PDF/A [no-LT]
Possible to output [PDF/A](#) with **AH Formatter V6.2**.

AH Formatter V6.2 outputs PDFs with the following features:

- By setting extended properties inside the original document, bookmarks and links can be created. [☞ Bookmark and Link in PDF Output](#)
- Possible to output PDF in multi separate volume from one FO. [no-LT] [☞ Output PDF in multi separate volume](#)
- By setting extended properties inside the original document, the meta information, such as 'Title', 'Subject', 'Author', and 'Keyword' information can be embedded. [☞ Document Information for PDF Output](#)
- When setting the security, 40-bit RC4, 128-bit RC4, 128-bit AES and 256-bit AES can be applied to the encryption. Available encryptions may differ depending on the PDF versions. [☞ PDF Output Setting, PDF Option Setting Dialog](#)
- Possible to output [Tagged PDF](#). [no-LT]

See also [PDF Output Settings](#) for more details.

PDF/X

PDF/X is defined in ISO 15930 and is a subset of PDF that aims to exchange the data for printing. Basically all the information for printing is included in the PDF file. It's possible to output PDF/X with the following versions with **AH Formatter V6.2**. Impossible to output PDF/X with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

- PDF/X-1a:2001 (ISO 15930-1:2001)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.3.
- PDF/X-3:2002 (ISO 15930-3:2002)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.3.
- PDF/X-1a:2003 (ISO 15930-4:2003)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.4 and a subset of PDF/X-3:2003.
- PDF/X-2:2003 (ISO 15930-5:2003)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.4 and a superset of PDF/X-3:2003.
- PDF/X-3:2003 (ISO 15930-6:2003)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.4.
- PDF/X-4:2008 (ISO 15930-7:2008)
It's a specification based on PDF 1.6.

The following shows the main features for PDF/X.

	PDF/X-1a	PDF/X-2	PDF/X-3	PDF/X-4
All fonts must be embedded.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
The output intent must be specified.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
ICC profiles specified as the output intent must be embedded.	No	No	No	Yes
Supports CMYK, Spot color.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Supports Grayscale.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Supports RGB.	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

	PDF/X-1a	PDF/X-2	PDF/X-3	PDF/X-4
Supports transparency.	No	No	No	Yes
Supports PDFs with encryption; setting of password, the restriction for printing and the restriction for changing must not be done.	No	No	No	No
PDF can contain links or annotations, etc. in the print area.	No	No	No	No

In PDF/X, all fonts must be embedded. When the font that is not allowed to embed is used, PDF/X cannot be generated.

PDF/X adopts the appropriate information by ignoring the most of the information set by users, such as font embedding, etc. For example the version of the output PDF is specified to PDF/X, [Font Embedding](#) in the [PDF Option Setting Dialog](#) will be displayed in gray color.

When an image incompatible as PDF/X is specified, the processing changes depending on [error-on-pdfx-fault](#) specified in [PDF Output Settings](#). See also [error-on-pdfx-fault](#).

In order to specify the output intent by [ICC profile](#), use the URL of the ICC profile to the src property for fo:color-profile. In this case please omit the color-profile-name property or specify "#CMYK", "#GrayScale" or "#RGB". If this property is omitted, it is considered as "#CMYK". For example:

```
<fo:declarations>
  <fo:color-profile
    src="url(file:///C:/WINDOWS/system32/spool/drivers/color/JapanColor2001Coated.icc)"
    color-profile-name="#CMYK"
  />
</fo:declarations>
```

With PDF/X, the output intent which can be specified is only one. When multiple output intents are specified, it is unsure which is adopted.

With PDF/X, the only ICC profile of the output intent which can be embedded is the one whose device class is "ptr". Any ICC profiles other than "ptr" cannot be used.

With PDF/X-1..3, the output condition identifier can also be specified with the src property for fo:color-profile. However, the output condition identifier cannot be specified with PDF/X-4. The setting is done in the form of the fragmentation of URI. For example:

```
<fo:declarations>
  <fo:color-profile
    src="#OutputConditionIdentifier=CGATS TR 001&amp;RegistryName=http://www.color.org"
  />
</fo:declarations>
```

The first character must be #. After that, the parameters are lined and separated by &#. Each parameter is in the form of name=value. The name of the parameters are as follows (by mapping to the items of the OutputIntent dictionary for PDF/X.)

- OutputConditionIdentifier
Specifies the output condition identifier. When the URL of the ICC profile is specified, the default value is Custom.
- OutputCondition
Specifies the output condition (Possible to omit.)
- RegistryName
Specifies the URI of the registration agency of the output condition identifier. When OutputConditionIdentifier is specified and this is omitted, the default URI is <http://www.color.org>.
- Info
Specifies the added information (Possible to omit.)

It's also possible to give the information of the profile by describing the format of the fragment parameter following to the ICC profile. The base URI specified by axf:base-uri can also be specified.

```
<fo:declarations axf:base-uri="url(file:///C:/WINDOWS/system32/spool/drivers/color/)">
  <fo:color-profile src="url('Photoshop5DefaultCMYK.icc#Info=Photoshop5')"/>
</fo:declarations>
```

When the output intent is specified by the output condition identifier, the output intent is not embedded in PDF/X. When it is specified by the ICC profile, the ICC profile is embedded in PDF/X.

When the standard output intent is specified with URL, it's possible to select whether the ICC profile is embedded or not by [embed-std-output-intent](#) of the [PDF output](#) setting, because the embedding of the ICC profile is not indispensable. However, with PDF/X-4, this setting is disregarded and is always embedded. When specified by the output condition identifier, it's not embedded regardless of the setting of [embed-std-output-intent](#). See also the following to learn more about the standard output intent.

CMYK Characterization data

When the output intent is not specified in FO, [default-output-intent](#) in the [PDF Output Settings](#) will be adopted.

The standard ICC profile can be downloaded from Adobe.

[Adobe ICC profiles](#)

The profile that can be downloaded may be already bundled with Adobe Acrobat and has already been installed on your system. If your OS is Windows, please search the `%windir%\system32\spool\drivers\color` directory.

PDF/A

PDF/A-1 is defined by ISO 19005-1:2005 and it is the specification intended to be suitable for long-term preservation of electronic documents based on PDF1.4 specification. With **AH Formatter V6.2**, it's possible to output the following versions of PDF/A: (**AH Formatter V6.2 Lite** cannot output PDF/A)

- PDF/A-1a:2005
It is the specification which fully conforms to ISO 19005-1:2005. It is guaranteed that PDF can be displayed and furthermore the text can be extracted in a logical order.
- PDF/A-1b:2005
It is the specification which partially conforms to ISO 19005-1:2005. It is guaranteed that PDF can be displayed.

The following shows the main features for PDF/A:

	PDF/A-1a:2005	PDF/A-1b:2005
All fonts must be embedded.	Yes	Yes
ICC profiles must be embedded.	Yes	Yes
Files must be tagged.	Yes	No
Files must include XMP metadata.	Yes	Yes
Files may include encryption.	No	No
Files may include LZW Compression.	No	No
Files may include Transparent images.	No	No
Files may refer to the external content.	No	No
Files may include JavaScript.	No	No

In PDF/A, it is required that all fonts be embedded as well as PDF/X; if a font cannot be embedded due to security restrictions or other issues, a PDF/A will not be generated. Also, the embedding of the ICC profile is indispensable with PDF/A, so when specifying the output intent, only the URL specification of the ICC profile is effective.

Most information (including embedding of fonts etc.) is adopted precisely and user settings are ignored. In PDF/A-1a, the tagging is done compulsorily. See also [Tagged PDF](#).

XMP metadata is automatically generated from the document information of PDF. The original XMP can also be specified by `<axf:document-info name="xmp">`.

CAUTION: In **AH Formatter V6.2**, you cannot specify PDF/A and PDF/X simultaneously.

Tagged PDF

Usual PDF does not have document structure in the contents. For example, the sentences are cut off per each line. In the column, the 1st line of the right column follows the 1st line of the left column. Therefore, even if a person with sight problems, etc. is going to read PDF using some kind of reader, it is very difficult to read a text in the right order. The same thing is applied to the text extraction from PDF.

Tagged PDF structurizes PDF documents with the tag embedded into PDF. By structuring documents, PDF serves as reusable information. For this reason, Tagged PDF is indispensable to create accessible PDF documents. See also the site below for the accessibility.

 <http://www.adobe.com/enterprise/accessibility/>

AH Formatter V6.2 embeds the following tags (StructElem) for each FO element.

FO element	PDF element	Comment
fo:root	Document	
fo:page-sequence	Part	

FO element	PDF element	Comment
fo:flow	Sect	
fo:static-content	Sect	
fo:block	P or Div	P when it has the content of inline-level, otherwise Div
fo:block-container	Div or Sect	Sect when absolute-position="fixed" or "absolute", otherwise Div
fo:inline	Span	
fo:inline-container	Span	
fo:leader	Span	
fo:page-number	Span	
fo:page-number-citation	Span	
fo:page-number-citation-last	Span	
fo:scaling-value-citation	Span	
fo:index-page-citation-list	Span	
fo:bidi-override	Span	
fo:footnote	Note	
fo:footnote-body	Sect	
fo:float	Sect	
fo:external-graphic	Figure	
fo:instream-foreign-object	Figure	
fo:basic-link	Link	
fo:list-block	L	
fo:list-item	LI	
fo:list-item-label	Lbl	
fo:list-item-body	Lbody	
fo:table	Table	
fo:table-caption	Caption	
fo:table-header	THead	
fo:table-footer	TFoot	
fo:table-body	TBody	
fo:table-row	TR	
fo:table-cell	TD	
axf:form-field	Form	
axf:ruby	Ruby	
axf:ruby-base	RB	
axf:ruby-text	RT	

AH Formatter V6.2 embeds the following tags (StructElem) for each HTML element.

HTML element	PDF element	Comment
html	Document	
div	Div	
h1	H1	
h2	H2	
h3	H3	

HTML element	PDF element	Comment
h4	H4	
h5	H5	
h6	H6	
p	P	
ul	L	
ol	L	
li	LI	
li::marker	LBL	list label
dl	L	
dt	LBL	
dd	LBody	
blockquote	BlockQuote	
caption	Caption	
table	Table	
tr	TR	
td	TD	
th	TH	
thead	THead	
tfoot	TFoot	
tbody	TBody	
ruby	Ruby	
rb	RB	
rt	RT	
span	Span	
img	Figure	
a[href]	Link	
other block elements	Div	
other inline elements	Span	

There are some tags which are not structural elements.

PDF element	Comment
Artifact	It is mapped to the contents distinguished from the text of a page. static-content which is repeatedly outputted at each line break, and table-header (except the one at the beginning of the table) and table-footer (except the one at the end of the table) serve as Artifact.
ReversedChars	It is mapped to the text which runs from right to left such as Arabic, etc.
Span	It is used for setting up the character string before being processed for the display as ActualText. It is different from Span in the structural element. The character strings before being processed mean the character string before the hyphenation is processed, or the character string before complicated glyph substitution is done in Thai etc., for example.

In order to create Tagged PDF, you can check Tagged PDF in the [PDF Option Setting Dialog](#), or you can specify `-taggedpdf` with the Command-line interface.

Using the `axf:pdftag` extension property, you can specify an arbitrary tag name to PDF.

AH Formatter V6.2 processes as follows for each check item (in the case of Acrobat 7.0) of the Adobe Acrobat's Accessibility Full Check

- Alternative descriptions are provided

Alternate text can be specified with the extension property, `axf:alttext`.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="..." axf:alttext="AltText"/>
```

AH Formatter V6.2 makes an alternate text the space (U+0020) of one character when there is no alternate text provided. This is for preventing an error coming out with the accessibility check saying that an alternate text is not provided, even if an alternate text is an unnecessary image. It's a user's responsibility to give the alternative text which is effective.

In order to check whether an alternative text is given to the image, you can choose View in the Navigation Tabs, then click Tags to open the Tags tab with Acrobat, then see the alternate text item by opening the property of the <Figure> element.

- Text language is specified

If the property of the language specification (language, country, xml:lang) is given to FO, it will become the language of the structure element of Tagged PDF. For example if you display the tags of the following Tagged PDF with Acrobat,

```
<fo:block language="ja">日本語です</fo:block>
```

and see the property of the <P> element in this paragraph, you will find the language as Japanese.

- Reliable character encoding is provided

The text is outputted in Unicode, there is no problem.

- All content is contained in the document structure

Refer to the tags in the above table.

- All form fields have descriptions

If the `axf:field-description` extension property is specified, the text will be assigned, if not, the form name is assigned.

- List and table structure is correct

`fo:list-block` is for the list structure of Tagged PDF and `fo:table` is for the table structure.

- The tag order matches to the order of the logical structure

AH Formatter V6.2 outputs tags in the right order.

See also [PDF Embedding](#) to know more about embedding tagged PDF in tagged PDF or the restrictions by the PDF versions.

It's impossible to output Tagged PDF with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

PDF Embedding

Possible to embed PDF document in the other PDF. Fillable PDF forms can also be embedded.

It is performed by using `<fo:external-graphic>` like handling an image. Please refer to [Graphics](#).

```
<fo:external-graphic src="embedded.pdf#page=3"/>
```

As described above, specify the page number which you want to embed to the URI. When there is no page number specified, the first page will be embedded. When there is no size specified, it's embedded in the page size of the PDF where it's embedded. However if you want to scale the size, `content-width` or `content-height` can be specified as follows:

```
<fo:external-graphic src="embedded.pdf#page=3" content-width="50%"/>
```

Possible to embed multiple pages continuously.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="embedded.pdf#page=3-5"/>
```

As described above, embed from the 3rd page to 5th page continuously. If you want to embed all pages, specify as follows.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="embedded.pdf#page=1-"/>
```

When specifying PDF by utilizing the data scheme ([RFC2397](#)), the page number can be specified as the parameter of the media type as follows.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="data:application/pdf;page=3;base64,JVBERi0xLjQKJeLjz9M..."/>
```

Moreover, it's also possible to embed PDF as a background. This can be used when making a list form as a background and formatting only the content data on it. When specifying PDF as a background, please specify `axf:background-repeat="no-repeat"` to `fo:simple-page-master` or `fo:page-sequence` as follows. `axf:background-repeat="repeat"` cannot be specified.

```
<fo:simple-page-master axf:background-image="background.pdf"
                      axf:background-repeat="no-repeat" ...>
```

When embedding PDF against the background, it's possible to embed not only 1 page but also two or more pages continuously. Specify as follows; `axf:background-repeat="paginate"`

```
<fo:simple-page-master axf:background-image="background.pdf#page=3-5"
    axf:background-repeat="paginate" ...>
```

In this example, pages from the 3rd to the 5th are embedded as the background. When the number of pages generated from the contents of fo:flow is less than the number of embedded PDF pages, pages are added so that all pages of embedded PDF may be outputted. Therefore, if the contents of fo:flow is empty, there would be no problem. When there is more number of pages generated from the contents of fo:flow, the background image of the page beyond the number of embedded PDF pages will drop off. Specify the page in the form of #page=<FirstPage>-<LastPage>. When axf:background-repeat="paginate" is not specified, the -<LastPage> portion is disregarded.

```
background.pdf#page=3-5
from 3rd page to 5th page
background.pdf#page=3-
from 3rd page to the last page
background.pdf#page=3
3rd page only
background.pdf
All pages
```

When axf:background-image or axf:background-repeat are specified to both fo:page-sequence and fo:simple-page-master, fo:simple-page-master takes priority. It's possible to embed PDF to fo:region-body/before/after/start/end by specifying to fo:simple-page-master.

axf:background-repeat="paginate" is not available to specify with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

The version of embedded PDF must be less than or equal to the version of PDF to output. The following table shows the acceptable combination with PDF/X, etc.

Embedded PDF		PDF					PDF/X						PDF/A	
		1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1a:2001	3:2002	1a:2003	2:2003	3:2003	4:2008	1a:2005	1b:2005
Output PDF	PDF1.3	Ok					Ok	Ok						
	PDF1.4	Ok	Ok				Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok		Ok	Ok
	PDF1.5	Ok	Ok	Ok			Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok		Ok	Ok
	PDF1.6	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok		Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok
	PDF1.7	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok
	PDF/X-1a: 2001						Ok							
	PDF/X-3:2002						Ok	Ok						
	PDF/X-1a: 2003						Ok		Ok					
	PDF/X-2:2003						Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok	Ok			
	PDF/X-3:2003						Ok	Ok	Ok		Ok			
	PDF/X-4:2008						Ok	Ok	Ok		Ok	Ok		
	PDF/A-1a: 2005													
	PDF/A-1b: 2005												Partial	Partial

The following shows the restrictions when embedding PDF.

- When there is no compatibility in OutputIntent, an error will occur when embedding PDF/A into PDF/A-1b: 2005.
- Bookmarks contained in the embedded PDF are disregarded.
- The type of annotations to be embedded, contained in the embedded PDF can be specified by [import-annotation-types](#) in [PDF Output Settings](#). You can also specify it in [Others](#) page in the [PDF Option Setting Dialog](#) in GUI. Unspecified annotations are disregarded. [V6.2](#)
- ID in the embedded PDF specified by [internal-destination](#) etc., are deleted.
- When FitH, FitV, etc. are specified by [axf:destination-type](#) as an internal link of the embedded PDF, the display is scaled to the paper width of the import destination.
- In order to embed tagged PDF in tagged PDF, please specify [import-tagged-pdf="true"](#) in [PDF Output Settings](#). You can also specify it in the [Version](#) page in the [PDF Option Setting Dialog](#) in GUI. PDF without tags is always embeddable. [V6.2MR2](#)

CAUTION: When tagged PDF is embedded in tagged PDF, the validity of the tag in the embedded PDF is not guaranteed.

Font Output

Adobe Type1 fonts (including Adobe Standard 14 Fonts), TrueType fonts (including OpenType fonts with TrueType Outlines), OpenType fonts (PostScript Outline), WOFF (Web Open Font Format) and Macintosh TrueType font data fork suitcase are supported for PDF output. Other font formats are not supported. For more details, refer to the "[Fonts](#)".

AH Formatter V6.2 requires that the fonts, which are specified in documents, are installed on your system in order to use them correctly. Please refer to Windows help or follow the installation instructions attached to the fonts for the method of installing the font in the Windows version. The font placed aside from the font folder can be outputted to PDF in the Windows version. At this time, you need to specify some setting in the [font construction file](#).

These 14 Adobe Type1 fonts are called Standard 14 Fonts in PDF.

- Courier
- Courier-Bold
- Courier-Oblique
- Courier-BoldOblique
- Helvetica
- Helvetica-Bold
- Helvetica-Oblique
- Helvetica-BoldOblique
- Times-Roman
- Times-Bold
- Times-Italic
- Times-BoldItalic
- Symbol
- ZapfDingbats

It is not necessary to prepare an AFM (Adobe Font Metrics) file, even when using an Adobe Type1 font (except for these Standard 14 Fonts). The glyph names of Adobe Type1 fonts maps to character codes (Unicode) of formatting data according to the AGL (Adobe Glyph List) specification. The glyph with a name that is not defined in AGL is not output. See also [Unicode and glyph mapping using the .AFM file](#) for more details about .AFM file.

CAUTION: When the PDF includes a transparent image that is displayed with Adobe Acrobat/Reader, the character might appear somewhat bolder. This is a known problem of Adobe Acrobat/Reader.

Character Sets, Encoding

The following character sets are supported:

- Adobe Standard Latin character set
- Symbol character set
- ZapfDingbats character set
- Japanese character set (Adobe-Japan1-Supplement2)
- Simplified Chinese character set (Adobe-GB1-Supplement2)
- Traditional Chinese character set (Adobe-CNS1-Supplement0)
- Korean character set (Adobe-Korea1-Supplement1)

Encoding of all characters is processed as Unicode within **AH Formatter V6.2**. In the case of Chinese, Japanese, Korean, (CJK), **AH Formatter V6.2** maps the Unicode to glyph in each CJK character sets by using the following CMap.

- Japanese : UniJIS-UCS2-H(V) UniJIS-UCS2-HW-H(V)
- Simplified Chinese : UniGB-UCS2-H(V)
- Traditional Chinese : UniCNS-UCS2-H(V)
- Korean : UniKS-UCS2-H(V)

The characters that do not belong to the above character sets are embedded in the PDF by getting the glyphs from the font files. This process is done only for TrueType fonts.

Font Embedding

Embedding font makes it possible to display PDF files even in the environment where there are no fonts.

In the default setting of TrueType font processing, only the outline of glyphs that are not defined by CMap is embedded. In cases where embedding TrueType fonts are prohibited by a font vendor, error occurs and processing stops. This error can be avoided by replacing it with a white space and output PDF. You can also specify the option that all glyphs of a font are to be embedded whether the character is defined by CMap or not.

In the default setting of Adobe Type1 font processing, only the outline of a font that has font specific encoding is embedded. The option to embed all glyphs of a font can also be specified whether the font has standard or font specific encoding.

You cannot embed the font in PDF if the font is not allowed to embed. See also [PDF Output Settings](#) to learn how to specify the font you want to embed.

Regardless of the setting, there may be a case that a font may always be embedded. In the following cases, the font is always embedded. If the font is not allowed to embed, you cannot use the font.

- Fonts for the following scripts
 - Arab : Arabic
 - Hebr : Hebrew
 - Deva : Devalagari
 - Beng : Bengali [no-LT]
 - Guru : Gurmukhi [no-LT]
 - Gujr : Gujarati [no-LT]
 - Orya : Oriya [no-LT]
 - Tamil : Tamil [no-LT]
 - Telu : Telugu [no-LT]
 - Knda : Kannada [no-LT]
 - Mlym : Malayalam [no-LT]
 - Sinh : Sinhala [V6.2MR1] [no-LT]
 - Thai : Thai
 - Khmr : Khmer [no-LT]
 - Lao : Lao [no-LT]
- Ligatured form ↗ [axf:ligature-mode](#)
- The glyph of modified by [font-variant](#) (except for an emulation of small-caps)
- The glyph of modified Japanese Kanji ↗ [axf:japanese-glyph](#) (include Variation Sequence)
- The Unicode characters which cannot be expressed by 16bit.

Image Output

For more information about supported graphic images, refer to the "[Graphics](#)".

Vector Images

The following vector images outputted to PDF as vector primitives are replaced with PDF operators:

- [EMF](#)
- [WMF](#)
- [SVG](#)
- [MathML](#)
- [CGM](#)

In Windows version, vector images other than the above are transformed into the raster images and outputted to PDF. The resolution of the raster can be set in the result PDF with the value of dpi. Please refer to [rasterize-resolution](#) in [PDF Output Setting](#). In non-Windows versions, the vector image which cannot be outputted to PDF is disregarded.

Please refer to [EPS](#) in [Graphics](#) for details.

CAUTION: MathML can be used only with "AH Formatter MathML Option" with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

CAUTION: If AH Formatter **AH Formatter CGM Option** is not installed on your Formatter, please refer to [Graphics](#) for more detail.

Raster Images

Generally the raster graphic data is compressed using a compression algorithms in the graphic file. If the compression method and the original (uncompressed) image format are both compatible with the PDF file format, the compressed raster graphic data will be directly embedded into the PDF file. If the compression method or original image format are not compatible with the PDF format, the graphic data will be uncompressed and converted to a PDF compatible bitmap format for output. If graphic data cannot be uncompressed, its data cannot be processed. Bitmap graphic will be compressed using JPEG or ZLIB compression and embedded into the PDF file. Refer to image-compression, jpeg-quality attributes in [PDF Output Setting](#) of the Option Setting File. If raster image data is directly embedded into the PDF file, these attributes will not be applied.

The raster images which can be embedded directly in a PDF are as follows:

- [JPEG](#)
- [JPEG2000](#)
- [PNG](#)
- [TIFF](#)
- [GIF](#)

These are the following restrictions:

- Progressive JPEG, Interlaced GIF are transformed into regular JPEG or GIF images.
- 16-bit color in PNG or TIFF is reduced to 8-bit color.
- When alpha channel is attached to PNG or TIFF, it is divided.
- There are some unsupported TIFF formats.
- JPEG2000 is embedded into PDF only when it is PDF 1.5 or later. For other versions, it is embedded after being converted to JPEG etc.

Down sampling

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the down sampling of the raster images embedded in PDF can be down sampled.

How it's down sampled can be specified in [Compression](#) in the [PDF Option Setting dialog](#) or in [Option Setting File](#).

Multimedia

The multimedia data, such as video, audio, etc. can be embedded in PDF. The following shows the example using `<fo:external-graphic>`.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="video.mpg" content-type="video/mpeg"
    axf:poster-image="poster.jpg"
    axf:show-controls="true"
    width="640pt" height="400pt"/>
```

In HTML, `<object>` or `<video>` can be used.

```
<object data="video.mpg" type="video/mpeg"
    width="640" height="400"
    style="-ah-poster-image:url(poster.jpg); -ah-show-controls:true">
</object>
```

or

```
<video src="video.mpg" type="video/mpeg"
    width="640" height="400"
    poster="poster.jpg" controls="controls">
</video>
```

The setting of content-type (or 'type' attribute in HTML) is indispensable. **AH Formatter V6.2** assumes that the data specified as `src` follows the content-type. The contents of data are not checked. A poster image can be specified by `axf:poster-image` (or 'poster' attribute in HTML `<video>`). In GUI, a poster image can be displayed. When there are no settings of width and height, the size of the reference area is assumed.

CAUTION: In PDF, multimedia is embedded as a type of annotations. Please specify `axf:annotation-flags="Print"` to print a poster image. V6.2MR3

When `axf:show-controls` (or 'controls' attribute in HTML `<video>`) is specified, a control bar is shown under the playing multimedia object. To prevent overlapping the control bar with another object, it is necessary to make enough space below the multimedia object.

CAUTION: Whether the control bar is shown or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

The following shows the content types accepted as multimedia by default:

- audio/*
- video/*
- application/x-shockwave-flash

The additional content types other than these can be added by <multimedia> in the Option Setting File. The following example shows a combination of typical extensions and content types.

Extension	Content type
*.3g2	video/x-msvideo
*.3gp	video/x-msvideo
*.aac	audio/basic
*.aiff	audio/x-aiff
*.ASF	video/x-ms-asf
*.au	audio/basic
*.avi	video/x-ms-wm
*.dv	video/x-dv
*.flv	video/x-msvideo
*.ivf	video/x-ivf
*.m1v	video/x-mpeg
*.m2v	video/x-mpeg
*.m4a	audio/mp4
*.m4b	audio/x-m4b
*.m4v	video/mp4
*.mid	audio/x-midi
*.midi	
*.mov	video/quicktime
*.mp2	audio/x-mpeg
*.mp3	audio/x-mp3
*.mp4	video/mp4
*.mpe	
*.mpeg	video/mpeg
*.mpg	
*.qt	video/quicktime
*.swf	application/x-shockwave-flash
*.wav	audio/x-wav
*.wma	audio/x-ms-wma
*.wmv	audio/x-ms-wmv
*.wmx	audio/x-ms-wmx

Whether these can be replayed correctly depends on the PDF viewer. When the shortage of players or shortage of codecs error occurs when replaying, it may be available to run again by introducing a corresponding player and codec.

Restrictions

- Effective with PDF1.5 or later.
- Cannot specify to background-image.
- Cannot specify to axf:poster-image.

- This feature is not effective with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Miscellaneous

- In **AH Formatter V6.2**, when the language is specified in the root element of <fo:root> or <html>, it is outputted as a language information on PDF. When the language is not specified, if `default-lang` is specified to the [Option Setting File](#), it is outputted as a language information on PDF.

SVG Output

AH Formatter V6.2 outputs SVG that is compliant to W3C [Scalable Vector Graphics \(SVG\) 1.1](#) specification. It also outputs SVG Tiny and SVG Basic in the [Mobile SVG Profiles](#).

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter SVG Output Option" to output SVG. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

SVG Output Format

AH Formatter V6.2 can output to [SVG 1.1](#), SVG Basic and SVG Tiny. When a profile is not specified, it is regarded as SVG 1.1.

[Mobile SVG Profiles](#) are the specifications for mobile computing devices or cellular phones which have restrictions in the throughput of the hardware, the memory capacity and the number of colors that can be displayed.

Since SVG Tiny is for hardware with the most restrictions, like a cellular phone, the supported elements and attributes are quite limited. Therefore, the reproduction level of the original document may be low.

SVG Basic is for more high-efficient pocket devices, such as high-efficient PDA, and has fewer restrictions than SVG Tiny. See also [Mobile SVG Profiles](#) for more details.

AH Formatter V6.2 outputs SVG Tiny and SVG Basic on the basis of the output for SVG 1.1 by disregarding the unsupported elements.

When the document composed of multiple pages is converted into SVG, each page will be output as individual files. It is possible to output them collectively to one file by setting [Command-line Interface](#) etc. However, when it is output as standard out, it is always output to one file.

Image Output

For more information about supported graphic images, refer to the "[Graphics](#)".

With SVG Output, there are three types of methods for handling images. These methods can be specified with the [Command-line Interface](#) or the [Option Setting File](#), etc.

- Embedding

Raster images are embedded in SVG as Base64 encoding. Vector images are outputted as SVG.

- Linking

Images are linked using the URI of the link origin without change.

- Copying and linking

Images are copied to the place where they are specified and are described as a link there. the copy destination can be specified by [copy-image-path](#), etc. in the [Option Setting File](#).

There are two types of images in FO.

- Images by external reference

Images are referenced externally by `<fo:external-graphic>` or `` of HTML.

- Images embedded

Images encoded by Base64 using the data scheme by `<fo:external-graphic>` or `` of HTML is embedded, or the images are embedded in FO by `<fo:instream-foreign-object>`.

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, all the images referred by outputted SVG are converted into JPEG or PNG or SVG. For this reason, images embedded or externally referenced are handled as follows.

		Embed	Link	Copy and Link
JPEG	ExternalRef	Embeds images without change.	Links images without change.	Copies and links images without change.
	Embedded		Embeds images without change.	
PNG	ExternalRef		Links images without change.	
	Embedded		Embeds images without change.	
BMP	ExternalRef	Embeds images after converting into JPEG or PNG.		Copies and links images after converting into JPEG or PNG.

		Embed	Link	Copy and Link
	Embedded			
TIFF	ExternalRef	Embeds images after converting into JPEG or PNG.		Copies and links images after converting into JPEG or PNG.
	Embedded			
GIF	ExternalRef			Copies and links images after converting into JPEG or PNG.
	Embedded			
JPEG2000	ExternalRef	Embeds images as SVG.	Links images without change.	Copies and links images without change.
	Embedded		Embeds images as SVG.	
WMF	ExternalRef	Embeds images after converting into SVG.		Copies and links images after converting into SVG.
	Embedded			
EMF	ExternalRef			Copies and links images after converting into SVG.
	Embedded			
PDF	ExternalRef			Copies and links images after converting into SVG. It's invalid if AH Formatter MathML Option is not installed with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite .
	Embedded	Embeds images after converting into SVG. It's invalid if AH Formatter MathML Option is not installed with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite .		
MathML	ExternalRef	Embeds images after converting into JPEG or PNG. Effective only when ActiveCGM plug-in is installed on Windows version.		Copies and links images after converting into JPEG or PNG. Effective only when ActiveCGM plug-in is installed on Windows version.
	Embedded			
CGM	ExternalRef			Copies and links images after converging into JPEG or PNG in Windows version. In non-Windows versions, if the preview image included in EPS is the TIFF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into JPEG or PNG, if it is the WMF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into SVG.
	Embedded	Embeds images after converging into JPEG or PNG in Windows version. In non-Windows versions, if the preview image included in EPS is the TIFF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into JPEG or PNG, if it is the WMF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into SVG.		
EPS	ExternalRef			Copies and links images after converging into JPEG or PNG in Windows version. In non-Windows versions, if the preview image included in EPS is the TIFF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into JPEG or PNG, if it is the WMF format, it's copied and linked after being changed into SVG.
	Embedded			

Font Output

Please refer to "[Fonts](#)" for font details.

Fonts can be embedded with SVG Output, but it is the stroke of the associated character of a font that is embedded, not the font file. Therefore, fonts that are patent protected cannot be embedded because its stroke cannot be acquired. In addition, the correct outline of some TrueType and OpenType fonts might not be embedded as well.

Restrictions

SVG Tiny

Since many elements in SVG Tiny are not supported, it may be difficult to reproduce output that stays true to the original document. **AH Formatter V6.2** reproduces the original as much as possible by substituting the elements with alternative expressions to the extent possible. The following are the main restrictions of SVG Tiny:

- SVG Tiny does not support fills that contain gradation. Plain color is used as a substitute.
- Writing mode is not supported by SVG Tiny. When a document contains vertical writing, the position for every character will be specified. For this reason, the size of the document may become greater than the one outputted by SVG 1.1.
- Many SVG Tiny viewers do not support the rotation of characters. Those viewers will ignore the rotated character.

PostScript Output

AH Formatter V6.2 can output PostScript®.

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter PostScript Output Option" to output PostScript. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

The level of PostScript output is 3.

Font Output

The following fonts are available to output with PostScript output. Please refer to [Fonts](#) for the font.

- Adobe Type1 font
- TrueType font, OpenType font (TrueType outline)
- OpenType font (PostScript outline)

However, there are the following restrictions with PostScript output.

- Type1 fonts which contain greater than 255 glyphs are not supported.
- Vertical writing mode is not supported.
- PostScript output does not support complex script language such as Hebrew, Arabic, Thai.
- [Ligatures](#) are not supported.
- Not available to change the glyph of [font-variant](#) (except for an emulation of small-caps).
- Not available to [change the glyph of Japanese Kanji](#) (include Variation Sequence).
- The [EUDC](#), end user defined character, is not supported.
- Separation colors, such as [PANTONE®](#), are not supported.

Image Output

For more information about graphic images, refer to the "[Graphics](#)". However, there are the following restrictions with PostScript output.

- background-repeat="repeat" is not supported.
- Patterns in SVG are not supported.
- The gradation in vector images other than EPS is not supported.
- Raster images containing transparent images and alpha channel are not supported.
- Separation colors, such as [PANTONE®](#), are not supported.

Vector Images

The following vector images are outputted to PostScript as vector. However, the raster image contained in the vector image will have the restrictions of the [raster images](#) mentioned after. If fonts are contained, fonts in the vector image will also have the restrictions of [fonts](#).

- [WMF](#)
- [EMF](#)
- [EPS](#)
- [SVG](#)
- [MathML](#)
- [CGM](#)

All EPS is unprocessed and outputted to PostScript as is.

CAUTION: MathML can be used only with "[AH Formatter MathML Option](#)" with [AH Formatter V6.2 Lite](#).

CAUTION: If AH Formatter [AH Formatter CGM Option](#) is not installed on your Formatter, please refer to [Graphics](#) for more detail.

Raster Images

The following raster image can be outputted to PostScript. See also restrictions of each raster image respectively.

- [BMP](#)
- [JPEG](#)
- [JPEG2000](#)
- [PNG](#)
- [TIFF](#)
- [GIF](#)

The image which cannot be embedded directly in PostScript will be transformed into the appropriate one and embedded.

XPS Output

AH Formatter V6.2 can output XPS (XML Paper Specification File).

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter XPS Output Option" to output XPS. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

XPS (XML Paper Specification) is an electronic document format developed by Microsoft which can be created easily with Microsoft Windows Vista and Microsoft Office 2007.

Font Output

The following fonts are available to output into XPS file. Please refer to [Fonts](#) for details.

- TrueType font
- OpenType font (TrueType outline)
- OpenType font (PostScript outline)

However, there are the following restrictions with XPS output.

- All of the fonts in the document should be embedded. So you cannot use the font that embedding is not permitted.
- If you use OpenType font that has CID CFF table, you can output it into XPS file, but XPS Viewer (XPS Viewer EP) will report an error when you open the outputted XPS file. The outputted XPS file can be validated with Microsoft XPS Conformance Tool (isXPS.exe) with no error. If you make XPS file by using this type of font by XPS Document Writer by Microsoft, you will also get the error when open the XPS file by XPS Viewer. But it will be displayed by XPS Viewer that is Internet Explorer plugin.
- XPS output does not support complex script language such as Hebrew, Arabic, Thai.
- [Ligatures](#) are not supported.
- Not available to change the glyph of [font-variant](#) (except for an emulation of small-caps).
- Not available to [change the glyph of Japanese Kanji](#) (include Variation Sequence).
- The [EUDC](#), end user defined character, is not supported.
- Separation colors, such as [PANTONE®](#), are not supported.

Image Output

For more information about graphic images, refer to the "[Graphics](#)". However, there are the following restrictions with XPS output.

- Graphics file without the resolution setting will be treated as 96 DPI according to the XPS Specification.
- Graphics file other than JPEG, PNG, and TIFF will be converted into one of JPEG, PNG, and TIFF and will be embed into XPS.
- TIFF graphic file that is compressed type 1 to 6 or 32773 is supported. TIFF file of other compression types is converted to PNG.
- PNG graphic file that has the color management function such as sRGB, cHRM, gAMA, sBIT can be outputted into XPS. But when you open the outputted XPS file by XPS Viewer, the color management function is ignored due to XPS Specification.
- It is not implemented to manage the radiant shading.
- It is not implemented to manage the tiling of the background-image.
- It is not implemented to manage Windows Media Photo Image.

Other Restrictions

- Temporary file is generated during the output.
- If the page width or height is shorter than 0.5 inch, it is assumed as 0.5 inch.
- Color spaces other than CMYK are converted into RGB color space.
- An error will occur if the rendering instruction generated from the document becomes complex and the canvas nesting exceeds over 16 levels that is allowed by the XPS Specification.
- It is not implemented to manage links.
- It is not implemented to make thumbnails.
- It is not implemented to set the printing scheme and the printing device.
- It is not implemented to manage the outline information.
- It is not implemented to manage the story (table, segment) information.

INX Output

AH Formatter can output INX (InDesign® Interchange File).

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter INX Output Option" to output INX. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

Features of INX Output

INX is the XML file that is used to interchange between InDesign® and its older version, or other products such as InCopy®, Go-live®. INX format keeps all of the InDesign® objects and properties as XML elements or attributes. AH Formatter generates INX file from the Area Tree that is the intermediate format of the formatting.

By outputting INX files, AH Formatter enables the content to be changed or enhanced using InDesign®.

INX output mode

In InDesign®, objects that holds text are called text frames. AH Formatter INX Output Option has three kinds of text frame generation methods that can be specified by the [Command-line Interface](#) or the [Option Setting File](#) at output. To determine the correct output setting consider the In -Design® task you wish to perform.

1. Text area output mode

This mode generates text frames from a text area. The text area corresponds to the fo:inline in XSL-FO. This mode converts most closely to the formatting result of AH Formatter. Sometimes the different decorated successive inline areas are divided into multiple text frames in the INX output. Thus, it is more difficult to edit using InDesign® with this mode.

2. Line area output mode

This mode generates text frames from line area. The line area corresponds to the each line generated from fo:block in XSL-FO. This mode enables line editing easier than Text area output mode. But the conversion accuracy can degrade.

3. Block output mode

This mode generates text frames from block area. The block area corresponds to the fo:block in XSL-FO. Editing in InDesign® is easiest using this mode. However the conversion precision is the least reliable of the three modes.

Comparisons of the three conversion mode choices from the perspective of layout reproduction and ease of editing are as follows:

Layout reproduction

Good	Limited
1 > 2 > 3	

Easiness of edit

Good	Limited
3 > 2 > 1	

Limitations

The following are limitations in INX output concerning XSL-FO elements and properties. These limitations concerning XSL also exist in the related CSS formatting.

Table

- Texts and images in a table cell are converted to InDesign® anchor objects and the conversion mode is restricted to the Text area output mode within the table cell.
- Due to the difference of character placement between AH Formatter and InDesign®, text in a cell can sometimes extend beyond the frame.

Border

- Border styles other than double, dashed, dotted, dot-dash, dot-dot-dash are outputted as solid.
- Borders other than table cell are implemented using the InDesign® line tool.
- Border assignment for fo:table is ignored.

- Diagonal lines are only effective with table cells only.
- Radius is not supported. The converted result is a square.

Graphics

- Since graphic size cannot be correctly converted to INX, the user must resize the graphic object by hand within InDesign®.
- Supported raster graphic formats are BMP, JPEG, PNG, TIFF and GIF. Supported vector graphic are WMF, EMF and EPS. Vector graphics such as SVG, MathML, CGM are not supported. In addition, PDF is rasterized when it is converted to INX which can cause the quality of embedded graphics to degrade.
- INX output does not support background-repeat="repeat".
- Graphic files are embedded in the INX file.

Texts

- Due to the differences in character placement between AH Formatter and InDesign®, occasionally the text frame cannot hold all of the texts. In this case, user must enlarge the text frame by hand.
- If letter-spacing is specified, a text frame is made for every character.
- Occasionally the display result differs between AH Formatter and InDesign®, if text-align="justify" is specified in FO and the text contains U+200B.

Fonts

- If a non-existent font such as bold MS-Mincho is specified in XSL-FO, it will cause a warning error when InDesign® reads the INX file. An alternate font is selected automatically by InDesign.

Leader

- Leader styles supported are double, dashed, dotted, dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, dots, use-contents. Others are interpreted as solid.

Others

- PDF book mark becomes unstructured.
- INX output does not support printer marks.
- INX output does not support document information.
- INX output does not support annotation.
- INX output does not support ICC Profile.
- INX output does not support complex script language such as Hebrew, Arabic, Thai.
- **Ligatures** are not supported.
- Not available to [change the glyph of Japanese Kanji](#) (include Variation Sequence).
- The [EUDC](#), end user defined character, is not supported.
- If a line has line number (axf:line-number), the output mode is fixed as text area output mode.
- If an overline and underline are specified at once, the underline takes precedence since in InDesign®, the overline is part of the under line.
- If text and graphics exist in the same line, the output mode is fixed as text area output mode.
- XSL-FO can define multiple page size masters in one document, but it is not supported with InDesign®. INX Output Option adopts the first used page master when outputting INX file.
- Each element in a table cannot be rotated.

MIF Output

AH Formatter can output MIF (Maker Interchange Format File).

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter MIF Output Option" to output MIF. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

Features of MIF Output

MIF is a format to interchange information between Adobe FrameMaker® and other applications. MIF format keeps all of the FrameMaker® objects and properties. AH Formatter generates MIF file from the Area Tree that is the intermediate format of the formatting.

By outputting MIF files, you can edit the formatting result of AH Formatter using FrameMaker®8.

MIF output mode

In FrameMaker®, text is stored in ParaLine. AH Formatter MIF Output Option has three kinds of ParaLine generation methods that can be specified by the [Command-line Interface](#) or the [Option Setting File](#) at output. To determine the correct output setting consider the FrameMaker® task you wish to perform.

1. Text area output mode

This mode generates ParaLine from text area. The text area corresponds to the fo:inline in XSL-FO. This mode converts most closely to the formatting result of AH Formatter. Sometimes the different decorated successive inline areas are divided into multiple text frames in the MIF output. Thus, it is more difficult to edit using FrameMaker with this mode.

2. Line area output mode

This mode generates ParaLine from line area. The line area corresponds to the each line generated from fo:block in XSL-FO. This mode enables line editing easier than Text area output mode. But the conversion accuracy can degrade.

3. Block output mode

This mode generates ParaLine from block area. The block area corresponds to the fo:block in XSL-FO. Editing in FrameMaker® is easiest using this mode. However the conversion precision is the least reliable of the three modes.

Comparing three conversion modes from the perspective of layout reproduction and easiness of edit are as follows:

Layout reproduction

Good	Limited
1 > 2 > 3	

Easiness of edit

Good	Limited
3 > 2 > 1	

Image Output

For more information about supported graphic images, refer to the "[Graphics](#)".

With SVG Output, there are two types of methods for handling images. These methods can be specified with the [Command-line Interface](#) or the [Option Setting File](#), etc.

- Embeds all images in MIF.

Raster images are converted into the hexadecimal character string according to the internal format of MIF and embedded in MIF. However, as for EPS, TIFF preview image is taken out and embedded in MIF, the image of a high resolution is lost.

- Links images as external files.

The link specification becomes effective when the output MIF is a file and the image to which MIF is referring is a file. When MIF is a stream output or an image is embedded in the origin and not existing as a file, the image is embedded even if it is specified to link as an external file.

When linking an image as an external file, the reference path to the image file in XML/FO/HTML is used as is regardless of the setting of relative path or absolute path. When the file name of MIF output is specified by the absolute path in non-Windows Version, the external reference links might not be correctly set. In this case, the file will be embedded.

Limitation

Following limitations exist in MIF output concerning XSL-FO elements and properties. These limitations concerning XSL also exist in the related CSS formatting.

Table

- The conversion mode of texts and images in a table cell is restricted to the Line area output mode within the table cell.
- A complex table like the one that images and character strings are allocated to the table cell at the same time or a nested table might not be reproduced correctly.
- Due to the difference of character placement between AH Formatter and FrameMaker®, text in a cell can sometimes extend beyond the frame.
- Rotation of a table and cell is not supported.

Border

- Border styles other than double are assumed solid.
- The border thickness of the table cell is outputted by the value of Thin, Medium, Thick, and Very Thin registered in Ruling-Catalog by default.
- When the border style is specified in detail with a complex table, the border might not be reproduced correctly.
- Border assignment for fo:table is ignored.
- Radius is not supported. The converted result is a square.
- When border and color fill are specified for the text area other than the table cell, the rectangle of border and color fill might be generated besides the text area. In that case, border, color fill might not match the text when ParaLine etc. are changed while editing.

Graphics

- Supported raster graphic formats are BMP, JPEG, PNG, TIFF and GIF and supported vector graphic are WMF, EMF, EPS, SVG, CGM and PDF. Vector graphic such as MathML is not supported.
- JPEG2000 is converted into PNG and embedded.

Texts

- Due to the difference of character placement between AH Formatter and FrameMaker®, occasionally the ParaLine cannot hold all of the texts. In this case, user must enlarge the ParaLine by hand.
- If letter-spacing is specified, the ParaLine is made by every character.
- Occasionally display result differs between AH Formatter and FrameMaker®, if text-align="justify" is specified in FO and the text contains U+200B.

Fonts

- If a non-existent font such as bold MS-Mincho is specified in XSL-FO, it will cause a warning error when FrameMaker® reads the MIF file. An alternate font is selected automatically by FrameMaker®.

Leader

- Leader styles supported are double, dashed, dotted, dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, dots, use-contents. Others are interpreted as solid.

Others

- MIF output does not support links.
- MIF output does not support printer marks.
- MIF output does not support document information
- MIF output does not support annotation.
- MIF output does not support ICC Profile.
- MIF output does not support complex script language such as Hebrew, Arabic, Thai.
- If a line has line number (axf:line-number), the output mode is fixed as text area output mode.

- If text and graphics exist in the same line, the output mode is fixed as text area output mode.
- XSL-FO can define multiple page size masters in one document, but it is not supported with FrameMaker®. MIF Output Option adopts the first used page master when outputting MIF file.
- The vertical writing mode is not supported with FrameMaker, documents in vertical writing mode cannot be correctly converted.

TEXT Output

AH Formatter V6.2 enables outputting the formatted result in a plain text format. It's best suited for getting the output composed as plain text only.

The encoding and the linefeed code of the output text can be specified in the [Option Setting File](#). When outputting from a GUI, it's possible to specify it by [Text Output Dialog](#).

Restrictions

TEXT Output is not effective with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

- Only one font size is used in the output. FO font size settings are ignored.
- The indent is processed by calculating the current font size. When the font size is changed in FO, lines of text are not aligned correctly.
- Table borders are not output.
- Properties other than text, such as graphics are ignored.
- Vertical writing mode and rotation are not supported.

Fonts

This chapter explains about the fonts which **AH Formatter V6.2** supports and how to use them. Also it explains the general consideration for each type of font. These are mainly for the no-Windows version. In the Windows version, the installed fonts are used as is without further effort.

The [Font Configuration File](#) is for setting the details of the font environment.

In Linux and Solaris version: Although the initial file is prepared, you need to set it in accordance with your font environment.

In the Windows version: The font configuration file may be used as is.

AH Formatter V6.2 also supports [EUDC](#), (end user defined character) for Private Use Characters.

- ☞ See also [Font Output](#) in the [PDF Output](#).
- ☞ See also [Font Output](#) in the [SVG Output](#).
- ☞ See also [Font Output](#) in the [PostScript Output](#).
- ☞ See also [Font](#) in the [INX Output](#).
- ☞ See also [Font Output](#) in the [XPS Output](#).

Supported font formats

AH Formatter V6.2 supports the following types of fonts.

- Adobe Type1 fonts

Adobe Type1 font usually consists of a pair of font files [.AFM](#)+[.PFB](#) or [.PFM](#)+[.PFB](#). The former is used in non-Windows environment. The latter is used in Windows environment. For further information about Type1 fonts, refer to [Adobe Type1 font](#). In the following sentences, the word Type1 font indicates Adobe Type1 font.

- TrueType fonts

TrueType font files have the extension [.TTF](#) or [.TTC](#). For further information about TrueType fonts, refer to [TrueType font](#), [OpenType \(TrueType outline\) font](#).

- OpenType fonts

OpenType font files have the extension [.TTF](#) or [.OTF](#). The former has the TrueType outline information in the font file. The latter has the PostScript outline in the font file. For further information about OpenType fonts, refer to [OpenType \(PostScript outline\) font](#).

- WOFF (Web Open Font Format) [no-LT]

You can treat [WOFF \(Web Open Font Format\)](#) by specifying to `<axf:font-face>`. WOFF fonts cannot be specified directly. The WOFF font specified by `<axf:font-face>` is treated as a TrueType font or an OpenType font. It's not necessary to specify the place where the WOFF font is located in the [Font Configuration File](#). These functions are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

- Macintosh TrueType font data fork suitcase

Supports Macintosh TrueType font Suitcase expressed by the [.dfont](#) extension or the [.dfon](#) extension. This is the Font Suitcase whose font is defined as the data fork. The old Font Suitcase which is used by Classic MacOS and whose font is defined as the resource fork is not supported. The contents is TrueType fonts. See also [TrueType font](#), [OpenType \(TrueType outline\) font](#) for details about TrueType font.

When different types of fonts with the same file name or the same font family name exist in the same directory, it is **CAUTION:** indefinite which one is adopted. Also there is a possibility to interfere with the operation. Please avoid such a mixture.

Font Configuration File

To configure the font environment for **AH Formatter V6.2**, you must make a Font Configuration File.

The Font Configuration File is a simple structured XML file and is usually located in the [\[Install directory\]/etc](#) on non-Windows and [\[Install directory\]](#) on Windows.

The Font Configuration File should be set in the [Environment Variables](#). The name [font-config.xml](#) is set as default.

In the Font Configuration File, the most important element is `<font-folder>`. If you want to use more than the PDF Standard 14 Fonts on non-Windows, you must locate the font files in the some directory and add the `<font-folder path="...">` element to the configuration file.

AH Formatter V6.2 automatically detects the font files in the specified directory at the `<font-folder path="...">`. However, there are a few cases where the font name cannot be resolved, only in such cases it is necessary to describe the font file. Normally it is not necessary to specify each file to be used.

- In the Solaris, fonts are installed in the following directories.

```
/usr/openwin/lib/X11/fonts/Type1
/usr/openwin/lib/X11/fonts/TrueType
/usr/openwin/lib/locale/ja/X11/fonts/TT
/usr/openwin/lib/locale/th/X11/fonts/TrueType
...
```

Initial Font Configuration File

The following is the initial Font Configuration File. After you have finished the installation of **AH Formatter V6.2** non-Windows version, this file will be located at [\[Install directory\]/etc](#).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE font-config SYSTEM "font-config.dtd" -->
<font-config otf-metrics-mode="typographic">
  <!-- add your font folder here -->
  <!-- font-folder path="/home/user-name/fonts" -->
  <!-- /font-folder -->
  <font-folder path="[Install directory]/fonts">
    <font-entry file="ZapfDingbats.afm"
      glyph-list="ZapfDingbats-glyphname.txt"/>
  </font-folder>
</font-config>
```

In **AH Formatter V6.2** Windows version, the following Font Configuration File is installed on [\[Install directory\]](#). The Windows font directory is set to [\[System font directory\]](#).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<!DOCTYPE font-config SYSTEM "font-config.dtd" -->
<font-config
  otf-metrics-mode="typographic"
  name-processing-mode="windows-name">
  <!-- add your font folder here -->
  <font-folder path="[System font directory]">
  </font-folder>
</font-config>
```

In Windows version, when there is no Font Configuration File, the Font Configuration File of this content will be assumed.

CAUTION: In the Windows version, [\[System font directory\]](#) is accessed when the file is formatted even if [\[System font directory\]](#) is not specified in the font configuration file.

Font Configuration File elements and attributes

The following table is a summary of the elements and attributes in the Font Configuration File.

Element	Location	Attribute	Description
<font-config>	root element	name-processing-mode	<p>Specifies whether to map Type1 font names to font file using only Windows names (.PFM+.PFB). Specifies the value "default" or "windows-name" to the value. The initial value is "default". The environment which "windows-name" is specified is called WindowsName mode.</p> <pre><name-processing-mode mode="windows-name" /></pre>
		otf-metrics-mode	<p>Specify the method to evaluate font metrics information of TrueType and OpenType font.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "windows": use conventional method that is adopted until V4.2. "typographic": use the new method. <p>If the attribute is omitted or empty, "windows" is assumed. Also, if use-windows-api="true" is specified in Option Setting File, "typographic" is assumed.</p> <p>The conventional evaluation method until V4.2 has defect that commonly used Japanese font such as Ryumin is displayed lower position. The new method resolved this defect, but there is baseline positioning difference between new and old method. If you use CJK and Latin fonts together, new</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Description
<font-config>	root element	otf-metrics-mode	method influences line-height. If you want to avoid incompatibility with conventional version, specify "windows".
		use-preferred-family	Specifies whether the information on NameID=16 is used for a font family name with TrueType or OpenType. If empty is specified or omitted the value is considered as "true".
		windows-registry	Effective only with Windows version. Specifies whether to get the information of EUDC from the Windows registry or not. If the value is "enable", it refers to the registry. If the value is "disable", it doesn't. If the attribute is omitted, it's detected as enable.
<font-folder>	child of <font-config>	path	<p>Indicates the font folder using the "path" attribute.</p> <pre><font-folder path="/home/user-name/fonts"> </font-folder></pre> <p>This element can be specified as many times as necessary.</p>
		recursive	If true is specified, inside of the subfolder included in the folder specified by path will also be searched. [V6.2]
<font-entry>	child of <font-folder>	file	Associated attributes are given to the font file specified by the "file" attribute.
		glyph-list	Specifies the glyph-list file of the font when the Type1 font is specified by the "file" attribute. The glyph-list defines Unicode to glyph-name mapping rule for Type1 fonts. For more information about glyph-list file, refer to the Glyph list file .
		skip-glyphname-mapping	Specifies whether to map Unicode to the glyph name or map Unicode to the character-code of the font when the Type1 font is specified by the "file" attribute. If "true" is specified, it maps. If "true" is specified, it doesn't. For more information about these parameters, refer to Skipping the glyph name mapping .
		font-exclude	Specifies whether to disregard the file specified by "File" attribute. If "true" is specified, it disregards. If "false" is specified, it doesn't. When "true" is specified, the font file is not processed.
		unicode-range	<p>Specifies the range of Unicode applied to the file specified by the "file" attribute. The setting can be done by the following format.</p> <pre><urange>{, <urange>}*</pre> <p><urange> is a hexadecimal number with the preceding "U+" and one of the followings. Case insensitive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a single code point (e.g. U+416) • an interval value range (e.g. U+400-4FF) • a range where trailing "?" character implies "any digit value" (e.g. U+4???) <p>U+4?? is equivalent to U+400-4FF. U+??? is equivalent to U+000-FFF. Unicode up to U+10FFFF is effective. Even if a range greater than U+10FFFF is specified, it is disregarded. When unicode-range is not specified, it is considered as total range U+0-10FFFF.</p>
		font-size-adjust	Adjusts the fontsize of the file specified by the "file" attribute. For instance, when specifying font-size-adjust="1.05", the output size is 1.05 times greater than the size specified in FO. It is also possible to specify it as "105%" using the % value. When font-size-adjust is not specified, the default value is 1.
		baseline-adjust	Adjusts the baseline of the file specified by the "file" attribute. For instance, when specifying baseline-adjust="0.1", the value is added to the baseline specified in FO and adjusted to the added position. It is also possible to specify it as "10%" using the % value. When baseline-adjust is not specified, the default value is 0.

Element	Location	Attribute	Description
<font-alias>	child of <font-folder>	file entry	<p>Indicates the alias name of the font family name. The source font file should be specified using the "file" and "entry" attributes. "file" attribute should specify font files. For Type1 fonts, specify the font files that have the .AFM or .PFM extensions. For TrueType or OpenType fonts, you can specify the font files that have the .TTF or .TTC or .OTF extensions. The "entry" attributes should be the number of the fonts in the .TTC (TrueType Collection) file. The number should be a numeric value of 1 or more. If the "entry" attribute is omitted, the value is considered as 1. If the font is not .TTC, the value is ignored.</p> <pre><font-alias file="simsun.ttc" entry="1"> </font-alias></pre> <p>To define the alias names, enumerates the <alias> element within this element. This element can be specified as many times as necessary.</p>
<alias>	child of <font-alias>	family-name weight	<p>Indicates the actual alias name for the font described in the "font-alias" element. The alias information is specified using "family-name", "weight", "italic" attributes. "family-name" attribute is the alias font family-name. Newly defined names should not match any other existing font-family names. "weight" attribute is the alias font weight class. This attribute can be specified using a numeric value between "100" and "900" or the keyword "normal", "bold". If omitted, the value is considered as "normal". "italic" attribute indicates the font-style for italic. It should be specified using the keyword "true" or "false". If omitted the value is considered as "false". You can specify multiple alias definition for one font file. This element can be specified as often as necessary.</p> <p>It's possible to display the font file specified by <font-alias file> using the name and style specified here.</p> <pre><font-alias file="ARIALI.TTF"> <alias family-name="MyArial"/> </font-alias> <font-alias file="ARIALBI.TTF"> <alias family-name="MyArial" weight="bold"/> </font-alias></pre> <p>In the example above, font-family="MyArial" font-weight="normal" should display "ARIALI.TTF", font-family="MyArial" font-weight="bold" should display "ARIALBI.TTF" differently. Please note the following points.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the italic font is originally specified, and even if font-style="normal" is specified, it doesn't become normal. • When the bold font is originally specified, and even if font-weight="normal" is specified, it doesn't become normal. Even if font-weight="bold" is specified, it doesn't become bolder. <p>When <alias> is specified, the file set in <font-alias file> is selected by the name and style and displayed. For instance, when font-style="italic" is specified and there is no <alias> with italic setting, normal is adopted.</p>
<eudc-processing>	child of <font-config>	mapping	Specifies whether to process EUDC. If the "mapping" attribute is "enable", it processes EUDC. IF the "mapping" attribute is "disable", it doesn't. If the attribute is omitted, it's detected as enable.
<eudc-range>	child of <eudc-processing>	start end	<p>Specifies the range of EUDC by Unicode.</p> <pre><eudc-range start="57344" end="63743" /></pre> <p>Numeric value is specified. This sample indicates as 57344 = U+E000, 63743 = U+F8FF. If there is no numeric value specified, and the registry reference is effective with Windows version, it follows the instruction of the registry. If not, the PUA range is detected as (U+E000 to U+F8FF). When end is omitted, it is considered the same value as start. Multiple ranges can also be specified.</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Description
<eudc-system-default>	child of <eudc-processing>	file-path	Specifies the EUDC font file of the system default. It is adopted when there is no supported glyphs in the specified EUDC font. If there is no EUDC font file specified, and the registry reference is effective with Windows version, it follows the registry setting. At that time, the code page 932 is referred. If not, EUDC font of the system default is detected as nothing.
<eudc-map>	child of <eudc-processing>	family-name	Specifies the EUDC file by the "file-path" attribute, which is used when the character code of the EUDC range is specified to the font specified by the "family-name" attribute. If the registry reference is effective with Windows version, it is also taken into consideration. If there are the same "font-family" specified, the previous appearance takes precedence and the Font Configuration File takes precedence over the registry. This element can be specified as often as necessary.
		file-path	

The DTD of Font Configuration File is as follows:

```

<!ELEMENT font-config (font-folder+, eudc-processing?)>
<!ATTLIST font-config otf-metrics-mode      (windows|typographic)  "typographic">
<!ATTLIST font-config use-preferred-family (true|false)          "true">
<!ATTLIST font-config name-processing-mode (default|windows-name) "default">
<!ATTLIST font-config windows-registry     (enable|disable)       "enable">

<!ELEMENT font-folder (font-entry | font-alias)* >
<!ATTLIST font-folder path CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST font-folder recursive (true|false) false>

<!ELEMENT font-entry EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST font-entry file           CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST font-entry glyph-list    CDATA #IMPLIED>
<!ATTLIST font-entry skip-glyphname-mapping (true|false) "false">
<!ATTLIST font-entry font-exclude   (true|false) "false">
<!ATTLIST font-entry unicode-range  CDATA "U+0-10FFFF">
<!ATTLIST font-entry font-size-adjust CDATA "1.0">
<!ATTLIST font-entry baseline-adjust CDATA "0.0">

<!ELEMENT font-alias (alias)*>
<!ATTLIST font-alias file  CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST font-alias entry CDATA #IMPLIED>

<!ELEMENT alias EMPTY >
<!ATTLIST alias family-name CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST alias weight (normal|bold|100|200|300|400|500|600|700|800|900) #IMPLIED>
<!ATTLIST alias italic (true|false) #IMPLIED>

<!ELEMENT eudc-processing (eudc-range?, eudc-system-default?, eudc-map*)>
<!ATTLIST eudc-processing mapping (enable|disable) #IMPLIED>

<!ELEMENT eudc-range EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST eudc-range start CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST eudc-range end   CDATA #REQUIRED>

<!ELEMENT eudc-system-default EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST eudc-system-default file-path CDATA #REQUIRED>

<!ELEMENT eudc-map EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST eudc-map family-name CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST eudc-map file-path   CDATA #REQUIRED>

```

Adobe Type1 font

This section describes general information for Adobe Type1 fonts and how **AH Formatter V6.2** supports them. It has tips on how to use Adobe Type1 fonts more conveniently in your environment.

Font organization and necessary condition

Adobe Type1 fonts are organized using the following font files.

File extension	Description
.PFB (Printer Font Binary)	Contains binary compressed font outline.
.AFM (Adobe Font Metrics)	Contains general font information and font metrics information. This is a text file. Mainly used in UNIX with .AFM+.PFB pairs.
.PFM (Printer Font Metrics)	Contains general font information and font metrics information. It also specifies the Windows font menu name. This is a binary format file. Mainly used in Windows with .PFM+.PFB pairs.

AH Formatter V6.2 supports both types of combinations: .AFM+.PFB, .PFM+.PFB files.

Type1 font considerations.

- The current version of AH Formatter V6.2 does not support font outline files with .PFA (Printer Font ASCII) extension. Most Type1 font products are shipped in the .PFB format, which is supported by AH Formatter V6.2.
- Type1 font metrics data which has the .MMM extension is not supported. This metrics file is used for the Multiple Master Type1 fonts.
- Both .PFB and .PFM that maps to .PFB must exist in the same directory. Fonts may be installed in different directories by using ATM (Adobe Type Manager). Such fonts cannot be used for embedding with AH Formatter V6.2.

How to use Adobe Type1 fonts

If you want to use Adobe Type1 fonts, simply specify the font-family, font-weight and font-style property in the FO. The following FO example uses Helvetica for the fo:block.

```
<fo:block font-family="Helvetica" font-weight="bold" font-style="italic">
    Helvetica (Bold-Italic) will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
```

AH Formatter V6.2 applies the following rules to map font-family, font-weight, font-style to Type1 fonts. Note that each .AFM and .PFM file has different mapping rules.

Mapping rule in .AFM file

Property in FO	Mapping rule
font-family	Corresponds to the FamilyName parameter value in the global font information in .AFM file.
font-weight	Corresponds to the Weight parameter value in the global font information in .AFM file. The parameter value "Bold", "Demi", "ExtraBold" are assumed font-weight="bold". Other assumed value is font-weight="normal".
font-style	Corresponds to the ItalicAngle parameter value in the writing direction information in .AFM file. The parameter value "0" is assumed font-style="normal". Other assumed value is font-style="italic".

The .AFM file is a text file so you can easily confirm these parameters using a text editor. If you want to know about .AFM files, please refer to the Adobe document [Adobe Font Metrics File Format Specification](#).

☞ In WindowsName Mode, the mapping rule for the .AFM file is not applied. In order to use the .AFM file in WindowsName Mode, please use [Define the alias name of the font family](#).

Mapping rule in .PFM file

Property in FO	Mapping rule
font-family	Corresponds to the WindowsName field in .PFM file.
font-weight	Corresponds to the dfWeight field of the PFMHEADER structure in .PFM file. This field holds the weight value 400 or 700.
font-style	Corresponds to the dfItalic field in .PFM file. The field value "0" is assumed font-style="normal". Other assumed value is font-style="italic".

The .PFM file has a binary format. Generally you cannot see the contents using a text editor. If you want to know about .PFM files, please refer to the Adobe document [Building PFM Files for PostScript-Language CJK Fonts](#). .PFM files were originally defined for Windows, but currently it is hard to get any of the original specification from Microsoft MSDN.

☞ Sometimes there are differences between "FamilyName" in the .AFM file and "WindowsName" in the .PFM file or "Weight" parameter in the .AFM file and the dfItalic field in the .PFM file. For instance, Adobe supplied [HVC_____AFM](#)

has the family name "Helvetica", but the corresponding HVC [_____](#). PFM defines the family name as "Helvetica-Condensed".

Embedding Adobe Type1 fonts

AH Formatter V6.2 supports embedding the Type1 font into PDF files. The followings are required to embed fonts:

- The [.AFM](#)+[.PFB](#) or [.PFM](#)+[.PFB](#) font files must be in the folder specified in the `<font-folder>` of the font configuration file.
- In the [Option Setting File](#) specify the target font family name `<embed-font>` element or specify `<pdf-settings embed-all-fonts="true">` entry.

If you do not embed fonts, only [.AFM](#) or [.PFM](#) files are needed. If fonts are not embedded in the PDF the user will need the actual fonts on their system when they read the PDF file.

 AH Formatter V6.2 embeds only what is being used among the glyphs of a Type1 font.

Unicode and glyph mapping using the .AFM file

To use Adobe Type1 font with [.AFM](#) files, it is important to know how Unicode characters are mapped into Type1 font glyphs. The following is a brief explanation of how Type1 fonts are treated in PDF files.

- In the PDF file, letters which are associated with Type1 fonts are stored using 0-255 value character codes.
- Each Type1 font in the PDF file has the encoding parameters, which defines the character code to the corresponding glyph-name.
- The PDF reader application (typically Adobe Acrobat or Reader) converts the character codes to glyph-names using encoding parameters. Then reader then gets the Type1 glyph outline using the glyph-name as a key index. Finally the glyph is rendered using this outline data.

 If you want to know more about encoding details, please refer to the *D Character Sets and Encodings* of the "PDF Reference".

Example: if the encoding parameter of the Type1 font is Adobe Standard Encoding, and we want to write a "*" (U+2022 BULLET) to a PDF file, we must select character code 0xB7(183) because the glyph-name of this character is "bullet" and it is defined as 0xB7 in the Adobe Standard Encoding.

Before we can write a character code to the PDF file we must first get the glyph-name from the Unicode. This process is described in the Adobe web site document [Unicode and Glyph Names](#). The most important mapping rule is described in [AGL \(Adobe Glyph List\)](#) file. AGL is a simple text file that defines the Unicode to glyph name mapping rules for over 800 Latin characters. AH Formatter V6.2 uses this data to map the Unicode to glyph name. Following is a brief description of how AH Formatter V6.2 maps the Unicode value to glyph name and writes a character code to the PDF file.

1. Starting with a Unicode text character in the FO file.
2. AH Formatter V6.2 using the AGL data gets the glyph name from this Unicode character.
3. Consulting the [.AFM](#) file, determines the encoding parameter for this Type1 font.
4. Also consulting the [.AFM](#) file gets the character metrics information and character code from the glyph name.
5. Writes the obtained character code and encoding information to the PDF file.

Unicode and glyph mapping using the .PFM file

If you are using Adobe Type1 fonts with [.PFM](#) files, AH Formatter V6.2 maps Unicode to glyphs differently than above, which does not use glyph names.

First, [.PFM](#) file has the only one encoding data in the dfCharSet field of PFM header. This one byte field contains the value known as character set. In the Windows environment, there are following character sets are defined in WINGDI.H header file.

dfCharset Symbol	Value	Code Page
ANSI_CHARSET	0	1252
HEBREW_CHARSET	177	1255
ARABIC_CHARSET	178	1256
GREEK_CHARSET	161	1253
TURKISH_CHARSET	162	1254
VIETNAMESE_CHARSET	163	1258
THAI_CHARSET	222	874

dfCharset Symbol	Value	Code Page
EASTEUROPE_CHARSET	238	1250
RUSSIAN_CHARSET	204	1251
BALTIC_CHARSET	186	1257

Microsoft mapping can be found at the [Unicode to code page mapping data](#). **AH Formatter V6.2** uses this mapping data and converts the Unicode to the character code to write it to the PDF file. This mapping data has a maximum of 256 entries because the code page offers only 8-bit character width. You cannot use glyphs which are not defined in the code page data unless it exists in font outline data.

- ☞ Sometimes code page mapping and actual encoding in the font file do not match. Because of this it is not recommended to use principally Type1 fonts as [.AFM](#)+[.PFB](#) pairs principally. If you must use this combination, please use as a supplementary step.

Changing the glyph name mapping

As mentioned in [Unicode and glyph mapping using the .AFM file](#), AGL offers the Unicode to glyph name mapping rules. It covers commonly used Latin characters. But there are special fonts which do not fit the AGL. For instance, the Adobe Type1 product *Carta* (*CR_____AFM*, *CR_____PFM*, *CR_____PFB*) has 189 pictorial glyphs and non-standard glyph names. If we look up the glyph names into the AGL, we will get the result that only 14-glyph names match and the others do not match with the AGL. If we leave it as it is, we cannot use most of the glyphs in the *Carta* with the [.AFM](#)+[.PFB](#) combination.

To solve such problem, **AH Formatter V6.2** offers two solutions. One is to make a *glyph list file* for this font. Another is to specify the skip-glyphname-mapping in the font configuration XML file.

Glyph list file

The glyph list file is a simple text file, which describes the Unicode to glyph name mapping for a particular font. The format is the same as AGL.

- First field is the Unicode value represented using 4 uppercase hexadecimal digits.
- Second field is the glyph name defined in the [.AFM](#) file.
- Third field is the Unicode character name. This field is optional.
- All fields must be separated using semicolons. Lines starting with character "#" are assumed comments.

The following is a sample glyph list file. This glyph list file maps Unicode private user areas to the *Carta* glyph name with some exceptions. (Space and digits remain as is.)

```
# Carta sample glyphlist file
# file name:carta-glyphname.txt
0020;space;
E000;circle;
E001;lookoutcontrol;
E002;triangle;
E003;diamond;
E004;hexagon;
E005;explode2;
E006;lookout;
E007;IRBM;
E008;ICBM;
E009;explode1;
E00A;ruin;
E00B;goldbar;
E00C;lighthouse;
E00D:mining;
E00E:gaging;
0030;zero;
0031;one;
0032;two;
0033;three;
0034;four;
0035;five;
0036;six;
0037;seven;
0038;eight;
0039;nine;
```

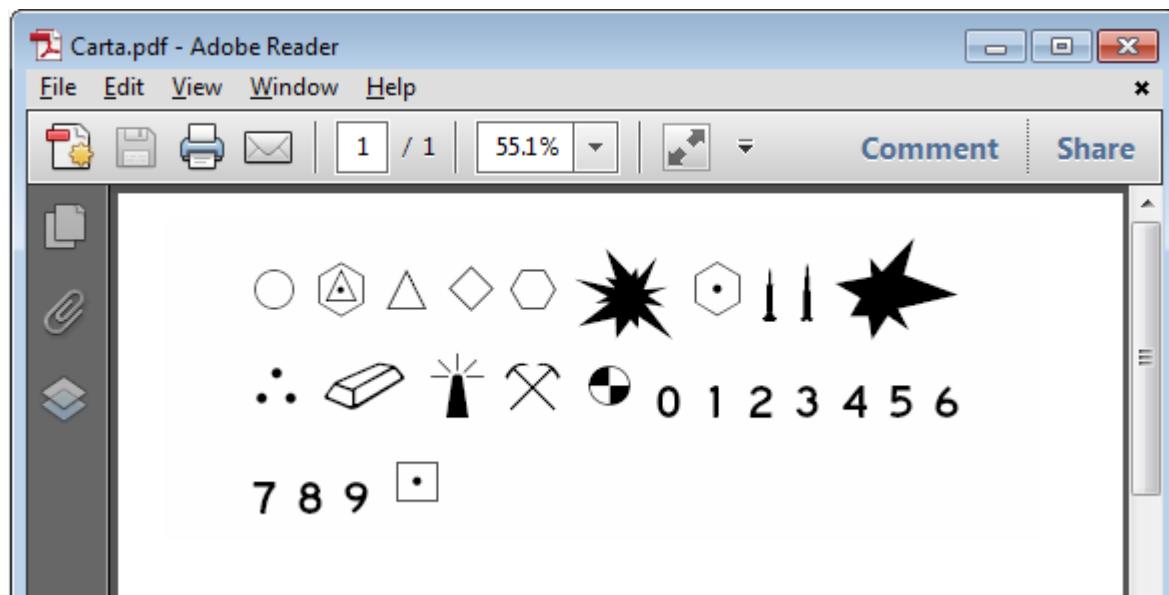
```
E00F;boundary;
...
```

Once the glyph list file has been made, the next step is to add the glyph list file entry to the font configuration file. If the Carta font is located in the `/home/resource/fonts` directory, the following `glyph-list` entry should be made.

```
<font-config>
  <font-folder path="[Install directory]/fonts">
    <font-entry file="ZapfDingbats.afm"
      glyph-list="ZapfDingbats-glyphname.txt"/>
  </font-folder>
  <font-folder path="/home/resource/fonts">
    <font-entry file="CR_____.AFM"
      glyph-list="carta-glyph-list.txt"/>
  </font-folder>
</font-config>
```

Once all glyph list files have been added successfully, the following FO will produce the PDF file shown below.

```
<fo:block font-family="Carta">
  &#xE000; &#xE001; &#xE002; &#xE003; &#xE004;
  &#xE005; &#xE006; &#xE007; &#xE008; &#xE009;
  &#xE00A; &#xE00B; &#xE00C; &#xE00D; &#xE00E;
  &#x0030; &#x0031; &#x0032; &#x0033; &#x0034;
  &#x0035; &#x0036; &#x0037; &#x0038; &#x0039;
  &#xE00F;
</fo:block>
```



Skip the glyph name mapping

Another way to use the Carta font is to specify the skip-glyphname-mapping in the font configuration XML file for **AH Formatter V6.2** per for following example:

```
<font-config>
  <font-folder path="[Install directory]/fonts">
    <font-entry file="ZapfDingbats.afm"
      glyph-list="ZapfDingbats-glyphname.txt"/>
  </font-folder>
  <font-folder path="/home/resource/fonts">
    <font-entry file="CR_____.AFM" skip-glyphname-mapping="true"/>
  </font-folder>
</font-config>
```

If this option is specified for the `.AFM` file, all of the associated Unicode characters in FO file are mapped to the characters in the PDF file as long as they are in the range of the font encoding. For instance, if the Unicode character is U+0021, this character will be written directly to the PDF file because Carta's encoding defines decimal value 33 as "circle". The Unicode character U+0101 will cause a missing glyph error, because it is not defined in the Carta's encoding. We can confirm which Unicode characters are available by consulting the `.AFM` files. Following is part of the Carta's `.AFM` file. If the Unicode character is equal to the number, which is to the right of the "C" character, it is available to use.

```

EncodingScheme FontSpecific
StartCharMetrics 189
C 32 ; WX 280 ; N space ; B 0 0 0 0 ;
C 33 ; WX 560 ; N circle ; B 30 150 530 650 ;
C 34 ; WX 620 ; N lookoutcontrol ; B 15 60 605 741 ;
...
C 250 ; WX 1042 ; N boat ; B 30 0 1012 280 ;
C 251 ; WX 852 ; N portofentry ; B 30 123 822 677 ;
C 252 ; WX 946 ; N whwycounty ; B 0 -58 946 857 ;
C 253 ; WX 1154 ; N whwytridown ; B 0 -100 1154 899 ;
C 254 ; WX 1072 ; N whwytriright ; B 0 -121 1073 919 ;
EndCharMetrics

```

If we want to obtain the same PDF results in the previous section, the FO contents should be as follows:

```

<fo:block font-family="Carta">
&#x0021; &#x0022; &#x0023; &#x0024; &#x0025;
&#x0026; &#x0027; &#x0028; &#x0029; &#x002A;
&#x002B; &#x002C; &#x002D; &#x002E; &#x002F;
&#x0030; &#x0031; &#x0032; &#x0033; &#x0034;
&#x0035; &#x0036; &#x0037; &#x0038; &#x0039;
&#x003A;
</fo:block>

```

Define the alias name of the font family

Some Type1 font family names are troublesome when installed. For instance, if you install Adobe product *Eurostile* Type1 font in **.AFM+.PFB** pair, there occurs a font selection problem depending on the font file combination. The following table describes the font family name problem for some font file combinations.

PFB name	PFM information			AFM information			
	WindowsName	dfWeight	dfItalic	FullName	FamilyName	Weight	ItalicAngle
EU_____.PFB	Eurostile	400	0	Eurostile Medium	Eurostile	Medium	0
EUB_____.PFB	Eurostile Bold	400	0	Eurostile Bold		Bold	0
EUEx_____.PFB	Eurostile ExtendedTwo	400	0	Eurostile Extended #2		Roman	0
EUBEx_____.PFB	Eurostile ExtendedTwo	700	0	Eurostile Bold Extended #2		Bold	0

If you use these fonts with **.PFM+.PFB** combination, there are no problems because the **.PFM** file exposes all the different *font family names*. In contrast, if you install these fonts with **.AFM+.PFB** combination, all of the font family names are *Eurostile* only. Furthermore, there are plural fonts that have the same weight value. The *Weight* value *Medium* and *Roman* are interpreted as *font-weight="400"* and *Bold* is interpreted as *font-weight="700"*. Therefore the font selection is uncertain when you specify the following description in the FO.

```

<fo:block font-family="Eurostile">
  It is uncertain which font applies: "Eurostile Medium" or "Eurostile Extended #2"
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Eurostile" font-weight="bold">
  It is uncertain which font applies: "Eurostile Bold" or "Eurostile Bold Extended #2"
</fo:block>

```

To avoid this problem, define a new family name using the alias element in the font configuration file. The following example defines the **.PFM** with like family name alias.

```

<font-config>
  <font-folder path="[Install directory]/fonts">
    <font-entry file="ZapfDingbats.afm"
      glyph-list="ZapfDingbats-glyphname.txt"/>
  </font-folder>
  <font-folder path="/home/resource/fonts">
    <!-- Set the family-name and weight to the PFM definition -->
    <font-alias file="EU_____.AFM">
      <alias family-name="Adobe Eurostile"/>
    </font-alias>
    <font-alias file="EUB_____.AFM">
      <alias family-name="Adobe Eurostile Bold" weight="normal"/>
    </font-alias>
  </font-folder>
</font-config>

```

```

<font-alias file="EUEX____.AFM">
  <alias family-name="Adobe Eurostile ExtendedTwo"/>
</font-alias>
<font-alias file="EUBEX____.AFM">
  <alias family-name="Adobe Eurostile ExtendedTwo" weight="bold"/>
</font-alias>
</font-folder>
</font-config>

```

The alias family name can be used in the FO as follows:

```

<fo:block font-family="Adobe Eurostile">
  "Eurostile Medium" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Adobe Eurostile Bold">
  "Eurostile Bold" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Adobe Eurostile ExtendedTwo">
  "Eurostile Extended #2" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Adobe Eurostile ExtendedTwo" font-weight="bold">
  "Eurostile Bold Extended #2" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>

```

- ☞ The newly defined family-name attribute of the font-alias element should be different from any other alias name in the font file. In addition, weight and italic combinations should be unique in the same family name groups.

WindowsName mode

AH Formatter V6.2 Windows version can print the formatted results without generating a PDF file. Windows functionality is used to do this, thus the font usage is based on Windows. In other words, Windows accesses the fonts using WindowsName in the **.PFB** file. For this reason, there is a possibility mapping will fail if you use the FamilyName in the **.AFM** file. This problem can be avoided by specifying `<name-processing-mode mode="windows-name"/>` in the Font Configuration File. In this case you need to define the alias name for **.AFM** file because the **.AFM** file cannot be specified directly.

As a general rule Windows does not normally use/include the **.AFM** file, so this is not a common problem.

PDF Standard 14 Fonts

In non-Windows version, the following Adobe Type1 fonts are installed.

- Courier.afm
- Courier-Bold.afm
- Courier-Oblique.afm
- Courier-BoldOblique.afm
- Helvetica.afm
- Helvetica-Bold.afm
- Helvetica-Oblique.afm
- Helvetica-BoldOblique.afm
- Times-Roman.afm
- Times-Bold.afm
- Times-Italic.afm
- Times-BoldItalic.afm
- Symbol.afm
- ZapfDingbats.afm

Because **.PFB** is not included in these, it is not possible to embed it in PDF. Please refer to the bundled MustRead.html before you use.

These fonts can be downloaded from [PDF core font information](#).

TrueType font, OpenType (TrueType outline) font

This section describes **AH Formatter V6.2** implementation for TrueType and OpenType (TrueType outline) fonts. Tips on how to use these fonts in your environment are provided.

Font organization and necessary condition

TrueType fonts were originally developed by Apple Computer and have been used in the Windows environment. OpenType fonts were jointly developed by Adobe and Microsoft as cross-platform fonts. Due to the origin, OpenType fonts have two flavors/kinds. One has the TrueType outline. The other has the PostScript outline. OpenType font files that have the TrueType outline have the file extension **.TTF** or **.TTC**. OpenType font files that have the PostScript outline have the extension **.OTF**. This section treats original TrueType fonts and OpenType (TrueType outline) fonts together. From now on, we will use the term TrueType fonts as the contraction of TrueType font and OpenType (TrueType outline).

- ☞ Macintosh TrueType font data fork suitcase is also TrueType font and its extension is **.dfont** or **.dfon**. Although it's somehow different from **.TTF**, since the treatment of TrueType is almost the same, its description is omitted here.

TrueType fonts are composed of a single file which has the extension **.TTF** or **.TTC**. TTC is the abbreviation of the TrueType Collection. It contains plural TrueType fonts in a single file structure. It is sometimes used in the CJK fonts.

TrueType font requirements:

- Font must have the cmap table which enables mapping the Unicode to glyph index. (Almost TrueType fonts have the cmap table available.)
 - Some older TrueType fonts do not have Code Page information in the OS/2 table (ulCodePageRange1, 2) which can negatively influence **AH Formatter V6.2**'s font selection algorithms. For this reason we recommend not using old TrueType fonts.
- ☞ Please visit the following sites to get more details about TrueType font (cmap table, etc)
- [TrueType Reference Manual \(Apple\)](#)
 - [TrueType and OpenType specifications \(Microsoft\)](#)

How to use TrueType fonts

If you want to use TrueType fonts, locate the **.TTF** (**.TTC**) files in the directory specified in the `<font-folder>` element of the font configuration file. Then simply specify the `font-family` of the targeted font in FO.

```
<fo:block font-family="Arial" font-weight="bold" font-style="italic">
  If you install arialbi.ttf file,
  TrueType Arial (Bold-Italic) will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
```

AH Formatter V6.2 applies the following rules to map `font-family`, `font-weight`, `font-style` to TrueType fonts.

Property in FO	Mapping rule
<code>font-family</code>	Corresponds to the name table data whose <i>Platform ID</i> = 3 (<i>Microsoft</i>) and <i>Platform-specific encoding ID</i> = 1 (<i>Unicode</i>) and <i>Name ID</i> = 1 (<i>Font Family Name</i>).
<code>font-weight</code>	Corresponds to the <i>usWeightClass</i> field value of the OS/2 table. This field contains the weight value that is multiple of 100 in the range from 100 to 900.
<code>font-style</code>	Corresponds to the <i>fsSelection</i> field's <i>least significant bit</i> of the OS/2 table. If this bit is ON, <code>font-style="italic"</code> is assumed.

The information can be found by using Analysis tools for TrueType font (**TTFdump**) provided by Microsoft. For example, in order to refer to the font family of HG-GothicB, enter **fffdump** from the command line as follows.

```
> ttfdump c:\winnt\fonts\HG-GothicB.ttf
```

Find the information that corresponds to the above mapping rules from the name table information. The information below maps to HG-GothicB. As Data shows the font family name, the font family name of HG-GothicB is "HG ゴシック B".

```
9. Platform ID:      3
  Specific ID:      1
  Language ID:      1041
  Name ID:          1
  Length:           14
  Offset:            362
  Data:   0 48 0 47 30 B4 30 B7 30 C3 < .H.G0`0·0Ã
                30 AF 0 42             < 0-.B
```

Some fonts have the plural font family name with another Language ID. **AH Formatter V6.2** supports this name for use as the font-family specification. For instance, **simsun.ttf** has the two family names "SimSun" and "宋体". Both names are valid to use.

Embedding TrueType fonts

AH Formatter V6.2 supports embedding the TrueType font as well as the Type1 font into PDF. One big difference is the embedding license. TrueType font has the license information in OS/2 table *fsType* field. AH Formatter V6.2 respects this licensing information which will cause embedding errors when you specify font embedding against fonts with restrictions on embedding. In addition, only the used glyphs are embedded with the TrueType fonts.

- ☞ The "PDF Reference" says that TrueType fonts should be embedded to get predictable behavior across all viewer applications. If you don't embed TrueType fonts into the PDF file, Adobe Acrobat or Reader sometimes reports errors for particular Unicode character and font combinations. For instance, if you do not embed TrueType fonts, which are used with Thai characters, Adobe Acrobat or Reader will report the "font not found" error when opening the PDF file, even if the actual font exists. In contrast, the fonts which are used with Arabic characters do not cause errors when not embedded.

OpenType (PostScript outline) font

This section describes how AH Formatter V6.2 implements OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts. Tips on how to use OpenType fonts more conveniently in your environment are provided.

Font organization and necessary condition

OpenType (PostScript outline) is one flavor of OpenType fonts as described in [Font organization and necessary condition](#). OpenType (PostScript outline) font files have an extension **.OTF** and consists of only a single file. In addition, OpenType(PostScript outline) is classified into two categories. One is OpenType (PostScript) CID font and the other is OpenType (PostScript) non-CID font. The following table gives a brief description of these categories.

Type	Contents	Treatment in PDF
Non-CID font	Mainly contains Latin character glyphs. Glyphs are indexed using glyph name. It is the same as Type1 font.	Type1
CID font	Mainly contains CJK ideograph glyphs. Glyphs are indexed using CID.	Type0 (CIDFontType0)

OpenType is a new format standard requiring no special conditions to use it from AH Formatter V6.2.

How to use OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts

The usage and family-name, font-weight, font-style mapping conditions are the same as for TrueType fonts. Please refer to the [Font organization and necessary condition](#) for details.

Some OpenType (PostScript outline) has the font-weight value which is not a multiple of 100. AH Formatter V6.2 round off the font-weight value.

Embedding OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts

Font embedding is the same as for TrueType fonts. Please refer to the [Embedding TrueType fonts](#) for details.

Integrate the family name using the alias name

Some OpenType (PostScript outline) CID fonts have a family name defined per font file. Originally these fonts belonged to the same family and each font file has a different font-weight value.

Font file	Family-name	Weight	Italic
HeiseiKakuGoStd-W3.otf	"Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W3"	300	Normal
HeiseiKakuGoStd-W5.otf	"Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W5"	500	Normal
HeiseiKakuGoStd-W7.otf	"Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W7"	700	Normal
HeiseiKakuGoStd-W9.otf	"Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W9"	900	Normal

In the Windows environment it is not allowed to have more than three weight-values in the same family name. (Macintosh does allows such combinations.) As a result, these fonts have different family name per font file. This makes it inconvenient to use these fonts using the different family name. To integrate the family names, the following alias descriptions to the font configuration file should be added.

```
<font-config>
  <font-folder path="[Install directory]/fonts">
    <glyph-list file="ZapfDingbats.txt" afm="ZapfDingbats.afm"/>
  </font-folder>
```

```

<font-folder path="/home/resource/fonts">
    <!-- Integrate the four OTF font's family name to
        "Heisei Kaku Gothic Std"-->
    <font-allias file="HeiseiKakuGoStd-W3.otf">
        <alias family-name="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" weight="300" />
    </font-allias>
    <font-allias file="HeiseiKakuGoStd-W5.otf">
        <alias family-name="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" weight="500" />
    </font-allias>
    <font-allias file="HeiseiKakuGoStd-W7.otf">
        <alias family-name="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" weight="700" />
    </font-allias>
    <font-allias file="HeiseiKakuGoStd-W9.otf">
        <alias family-name="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" weight="900" />
    </font-alalias>
</font-folder>
</font-config>

```

The alias family name can be used in the FO as follows:

```

<fo:block font-family="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" font-weight="300">
    "Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W3" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" font-weight="500">
    "Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W5" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" font-weight="700">
    "Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W7" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>
<fo:block font-family="Heisei Kaku Gothic Std" font-weight="900">
    "Heisei Kaku Gothic Std W9" will be applied to this text.
</fo:block>

```

EUDC

EUDC: End User Defined Character is available with **AH Formatter V6.2**.

Since the information on EUDC is acquired from the registry, it is not necessary to create EUDC information to the [Font Configuration File](#) with Windows version. However when EUDC information is described by the [Font Configuration File](#), it is also taken into consideration. With no-Windows version, it is necessary to create EUDC information to the [Font Configuration File](#) in order to use EUDC.

```

<font-config>
    <name-processing-mode mode="windows-name"/>
    <windows-registry reference="enable"/>
    <font-folder path="c:\Windows\Fonts"/>
    <eudc-processing mapping="enable">
        <eudc-range start="57344" end="63743">
        <eudc-system-default file-path="c:\Windows\Fonts\EUDC.TTE"/>
        <eudc-map family-name="MS Mincho" file-path="c:\Program Files\east\jinmei3\FEJPMIN.TTG"/>
        <eudc-map family-name="MS PMincho" file-path="c:\Program Files\east\jinmei3\FEJPMIN.TTG"/>
    </eudc-processing>
</font-config>

```

A user does not need to be conscious of utilizing EUDC. **AH Formatter V6.2** changes the font automatically by the character code.

Restrictions

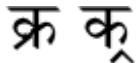
There are V1 and V2 specifications for Indic OpenType Fonts. V2 is the specification published by Microsoft in 2008 and corresponds to the fonts included with Windows Vista or later. The main differences between V1 and V2 specifications are as follows.

- The script tag was changed.
- The way to divide text into syllables, which is the base of the text layout, was changed.
- The treatment of ZWJ, ZWNJ and NBSP used for the selection of the typeface was clearly defined.
- The behavior of consonant conjuncts or above-base vowel marks became font dependence.
- Features to be applied for GSUB and GPOS were added.
- The applying order of GSUB and GPOS features was changed.

AH Formatter V6.2 integrates fonts based on the V1 specification. Many of fonts corresponding to the V2 specification are also included in the features of V1 specification.

There are some known problems in the Indic fonts implementation with **AH Formatter V6.2**.

- With Kokila V5.* included with Windows Vista or later, the processing of Vattu is not correct. For example, a sequence of U+0915 U+094D U+0930 will be rendered as shown in the image on the right, although it should be rendered as shown on the left.



It seems that the processing of the V1-compliant font itself is not correct. Please use V1.00, etc.

- Kokila V5.* included with Windows Vista or later only includes the features of the V2 specification. **AH Formatter V6.2** conforms to the V1 specification, so this font cannot be handled correctly. We recommend to use the free Lohit font (Oriya). Lohit fonts are downloadable from the following site:

- [Lohit Fonts](#)

The following is not the problem of **AH Formatter V6.2**, hope you find it informative.

- The typeface of Kokila V5.* included with Windows Vista or later is designed to be very small. Therefore, the balance is not very good when European languages etc. are mixed. We recommend to use the free KhmerOS font. KhmerOS fonts are downloadable from the following site:

- [Khmer Software Initiative](#)

Graphics

- [BMP](#)
- [JPEG](#)
- [JPEG2000](#)
- [PNG](#)
- [TIFF](#)
- [GIF](#)
- [WMF](#)
- [EMF](#)
- [EPS](#)
- [SVG](#)
- [MathML](#)
- [CGM](#)
- [PDF](#)
- [Video/Audio](#)

Any graphics as the external files can be specified to src property of `<fo:external-graphic>` or `axf:background-image` property of `<fo:simple-page-master>`. **AH Formatter V6.2** detects the graphics format automatically. When the value of the content-type property is specified, it is assumed, then detected whether it conflicts or not. As the result if the specified value conflicts, then additional auto-detect will be done. In case of the image via HTTP, the content-type is given from the HTTP header. At that time it's assumed in preference to the value of the property.

The data: scheme ([RFC2397](#)) can be specified to src property of `<fo:external-graphic>` or `axf:background-image` property of `<fo:simple-page-master>`. In other word, the content of the graphics can be specified in do directly without preparing the external file.

```
<fo:external-graphic
src="data:image/png;base64,iVBORw0KGgoAAAANSUhEUgAAACAAAAAgCAMAAABEpIrGAAAB
3RJTUUH1AIFCDIuN9BfzQAAAAlw ... ="/>
```

It's not necessary to specify the media type in the data: scheme, if specified, it is assumed.

CAUTION: Please be sure that with data: scheme, a parameter delimiter is a semicolon (;) a data delimiter is a comma (,).

The jar scheme defined in [JarURLConnection](#) can be specified. This is effective to JAR or ZIP and possible to specify the entry in it.

```
jar:http://www.foo.com/bar/baz.jar!/COM/foo/Quux.png
```

What is specified from after the first separator ! / is considered as the entry specification. The nest of JAR or ZIP is not supported.

AH Formatter V6.2 supports the following types of graphics. Unless otherwise noted they are supported across all platforms; Windows, non-Windows.

- ☞ See also [Image Output](#) in the [PDF Output](#) section.
- ☞ See also [Image Output](#) in the [SVG Output](#) section.
- ☞ See also [Image Output](#) in the [PostScript Output](#) section.
- ☞ See also [Graphics](#) in the [INX Output](#) section.
- ☞ See also [Graphics](#) in the [MIF Output](#) section.
- ☞ See also [Image Output](#) in the [XPS Output](#) section.

When the specified image cannot be acquired because the image is not existent, etc., a dummy image will be displayed instead. However if the image is a background-image, a dummy image will not be displayed.

BMP

Supports Windows Bitmap. The content-type is "image/bmp".

JPEG

Supports JFIF (JPEG File Interchange Format). The content-type is "image/jpeg".

JPEG2000

Supports JPEG2000 of the following format.

- JP2 (The content-type is "image/jp2")

PNG

Supports Portable Network Graphics Format with the following restrictions:

- Alpha channel information is effective with PDF1.4 or later.
- 16 bit color depth image will be truncated to 8 bit depth.

The content-type is "image/png".

TIFF

Supports the TIFF files of TIFF Revision 6.0 specification.

- No Compression
- PackBits Compression
- Modified Huffman
- CCITT Group3 1D
- CCITT Group3 2D
- CCITT Group4
- JPEG Compression
- OLD JPEG Compression
- LZW Compression
- ZIP Compression

Supports the following color expression.

- Grayscale
- RGB
- CMYK
- YCbCr
- CIE L*a*b*

Restrictions:

- Following formats are not supported.
 - Tiled Image
 - Planar Configuration=2 (Planar format)
- A YCbCr image is transformed into an RGB image when outputting to PDF.
- Alpha channel information is effective with PDF1.4 or later.
- 16 bit color depth image will be truncated to 8 bit depth.
- Multi page TIFF images are not supported. Only the first image in the TIFF file will be processed.
- Some parts of the TIFF extensions cannot be loaded properly.

The content-type is "image/tiff".

GIF

Supports Graphics Interchange Format with some restrictions.

- In the case of Animation GIFs containing multiple pages, only the first page is displayed.

The content-type is "image/gif".

WMF

Supports Windows Metafile. The image quality is maintained by embedding the vector image in the PDF, SVG, PostScript. The following restrictions currently exist:

- Only the horizontal value for the pen width can be used. If the value is 0.0, the drawing is not processed.
- The Bitmap specified for the brush is disregarded.
- The calculation of physical size may not be correct.
- Clipping of Multiple rectangles is not supported.
- The raster operation is not supported. The original copied data is drawn as is.
- The function of clipping the characters is not supported.
- The background of the character is always transparent.
- The function of rotating the character from the baseline is not supported.

WMF in [gzip](#) file format is also supported. The content-type is "image/wmf".

EMF

Supports Enhanced Metafile. The image quality is maintained by embedding the vector image in the PDF, SVG, PostScript. The following restrictions currently exist:

- Only the horizontal value for the pen width can be used. If the value is 0.0, the drawing is not processed.
- The Bitmap specified for the brush is disregarded.
- The calculation of physical size may not be correct.
- The raster operation is not supported. The original copied data is drawn as is.
- The function of clipping the characters is not supported.
- The background of the character is always transparent.
- The function of rotating the character from the baseline is not supported.
- The function of clipping the bottom drawing is not supported.

EMF in [gzip](#) file format is also supported. The content-type is "image/emf".

EPS

Supports Encapsulated PostScript. When there is a preview image in EPS, the image can be outputted. When there is no image, a dummy image will be reflected in the GUI. When generating PDF using Adobe Distiller or outputting to a PS printer or [PostScript Output](#), a PostScript code in EPS is outputted instead of a preview image.

In the environment where Adobe Distiller and [Ghostscript](#) are installed, you can utilize them when outputting EPS to PDF (However, you cannot embed EPS to [Tagged PDF](#)). At that time EPS can be embedded in PDF as PDF. Please set [EPS-processor](#) in the [Option Setting File](#).

CAUTION: In Adobe Distiller, there may be a restriction on the PDF size that can be created. The size of EPS needs to be within the restriction that Adobe Distiller has. See also "[PDF Reference](#)".

It is possible to embed EPS code directly in FO. Therefore it is possible to embed EPS code in PDF with Adobe Distiller, etc. The following is a sample using <fo:instream-foreign-object>.

```
<fo:instream-foreign-object><![CDATA[%!PS-Adobe-3.0 EPSF-3.0
%%BoundingBox: 0 0 84 43
%%Pages: 0
%%Creator: Antenna House
%%Title: Green Rounded Box
%%CreationDate: 10 Feb 2003
%%LanguageLevel: 2
%%EndComments
%%BeginProlog
%%EndProlog
%%BeginSetup
%%EndSetup
%%Page: 1 1
%%BeginPageSetup
%%EndPageSetup
0 128 0 setrgbcolor
0.1 setlinewidth
```

```

newpath
0 5 moveto
0 43 84 43 5 arct
84 43 84 0 5 arct
84 0 0 0 5 arct
0 0 0 43 5 arct
closepath
gsave
stroke
grestore
fill
%%PageTrailer
%%Trailer
%%EOF
]]>
</fo:instream-foreign-object>

```

It is not necessary to have the CDATA section set, but appropriate character references are required.

EPS can be created by various kinds of software. For this reason, some of the EPS files may not generate the desired results when processed by **AH Formatter V6.2**.

The content-type is "application/postscript".

SVG

Supports [Scalable Vector Graphics \(SVG\) 1.1](#). **AH Formatter V6.2** greatly enhances the display quality of SVG in PDF, PostScript through a newly developed SVG native output engine. Please refer to "[SVG Conformance](#)" for more details. SVG in [gzip](#) file format is also supported.

It is also possible to describe SVG code directly in FO. The following sample uses `<fo:instream-foreign-object>`.

```

<fo:instream-foreign-object
    width="100mm" height="100mm"
    content-width="96mm" content-height="72mm"
    display-align="center" text-align="center">
<svg version="1.1" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" viewBox="0 0 480 360">
    <circle cx="100" cy="100" r="50" fill="none" stroke="black"/>
    <circle cx="220" cy="100" r="35" fill="red" stroke="black"/>
    <circle cx="340" cy="100" r="20" fill="black" stroke="lime" stroke-width="4"/>
    <circle cx="100" cy="260" r="20" stroke="lime" fill="yellow" stroke-width="4"/>
    <circle cx="220" cy="260" r="35" stroke="none" fill="blue"/>
    <circle cx="340" cy="260" r="50" stroke="red" fill="none" stroke-width="10"/>
</svg>
</fo:instream-foreign-object>

```

In FO, the judgment of being SVG is based on whether the `<svg>` element has the correct SVG namespace. If the `<svg>` element has the correct SVG namespace, it's regarded as SVG. If not, it's not regarded as SVG. In HTML, it's regarded as SVG only with the `<svg>` tag.

If you want to include the DOCTYPE declaration in FO, please enclose it with the CDATA sections as follows. (Example of SVG1.1)

```

<fo:instream-foreign-object>
<![CDATA[
<!DOCTYPE svg PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN"
  "http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd">
<svg version="1.1" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" viewBox="0 0 480 360">
  ...
</svg>
]]>
</fo:instream-foreign-object>

```

The typical content-type is "image/svg+xml".

MathML

Supports [Mathematical Markup Language \(MathML\) 2.0](#). It's possible to render high resolution image in PDF, SVG, PostScript because of the direct creation engine. Please refer to "[MathML Conformance](#)" for more details. See also [MathML Settings](#) for fine

tuning the rendering of MathML. With **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**, the original rendering function of MathML is an option. You will need to purchase "**AH Formatter MathML Option**" separately.

It is also possible to describe MathML code directly in FO. The following sample uses `<fo:instream-foreign-object>`.

```
<fo:instream-foreign-object>
<math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
<mrow>
<mi>y</mi><mo>=</mo><mi>x</mi><mo>+</mo><mn>1</mn>
</mrow>
</math>
</fo:instream-foreign-object>
```

In FO, the judgment of being MathML is based on whether the `<math>` element has the correct MathML namespace. If the `<math>` element has the correct MathML namespace, it's regarded as MathML. If not, it's not regarded as MathML. In HTML, it's regarded as MathML only with the `<math>` tag.

If you want to include **MathML Character Names** or the DOCTYPE declaration in FO, please enclose it with the CDATA sections as follows.

```
<fo:instream-foreign-object>
<![CDATA[
<!DOCTYPE math PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD MathML 2.0//EN"
  "http://www.w3.org/Math/DTD/mathml2/mathml2.dtd">
<math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
<mrow>
<mi>y</mi><mo>=</mo><mi>x</mi><mo>-</mo><mn>1</mn>
</mrow>
</math>
]]>
</fo:instream-foreign-object>
```

The typical content-type is "application/mathml+xml".

CGM

Supports Computer Graphics Metafiles as defined in ISO 8632.

- When CGM Option is not installed

In the Windows version, when either of the following plug-in is installed, CGM can be displayed. CGM images are converted to raster images when outputting to PDF, SVG. CGM is not supported with the non-Windows versions.

- ActiveCGM (<http://www.corel.com/>)
- IsoView / IsoView WebCGM (<http://www.isodraw.com/>)
- Larson VizEx CGM Viewer (<https://www.cgmlarson.com/>)

- When CGM Option is installed

If CGM Option is installed, CGM graphic is embeded as vector graphic into PDF without rasterizing degradation.

CGM Option is usable not only Windows version but also in all platforms of **AH Formatter V6.2**. For more details of CGM Option please refer to **AH Formatter CGM Option**. About the CGM conformances, please refer to **CGM Conformance** page.

Supported CGM is binary encoded file defined in ISO8632-3.

The content-type is "image/cgm".

PDF

Although it is not an image, **AH Formatter V6.2** can treat PDF like an image. See also **PDF Embedding** in PDF Output.

Embedded PDF has the following restrictions on viewing and printing. Also, the same restrictions apply to the PDF embedded in PostScript, SVG, and XPS format.

- Text
 - "Path for Clipping" of the text rendering mode is not supported.
- Graphics
 - The mask image is not supported if the image size is different from its original.
 - When the display is less than 32 bits, part of the blend cannot be correctly output when printing.
 - Fill patterns are not supported.

- FormXObject is not supported.
- Optional content group is not supported. The content cannot be selectively viewed or hidden per group.
- The DCTDecode and the JPXDecode image formats might not be displayed by the color space.
- Does not support some graphic functions.
- The viewing of address, document outline and thumbnail images are not supported.
- The viewing of annotation is not supported.
- Interactive forms are not supported.
- Multimedia arts such as sound, animation and 3D arts are not supported.

The content-type is "application/pdf".

Video/Audio

Multimedia data like video, audio can be embedded in PDF. See also [Multimedia](#).



Option Setting File

The Option Setting File is an XML file which describes the operating setup for **AH Formatter V6.2**. It can be loaded by the `-i` option in **Command-line Interface**, etc. In Windows **Graphical User Interface**, the Option Setting File is loaded automatically if `AHF-Settings.xml` (`AHFSettings(x64).xml` for Windows x64 version) exists in the application specific data directory. The application data is indicated by the environment variable, APPDATA as follows: `[APPDATA]\AntennaHouse\AHFormatter\6.2\`

When the content of the Option Setting File is corrected with the editor, etc. while **AH Formatter V6.2** is running, the correction is not reflected to **AH Formatter V6.2**. Please exit **AH Formatter V6.2** once or load the Option Setting File from the **[Format]-[Import Option Setting Dialog]** menu in GUI. (There may be some which cannot be changed by reloading settings.)

The following are the elements of the Option Setting File:

Element	Location	Description
<code><formatter-config></code>	root element	Root element of the AH Formatter V6.2 Option Setting File.
<code><formatter-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	Formatter Settings element.
<code><font-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	Font Settings element.
<code><script-font></code>	child of <code><font-settings></code>	Generic font mapping settings element.
<code><font-alias></code>	child of <code><font-settings></code>	Font alias settings element.
<code><pdf-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	The element of PDF Output Settings .
<code><embed-font></code>	child of <code><pdf-settings></code>	Embedding font settings element.
<code><ps-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	The element of PostScript Output Settings .
<code><svg-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	SVG Output Settings element.
<code><inx-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	INX Output Settings element.
<code><mif-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	MIF Output Settings element.
<code><text-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	TEXT Output Settings element. <small>[no-LT]</small>
<code><mathml-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	MathML Settings element.
<code><xslt-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	XSLT Settings element.
<code><param></code>	child of <code><xslt-settings></code>	The <code>xslt:param</code> settings element.
<code><stylesheet></code>	child of <code><xslt-settings></code>	Default stylesheet settings element.

AH Formatter V6.2 allows you to specify one of the following units for the parameter (designated with asterisk `*` sign) that takes the length value. In addition to these, relative units like em can be specified for the parameter with double asterisk `**` sign.

Representation	Meanings
cm	centimeter
mm	millimeter. 1 mm = 1/10 cm
in	inch. 1 in = 2.54 cm
pt	point. 1 pt = 1/72 in
pc	pica. 1 pc = 12 pt
jpt	1 jpt = 0.3514 mm
q	1 q = 0.25 mm

Formatter Settings

These settings are used for the formatting.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<code><formatter-settings></code>	child of <code><formatter-config></code>	abbreviation-character-count	3	Specify the number of characters considered to be an abbreviation when line break is inserted. See also <code>axf:abbreviation-character-count</code> .
		append-non-end-of-line-characters		Specifies to append the non-end-of-line characters. White spaces, open brackets, that are originally non-end-of-line, are disregarded even though

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	append-non-end-of-line-characters		they are specified. See also axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters in extended FO.
		append-non-starter-characters		Specifies to append the non-starter characters. White spaces, closing brackets and punctuations, that are originally non-starter, are disregarded even though they are specified. See also axf:append-non-starter-characters in extended FO.
		auto-break-footnote	true	Specifies whether to break the footnote automatically when <code>axf:footnote max-height="auto"</code> is specified. [V6.2]
		auto-formatter-type	html	When the detection of formatting type is set automatically and the decision of XHTML or HTML is unclear, the priority can be given by specifying the following values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • html • xhtml See also Detection of Formatting Type .
		baseline-mode	6	In AH Formatter V6 , there are some changes from XSL Formatter V4 in deciding the baseline in the text with different scripts like a mixture of Western and Japanese. The following values can be specified. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operates the same as XSL Formatter V4. 2. Adds the improved operation by AH Formatter V5. 3. Adds the improved operation by AH Formatter V6. See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0 . In addition, when <code>baseline-mode="4"</code> is specified, the <code>text-altitude</code> and <code>text-depth</code> properties are invalid.
		bold-ratio	1.0	Specifies the weight of a font without bold in the font family. When 1.0 is specified, only the amount decided by the system is made thicker. For instance, when 1.5 is specified, it is drawn 1.5 times thicker. When 0.0 or less is specified, it is considered as 1.0 thick. This setting is effective with PDF Output and PostScript Output .
		border-medium-width *	3pt	Specifies the default border width in medium style with the real-type numeric value.
		border-thick-width *	5pt	Specifies the default border width in thick style with the real-type numeric value.
		border-thin-width *	1pt	Specifies the default border width in thin style with the real-type numeric value.
		css-media-type	print	AH Formatter V6.2 evaluates 'print' among @media settings of CSS. You can specify any number of media types using the white space character as a delimiter. For example, specify like <code>css-media-type="print screen"</code> . When the setting is empty, all @media will not be evaluated. [V6.2]
		default-CJK		Specifies the language (such as jpn or kor) to be applied when a script is ambiguous for CJK. Although the default value is determined from the operating environment, Japanese language is assumed when the operating environment is other than CJK.
		default-color	#000000	Specifies the default color of text with the format of #RRGGBB.
		default-font-size *	10pt	Specifies the default font size with the real-type numeric value.
		default-from-page-master-region	false	In XSL1.1, there is no compatibility with XSL1.0 in the method of evaluating writing-mode or reference-orientation. If true is specified, it becomes the same operation as when <code>writing-mode="from-page-master-region()"</code> <code>reference-orientation="from-page-master-region()"</code> is specified for page-sequence. Refer to from-page-master-region() for details.
		default-html-charset	UTF-8	Specifies the default encoding of HTML. This setting is applied to HTML with unknown encoding. When the setting is in HTML, or the encoding cannot be recognized by BOM, they are adopted. See also <text-settings encoding> . Case insensitive.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description																						
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	default-lang		Specifies the default language code. The language code follows ISO 639-2. There is no default value. default-lang specifies the language when FO doesn't have the language specification. This is outputted as the language information to the PDF. The default value of default-lang is empty. At this time, if the language is not specified for FO etc., the language information is not outputted to the PDF. The language specified to default-lang2 is adopted when default-lang is empty.																						
		default-lang2	eng	Specifies the language actually adopted when default-lang is empty. When default-lang2 is empty, it depends on the locale of the system.																						
		default-page-height *	297mm	Specifies the default page height with the real-type numeric value.																						
		default-page-margin-bottom *	10%	Specifies a default page margin with the real-type numeric value. A percent value is considered as a ratio out of the page width or the page height.																						
		default-page-margin-left *	10%																							
		default-page-margin-right *	10%																							
		default-page-margin-top *	10%																							
		default-page-width *	210mm	Specifies the default page width with the real-type numeric value.																						
		fixed-width-space-treatment	true	<p>The glyph such as EM SPACE (U+2003) etc. which corresponds to the white space with fixed width is not contained in many fonts. Therefore, alternative characters, such as an square symbol, will be displayed. In such a case, it specifies whether to put the white space or not without displaying an alternative glyph. If true is specified, an white space will be generated. If false is specified, an alternative glyph will be displayed. The target characters and their widths are as follows. (in units of em)</p> <table> <tbody> <tr><td>U+2000 EN QUAD</td><td>1/2</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2001 EM QUAD</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2002 EN SPACE</td><td>1/2</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2003 EM SPACE</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2004 THREE-PER-EM SPACE</td><td>1/3</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2005 FOUR-PER-EM SPACE</td><td>1/4</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2006 SIX-PER-EM SPACE</td><td>1/6</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2007 FIGURE SPACE</td><td>The same width of the figure '0'.</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2008 PUNCTUATION SPACE</td><td>The same width of the punctuation period '.'.</td></tr> <tr><td>U+2009 THIN SPACE</td><td>Depends on the setting of thin-space-width.</td></tr> <tr><td>U+200A HAIR SPACE</td><td>Depends on the setting of hair-space-width.</td></tr> <tr><td>U+205F MEDIUM MATHEMATICAL SPACE</td><td>4/18</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	U+2000 EN QUAD	1/2	U+2001 EM QUAD	1	U+2002 EN SPACE	1/2	U+2003 EM SPACE	1	U+2004 THREE-PER-EM SPACE	1/3	U+2005 FOUR-PER-EM SPACE	1/4	U+2006 SIX-PER-EM SPACE	1/6	U+2007 FIGURE SPACE	The same width of the figure '0'.	U+2008 PUNCTUATION SPACE	The same width of the punctuation period '.'.	U+2009 THIN SPACE	Depends on the setting of thin-space-width.	U+200A HAIR SPACE	Depends on the setting of hair-space-width.
U+2000 EN QUAD	1/2																									
U+2001 EM QUAD	1																									
U+2002 EN SPACE	1/2																									
U+2003 EM SPACE	1																									
U+2004 THREE-PER-EM SPACE	1/3																									
U+2005 FOUR-PER-EM SPACE	1/4																									
U+2006 SIX-PER-EM SPACE	1/6																									
U+2007 FIGURE SPACE	The same width of the figure '0'.																									
U+2008 PUNCTUATION SPACE	The same width of the punctuation period '.'.																									
U+2009 THIN SPACE	Depends on the setting of thin-space-width.																									
U+200A HAIR SPACE	Depends on the setting of hair-space-width.																									
U+205F MEDIUM MATHEMATICAL SPACE	4/18																									
hair-space-width	0.1	Specifies the character width of HAIR SPACE (U+200A) in units of em, when fixed-width-space-treatment="true" is specified.																								
HyphenationOption	true	Specifies whether to hyphenate words by using the original processing that supports over 40 languages or to use the TeX dictionary. If false is specified, Words will be hyphenated by using the TeX dictionary. At that time, only the languages that have the dictionaries can be hyphenated.																								
intrusion-displace-mode	6	<p>In AH Formatter V6, there are some changes from AH Formatter V5 in the behavior of the intrusion-displace property. Please specify when you want to make it the same as V5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operates the same as AH Formatter V5. 2. Adds the modified operation by AH Formatter V6. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5.</p>																								
issue-scale-to-fit	false	Specifies whether to report the scale-change ratio when the scale ratio of the image is changed by scale-to-fit/scale-down-to-fit/scale-up-to-fit with the value of true or false. If true is specified, the level 1 is reported.																								

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	justify-leader	false	Although the reader functions in the justified line, the reader itself is not justified. leader-alignment="none" specifies whether the reader itself is justified or not when the contents are only the text, by leader-pattern="dots" or leader-pattern="use-content" If true is specified, the space may be generated between characters in the leader, the leader may become irregular against the other leaders. However, the space at the end of the leader will disappear. [V6.2MR2]
		latin-ligature	true	Specifies whether to process the ligature in European languages with the value of true or false. If true is specified, the ligature will be processed. If false is specified, it will not be processed. This setting affects the value of axf:ligature-mode="auto" .
		non-starter-ideographic-space	true	Specifies whether to treat the ideographic space as a non-starter character. See also Treatment of full-width white space in Technical Notes
		normal-line-height	1.2	Specifies the default line height with the real-type numeric value. A unit is not specified. The value means the ratio to the font size. The initial value is 1.2. Therefore, in case the font size is 10pt, the line height becomes 12pt.
		normalize	NFC	<p>Specifies the method of the normalization to be adopted when axf:normalize="auto" is specified. The following values can be specified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none : Does not normalize text. • NFC : Performs NFC. • NFD : Performs NFD. • NFKC : Performs NFKC. • NFKD : Performs NFKD. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0.</p>
		oblique-skew	0	<p>Specifies the amount of the inclination when using "font-style ="oblique" or "Backslant". When 0 or less is specified, it is considered as the system default. The font is inclined by the system default whenever there is no italic in the font when using "font-style ="italic". This setting is effective in the following outputs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GUI • PDF Output • PostScript Output • XPS Output • INX Output
		omit-uppercase-word-accents		<p>Specifies the language you want to remove a certain kind of accent marks by comma separated values when text-transform="uppercase" is specified. The language code defined by ISO 639 can be specified. For the moment, only Greek is supported.</p> <p>omit-uppercase-word-accents="el"</p> <p>In Greek, the processing of removing tonos is performed. The target characters are as follows: However, U+0389 is excluded when it is an independent word. The accent to a diphthong can also be adjusted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U+0386 • U+0388 • U+0389 • U+038A • U+038C • U+038E • U+038F • U+03D3 <p>[V6.2MR1]</p>
		overflow-limit-block <small>**</small>	0pt	Specifies the default value of axf:overflow-limit-block . [V6.2MR3]

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	overflow-limit-inline **	0pt	Specifies the default value of axf:overflow-limit-inline . [V6.2MR3]
		printer-marks-line-length *	10mm	Specifies the length of the printer marks .
		printer-marks-line-width *	0.24pt	Specifies the width of the printer marks .
		printer-marks-zero-margin *	3mm	Specifies the margin between the page and the printer marks when bleed is 0. [no-LT]
		PrinterOrientation	auto	<p>When the paper is placed in landscape in the PS Printer, there may be a case that the printer rotate-output the line and EPS incorrectly because some printers cannot get information. Possible to correct the rotation by specifying one of the following values. (The value should be anti-clockwise rotation degree.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • auto • 0 • 90 • 270 <p>This setting is effective only with Windows version.</p>
		PscriptPassThrough	true	Possible to makes Pass Through output invalid when outputting to PS printer. If true is specified, Pass Through output is executed. If false is specified, Pass Through output is not executed but the output is executed only by GDI operator. This setting is effective only with Windows version.
		pair-kerning	true	Specifies whether to process the pair kerning in European languages with the value of true or false. If true is specified, the ligature will be processed. If false is specified, it will not be processed. This setting affects the value of axf:kerning-mode="auto" .
		punctuation-spacing	50%	Specifies the space width between the adjacent Japanese full width characters with the percentage value. The value means the ratio to the font size. This setting affects the value of axf:punctuation-spacing="auto" in extended FO.
		punctuation-trim	true	When Japanese full width characters (punctuations, brackets) are used in succession or come at the start of a line, you can specify whether to trim the letter spacing or keep the same letter spacing with the value of true or false. If the value is true, the letter spacing will be tracked narrow. If the value is false, it will be the same as that of other full width characters. This setting affects the values of axf:punctuation-trim="auto" and axf:text-justify-trim="auto" in extended FO.
		pxpi	96	In XSL or CSS, you can specify px (pixel) as a unit of measurement. pxpi specifies the coefficient, which converts the value of the specified px, as "the number of pixels per inch" when formatting. It's specified with the regular type numeric value.
		ruby-align		Specifies the arrangement when axf:ruby-align="auto" is specified. When nothing or "auto" is specified, it is considered as "Distribute-space center".
		SeparatePrinterDuplexJob	true	Specifies whether to batch print without interrupting a job for printing, even if the switching of the printer between simplex/duplex modes is set when axf:printer-duplex is specified. If true is specified, the file is split and outputted, if false is specified the file is batch printed.
		small-caps-emulation-size	70%	Specifies the scale-down ratio when the font does not have small-caps when font-variant="small-caps" is specified.
		table-auto-layout-limit	100	When table-layout="auto" is specified, it is necessary to look ahead and read the table to decide the width of column. The number of row to read ahead can be limited because it takes a long time to read all row in a too huge table. After reading ahead up to the number of row specified here, the width of column is decided. If 0 is specified, all row is read, and then the width of column is decided. Refer to Table Auto Layout for details.
		table-is-reference-area	false	In XSL1.1, there is no compatibility with XSL 1.0 about whether to make fo:table a reference area. If true is specified, fo:table will be made a reference area and its operation will be the same as XSL1.0. Refer to Incompatibility of fo:table for more details.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	text-autospace	true	Specifies whether to insert spaces between Japanese characters and Western characters to make them look better with the value of true or false, in the document Japanese and Western are mixed. If the value is true, a space will be inserted to make them look better. If the value is false, a space won't be inserted. This setting affects the value of axf:text-autospace="auto" in extended FO.
		text-autospace-width	25%	Specifies the space width between Japanese characters and Western characters with the percentage value. The value means the ratio to the font size. This setting affects the value of axf:text-autospace-width="auto" in extended FO.
		text-decoration-mode	1	Specifies how much the underline, strikethrough and overline exceed the length of a word. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Do not exceed the word length. 1. Exceed half-length of the space between words. 2. Do not exceed the start edge of a word, but exceed the end edge of a word by the full space between words.
		text-justify-mode	5	In AH Formatter V5 or later, there are some changes from XSL Formatter V4 in trimming a line. Please specify the value when you want to make it the same operation as V4. This adjusts the initial value when axf:text-justify-trim="auto" is specified. The following values can be specified. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operates the same as XSL Formatter V4. That is, it is considered that ideograph and inter-word are specified. 2. Adds the improved operation by AH Formatter V5. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4.</p>
		text-kashida-space	100%	Specifies the percentage of the Kashida in Arabic justification. The value indicates the percentage of white space and Kashida. If the value is 0%, Kashida is not inserted and only the white space expands as well as the normal justification. If the value is 100%, Kashida is inserted as much as possible. This setting affects the value of axf:text-kashida-space="auto" in extended FO.
		text-orientation-mode	6	Specifies whether UTR#50: Unicode Vertical Text Layout is taken into consideration by the value of axf:text-orientation when rendering alphanumeric characters, etc. upright in vertical writing mode. [no-LT] <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. UTR#50 is not taken into consideration. 6. SVO and MVO are taken into consideration. <p>Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The layout of SVO/MVO do not match the one defined in UTR#50. See also Upright Rendering of Text in Vertical Writing Mode. • SVO is applied to the text with axf:text-orientation="upright" in FO: text-orientation: upright; in CSS specified. • MVO is applied to the text with axf:text-orientation="mixed" in FO: text-orientation: mixed; in CSS specified. • This setting does not work with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite. It is always considered to be 5.
		text-underline-mode	6	Some improved changes have been added for the position of underline and overline with AH Formatter V6 . Please specify when you want to make it the same as V5. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operates the same as AH Formatter V5. 2. Adds the improved operation by AH Formatter V6. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5.</p>
		thin-space-width	0.2	Specifies the character width of THIN SPACE (U+2009) in units of em, when fixed-width-space-treatment="true" is specified.
		two-pass-formatting	false	When formatting a huge document with a large amount of unresolved <fo:page-number-citation>, a large amount of memories are consumed.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	two-pass-formatting	false	because the cancellation of the page information is impossible. Therefore the limit is caused in the number of pages to format. This parameter solves that problem by making the formatting two passes. Although its process time may be increased, only the page number information which should be solved will consume the memory and the memory consumption will be extremely decreased. When the GUI, this setting is invalid. [no-LT]
		use-default-page-margin-CSS	true	Specifies whether default-page-margin-* is adopted or not when there is no margin specification in @page in CSS.
		use-default-page-margin-XSL	false	Specifies whether default-page-margin-* is adopted or not when there is no margin specification in fo:simple-page-master in XSL.
		vertical-block-width-mode	6	<p>The behavior of the auto value of the width of vertical-text block within horizontal-text flow (or the height of horizontal-text block within vertical-text flow) is changed with AH Formatter V6. Please specify when you want to make it the same as V5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operates the same as AH Formatter V5. The width of vertical-text block is given by the width of the outer area. 2. Adds the improved operation by AH Formatter V6. The width of vertical-text block shrinks to fit the content. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5.</p>
		vertical-underline-side	auto	In the XSL specification, there is no description about the underline in vertical writing mode. The vertical-underline-side property is an option which specifies whether to place the underline in vertical writing mode on the right side or on the left side. If left or right is specified, the underline is placed on the left or on the right. If auto is specified, the underline is placed on the right side when the language property is Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor). The underline is placed on the left side when the language property is other than Japanese(ja) or Korean(ko). If there is no language properties specified, it depends on the standard CJK language setting. This setting affects the value of the extension property, axf:vertical-underline-side="auto" .
		viewport-length-units-mode	6	<p>Specifies whether to adapt the CSS3 interpretation of the vw and vh units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Makes the vw and vh units based on the page size. 2. Makes the vw and vh units based on the size of the area excluding the page margins. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0.</p>
		watermark-font-family	sans-serif	Specifies the font family to the character string which you set to watermark-text .
		watermark-font-style	normal	Specifies the font style to the character string which you set to watermark-text .
		watermark-font-weight	normal	Specifies the font weight to the character string which you set to watermark-text . Possible to specify normal, bold or the numerical value from 100 to 900.
		watermark-text		Displays the specified watermark text on each page. Possible to make it multiple lines by delimiting with the line feed
. This setting is invalid with the evaluation version. With AH Formatter V6.2 Lite , the watermark that shows the evaluation version is shown after the 300 pages, which is the limited formatted pages with the Lite version. You will need to specify an appropriate watermark-font-family according to the text you specify. Please confirm it by outputting PDF. In addition, complex scripts such as Thai and Arabic cannot be specified. The text that cannot be outputted by a single font cannot be specified.
		watermark2-font-family		Specifies the font family to the character string which you set to watermark2-text . If not specified, the default value is the same as watermark-font-family . [V6.2MR1]
		watermark2-font-style	normal	Specifies the font style to the character string which you set to watermark2-text . [V6.2MR1]

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<formatter-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	watermark2-font-weight	normal	Specifies the font weight to the character string which you set to watermark2-text . Possible to specify normal, bold or the numerical value from 100 to 900. [V6.2MR1]
		watermark2-text		Displays the specified watermark text on each page. This setting is invalid with the evaluation version. You will need to specify an appropriate watermark2-font-family according to the text you specify. Please confirm by outputting PDF. In addition, complex scripts such as Thai and Arabic cannot be specified. The text that cannot be outputted by a single font cannot be specified. Multiple lines of text cannot be specified. [V6.2MR1]
		WindowsFontAPI		AH Formatter V6.2 handles Arabic, Hebrew, Hindi, Thai, etc. originally, possible to display these languages without depending on the platform. However there are some unsupported scripts and fonts which cannot be displayed correctly. Available to specify the script to be displayed by using WindowsAPI. Specify the scripts using the notation defined by ISO 15924 and putting commas between scripts. The following shows an example of Devanagari. WindowsFontAPI="Deva" However in this case, the same result cannot be gained when outputting PDF. In order to get the same result, please use Adobe Distiller to create PDF. In order to make this setting effective, you need to specify use-windows-api="true" as well. The default value is empty. This setting is effective only with Windows version. CAUTION: Some fonts may not be displayed correctly.
		zwsp-mode	5	The operation of ZERO WIDTH SPACE (U+200B) was corrected with AH Formatter V6 . However, it's compatible with V5 by default. Please specify when you want make it operate as V6. 1. Operates the same as AH Formatter V5 . 2. Adds the modified operation by AH Formatter V6 .
				See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5 .
<list-style-type>	child of <formatter-settings>	box		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="box". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		check		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="check". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		circle		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="circle". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		diamond		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="diamond". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		disc		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="disc". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		hyphen		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="hyphen". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
		square		Specifies the character to use by list-style-type="square". As for the initial value when a null value being specified or a value not being specified, please refer to (-ah-) list-style-type .
<script-chars>	child of <formatter-settings>	script		Evaluates all characters specified to the code as scripts specified to the script. For example, by specifying as follows,
		code		 <script-chars script="Jpan" code="\" /> \ is displayed as ¥. (Note that it is applied only when the font corresponding to Jpan is specified for font-family). When code not being

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<script-chars>	child of <formatter-settings>	code		specified, all characters specified to script are canceled. When script not being specified, all characters specified to code are canceled.
<space-after-punctuation>	child of <formatter-settings>	language		Specifies the language code.
		code		Specifies the character to be applied. For the specified language, the specified space is placed after the code specified. When code not being specified, all characters specified to script are canceled.
		space		Specifies the amount of space with the real type numerical value. The value means the ratio to the fontsize.
<space-before-punctuation>	child of <formatter-settings>	language		Specifies the language code.
		code		Specifies the character to be applied. The specified space is placed before the specified code for the specified language. When the code is not being specified, all characters specified to script are canceled.
		space		Specifies the amount of space with the real type numerical value. The value means the ratio to the fontsize.
<space-between-digit-and-punctuation>	child of <formatter-settings>	language		Specifies the language code.
		code		Specifies the character to be applied. For the specified language, the specified space is placed between the digit and the code specified. When code not being specified, all characters specified to script are canceled.
		space		Specifies the amount of space with the real type numerical value. The value means the ratio to the fontsize.
<space-between-punctuation-and-digit>	child of <formatter-settings>	language		Specifies the language code.
		code		Specifies the character to be applied. For the specified language, the specified space is placed between the code specified and the digit. When code not being specified, all characters specified to script are canceled.
		space		Specifies the amount of space with the real type numerical value. The value means the ratio to the fontsize.
<usercss>	child of <formatter-settings>			Specifies the CSS user stylesheet you want to add by <css>. See also Cascading Order of CSS .
<css>	child of <usercss>	path		Specifies the path of the CSS user stylesheet.
<script-language-in-CJK>	child of <formatter-config>	script		When the script specified to the script attribute appears in the sentence CJK languages, the character string of the script is considered as the language that is specified to the language attribute. For example,
		language		<pre><script-language-in-CJK script="Latn" language="eng"/></pre> <p>The Latn character string that appears in Japanese or Chinese sentence can be recognized as English. If hyphenate="true" is specified, the hyphenation can be processed by considering this part as English. The CJK languages cannot be specified to language. When nothing is specified to the language attribute, the language specification to the script attribute is canceled.</p>
<multimedia>	child of <formatter-config>	video		When specifying multimedia , such as video or audio as graphics, the setting of content-type is indispensable. AH Formatter may not sometimes recognize if the content-type other than video/* or audio/* formats indicates the multimedia automatically. For such content-type, please specify video or audio explicitly as follows:
		audio		<pre><multimedia video="application/x-shockwave-flash"/></pre>
<GS1-128>	child of <formatter-config>	AI		Registers the format of application identifier (AI) of GS1-128 . Some formats of AI has been already registered, but you can specify when you change the format or the format is not registered. AI is a number with 2 to 4 digits. AI starting from 0 should be two digits. The last digit can be set * if AI is a 3 or 4 digit number. For instance, AI="3800*" indicates 3800 to 3809. The following formats can be specified to the format attribute.
		format		

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<GS1-128>	child of <formatter-config>	format		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> n3 : 3-digit numbers x3 : 3-digit arbitrary characters n-10 : Numbers with greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 10 digits. x3-10 : Arbitrary characters with greater than or equal to 3 and less than or equal to 10 digits. <p>For example, specify as follows;</p> <pre><GS1-128 AI="380*" format="n-15"/></pre>
<UTR50>	child of <formatter-config>	code		Specifies the code point to code you change. The code point can be specified as follows: Characters greater than or equal to U+10000 cannot be specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One character : `` or &#x201C;, etc. 4-digit hexadecimal numbers : 201C Set of 4-digit hexadecimal numbers : 202A..202E
		SVO		U or R can be specified to SVO or MVO. It means that U renders upright and R rotates 90-degree clockwise. [no-LT]
		MVO		

Font Settings

These settings are used for the fonts.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<font-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	auto-fallback-font	true	Specifies whether to look for a fall back font automatically when a font with a glyph cannot be found in the font family which was specified by FO or CSS. See also Font Selection to learn more about the fall back method.
		barcode-text-font	OCRB,monospace	Specifies the font used when you add the text of an original code to the linear barcode with Barcode Generator Option .
		default-font-family	serif	Specifies the default font family. Usually, it is one of the generic font families: serif, sans-serif, cursive, fantasy or monospace. See also Font Selection .
		fallback-glyph	1	<p>Specifies whether to report it or not when the glyph is found in a fall back font. When the glyph corresponding to the specified character in the font family is not found, if auto-fallback-font is specified, a fall back font will be looked for. The following either can be specified.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> No error message will be reported. The will be reported. The will be reported.
		font-selection-mode	6	<p>Specifies the selection method of fonts. The following values can be specified.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The setting of font-selection-strategy is disregarded and always considered as auto. When font-selection-strategy="character-by-character" is specified, the first font that has a glyph is adopted. <p>See also Font Selection.</p>
		font-stretch-mode	6	<p>Specifies whether the information on font-stretch is used when selecting fonts. The following values can be specified.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The information on font-stretch will not be used. The operation is the same as AH Formatter V5. The information on font-stretch will be used. <p>See also Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0.</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<font-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	missing-font	1	<p>Specifies whether to warn when a font is not found from the specified font family. The following either can be specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. No error message will be reported. 1. The will be reported. 2. The will be reported.
		missing-glyph	1	<p>Specifies whether to warn when the glyph corresponding to the specified character is not found in the specified font family or the fallback font. The following either can be specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0. No error message will be reported. 1. The will be reported. 2. The will be reported.
		missing-glyph-all	false	<p>Usually the report on missing-glyph is given only once to the same character. However, by specifying missing-glyph-all="true", the report can be given to all. Please note that careless specification could cause huge amount of error. This setting is similarly applied to fallback-glyph as well.</p>
		use-windows-api	false	<p>Specifies true when you want to use Windows API with the Windows version, without using the original API for the acquisition of the font information. Since Windows API and the original API are not completely the same, some difference may occur in the formatted result. Effective only with the Windows version. If false is specified, the setting of <formatter-settings WindowsFontAPI> is invalid.</p>
<script-font>	child of <font-settings>	script		<p>Specifies the script codes for multilingual setting. The available scripts conform to ISO 15924. However, the AH Formatter V6.2 does not support all scripts. The following scripts can be specified here.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Latn : Latin • Grek : Greek • Cyrl : Cyrillic • Arab : Arabic • Hebr : Hebrew • Deva : Devanagari • Beng : Bengali • Guru : Gurmukhi • Gujr : Gujarati • Orya : Oriya • Tamil : Tamil • Telu : Telugu • Knnd : Kannada • Mlym : Malayalam • Sinh : Sinhala <small>V6.2MR1</small> • Thai : Thai • Khmr : Khmer • Lao : Lao • Hang : Hangul • Hans : Han (Chinese Simplified) • Hant : Han (Chinese Traditional) • Jpan : Japanese (Han+Hira+Kana) • Hrkt : Hiragana+Katakana <p>For generic fonts you may omit the setting of the script or specify as script="".</p>
		serif		Specifies the generic serif font when specified by the script.
		sans-serif		Specifies the generic sans-serif font when specified by the script.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<script-font>	child of <font-settings>	monospace		Specifies the generic monospace font when specified by the script.
		cursive		Specifies the generic cursive font when specified by the script.
		fantasy		Specifies the generic font for fantasy when specified by the script.
		fallback		Specifies the fall back font of the script specified by script. Two or more fonts can be enumerated by comma separated values.
<font-alias>	child of <font-settings>	src		Formats the font name src (source) appearing in FO (or HTML etc.) by replacing with dst (destination). This is achieved by specifying an arbitrary font name for src and dst. This makes it possible to substitute an unknown font in a document made in a different environment, without modifying the document. However, in the following sample,
		dst		
				<pre><font-alias src="A" dst="B"> <font-alias src="B" dst="C"></pre> <p>"A" would never be replaced with "C". Moreover, the setting for <font-alias> doesn't affect the font name in the Option file.</p>

PDF Output Settings

These settings are used for [PDF Output](#).

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	convert-colorspace	true	If the value is true, RGB images are converted into CMYK images automatically when outputting PDF/X, PDF/A. This setting is not effective with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite .
		default-output-intent	#OutputConditionIdentifier =CGATS TR 001	Sets the default value when the output intent is not specified in FO while outputting PDF/X . Values that can be specified are equal to the ones that can be specified to the src property for fo:color-profile. See also PDF/X
		embed-all-fonts	true	<p>Specifies whether to embed the all fonts in PDF or not with one of the following values, which are embeddable fonts in the formatted result.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • false • true • base14 <p>If the value is false, only fonts specified in <embed-font> are embedded. If the value is true, all fonts that can be embedded except Standard 14 Fonts will be embedded. If the value is base14, all fonts including Standard 14 Fonts that can be embedded will be embedded. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Embed All Embeddable Fonts option.</p>
		embed-font-encoding		<p>Specifies the encoding when the TrueType font is embedded. When nothing is specified, Identity-H/V is the default.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WinAnsiEncoding Specifies WinAnsiEncoding for encoding. If WinAnsiEncoding cannot be specified, Identity-H/V is considered as specified.
		embed-std-output-intent	false	Specifies whether to embed the ICC profile specified for the standard output intent into PDF/X output. It is necessary to specify the actual file of the ICC profile when embedding it. If false is specified, it is not embedded. This setting is invalid when outputting PDF/A because the embedding of the ICC profile is indispensable with PDF/A or PDF/X-4 output. Also it's not available to specify the

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	embed-std-output-intent	false	output intent to the PDF versions other than PDF/X, PDF/A according to the PDF specification.
		embed-subset-font-percentage	100	Finds the percent of the character used in PDF against the entire characters that the font has. When the percent of characters used is greater than or equal to the specified value, embeds all font characters including characters not used. If not, embeds only characters that are actually used. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Subset embedded fonts when percent of character used is less than: option.
		encryption-level	128rc4	Specifies the key length when encrypting the PDF file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 40rc4 • 128rc4 (Effective with PDF1.4 or later) • 128aes (Effective with PDF1.5 or later) • 256aes (Effective with PDF1.7 or later)
		EPS-processor	none	Specifies whether to output PDF after changing into PDF using an external processor when outputting EPS to PDF in the formatted result. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none • distiller • ghostscript <p>These have the following meanings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none : Use nothing. The same way in the past. • distiller : Use Adobe Distiller in the environment where Adobe Distiller is installed. acrodist.exe is used. Effective only with the Windows version. EPS support at this time has a little restrictions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ PS-Adobe-2.0 or later required. ◦ %%BeginProlog and %%EndProlog should be included. • ghostscript : Use Ghostscript in the environment where Ghostscript is installed. Use gswin32c.exe with the Windows version (use gswin64c.exe with Windows 64-bit) and use gs with non-Windows. Since the program is invoked by fork() etc. and used, there is no problem with GPL license. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ joboptions
				Invalid in the environment where each processor is not installed. Moreover, it's necessary to set the PATH etc. of the program to use. The value is case-insensitive.
		error-on-embed-fault	false	When an error occurs while embedding fonts, specifies whether to stop the job as an error or to continue embedding by replacing the character with a white space using the value of true or false. If the value is true, stops executing as an error. If the value is false, continues executing and outputs PDF by replacing the character with a white space. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the When Embedding Fails option.
		error-on-missing-glyph	false	When the corresponding glyph for the specified character does not exist in the specified font, specifies whether to break off the processing as an error or to continue the processing by using true or false. When true is specified, the processing will end as an error. When false is specified, although PDF is outputted, the character will be displayed as a white space or a small box in PDF for missing glyph. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Error on Missing Glyph option.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	error-on-pdfx-fault	true	Specifies whether to stop formatting as an error or ignore the unsuitable content and continue formatting when a content which is unsuitable for PDF/X or PDF/A is detected while creating PDF/X or PDF/A, such like PDF/X or PDF/A that contains non-embeddable fonts. If false is specified, the processing is continued, a generated PDF may be incongruent as PDF/X or PDF/A. If true is specified, PDF will not be generated as an error. When the unsuitable content is avoidable, the formatting continues. For example, annotations in PDF/X are thrown away. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Error on PDF/X or PDF/A fault option. [no-LT]
		ghostscript		When converting EPS into PDF using Ghostscript, the full path to Ghostscript can be specified. For example, specify as follows; ghostscript="/usr/local/bin/gs." Thereby, Ghostscript can be invoked even if the PATH does not set to Ghostscript. Specify gswin32c.exe in Windows version (specify gswin64c.exe with Windows 64-bit).
		gif-pass-through	true	GIF image can be embedded into PDF directly. However the I/O error might occur if that PDF is printed on the PostScript printer. Please specify false when you want to avoid this.
		grayscale-compression	auto	<p>When the grayscale image format cannot be stored directly in PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into the bit map format which is compatible with PDF. The compression method of the data stored in a PDF file is then specified by one of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • auto • jpeg • zlib • jpeg2000 • keeplzw <p>When auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of grayscale-jpeg-quality and rasterize-resolution. When keeplzw is specified, if the original image is LZW compressed, it becomes the LZW compression. If not, it becomes the same as auto. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. See also Image Output to learn about the file formats which can be stored directly in PDF. This is the setting for the grayscale image. Specifies image-compression for the color image, and monochrome-compression for the monochrome image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Compression option. JPEG2000 is effective only for PDF1.5 or later.</p>
		grayscale-downsampling	none	Specifies the method to downsample the raster grayscale image that is put into PDF. The options are:
		grayscale-downsampling-above-dpi	450	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none • average • bicubic • subsampling
		grayscale-downsampling-target-dpi	300	When a value other than none is specified, the image that has resolution greater than the one specified by grayscale-downsampling-above-dpi will be downsampled to the resolution specified by grayscale-downsampling-target-dpi. This is the setting for the grayscale image. Specifies image-downsampling for the color image, and monochrome-downsampling for the monochrome image.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	grayscale-downsampling-target-dpi	300	In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Downsampling option.
		grayscale-jpeg-quality	80	<p>For the grayscale image format that cannot be stored directly in PDF, specifies the image quality by a numerical value within the range of 1-100 when jpeg is specified by grayscale-compression. The higher the number the better the quality in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger.</p> <p>CAUTION: It is not for changing the quality of a JPEG format image.</p>
		gs-add-options		<p>This is the setting for the grayscale image. Specifies jpeg-quality for the color image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Quality option.</p> <p>When converting EPS into PDF using Ghostscript, AH Formatter V6.2 specifies the following parameters and starts Ghostscript.</p> <pre>-dPDFSETTINGS=/printer -dUseCIEColor -dNOPAUSE -dBATCH -dSAFER -sDEVICE=pdfwrite -dDEVICEWIDTHPOINTS=Width -dDEVICEHEIGHTPOINTS=Height -dEPSFitPage -q -sOutputFile=Temporary Output File -c .setpdfwrite -f Input EPS</pre> <p>An additional parameter can be specified as gs-add-options. The parameters specified here will be added before -q stated above. Two or more parameters can be specified by being separated with U+000A. The operation with an inaccurately specified parameter is not guaranteed.</p>
		image-color-profile	true	Specifies whether to embed in the PDF the ICC profile of the color image that will be embedded. If the value is true it is embedded. If the value is false it is not embedded. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Output ICC Profile in Images option.
		image-compression	auto	<p>When the color image format cannot be stored directly in PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into the bit map format which is compatible with PDF. The compression method of the data stored in a PDF file is then specified by one of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • auto • jpeg • zlib • jpeg2000 • keeplzw <p>When auto is selected, the process is automatically done and creates the image data according to the setting of jpeg-quality and rasterize-resolution. When keeplzw is specified, if the original image is LZW compressed, it becomes the LZW compression. If not, it becomes the same as auto. Whichever has the smaller compressed size, JPEG or ZLIB, is selected. See also Image Output to learn about the file formats which can be stored directly in PDF. This is the setting for the color image. Specifies grayscale-compression for the grayscale image, and</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
		image-compression	auto	monochrome-compression for the monochrome image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Compression option. JPEG2000 is effective only for PDF1.5 or later.
		image-downsampling	none	Specifies the method to downsample the raster color image that is put into PDF.
		image-downsampling-above-dpi	450	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none • average • bicubic • subsampling
		image-downsampling-target-dpi	300	When a value other than none is specified, the image that has resolution greater than the one specified by image-downsampling-above-dpi will be downsampled to the resolution specified by image-downsampling-target-dpi. This is the setting for the color image. Specifies grayscale-downsampling for the grayscale image, and monochrome-downsampling for the monochrome image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Downsampling option.
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	import-annotation-types		<p>Annotations contained in the embedded PDF is embeddable directly in PDF. Specify the following character strings separated by white spaces. Case insensitive. V6.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All • Text • Link • FreeText • Line • Square • Circle • Polygon • PolyLine • Highlight • Underline • Squiggly • StrikeOut • Stamp • Caret • Ink • Popup • FileAttachment • Sound • Movie • Screen • 3D • Other <p>Specify Other when you embed annotations with no type written. When All is specified, all the annotations are embedded. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Import All Annotations option. See also PDF Embedding for more details.</p>
		import-tagged-pdf	false	Specifies whether to permit embedding tagged PDF in tagged PDF. If true is specified, the tagged PDF is embedded as is without producing an error. In GUI, you can change the setting at Allow Importing Tagged PDF . See also PDF Embedding for more details. This setting is not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite . V6.2MR2 no-LT

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	jpeg-quality	80	<p>For the color image format that cannot be stored directly in PDF, specifies the image quality by the numerical value within the range of 1-100 when jpeg is specified by image-compression. The higher the number the better the quality in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger.</p> <p>CAUTION: This is not for changing the quality of a JPEG format image.</p> <p>This is the setting for the color image. Specifies grayscale-jpeg-quality for the grayscale image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Quality option.</p>
		joboptions		<p>Specifies Adobe PDF Settings File which is passed to Distiller when converting EPS into PDF using Distiller. Only a local file can be specified. When specifying the relative path, the target EPS file is being considered a relative. However, when EPS itself is a relative path, the operation is instable. Please specify the joboptions with absolute path preferably. Please refer to the manual of Acrobat etc. for Adobe PDF Settings File. The operation when specifying an inaccurate file etc. will not be guaranteed. When this file is not specified, the following contents which are not almost specified at all will be assumed.</p> <pre style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> << /CompatibilityLevel 1.3 /AutoRotatePages /None >> setdistillerparams << >> setpagedevice </pre> <p>Effective only with the Windows version.</p>
	linearized	false		<p>Specifies whether to create linearized PDF. If the value is true, creates linearized PDF that is optimized for Web display. If the value is false, creates normal PDF. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Fast Web View option.</p>
	monochrome-compression	ccitt4		<p>When the monochrome image format cannot be stored directly in PDF, the image is stored after being transformed into the bit map format which is compatible with PDF. The compression method of the data stored in a PDF file is then specified by one of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ccitt4 • ccitt3 • runlength • zlib • none <p>Refer to the Image Output for the image format that can be stored directly in PDF. This is the setting for monochrome images. Specifies image-compression for the color image, and grayscale-compression for the grayscale image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Compression option.</p>
	monochrome-downsampling	none		<p>Specifies the method to downsample the raster monochrome image that is put into PDF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none • average • bicubic • subsampling
	monochrome-downsampling-above-dpi	1800		
	monochrome-downsampling-target-dpi	1200		<p>When a value other than none is specified, an image that has resolution greater than the one specified by monochrome-downsampling-above-dpi will be</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	monochrome-downsampling-target-dpi	1200	downsampled to the resolution specified by monochrome-downsampling-target-dpi. This is the setting for the monochrome image. Specifies image-downsampling for the color image, and grayscale-downsampling for the grayscale image. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Downsampling option.
		no-accessibility	false	Specifies whether to permit text access for screen reader devices of PDF files with the value of true or false. If false is specified, it is permitted. If true is specified, it is not permitted. This attribute is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later. owner-password is required for the permission settings of text access for screen reader devices to be effective.
		no-addng-or-changing-comments	false	Specifies whether to permit adding or changing comments and form fields in the PDF or not with the value of true or false. If the value is false, permits adding or changing. If the value is true, permits no changes or additions are allowed. owner-password is required for the permission settings of adding or changing comments and form fields to be effective.
		no-assemble-doc	false	Specifies whether to permit inserting, deleting and rotating of PDF pages with the value of true or false. If false is specified, it is permitted. If true is specified, it is not permitted. This attribute is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later. owner-password is required for the permission settings of inserting, deleting and rotating of PDF pages to be effective.
		no-changing	false	Specifies whether or not to permit making form field and making other changes in the PDF file or not with the value of true or false. If the value is false, changes are permitted. If the value is true, no changes are permitted. owner-password is required for the permission settings of making form field and making other changes to be effective.
		no-content-copying	false	Specifies whether to permit copying the text and the graphics in PDF or not with the value of true or false. If the value is false, permits copying. If the value is true, permits no copying. owner-password is required for the permission settings of copying the text and the graphics to be effective.
		no-fill-form	false	Specifies whether to permit filling in of form fields and signing of the PDF file with the value of true or false. If false is specified, it is permitted. If true is specified, it is not permitted. This attribute is effective only when you specify PDF1.4 or later. owner-password is required for the permission settings of filling in of form fields and signing to be effective.
		object-compression	false	Compresses the object in PDF. It is effective with PDF1.5 or later and text-and-lineart-compression="true" is specified. If true is specified, the object will be compressed, if false is specified, it will not be compressed. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Object Compression option.
		overprint		Specifies the overprint. Any values of axf:overprint other than auto can be specified. V6.2MR2 no-LT
		owner-password		Sets the strings specified as a master password. Specify the strings up to 32bytes. The characters with the code in the range of 0x20 to 0x7E, 0xA1 to 0xDF are effective. If the characters other than the above are included, it becomes invalid and no password is set. The default value is no-password.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	owner-password		The password is described in plaintext in the file. Please use care in managing the file.
		page-labels	true	Specifies whether to apply the page labels to the page numbers with the value of true or false. If true is specified the page labels are applied, if false is specified, they are not applied. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Output Page Labels option.
		pdf-version	PDF1.5	<p>Specifies the version of the PDF to create with one of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF1.3 • PDF1.4 • PDF1.5 • PDF1.6 • PDF1.7 • PDF/X-1a:2001 [no-LT] • PDF/X-3:2002 [no-LT] • PDF/X-1a:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-2:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-3:2003 [no-LT] • PDF/X-4:2008 [no-LT] • PDF/A-1a:2005 [no-LT] • PDF/A-1b:2005 [no-LT] <p>In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the PDF Version option. PDF/X or PDF/A cannot be selected with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.</p>
		printing-allowed	high-resolution	Specifies whether to print the resulting PDF file or not. If high-resolution is specified, it allows to printing in high resolution. low-resolution is effective with PDF1.4 or later. If low-resolution is specified, it allows printing in low resolution. If the PDF version is 1.3, it is handled as hi-resolution. If none is specified, it does not allow printing. owner-password is required for the permission settings of printing the PDF file to be effective.
		rasterize-resolution	108	If part of a vector image is transformed to a raster image and stored in the PDF. Specifies the value of the rasterize-resolution of the transformed raster images in the range from 70 to 500(dpi). This setting is effective only with Windows version. The vector format image which cannot be stored directly in PDF is not supported with non-Windows version. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Rasterize Resolution option. See also Image Output to learn about the file formats which can be stored directly in PDF.
		reverse-page	false	If the value is true, outputs pages in reverse order to PDF.
		rgb-conversion	none	<p>Specifies how to convert the RGB color space to DeviceGray.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none Does no conversion. DeviceRGB is outputted. • black Converts Black to DeviceGray, converts the others to DeviceRGB before outputting. • gray Converts Gray color (mono tone) to DeviceGray, converts the others to DeviceRGB before outputting. • all Converts the all color spaces to DeviceGray before outputting. This conversion is based on the following

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<pdf-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	rgb-conversion	none	<p>formula: gray = 0.3×red + 0.59×green + 0.11×blue (0.0 ≤ red,green,blue ≤ 1.0).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cmyk Converts the all color spaces to CMYK before outputting. <p>It's possible to change the setting by RGB Conversion in GUI. As for the images other than SVG, CGM, MathML, EMF or WMF, which are rendered using their own rendering engine, there is no conversion.</p>
		tagged-pdf	false	<p>Specifies whether to make the Tagged PDF file or not. PDF may not be able to be tagged depending on the PDF versions. In this case this setting will be ignored. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Tagged PDF option.</p>
		text-and-lineart-compression	true	<p>Specifies whether the text and the line art in PDF are compressed in order to make the size of PDF smaller or not. If the value is true, it is compressed. If the value is false, it is not compressed. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the Text and Line-Art Compression option.</p>
		transparency-color-space	DeviceRGB	<p>Specifies the color space when processing the transparency in PDF. Either of the following can be specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None • DeviceRGB • DeviceCMYK
		use-launch-for-relative-uri	true	<p>Specifies whether the external link (external-destination property) specified by the relative address is transformed into 'Open the file' or into 'World Wide Web link' in the PDF link properties with the value of true or false. If the value is true, it is transformed to 'Open the file'. If the value is false, it is transformed to 'World Wide Web link'. In GUI, it can be specified by selecting the External Destination Link with Relative Address option.</p>
		user-password		<p>Sets the strings specified as a user password. Specify the strings up to 32bytes. The characters with the code in the range of 0x20 to 0x7E, 0xA1 to 0xDF are effective. If the characters other than the above are included, it becomes invalid and does not count as a password setting. The default value is no-password.</p> <p>The password is described in plaintext in CAUTION: the file. Please use care in managing the file.</p>
<embed-font>	child of <pdf-settings>	font		<p>Specifies the fonts which are embedded in the PDF. This element can be specified without limit and is effective only when <code>embed-all-fonts="false"</code> is specified. When <code>embed-all-fonts="false"</code> is specified and this element is not specified, only the glyph of the character which is needed in the PDF output is embedded. When the element is specified and if the font indicated here is used within the formatted results, the glyph of the character currently used will be embedded. For a font which is not specified, embedding is performed only for the glyph of the character which is needed in the PDF output.</p>

PostScript Output Settings

These settings are used for [PostScript Output](#).

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<ps-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	noembed-font	false	<p>Specifies whether fonts are embedded in the outputted PostScript. When true is specified, the font information is not embedded and the font must be referred to only by the PostScript name. Followings are restrictions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The PostScript interpreter may not be correctly processed when the font includes a multi-byte code like Japanese, etc. With Distiller, an error like <code>MS-Mincho not found and using Courier.</code> may be generated. Character-codes greater than 255 cannot be outputted. <p>When using non-Type1 fonts, it's not recommended to specify noembed-font.</p>
		use-launch-for-relative-uri		Specifies whether the external link (external-destination property) specified by the relative address is transformed into 'Open the file' or into 'World Wide Web link' in the PDF link properties with the value of true or false. If the value is true, it is transformed to 'Open the file'. If the value is false, it is transformed to 'World Wide Web link'. When nothing is specified, follows the specification of use-launch-for-relative-uri in PDF Output Settings .

SVG Output Settings

These settings are used for [SVG Output](#).

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<svg-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	copy-image-path		Specifies the destination directory to copy images to as specified by "copy-all" or "copy" by image-processing .
		copy-image-prefix		When images are copied to the directory specified by copy-image-path and processed, specifies the prefix of the file name. The file name will be prefix with sequence numbers. Default is empty character string with only sequential numbers.
		embed-all-fonts	false	By using true or false, specifies whether to embed in the SVG all the outline data of TrueType and Type1 fonts which are not limited to embed among fonts used in the formatted result. If the value is false, only the font specified by <embed-font> is embedded. If the value is true, all fonts that can be embedded are embedded.
		error-on-embed-fault	true	When an error occurs while embedding fonts, specifies whether to stop the job as an error or to continue embedding by replacing the character with a white space using the value of true or false. If the value is true, stops executing as an error. If the value is false, continues executing and outputs SVG by replacing the character with a white space.
		format	1	When the formatted result is output to multiple SVG files specified by "false" in singlefile , specifies the format of the additional character string to output to the file name. This character string adopts the character string same as the format property of FO. Each file name is automatically determined based on the output file name. The character string as formatted by the value specified by format will be inserted just before the extension of the output file. For example, if the file name is document.svg, and format="-1" is specified, the file become document-1.svg and document-2.svg and so on.
		gzip-compression	false	If the value is true, creates SVG compressed in gzip format. If the value is false, it is not compressed.
		image-conversion	auto	<p>When the image format to be embedded is a raster image other than JPEG or PNG, it is converted into JPEG or PNG and embedded. The following either can be specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> auto jpeg png <p>When auto is selected, images of monochrome, grayscale or 256-or-less-color are converted into PNG, and the rest are converted into JPEG.</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<svg-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	image-processing	embed-all	<p>Specifies how to treat the referred image.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • embed-all Embeds all images in the SVG. • link Links images that have been linked, and embeds the embedded image. Raster images other than JPEG and PNG are always embedded. • copy-all Copies all image files to the destination that is specified by copy-image-path, and then links. • copy Copies images that have been linked to the destination that is specified by copy-image-path, and links. The embedded image are embedded. <p>Refer to Image Output in SVG Output for details of operation.</p>
		jpeg-quality	80	<p>For images that cannot be embedded directly in SVG, specifies the image quality by the numerical value within the range of 1-100 when "jpeg" or "auto" is specified by image-conversion. The higher the number the better the quality in proportion to the increase in the number; however the file size also becomes larger.</p> <p>CAUTION: It is not for changing the quality of a JPEG format image.</p>
		rename-copy-image	false	<p>When images are copied to the directory specified by copy-image-path etc. and processed, specifies whether to rename all file name to prefix specified by copy-image-prefix, or use original name. When the file name overlaps, sequential number is added. When true is specified, all files are renamed.</p>
		singlefile	false	<p>Specifies whether the formatted result composed of multiple pages is output as a single SVG file or as multiple SVG files. If the value is true, outputs as a single SVG file. If the value is false, outputs as multiple SVG files. When multiple files are output, the file is named by the format specified by format. Effective only when outputting to a file. It is invalid in the output without the file name like the stream etc.</p>
		singlefile-number	true	<p>When singlefile="false" is specified, specifies whether to add sequential number to the output SVG even if it has only one-page. It is not added in case of false.</p>
		rasterize-resolution	108	<p>If part of a vector image is transformed to a raster image and stored in the SVG. Specifies the value of the rasterized-resolution of the transformed raster images in the range from 70 to 500(dpi). SVG, EMF and WMF are drawn in SVG as vectors without being transformed to raster images. This setting is effective only with Windows version. The vector format image which cannot be stored directly in SVG is not supported with non-Windows version.</p>
<embed-font>	child of <pdf-settings>	font		<p>Specifies the version of the SVG to create with one of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1.1 • Basic • Tiny
				<p>Specifies the fonts which are embedded in the SVG. This element can be specified without limit and is effective only when embed-all-fonts="false" is specified. When embed-all-fonts="false" is specified and this element is not specified, only the outline of the glyph of the character which is needed in the SVG output is embedded. When the element is specified and if the font indicated here is used within the formatted results, the outline of the glyph of the character currently used will be embedded. For a font which is not specified, embedding is performed only for the glyph of the character which is needed in the SVG output.</p>

INX Output Settings

These settings are used for **INX Output**.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<inx-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	output-mode	text	<p>Specify how to generate the text frame of InDesign® from text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • text Text frame is generated from each text area. This mode can convert most closely to the formatting result. It is sometimes difficult to edit the result using InDesign®. • line Text frame is generated from each line area. • block Text frame is generated from each block area. It is easy to edit the result using InDesign®. Instead the conversion precision is lost at expense.

MIF Output Settings

These settings are used for **MIF Output**.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mif-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	output-mode	text	<p>Specify how to generate the ParaLine of FrameMaker® from text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • text ParaLine is generated from each text area. This mode can convert most closely to the formatting result. It is sometimes difficult to edit the result using FrameMaker®. • line ParaLine is generated from each line area. • block ParaLine is generated from each block area. It is easy to edit the result using FrameMaker®. Instead the conversion precision is lost at expense.
				<p>Specifies how to treat the referred image.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • embed Embeds all images in the MIF. • link Links images as external files.
		char-units	pt	<p>Specifies a value of CharUnits used as a unit of fontsize etc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pt • q
		units	in	<p>Specifies a value of Units used as a unit of display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in • cm • mm • pt • pc • dd • cc

TEXT Output Settings

These settings are used for **TEXT Output**. These settings are not effective with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**. [no-LT]

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<text-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	encoding	UTF-8	<p>Specifies the encoding of the output text. The following encodings are available. They are not case sensitive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UTF-8 • UTF-16 • UTF-16BE • UTF-16LE • UTF-32 • UTF-32BE • UTF-32LE • ISO-10646-UCS-2 • ISO-10646-UCS-4 • ANSI_X3.4 • ISO_646.irv • ISO646-US • US-ASCII • ISO_8859-1 • latin1 • Windows-31J • Shift_JIS • EUC-JP • ISO-2022-JP <p>Endian of UTF-16, UTF-32 etc. depends on the processor in the operating system.</p>
		eol-marker	CRLF or LF	<p>Specifies the linefeed code of the output text. The followings can be specified. They are not case sensitive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRLF • LF • CR <p>The default value is CRLF in Windows, LF in others.</p>

MathML Settings

These settings are used for [MathML](#). [V6.2]

CAUTION: The default value shows the equivalent value. Note that the setting cannot be described as `thinSpace="2/10"` in fact. Please describe it as `thinSpace="0.2"` in a file.

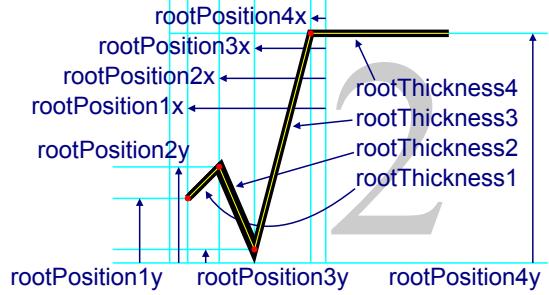
CAUTION: The MathML rendering engine has been completely re-implemented with **AH Formatter V6.2**. Please keep in mind that the contents of the former setting file cannot be used.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mathml-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	scriptsizemultiplier	0.71	In the MathML specification, although the default value of scriptsizemultiplier is defined, the value can be changed by specifying the unitless numerical value (>0).
		scriptminsize *	8pt	In the MathML specification, although the default value of scriptminsize is defined, the value can be changed by specifying the absolute value with units (≥ 0).
		scriptmaxsize *	Opt	In the MathML specification, although there is no definition of the limit value of scriptmaxsize, the value can be set by specifying the absolute value with units (≥ 0). If less than or equal to scriptminsize is specified, it is considered as unlimited.
		largeopmultiplier	1.414	Specifies the multiplier of largeop by the unitless numerical value (>0).

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mathml-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	largeopmultiplierInt	2.0	Specifies the multiplier of largeop against the integral by the unitless numerical value (>0). The integral consists of nine characters of U+222B to U+2233.
		mathsizeSmall	0.83	Specifies the multiplier against mathsize="small" by the unitless numerical value (>0).
		mathsizeBig	1.17	Specifies the multiplier against mathsize="big" by the unitless numerical value (>0).
		enQuad	1/2	Specifies the space for EN QUAD U+2000 by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		emQuad	1	Specifies the space for EM QUAD U+2001 by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		enSpace	1/2	Specifies the space for EN SPACE U+2002 by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		emSpace	1	Specifies the space for EM SPACE U+2003 by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		thinSpace	2/10	Specifies the space for THIN SPACE U+2009 by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		hairSpace	1/10	Specifies the space for HAIR SPACE U+200A by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		veryverythinmathspace	1/18	Specifies the space for veryverythinmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		verythinmathspace	2/18	Specifies the space for verythinmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		thinmathspace	3/18	Specifies the space for thinmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		mediummathspace	4/18	Specifies the space for mediummathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		thickmathspace	5/18	Specifies the space for thickmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		verythickmathspace	6/18	Specifies the space for verythickmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		veryverythickmathspace	7/18	Specifies the space for veryverythickmathspace by the unitless numerical value (>0). The numerical value is in unit of em.
		accentOffset	0.15	Specifies the space between the accent character and the base character by the numerical value with no units or the named length . The numerical value is the em value.
		defaultLSpace	thickmathspace	Specifies the lspace value of the operator which is not registered in the operator dictionary by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em. However, it is always 0 when the operator is empty or the operator has a blank fixed width.
		defaultRSpace	thickmathspace	Specifies the rspace value of the operator which is not registered in the operator dictionary by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em. However, it is always 0 when the operator is empty or the operator has a blank fixed width.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mathml-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	defaultMinsize **	1em	In the MathML specification, although the default value of <mo minsize> is defined as 1em, the value can be changed by specifying the numerical value with units (≥ 0).
		defaultLineleading **	0pt	Specifies the default value of <mo lineleading> with the numerical value with units (≥ 0). The value indicates the space between lines.
		indentingnewline **	0pt	The value of <mspace linebreak="indentingnewline"> was abolished with MathML 3.0. However the amount of space you want to indent can be specified by the numerical value with units (≥ 0).
		applyFunctionSpace	thinmathspace	Specifies the space for FUNCTION APPLICATION U +2061 when the space is required, by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		invisibleTimesSpace	thinmathspace	Specifies the space for INVISIBLE TIMES U+2062 when the space is required, by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		integralSubscriptShift	-0.25	Specifies the shift amount of the lower right script (<msub>) of the integral of the largeop by the unitless numerical value or the named length . As for the upper left, it shifts only the amount of -integralSubscriptShift. The setting is invalid when display="inline" or displaystyle="false" is specified. The numerical value is in unit of em.
		integralSuperscriptShift	0.05	Specifies the shift amount of the upper right script (<msup>) of the integral of the largeop by the unitless numerical value or the named length . As for the lower left, it shifts only the amount of -integralSuperscriptShift. The setting is invalid when display="inline" or displaystyle="false" is specified. The numerical value is in unit of em.
		thinLine	0.5/18	Specifies the thickness of linethickness="thin", mslinethickness="thin" by the unitless numerical value (> 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		mediumLine	1/18	Specifies the thickness of linethickness="medium", mslinethickness="medium" by the unitless numerical value (> 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		thickLine	2/18	Specifies the thickness of linethickness="thick", mslinethickness="thick" by the unitless numerical value (> 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		fracLineExtend	1/18	Specifies the extended amount of a fraction line to the right and left with <mfrac> by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		fracLineSpace	1/18	Specifies the right and left spaces of a fraction line with <mfrac> by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		overLineOffset	1/18	Specifies the overline offset of a fraction line with <mfrac> by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		underLineOffset	1/18	Specifies the underline offset of a fraction line with <mfrac> by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		bevelledAngle	70	Specifies the angle of a bevelled fraction line by the unitless numerical value ($\geq 10, < 90$). The value is in unit of degree. It would be better not to specify too small value.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mathml-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	bevelledHeight	1.5	Specifies the height of a bevelled fraction line by the unitless numerical value (>0). The value is the multiplier against the higher one of a numerator or a denominator.
		rootPosition1x	-0.6	
		rootPosition1y	0.4	
		rootPosition2x	-0.5	
		rootPosition2y	0.5	
		rootPosition3x	-0.3	
		rootPosition3y	0.05	
		rootPosition4x	0	
		rootPosition4y	19/18	
		rootThickness1	0.5/18	
		rootThickness2	1.5/18	
		rootThickness3	1/18	
		rootThickness4	1/18	
		encloseLineThickness	1/18	Specifies the thickness of the line drawn by <menclose> by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		roundedboxRadius	0.25	Specifies the rounded box radius when <menclose notation="roundedbox"> is specified, by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		columnlineThickness	1/18	Specifies the thickness of the ruled line of a column with <mtable> by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		rowlineThickness	1/18	Specifies the thickness of the ruled line of a row with <mtable> by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		framelineThickness	1/18	Specifies the thickness of the ruled line of a frame with <mtable> by the unitless numerical value (>0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		charspacingTight	0	Specifies the space when <mstack charspacing="tight"> is specified, by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		charspacingMedium	0.2	Specifies the space when <mstack charspacing="medium"> is specified, by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		charspacingLoose	0.4	Specifies the space when <mstack charspacing="loose"> is specified, by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		crossoutThickness	1/18	Specifies the line thickness of <mscarry crossout> by the unitless numerical value (≥ 0) or the named length . The numerical value is in unit of em.
		errorColor	red	Specifies the color with <merror>.
		errorBackground	transparent	Specifies the background color with <merror>.
		escapingMs	\	Specifies the escape character with <ms>. If empty is specified, the escape processing will not be performed.
		italicizeMi	U+0041-005A, U+0061-007A, U+00C0-01BF, U+01C4-02AF,	Specifies the range of Unicode of the character which is made italic with <mi>. See also font-config to learn more about the format. In MathML specifications, it is written only that single character is made italic with <mi>.



Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<mathml-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	italicizeMi	U+0386-0481, U+048A-052F, U+1E00-1FBC, U+1FC2-1FCC, U+1FD0-1FDC, U+1FE0-1FEC, U+1FF0-1FFC, U+2C60-2C7F	However neither numbers nor ∞ are made italic by lots of implementations. The default value contains only the character of Latn, Grek, and Cyril.
<variant-font>	child of <mathml-settings>	mathvariant	normal	<p>Specifies the font corresponding to mathvariant. Any number of this element can be specified. See also Fonts for Math Expression.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • normal • bold • italic • bold-italic • double-struck • bold-fraktur • script • bold-script • fraktur • sans-serif • bold-sans-serif • sans-serif-italic • sans-serif-bold-italic • monospace
		fontfamily		Specifies the font to be used. The default value of mathvariant="normal" is "STIXGeneral", "Cambria Math" in Windows version, "STIXGeneral" in non-Windows versions. In any cases other than mathvariant="normal", the normal font is the default value.
		center-shift	0	The center position of a character can be adjusted. When the minus etc. are remarkably shifted from the center, the position can be specified by the unitless numerical value. The numerical value is in unit of em. See also Fonts for Math Expression.
				Specifies the font that corresponds to the script or Unicoderange. This setting can change a part of fonts specified by <variant-font fontfamily>. Any number of this element can be specified. The following shows the example.
<font-entry>	child of <variant-font>			<pre><variant-font mathvariant="normal" fontfamily="STIXGeneral"> <font-entry script="Latn" fontfamily="Times New Roman"/> </variant-font></pre> <p>Either script or unicode-range needs to be specified. The effect is not guaranteed when both are specified.</p>
		fontfamily		Specifies the font to use.
		script		Specifies the scripts, such as Latn or Grek. The available scripts conforms to ISO 15924 .
		unicode-range		Specifies the range of Unicode to apply. See also font-config to learn more about the format.
		mathvariant		Some fonts behave as regular fonts even if they are designed as italic. In such fonts, if mathvariant="italic" is specified, they will be slanted doubly. To avoid this, specify mathvariant="normal". See also Fonts for Math Expression.
		center-shift		The center position of a character can be adjusted. When the minus etc. are remarkably shifted from the center, the

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<font-entry>	child of <variant-font>	center-shift		position can be specified by the unitless numerical value. The numerical value is in unit of em. See also Fonts for Math Expression.
<operator-dictionary>	child of <mathml-settings>	<operator-dictionary>		<operator-dictionary> is specified in order to change the contents of the default operator dictionary. Any number of this element can be specified and is evaluated in order. See also MathML Conformance to learn more about the operator dictionary.
		src		URI of the operator dictionary can be specified as src. If you setup a relative path, this setting file is being considered as the relative. The content is XML of the same content as this element whose root is <operator-dictionary>. However, src cannot be specified.
<entry>	child of <operator-dictionary>	operator		Specifies the operator. This setting is indispensable.
		form		Specifies either of the following: This setting is indispensable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prefix • infix • postfix
		priority	0	Specifies the integer value.
		lspace	5	Specifies the value from 0 to 7. Values have the following meanings. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. Adds no spaces. 1. Adds the space of veryverythinmathspace. 2. Adds the space of verythinmathspace. 3. Adds the space of thinmathspace. 4. Adds the space of mediummathspace. 5. Adds the space of thickmathspace. 6. Adds the space of verythickmathspace. 7. Adds the space of veryverythickmathspace.
		rspace	5	
		minsize		Specifies the relative value with units or the absolute value, such as em. The relative value is changed into the absolute value when it is used. When there is no settings, it depends on the setting of <mo>.
		maxsize		
		accent	false	Specifies either true or false.
		fence	false	Specifies either true or false.
		separator	false	Specifies either true or false.
		stretchy	false	Specifies either true or false.
		symmetric	false	Specifies either true or false.
		largeop	false	Specifies either true or false.
		movablelimits	false	Specifies either true or false.
		linebreakstyle	before	Specifies either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • before • after • duplicate

The named length is either of the following. negative* is a negative length. negative* cannot be used in the scene where a positive value is calculated.

- veryverythinmathspace
- verythinmathspace

- thinmathspace
- mediummathspace
- thickmathspace
- verythickmathspace
- veryverythickmathspace
- negativeeveryverythinmathspace
- negativeeverythinmathspace
- negativethinmathspace
- negativemediummathspace
- negativethickmathspace
- negativeeverythickmathspace
- negativeeveryverythickmathspace

Fonts for Math Expression

In order to format the math expression finely, it is necessary to prepare the font for math expression. Some fonts for math expression are introduced here.

STIX Fonts

AH Formatter V6.2 assumes the STIX fonts are used by default. STIX fonts are downloadable from the following:

- STIX Fonts

When using STIX fonts, it is not necessary to specify something to the Option Setting File in particular. However when using other fonts, it is necessary to do a proper setting with `<variant-font>`.

Cambria Math Fonts

Fonts for Math expression called Cambria Math are enclosed in Windows. In **AH Formatter V6.2** Windows version, when STIX fonts are not installed, these fonts are the default. In order to invalidate STIX fonts and always use these fonts, specify as follows;

```
<variant-font fontfamily="Cambria Math"/>
```

BaKoMa Fonts

BaKoMa fonts are often used with TeX. BaKoMa fonts are downloadable from the following: It is recommended to use ttf or otf from here.

- CTAN Fonts

Since these fonts are old, there is no relevance as the font family respectively. If you use all of them, a lot of settings would be required. The following shows an example of changing x y z in STIX fonts in italic into the round shape letter peculiar to the math expression.

```
<variant-font mathvariant="italic">
  <font-entry unicode-range="U+0061-007A" fontfamily="cmmi10" mathvariant="normal"/>
</variant-font>
<variant-font mathvariant="bold-italic">
  <font-entry unicode-range="U+0061-007A" fontfamily="cmmib10" mathvariant="normal"/>
</variant-font>
```

Even if BaKoMa fonts are designed to be italic, the information which shows it does not exist in the font. Therefore, the setting of `mathvariant="normal"` is needed so that the text is not slanted doubly. The same applies to bold.

MathType Fonts

MathType fonts have the family name of Euclid. MathType fonts are downloadable from the following:

- MathType Fonts

MathType fonts also have x y z with round shape letter. These fonts are old and designed to be lowered totally. Therefore, the center position is not equal to the position of a minus symbol. When using these fonts, it is necessary to adjust it. In addition, it is

necessary to replace symbols, such as minus, with other fonts called Euclid Symbol. The following shows a recommended example:

```
<variant-font fontfamily="Euclid, Euclid Symbol" center-shift="0.1">
<font-entry unicode-range="U+0028-002F,U+003A-003F,U+005F,U+2212" fontfamily="Euclid Symbol"/>
</variant-font>
<variant-font mathvariant="script" center-shift="0.1">
<font-entry unicode-range="U+0030-0039,U+0041-005A" fontfamily="Euclid Math One"/>
</variant-font>
<variant-font mathvariant="double-struck" center-shift="0.1">
<font-entry unicode-range="U+0041-005A,U+006B" fontfamily="Euclid Math Two"/>
</variant-font>
<variant-font mathvariant="fraktur" fontfamily="Euclid Fraktur" center-shift="0.1"/>
```

XSLT Settings

These settings are used for XSLT Processor.

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<xslt-settings>	child of <formatter-config>	msxml	true	Specifies whether to use MSXML or not. If true is specified, MSXML is used as an XSLT Processor. Specification of command is disregarded at this time. If false is specified, the external XSLT Processor specified from command will be used, but when nothing is specified from command, it is considered that true is specified and MSXML is used. The version of MSXML actually used can be checked on the XSLT page of the Format Option Setting Dialog . This setting is ignored in non-Windows environment.
		command		<p>The command line of the External XSLT Processor is specified here. The command line strings must include at least three identifiers, %1, %2 and %3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %1 : XML document • %2 : XSL stylesheet • %3 : XSLT Output File • %param : Parameter of xsl:param <p>If nothing is specified, or "@MSXML" is specified, the external processor is not used but the internal processor, MSXML is used. This setting is effective only with Windows version. It's an initial setting of XSLT Processor with all kinds of interfaces. If nothing is specified in non-Windows environment, XSLT transformation is not performed.</p>
		param-option		<p>Specifies the parameter type of xsl:param given to the external XSLT Processor. The strings must include at least two identifiers, %p and %v. These values are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %p : Value of <param name> • %v : Value of <param value> <p>These values affect the part of %param in the command line strings. When two or more <param>s are specified, they are divided by the white space and repeated.</p>
<param>	child of <xslt-settings>	name		Specifies the parameter name of xsl:param for XSLT Processor.
		value		Specifies the parameter value of xsl:param for XSLT Processor. When the value includes a white space, please explicitly enclose in quotation marks.
<stylesheet>	child of <xslt-settings>	ns		Possible to specify the stylesheet applied to a specific XML document.
		href		<p>Specifies the name space of the XML document by ns, and specifies the URI of the stylesheet by href. The following shows the example of XHTML and WordML.</p> <pre><stylesheet ns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" href="xhtml2fo.xsl"/> <stylesheet ns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/office/ word/2003/wordml" href="[WordMLToFO install directory]/WordMLToFO.xsl"/></pre> <p>If the XML document has the name space specified here, it can be formatted by itself, without specifying the stylesheet. If the stylesheet is specified when</p>

Element	Location	Attribute	Default	Description
<stylesheet>	child of <xslt-settings>	href		formatting or the stylesheet is specified in the XML document, these are adopted and the setting here will be ignored.
<msxml>	child of <xslt-settings>	name value		<p>Specifies the property of MSXML when msxml="true" is specified. The property name is specified by name and the value is specified by value. For the moment, only true or false can be specified as value. That is, the property which needs the other value cannot be specified. There are two types of properties available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Properties specified by the setProperty() method like, <code>setProperty("AllowXsltScript", true);</code>. • Properties specified by the value directly like, <code>resolveExternals = true;</code>. <p>name interpreted as the latter one are as follows;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • preserveWhiteSpace • validateOnParse • resolveExternals <p>In any case other than these, the value is set via the setProperty() method. The character string of name is not checked. It is considered that the following are set as default.</p> <pre style="color: blue;"><msxml name="preserveWhiteSpace" value="true"/> <msxml name="validateOnParse" value="false"/> <msxml name="resolveExternals" value="true"/> <msxml name="ServerHTTPRequest" value="true"/> <msxml name="ProhibitDTD" value="false"/> <msxml name="AllowDocumentFunction" value="true"/> <msxml name="AllowXsltScript" value="false"/></pre> <p>See also MSXML Security Overview. The settings are ignored with non-Windows versions. V6.2</p>

Suppose XSLT setting is as follows:

```
<xslt-settings command="xslt -o %1%2%param" param-option="%p=%v">
  <param name="foo" value="123"/>
  <param name="bar" value="%1Hello, World%2"/>
</xslt-settings>
```

XSLT Processor executes as follows in order to transform file.xml and file.xsl into file.fo.

```
xslt -o "file.fo" "file.xml" "file.xsl" foo=123 bar="Hello, World"
```

As described in the example here, the actual file name given to %1 or %2 includes white space, it's necessary to enclose the file name with quotation mark, ".

Example for Option Setting File

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<formatter-config>
  <formatter-settings
    default-page-width="210mm"
    default-page-height="297mm"
    default-font-size="10pt"
    normal-line-height="1.2"
    default-color="#000000"
    border-thin-width="1pt"
    border-medium-width="3pt"
    border-thick-width="5pt"
    pxpi="96"
    default-lang=""
    default-CJK="ja"
    punctuation-trim="true"
    text-autospace="true"
    vertical-underline-side="auto"
```

```

punctuation-spacing="0.5"
text-autospace-width="0.25"/>
<pdf-settings
  embed-all-fonts="false"
  error-on-embed-fault="false"
  user-password=""
  master-password=""
  no-printing="false"
  no-changing="false"
  no-content-copying="false"
  no-adding-or-changing-comments="false"
  image-compression="auto"
  jpeg-quality="80"
  text-and-lineart-compression="true"
  use-launch-for-relative-uri="true"
  rasterize-resolution="108">
  <embed-font font="Arial"/>
  <embed-font font="Courier New"/>
</pdf-settings>
<font-settings default-font-family="serif">
  <script-font
    serif="Times New Roman"
    sans-serif="Arial"
    monospace="Courier New"
    cursive="Times New Roman"
    fantasy="Times New Roman"/>
  <script-font
    script="Jpan"
    serif="IPAMincho"
    sans-serif="IPAGothic"
    monospace="IPAMincho"/>
  <script-font
    script="Hang"
    serif="Batang"
    sans-serif="Gulim"
    monospace="BatangChe"/>
  <script-font
    script="Hans"
    serif="SimSun"
    sans-serif="SimHei"
    monospace="SimSun"/>
  <script-font
    script="Hant"
    serif="MingLiU"
    sans-serif="MingLiU"
    monospace="MingLiU"/>
  <font-alias src="MS Mincho" dst="IPAMincho"/>
  <font-alias src="MS Gothic" dst="IPAGothic"/>
</font-settings>
<xslt-settings command="xslt -o &#34;%3&#34; &#34;%1&#34; &#34;%2&#34; %param"
               param-option="%p=%v">
  <param name="foo" value="123"/>
  <param name="bar" value="XYZ"/>
</xslt-settings>
</formatter-config>

```

XSL-FO Conformance

Implementation is based on [Extensible Stylesheet Language \(XSL\) Version 1.1](#).

- [yes] in the list means that the formatting object or property is implemented.
- [partial] means that the formatting object or property is partially implemented.
- [no] means not implemented.
- [-] means aural property, it is out of scope for implementation.

Sometimes items with [yes] have some limitation(s) that do not affect their ability to accomplish the specified tasks. See [8 Conformance] of XSL specification about "Conformance Level".

5.9 Expressions

The Conformance level is not defined for Expressions.

5.9.13 Definitions of Units of Measure

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
cm		yes	1cm = 10mm
mm		yes	
in		yes	1in = 25.4mm
pt		yes	1pt = 1/72in = 0.3528mm
pc		yes	1pc = 12pt
px		yes	 pxpi
em		yes	
deg		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <angle>
grad		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <angle>
rad		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <angle>
ms		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <time>
s		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <time>
Hz		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <frequency>
kHz		yes	5.11 Property Datatypes <frequency>

5.10 Core Function Library

The Conformance level is not defined for Core Function Library.

5.10.1 Number Functions

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
floor()		yes	
ceiling()		yes	
round()		yes	
min()		yes	
max()		yes	
abs()		yes	

5.10.2 Color Functions

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
rgb()		yes	
rgb-icc()		yes	This function is extended. ↗ rgb-icc()
system-color()		yes	

5.10.3 Font Functions

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
system-font()		no	

5.10.4 Property Value Functions

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
inherited-property-value()		yes	
label-end()		yes	
body-start()		yes	
from-parent()		yes	
from-nearest-specified-value()		yes	
from-page-master-region()		yes	
from-table-column()		yes	
proportional-column-width()		yes	
merge-property-values()		no	

Incompatibility with XSL1.0 is caused by from-page-master-region() function added in XSL1.1. In XSL1.1, even if writing-mode or reference-orientation is specified for fo:region-*^{*}, it is supposed to be disregarded. To enable these specifications, it is necessary to specify the following for fo:page-sequence.

```
writing-mode="from-page-master-region()"
reference-orientation="from-page-master-region()"
```

Also, by specifying default-from-page-master-region="true" by the [Option Setting File](#), it can always be operated as interchangeable XSL1.0.

6 Formatting Objects

6.4 Declarations and Pagination and Layout Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.4.2 fo:root	Basic	yes	
6.4.3 fo:declarations	Basic	yes	
6.4.4 fo:color-profile	Extended	yes	↗ PDF/X
6.4.5 fo:page-sequence	Basic	yes	
6.4.6 fo:page-sequence-wrapper	Basic	yes	
6.4.7 fo:layout-master-set	Basic	yes	
6.4.8 fo:page-sequence-master	Basic	yes	
6.4.9 fo:single-page-master-reference	Basic	yes	
6.4.10 fo:repeatable-page-master-reference	Basic	yes	
6.4.11 fo:repeatable-page-master-alternatives	Extended	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.4.12 fo:conditional-page-master-reference	Extended	yes	
6.4.13 fo:simple-page-master	Basic	yes	This object is extended to specify background-image, background-repeat, background-position-horizontal and background-position-vertical properties. ☞ Page Background
6.4.14 fo:region-body	Basic	yes	
6.4.15 fo:region-before	Extended	yes	
6.4.16 fo:region-after	Extended	yes	
6.4.17 fo:region-start	Extended	yes	
6.4.18 fo:region-end	Extended	yes	
6.4.19 fo:flow	Basic	yes	
6.4.20 fo:static-content	Extended	yes	
6.4.21 fo:title	Extended	yes	
6.4.22 fo:flow-map	Extended	yes	
6.4.23 fo:flow-assignment	Extended	yes	
6.4.24 fo:flow-source-list	Extended	yes	
6.4.25 fo:flow-name-specifier	Extended	yes	
6.4.26 fo:flow-target-list	Extended	yes	
6.4.27 fo:region-name-specifier	Extended	yes	

6.5 Block-level Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.5.2 fo:block	Basic	yes	
6.5.3 fo:block-container	Extended	yes	This object is extended to specify column-count, column-gap properties. ☞ Columns

6.6 Inline-level Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.6.2 fo:bidi-override	Extended	yes	
6.6.3 fo:character	Basic	yes	
6.6.4 fo:initial-property-set	Extended	yes	
6.6.5 fo:external-graphic	Basic	yes	
6.6.6 fo:instream-foreign-object	Extended	yes	
6.6.7 fo:inline	Basic	yes	
6.6.8 fo:inline-container	Extended	yes	
6.6.9 fo:leader	Basic	yes	
6.6.10 fo:page-number	Basic	yes	
6.6.11 fo:page-number-citation	Extended	yes	
6.6.12 fo:page-number-citation-last	Extended	yes	
6.6.13 fo:folio-prefix	Extended	yes	Antenna House has already been supporting it by the extensions specification. ☞ axf:page-number-prefix
6.6.14 fo:folio-suffix	Extended	yes	
6.6.15 fo:scaling-value-citation	Extended	yes	

6.7 Formatting Objects for Tables

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.7.2 fo:table-and-caption	Basic	yes	
6.7.3 fo:table	Basic	yes	
6.7.4 fo:table-column	Basic	yes	
6.7.5 fo:table-caption	Extended	yes	
6.7.6 fo:table-header	Basic	yes	
6.7.7 fo:table-footer	Extended	yes	
6.7.8 fo:table-body	Basic	yes	
6.7.9 fo:table-row	Basic	yes	
6.7.10 fo:table-cell	Basic	yes	

6.8 Formatting Objects for Lists

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.8.2 fo:list-block	Basic	yes	
6.8.3 fo:list-item	Basic	yes	
6.8.4 fo:list-item-body	Basic	yes	
6.8.5 fo:list-item-label	Extended	yes	

6.9 Dynamic Effects: Link and Multi Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.9.2 fo:basic-link	Extended	yes	
6.9.3 fo:multi-switch	Extended	no	
6.9.4 fo:multi-case	Basic	yes	
6.9.5 fo:multi-toggle	Extended	no	
6.9.6 fo:multi-properties	Extended	no	
6.9.7 fo:multi-property-set	Extended	no	

6.10 Formatting Objects for Indexing

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.10.2 fo:index-page-number-prefix	Extended	yes	
6.10.3 fo:index-page-number-suffix	Extended	yes	
6.10.4 fo:index-range-begin	Extended	yes	
6.10.5 fo:index-range-end	Extended	yes	
6.10.6 fo:index-key-reference	Extended	yes	
6.10.7 fo:index-page-citation-list	Extended	yes	
6.10.8 fo:index-page-citation-list-separator	Extended	yes	
6.10.9 fo:index-page-citation-range-separator	Extended	yes	

6.11 Formatting Objects for Bookmarks

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.11.1 fo:bookmark-tree	Extended	yes	Antenna House has already been supporting it by the extensions specification. ☞ Bookmark and Link in PDF Output
6.11.2 fo:bookmark	Extended	yes	
6.11.3 fo:bookmark-title	Extended	yes	

6.12 Out-of-Line Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.12.2 fo:float	Extended	yes	
6.12.3 fo:footnote	Extended	yes	
6.12.4 fo:footnote-body	Extended	yes	This object is extended to be permitted to have an fo:float as a descendant.

6.13 Other Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
6.13.2 fo:change-bar-begin	Extended	yes	This object is extended to be permitted to have an fo:float as a descendant. ☞ <fo:change-bar-begin> Antenna House has already been supporting it by the extensions specification. ☞ Revision Bar
6.13.3 fo:change-bar-end	Extended	yes	Antenna House has already been supporting it by the extensions specification. ☞ Revision Bar
6.13.4 fo:wrapper	Basic	yes	
6.13.5 fo:marker	Extended	yes	
6.13.6 fo:retrieve-marker	Extended	yes	
6.13.7 fo:retrieve-table-marker	Extended	yes	

7 Formatting Properties

7.5 Common Accessibility Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.5.1 source-document	Basic	yes	
7.5.2 role	Basic	yes	

7.6 Common Absolute Position Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.6.1 absolute-position	Complete	yes	
7.6.2 top	Extended	yes	
7.6.3 right	Extended	yes	
7.6.4 bottom	Extended	yes	
7.6.5 left	Extended	yes	

7.7 Common Aural Properties

Aural Properties are out of implementation scope.

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.7.1 azimuth	Basic	-	
7.7.2 cue-after	Basic	-	
7.7.3 cue-before	Basic	-	
7.7.4 elevation	Basic	-	
7.7.5 pause-after	Basic	-	
7.7.6 pause-before	Basic	-	
7.7.7 pitch	Basic	-	
7.7.8 pitch-range	Basic	-	
7.7.9 play-during	Basic	-	
7.7.10 richness	Basic	-	
7.7.11 speak	Basic	-	
7.7.12 speak-header	Basic	-	
7.7.13 speak-numeral	Basic	-	
7.7.14 speak-punctuation	Basic	-	
7.7.15 speech-rate	Basic	-	
7.7.16 stress	Basic	-	
7.7.17 voice-family	Basic	-	
7.7.18 volume	Basic	-	

7.8 Common Border, Padding, and Background Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.8.1 background-attachment	Extended	yes	
7.8.2 background-color	Basic	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:simple-page-master. ↗ axf:background-color
7.8.3 background-image	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:simple-page-master. ↗ axf:background-image
7.8.4 background-repeat	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:simple-page-master. ↗ axf:background-repeat
7.8.5 background-position-horizontal	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:simple-page-master. ↗ axf:background-position-horizontal
7.8.6 background-position-vertical	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:simple-page-master. ↗ axf:background-position-vertical
7.8.7 border-before-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.8 border-before-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ↗ border-style
7.8.9 border-before-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.10 border-after-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.11 border-after-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ↗ border-style
7.8.12 border-after-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.13 border-start-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.14 border-start-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ↗ border-style
7.8.15 border-start-width	Basic	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.8.16 border-end-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.17 border-end-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ☞ border-style
7.8.18 border-end-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.19 border-top-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.20 border-top-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ☞ border-style
7.8.21 border-top-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.22 border-bottom-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.23 border-bottom-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ☞ border-style
7.8.24 border-bottom-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.25 border-left-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.26 border-left-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ☞ border-style
7.8.27 border-left-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.28 border-right-color	Basic	yes	
7.8.29 border-right-style	Basic	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. ☞ border-style
7.8.30 border-right-width	Basic	yes	
7.8.31 padding-before	Basic	yes	
7.8.32 padding-after	Basic	yes	
7.8.33 padding-start	Basic	yes	
7.8.34 padding-end	Basic	yes	
7.8.35 padding-top	Basic	yes	
7.8.36 padding-bottom	Basic	yes	
7.8.37 padding-left	Basic	yes	
7.8.38 padding-right	Basic	yes	

7.9 Common Font Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.9.2 font-family	Basic	yes	
7.9.3 font-selection-strategy	Complete	yes	
7.9.4 font-size	Basic	yes	
7.9.5 font-stretch	Extended	yes	Expands/Condenses the font face to the inline progression direction. The font is not replaced by the other font, such as condensed font. Supports % value. ☞ font-stretch
7.9.6 font-size-adjust	Extended	yes	A font itself needs to have the x-height information. It is not effective with a font without x-height. A font name can be specified. ☞ font-size-adjust
7.9.7 font-style	Basic	yes	Supports italic, oblique and backslant.
7.9.8 font-variant	Basic	yes	This function is extended. ☞ font-variant
7.9.9 font-weight	Basic	yes	

7.10 Common Hyphenation Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.10.1 country	Extended	yes	
7.10.2 language	Extended	yes	
7.10.3 script	Extended	yes	
7.10.4 hyphenate	Extended	yes	
7.10.5 hyphenation-character	Extended	yes	U+00AD cannot be specified.
7.10.6 hyphenation-push-character-count	Extended	yes	
7.10.7 hyphenation-remain-character-count	Extended	yes	

7.11 Common Margin Properties-Block

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.11.1 margin-top	Basic	yes	
7.11.2 margin-bottom	Basic	yes	
7.11.3 margin-left	Basic	yes	
7.11.4 margin-right	Basic	yes	
7.11.5 space-before	Basic	yes	
7.11.6 space-after	Basic	yes	
7.11.7 start-indent	Basic	yes	
7.11.8 end-indent	Basic	yes	

7.12 Common Margin Properties-Inline

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.12.1 margin-top	Basic	yes	
7.12.2 margin-bottom	Basic	yes	
7.12.3 margin-left	Basic	yes	
7.12.4 margin-right	Basic	yes	
7.12.5 space-end	Basic	yes	
7.12.6 space-start	Basic	yes	

7.13 Common Relative Position Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.13.1 top	Extended	yes	
7.13.2 right	Extended	yes	
7.13.3 bottom	Extended	yes	
7.13.4 left	Extended	yes	
7.13.5 relative-position	Extended	yes	

7.14 Area Alignment Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.14.1 alignment-adjust	Basic	yes	
7.14.2 alignment-baseline	Basic	yes	The auto is considered as baseline.

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.14.3 baseline-shift	Basic	yes	
7.14.4 display-align	Extended	yes	This function is extended. display-align
7.14.5 dominant-baseline	Basic	yes	
7.14.6 relative-align	Extended	yes	

7.15 Area Dimension Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.15.1 allowed-height-scale	Extended	yes	
7.15.2 allowed-width-scale	Extended	yes	
7.15.3 block-progression-dimension	Basic	yes	
7.15.4 content-height	Extended	yes	
7.15.5 content-width	Extended	yes	
7.15.6 height	Basic	yes	
7.15.7 inline-progression-dimension	Basic	yes	
7.15.8 max-height	Complete	yes	
7.15.9 max-width	Complete	yes	
7.15.10 min-height	Complete	yes	
7.15.11 min-width	Complete	yes	
7.15.12 scaling	Extended	yes	
7.15.13 scaling-method	Extended	no	
7.15.14 width	Basic	yes	

7.16 Block and Line-related Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.16.1 hyphenation-keep	Extended	yes	<p>Either of the following happens to meet the requirement of hyphenation-keep.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The word is sent to the next line so that the word should not be hyphenated in the place where page end/column end comes. • The line is sent to the next page so that the line with hyphen should not come to page end/column end.
7.16.2 hyphenation-ladder-count	Extended	yes	
7.16.3 last-line-end-indent	Extended	yes	
7.16.4 line-height	Basic	yes	
7.16.5 line-height-shift-adjustment	Extended	yes	
7.16.6 line-stacking-strategy	Basic	yes	
7.16.7 linefeed-treatment	Extended	yes	
7.16.8 white-space-treatment	Extended	yes	
7.16.9 text-align	Basic	yes	
7.16.10 text-align-last	Extended	yes	
7.16.11 text-indent	Basic	yes	
7.16.12 white-space-collapse	Extended	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.16.13 wrap-option	Basic	yes	

7.17 Character Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.17.1 character	Basic	yes	
7.17.2 letter-spacing	Extended	yes	
7.17.3 suppress-at-line-break	Extended	no	
7.17.4 text-decoration	Extended	yes	
7.17.5 text-shadow	Extended	partial	 text-shadow <small>V6.2</small>
7.17.6 text-transform	Extended	yes	
7.17.7 treat-as-word-space	Extended	no	
7.17.8 word-spacing	Extended	yes	

7.18 Color-related Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.18.1 color	Basic	yes	
7.18.2 color-profile-name	Extended	yes	 PDF/X
7.18.3 rendering-intent	Extended	no	

7.19 Float-related Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.19.1 clear	Extended	yes	
7.19.2 float	Extended	yes	This function is extended.  Float Extension
7.19.3 intrusion-displace	Extended	yes	

7.20 Keeps and Breaks Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.20.1 break-after	Basic	yes	
7.20.2 break-before	Basic	yes	
7.20.3 keep-together	Extended	yes	
7.20.4 keep-with-next	Basic	yes	
7.20.5 keep-with-previous	Basic	yes	
7.20.6 orphans	Basic	yes	
7.20.7 widows	Basic	yes	

7.21 Layout-related Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.21.1 clip	Extended	yes	
7.21.2 overflow	Basic	yes	This property is extended.  overflow
7.21.3 reference-orientation	Extended	yes	
7.21.4 span	Extended	yes	

7.22 Leader and Rule Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.22.1 leader-alignment	Extended	partial	Limitation: page is not supported.
7.22.2 leader-pattern	Basic	yes	
7.22.3 leader-pattern-width	Extended	yes	
7.22.4 leader-length	Basic	yes	
7.22.5 rule-style	Basic	yes	
7.22.6 rule-thickness	Basic	yes	

7.23 Properties for Dynamic Effects Formatting Objects

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.23.1 active-state	Extended	no	
7.23.2 auto-restore	Extended	no	
7.23.3 case-name	Extended	no	
7.23.4 case-title	Extended	no	
7.23.5 destination-placement-offset	Extended	no	
7.23.6 external-destination	Extended	yes	 xlink:href
7.23.7 indicate-destination	Extended	no	
7.23.8 internal-destination	Extended	yes	This property is extended.  internal-destination , xlink:href
7.23.9 show-destination	Extended	yes	
7.23.10 starting-state	Extended	no	
7.23.11 switch-to	Extended	no	
7.23.12 target-presentation-context	Extended	no	
7.23.13 target-processing-context	Extended	no	
7.23.14 target-stylesheet	Extended	no	

7.24 Properties for Indexing

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.24.1 index-class	Extended	yes	
7.24.2 index-key	Extended	yes	
7.24.3 page-number-treatment	Extended	yes	
7.24.4 merge-ranges-across-index-key-references	Extended	yes	
7.24.5 merge-sequential-page-numbers	Extended	yes	
7.24.6 merge-pages-across-index-key-references	Extended	yes	
7.24.7 ref-index-key	Extended	yes	

7.25 Properties for Markers

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.25.1 marker-class-name	Extended	yes	
7.25.2 retrieve-boundary-within-table	Extended	yes	
7.25.3 retrieve-class-name	Extended	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.25.4 retrieve-position	Extended	yes	
7.25.5 retrieve-boundary	Extended	yes	
7.25.6 retrieve-position-within-table	Extended	yes	

7.26 Properties for Number to String Conversion

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.26.1 format	Basic	yes	This property is extended. ↗ format
7.26.2 grouping-separator	Extended	yes	
7.26.3 grouping-size	Extended	yes	
7.26.4 letter-value	Basic	partial	Limitation: Always uses auto value.

7.27 Pagination and Layout Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.27.1 blank-or-not-blank	Extended	yes	
7.27.2 column-count	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:block-container. ↗ axf:column-count
7.27.3 column-gap	Extended	yes	This property is extended to apply fo:block-container. ↗ axf:column-gap
7.27.4 extent	Extended	yes	
7.27.5 flow-name	Basic	yes	
7.27.6 force-page-count	Extended	yes	This property is extended. ↗ force-page-count When fo:flow is assigned to the region of the page master of the page added by force-page-count, a page doesn't break within the fo:flow and treated like fo:static-content.
7.27.7 initial-page-number	Basic	yes	
7.27.8 master-name	Basic	yes	
7.27.9 master-reference	Basic	yes	
7.27.10 maximum-repeats	Extended	yes	
7.27.11 media-usage	Extended	no	
7.27.12 odd-or-even	Extended	yes	
7.27.13 page-height	Basic	yes	Limitation: indefinite is not supported.
7.27.14 page-position	Extended	yes	
7.27.15 page-width	Basic	yes	Limitation: indefinite is not supported.
7.27.16 precedence	Extended	yes	
7.27.17 region-name	Basic	yes	
7.27.18 flow-map-name	Extended	yes	
7.27.19 flow-map-reference	Extended	yes	
7.27.20 flow-name-reference	Extended	yes	
7.27.21 region-name-reference	Extended	yes	

7.28 Table Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.28.1 border-after-precedence	Basic	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.28.2 border-before-precedence	Basic	yes	
7.28.3 border-collapse	Extended	yes	
7.28.4 border-end-precedence	Basic	yes	
7.28.5 border-separation	Extended	yes	
7.28.6 border-start-precedence	Basic	yes	
7.28.7 caption-side	Complete	yes	caption-side="start" becomes "before", "end" becomes "after".
7.28.8 column-number	Basic	yes	
7.28.9 column-width	Basic	yes	
7.28.10 empty-cells	Extended	no	
7.28.11 ends-row	Extended	yes	
7.28.12 number-columns-repeated	Basic	yes	
7.28.13 number-columns-spanned	Basic	yes	
7.28.14 number-rows-spanned	Basic	yes	
7.28.15 starts-row	Extended	yes	
7.28.16 table-layout	Extended	yes	
7.28.17 table-omit-footer-at-break	Extended	yes	This property is extended. ↗ table-omit-footer-at-break
7.28.18 table-omit-header-at-break	Extended	yes	This property is extended. ↗ table-omit-header-at-break

7.29 Writing-mode-related Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.29.1 direction	Basic	yes	
7.29.2 glyph-orientation-horizontal	Extended	yes	
7.29.3 glyph-orientation-vertical	Extended	yes	
7.29.4 text-altitude	Extended	yes	It's invalid if <code>baseline-mode="4"</code> is specified in the Option Setting File .
7.29.5 text-depth	Extended	yes	It's invalid if <code>baseline-mode="4"</code> is specified in the Option Setting File .
7.29.6 unicode-bidi	Extended	yes	
7.29.7 writing-mode	Basic	partial	Supports only lr-tb, rl-tb, tb-rl, lr, rl and rb.

7.30 Miscellaneous Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.30.1 change-bar-class	Extended	yes	
7.30.2 change-bar-color	Extended	yes	
7.30.3 change-bar-offset	Extended	yes	
7.30.4 change-bar-placement	Extended	yes	
7.30.5 change-bar-style	Extended	yes	
7.30.6 change-bar-width	Extended	yes	
7.30.7 content-type	Extended	yes	
7.30.8 id	Basic	yes	↗ xml:id
7.30.9 intrinsic-scale-value	Extended	yes	

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.30.10 page-citation-strategy	Extended	yes	
7.30.11 provisional-label-separation	Basic	yes	
7.30.12 provisional-distance-between-starts	Basic	yes	
7.30.13 ref-id	Extended	yes	
7.30.14 scale-option	Extended	yes	
7.30.15 score-spaces	Extended	yes	
7.30.16 src	Basic	yes	
7.30.17 visibility	Extended	yes	
7.30.18 z-index	Extended	yes	

7.31 Shorthand Properties

Name	Conformance level	Condition	Comments
7.31.1 background	Complete	yes	
7.31.2 background-position	Complete	yes	
7.31.3 border	Complete	yes	
7.31.4 border-bottom	Complete	yes	
7.31.5 border-color	Complete	yes	
7.31.6 border-left	Complete	yes	
7.31.7 border-right	Complete	yes	
7.31.8 border-style	Complete	yes	Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in CSS3. border-style
7.31.9 border-spacing	Complete	yes	
7.31.10 border-top	Complete	yes	
7.31.11 border-width	Complete	yes	
7.31.12 cue	Complete	-	
7.31.13 font	Complete	yes	
7.31.14 margin	Complete	yes	
7.31.15 padding	Complete	yes	
7.31.16 page-break-after	Complete	yes	
7.31.17 page-break-before	Complete	yes	
7.31.18 page-break-inside	Complete	yes	
7.31.19 pause	Complete	-	
7.31.20 position	Complete	yes	
7.31.21 size	Complete	yes	
7.31.22 vertical-align	Complete	yes	
7.31.23 white-space	Complete	yes	
7.31.24 xml:lang	Complete	yes	



CSS Conformance

AH Formatter V6.2's CSS implementation is based on the following specifications:

- [CSS2.1] [Cascading Style Sheets Level 2 Revision 1 \(CSS 2.1\)](#) (W3C Recommendation 07 June 2011)
- [CSS3-Background] [CSS Backgrounds and Borders Module Level 3](#) (W3C Candidate Recommendation 24 July 2012)
- [CSS3-Break] [CSS Fragmentation Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 23 August 2012)
- [CSS3-Content] [CSS3 Generated and Replaced Content Module](#) (W3C Working Draft 14 May 2003)
- [CSS3-Fonts] [CSS Fonts Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 12 February 2013)
- [CSS3-GCPM] [CSS Generated Content for Paged Media Module](#) (W3C Working Draft 29 November 2011)
- [CSS3-Images] [CSS Image Values and Replaced Content Module Level 3](#) (W3C Candidate Recommendation 17 April 2012)
- [CSS3-Line] [CSS3 module: line](#) (W3C Working Draft 15 May 2002)
- [CSS3-Lists] [CSS Lists and Counters Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 24 May 2011)
- [CSS3-Multicol] [CSS Multi-column Layout Module](#) (W3C Candidate Recommendation 12 April 2011)
- [CSS3-Namespace] [CSS Namespaces Module](#) (W3C Recommendation 29 September 2011)
- [CSS3-Page] [CSS Paged Media Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 14 March 2013)
- [CSS3-Ruby] [CSS3 Ruby Module](#) (W3C Working Draft 30 June 2011)
- [CSS3-Selectors] [Selectors Level 3](#) (W3C Recommendation 29 September 2011)
- [CSS3-Tables] [CSS3 Tables](#) (CSS3 specification is not yet published)
- [CSS3-Text] [CSS Text Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 13 November 2012)
- [CSS3-TextDecor] [CSS Text Decoration Module Level 3](#) (W3C Last Call Working Draft 3 January 2013)
- [CSS3-Transforms] [CSS Transforms](#) (W3C Working Draft 11 September 2012)
- [CSS3-UI] [CSS Basic User Interface Module Level 3](#) (W3C Last Call Working Draft 17 January 2012)
- [CSS3-Values] [CSS Values and Units Module Level 3](#) (W3C Candidate Recommendation 4 April 2013)
- [CSS3-WritingModes] [CSS Writing Modes Module Level 3](#) (W3C Working Draft 15 November 2012)

Many of CSS3 specifications are still under the draft or the state before draft. Although the specifications above are linked to the latest version at the time when this document was written, **AH Formatter V6.2** implementation is not necessarily based on them. Each property in this document includes the link to the specification that is the base of the implementation. ([CSS3-GCPM] etc. written at the beginning is an abbreviated name when referring to the specification.)

- [yes] in the list means that the formatting object or property is implemented.
- [partial] means that the formatting object or property is partially implemented.
- [no] means not implemented.

Sometimes items with [yes] have some limitation(s) that do not affect their ability to accomplish the specified tasks.

CSS Level 2 Revision 1 (CSS2.1)

4 Syntax and basic data types

Name	Condition	Comments
4.4 @charset	yes	☞ Encodings

5 Selectors

Name	Condition	Comments
5.2.1 Grouping (,)	yes	
5.3 Universal selector (*)	yes	
5.4 Type selectors (E)	yes	
5.5 Descendant selectors (E F)	yes	
5.6 Child selector (E > F)	yes	
5.7 Adjacent sibling selectors (E + F)	yes	
5.8.1 Matching attributes and attribute values ([att], [att=val], [att~=val], [att =val])	yes	

Name	Condition	Comments
5.8.3 Class selectors (.class)	yes	
5.9 ID selectors (#id)	yes	
5.11.1 The :first-child pseudo-class	yes	
5.11.2 The link pseudo-classes: :link and :visited	partial	:visited is not supported.
5.11.3 The dynamic pseudo-classes: :hover, :active, and :focus	no	
5.11.4 The language pseudo-class: lang	yes	
5.12.1 The :first-line pseudo-element	yes	
5.12.2 The :first-letter pseudo-element	yes	
5.12.3 The :before and :after pseudo-elements	yes	

6 Assigning property values, Cascading, and Inheritance

Name	Condition	Comments
6.2.1 The 'inherit' value	yes	
6.3 The @import rule	yes	
6.4.2 !important rules	yes	

7 Media types

Name	Condition	Comments
7.2.1 The @media rule	yes	'print' and 'all' media types are supported.

8 Box model

Name	Condition	Comments
8.3 Margin properties: 'margin-top', 'margin-right', 'margin-bottom', 'margin-left', 'margin'	yes	
8.4 Padding properties: 'padding-top', 'padding-right', 'padding-bottom', 'padding-left', 'padding'	yes	
8.5.1 Border width: 'border-top-width', 'border-right-width', 'border-bottom-width', 'border-left-width', 'border-width'	yes	
8.5.2 Border color: 'border-top-color', 'border-right-color', 'border-bottom-color', 'border-left-color', 'border-color'	yes	
8.5.3 Border style: 'border-top-style', 'border-right-style', 'border-bottom-style', 'border-left-style', 'border-style'	yes	
8.5.4 Border shorthand properties: 'border-top', 'border-right', 'border-bottom', 'border-left', 'border'	yes	

9 Visual formatting model

Name	Condition	Comments
9.2.4 The 'display' property	yes	
9.3.1 Choosing a positioning scheme: 'position'	yes	
9.3.2 Box offsets: 'top', 'right', 'bottom', 'left'	yes	
9.5.1 Positioning the float: 'float'	yes	The page break (column break) in the float is supported.
9.5.2 Controlling flow next to floats: 'clear'	yes	
9.9.1 Specifying the stack level: 'z-index'	yes	
9.10 Text direction: 'direction', 'unicode-bidi'	yes	

10 Visual formatting model details

Name	Condition	Comments
10.2 Content width: 'width'	yes	
10.4 Minimum and maximum widths: 'min-width', 'max-width'	yes	
10.5 Content height: 'height'	yes	
10.7 Minimum and maximum heights: 'min-height', 'max-height'	yes	
10.8 Line height calculations: 'line-height'	yes	
10.8 Line height calculations: 'vertical-align'	yes	

11 Visual effects

Name	Condition	Comments
11.1.1 Overflow: 'overflow'	yes	
11.1.2 Clipping: 'clip'	yes	
11.2 Visibility: 'visibility'	yes	visibility:collapse specified to table-column is considered as hidden.

12 Generated content, automatic numbering, and lists

Name	Condition	Comments
12.2 The 'content' property	yes	open-quote, close-quote, no-open-quote and no-close-quote are supported.
12.3.1 Specifying quotes with the 'quotes' property	yes	
12.4 Automatic counters and numbering: 'counter()'	yes	
12.4 Automatic counters and numbering: 'counters()'	yes	
12.4 Automatic counters and numbering: 'counter-reset'	yes	
12.4 Automatic counters and numbering: 'counter-increment'	yes	
12.5.1 Lists: 'list-style-type'	yes	
12.5.1 Lists: 'list-style-image'	yes	
12.5.1 Lists: 'list-style-position'	yes	
12.5.1 Lists: 'list-style'	yes	

13 Paged media

Name	Condition	Comments
13.2 Page boxes: the @page rule	yes	
13.2.2 Page selectors: selecting left, right, and first pages (:left, :right, :first)	yes	
13.3.1 Page break properties: 'page-break-before', 'page-break-after', 'page-break-inside'	yes	
13.3.2 Breaks inside elements: 'orphans', 'widows'	yes	

14 Colors and Backgrounds

Name	Condition	Comments
14.1 Foreground color: 'color'	yes	
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background-color'	yes	
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background-image'	yes	
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background-repeat'	yes	

Name	Condition	Comments
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background-attachment'	yes	
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background-position'	yes	
14.2.1 Background properties: 'background'	yes	

15 Fonts

Name	Condition	Comments
15.3 Font family: 'font-family'	yes	
15.4 Font styling: 'font-style'	yes	
15.5 Small-caps: 'font-variant'	yes	
15.6 Font boldness: 'font-weight'	yes	
15.7 Font size: 'font-size'	yes	
15.8 Shorthand font property: 'font'	yes	

16 Text

Name	Condition	Comments
16.1 Indentation: 'text-indent'	yes	
16.2 Alignment: 'text-align'	yes	
16.3.1 Underlining, overlining, striking, and blinking: 'text-decoration'	yes	Limitation: blink is not supported.
16.4 Letter and word spacing: 'letter-spacing'	yes	
16.4 Letter and word spacing: 'word-spacing'	yes	
16.5 Capitalization: 'text-transform'	yes	
16.6 Whitespace: 'white-space'	yes	

17 Tables

Name	Condition	Comments
17.4.1 Caption position and alignment: 'caption-side'	yes	
17.5.2 Table width algorithms: 'table-layout'	yes	
17.6.1 The separated borders model: 'border-spacing'	yes	
17.6.1.1 Borders and Backgrounds around empty cells: 'empty-cells'	yes	
17.6.2 The collapsing border model: 'border-collapse'	yes	

18 User interface

Name	Condition	Comments
18.1 Cursors: 'cursor'	no	
18.4 Dynamic outlines: 'outline'	no	

CSS3

Please find a list of implemented CSS3 and properties in "[XSL/CSS Properties List](#)".

Selectors

Name	Condition	Comments
General sibling combinator (E ~ F)	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]

@ rules

Name	Condition	Comments
@font-face	partial	[CSS3-Fonts] ↗ <axf:font-face> / @font-face
@footnote	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] 'display: inline' is not supported yet. ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
@sidenote	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
@namespace	yes	[CSS3-Namespace]
@page	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@page :left, :right, :first, :blank	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@top-left-corner	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@top-left	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@top-center	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@top-right	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@top-right-corner	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@left-top	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@left-middle	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@left-bottom	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@right-top	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@right-middle	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@right-bottom	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@bottom-left-corner	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@bottom-left	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@bottom-center	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@bottom-right	yes	[CSS3-Page]
@bottom-right-corner	yes	[CSS3-Page]

Pseudo Classes

Name	Condition	Comments
:root	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:nth-child()	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:nth-last-child()	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:nth-of-type()	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:nth-last-of-type()	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:first-child	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:last-child	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:first-of-type	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:last-of-type	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:only-child	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:only-of-type	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]

Name	Condition	Comments
:empty	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
:not	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]

Pseudo Elements

Name	Condition	Comments
::footnote-call	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
::footnote-marker	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
::sidenote-call	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
::sidenote-marker	yes	[CSS3-GCPM] ↗ Footnotes/sidenotes by CSS
::marker	yes	[CSS3-Lists]
::before	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]
::after	yes	[CSS3-Selectors]

Functions

Name	Condition	Comments
string()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
running()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
element()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
leader()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
target-counter()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
target-counters()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
target-text()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
device-cmyk()	yes	[CSS3-GCPM]
counter()	yes	[CSS3-Page] ↗ counter()
attr()	yes	[CSS3-Values] ↗ attr()
url()	yes	[CSS3-Values] ↗ URI
calc()	yes	[CSS3-Values]
linear-gradient()	yes	[CSS3-Images] ↗ linear-gradient()
radial-gradient()	yes	[CSS3-Images] ↗ radial-gradient()
repeating-linear-gradient()	yes	[CSS3-Images] ↗ repeating-linear-gradient()
repeating-radial-gradient()	yes	[CSS3-Images] ↗ repeating-radial-gradient()
matrix()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
translate()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
translateX()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
translateY()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
scale()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
scaleX()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
scaleY()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
rotate()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
skew()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation
skewX()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation

Name	Condition	Comments
skewY()	yes	[CSS3-Transforms] ↗ Transformation



XSL/CSS Properties List

The following table shows mainly XSL-FO elements, properties and the corresponding CSS properties. A blank column that the element or property of XSL corresponding to CSS are not implemented. See also [XSL-FO Conformance](#) or [CSS Conformance](#) to learn what the current implementation status is. As for abbreviated expressions, such as [CSS3-GCPM] etc. in the table, please refer to [CSS Conformance](#). Some of the correspondences do not mean that the specification is completely the same with XSL and CSS. Some of them address to the specification which is functionally the same or similar.

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:abbreviation-character-count	-ah-abbreviation-character-count	Specifies the minimum number of characters considered to be an abbreviation.
7.6.1 absolute-position	[CSS2.1] position	
axf:action-type	-ah-action-type	Specifies the action of external link or form action.
7.14.1 alignment-adjust	[CSS2.1] vertical-align [CSS3-Line] (-ah-)alignment-adjust	[CSS3-Line] Setting the alignment point: the 'alignment-adjust' property
7.14.2 alignment-baseline	[CSS2.1] vertical-align [CSS3-Line] (-ah-)alignment-baseline	[CSS3-Line] Aligning the alignment point of an element: the 'alignment-baseline' property
7.15.1 allowed-height-scale	-ah-allowed-height-scale	
7.15.2 allowed-width-scale	-ah-allowed-width-scale	
axf:alt-glyph	-ah-alt-glyph	Specifies the alternative glyph of a character.
axf:alttext	-ah-alttext [HTML] alt	Specifies the alternate text of the image.
axf:annotation-author	-ah-annotation-author	Specifies the author of the annotation. V6.2MR2 no-LT
axf:annotation-color	-ah-annotation-color	Specifies the color used for the background of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-contents	-ah-annotation-contents	Specifies the content of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-file-attachment	-ah-annotation-file-attachment	Specifies the file with which file attachment annotation is related. no-LT
axf:annotation-flags	-ah-annotation-flags	Specifies the flag of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-font-family	-ah-annotation-font-family	Specifies the font family of the free text annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-font-size	-ah-annotation-font-size	Specifies the font size of the free text annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-font-style	-ah-annotation-font-style	Specifies whether to make the font of the free text annotation italic. no-LT
axf:annotation-font-weight	-ah-annotation-font-weight	Specifies the font weight of the free text annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-height	-ah-annotation-height	Specifies the height of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-icon-name	-ah-annotation-icon-name	Specifies the name of the icon used for displaying the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-open	-ah-annotation-open	Specifies the initial state of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-position-horizontal	-ah-annotation-position-horizontal	Specifies the horizontal position of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-position-vertical	-ah-annotation-position-vertical	Specifies the vertical position of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-text-align	-ah-annotation-text-align	Specifies the alignment of the free text annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-text-color	-ah-annotation-text-color	Specifies the color of the free text annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-title	-ah-annotation-title	Specifies the title of the annotation. no-LT
axf:annotation-type	-ah-annotation-type	Specifies the type of the annotation. no-LT

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:annotation-width	-ah-annotation-width	Specifies the width of the annotation. [no-LT]
axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters	-ah-append-non-end-of-line-characters	Specifies the append-non-end-of-characters in CJK.
axf:append-non-starter-characters	-ah-append-non-starter-characters	Specifies the append-non-starter-characters in CJK.
axf:assumed-page-number	-ah-assumed-page-number	Specifies the assumed page number.
axf:auto-letter-spacing	-ah-auto-letter-spacing	Changes letter-spacing depending on the number of characters. [no-LT]
axf:avoid-widow-words	-ah-avoid-widow-words	The axf:avoid-widow-words specifies spacing behavior between words or characters so that the last line of the paragraph does not have only one word left (one character for CJK).
7.31.1 background	[CSS2.1] background	
7.8.1 background-attachment	[CSS2.1] background-attachment	
	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)background-clip	[CSS3-Background] The 'background-clip' property
7.8.2 background-color background-color	[CSS2.1] background-color	
axf:background-content-height	-ah-background-content-height	Specifies the content height of a background image.
axf:background-content-type	-ah-background-content-type	Specifies the content type of a background image.
axf:background-content-width	-ah-background-content-width	Specifies the content width of a background image.
7.8.3 background-image background-image	[CSS2.1] background-image	
axf:background-image-resolution	-ah-background-image-resolution	Specifies the resolution of a background image.
	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)background-origin	[CSS3-Background] The 'background-origin' property
7.31.2 background-position	[CSS2.1] background-position	
7.8.5 background-position-horizontal background-position-horizontal	[CSS2.1] background-position	
7.8.6 background-position-vertical background-position-vertical	[CSS2.1] background-position	
7.8.4 background-repeat background-repeat	[CSS2.1] background-repeat	
axf:background-scaling	-ah-background-scaling	Specifies the scaling ratio of a background image.
	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)background-size	[CSS3-Background] The 'background-size' property
axf:base-uri	-ah-base-uri [XML] xml:base	The axf:base-uri specifies the location which becomes the base of relative URI.
axf:baseline-block-snap	-ah-baseline-block-snap	Specifies how to align blocks on the baseline grid. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:baseline-grid	-ah-baseline-grid	Sets or clears the baseline grid. [V6.2] [no-LT]
7.14.3 baseline-shift	[CSS2.1] vertical-align [CSS3-Line] (-ah-)baseline-shift	[CSS3-Line] Repositioning the dominant baseline: the 'baseline-shift' property
7.27.1 blank-or-not-blank		
axf:bleed	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)bleed	Specifies the width of the bleed region for cutting off. [no-LT]
axf:bleed-bottom	-ah-bleed-bottom	Specifies the width of the bleed region on the bottom for cutting off. [no-LT]

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:bleed-left	-ah-bleed-left	Specifies the width of the bleed region on the left for cutting off. [no-LT]
axf:bleed-right	-ah-bleed-right	Specifies the width of the bleed region on the right for cutting off. [no-LT]
axf:bleed-top	-ah-bleed-top	Specifies the width of the bleed region on the top for cutting off. [no-LT]
7.15.3 block-progression-dimension	-ah-logical-height	Specifies the block progression dimension.
axf:bookmark-include		Specifies how to include bookmarks in multi separate volume. [no-LT]
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)bookmark-label	[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)bookmark-level	[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)bookmark-state	[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks
7.31.3 border	[CSS2.1] border	
	-ah-border-after	Specifies the border of the after side.
7.8.10 border-after-color	-ah-border-after-color	Specifies the border color of the after side.
7.28.1 border-after-precedence		
7.8.11 border-after-style	-ah-border-after-style	Specifies the border style of the after side.
7.8.12 border-after-width	-ah-border-after-width	Specifies the border width of the after side.
	-ah-border-before	Specifies the border of the before side.
7.8.7 border-before-color	-ah-border-before-color	Specifies the border color of the before side.
7.28.2 border-before-precedence		
7.8.8 border-before-style	-ah-border-before-style	Specifies the border style of the before side.
7.8.9 border-before-width	-ah-border-before-width	Specifies the border width of the before side.
7.31.4 border-bottom	[CSS2.1] border-bottom	
7.8.22 border-bottom-color	[CSS2.1] border-bottom-color	
axf:border-bottom-left-radius	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)border-bottom-left-radius	Specifies the radius of the bottom left corner.
axf:border-bottom-right-radius	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)border-bottom-right-radius	Specifies the radius of the bottom right corner.
7.8.23 border-bottom-style	[CSS2.1] border-bottom-style	
7.8.24 border-bottom-width	[CSS2.1] border-bottom-width	
7.28.3 border-collapse	[CSS2.1] border-collapse	
7.31.5 border-color	[CSS2.1] border-color	
	-ah-border-end	Specifies the border of the end side.
7.8.16 border-end-color	-ah-border-end-color	Specifies the border color of the end side.
7.28.4 border-end-precedence		
7.8.17 border-end-style	-ah-border-end-style	Specifies the border style of the end side.
7.8.18 border-end-width	-ah-border-end-width	Specifies the border width of the end side.
7.31.6 border-left	[CSS2.1] border-left	
7.8.25 border-left-color	[CSS2.1] border-left-color	
7.8.26 border-left-style	[CSS2.1] border-left-style	
7.8.27 border-left-width	[CSS2.1] border-left-width	
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)border-length	[CSS3-GCPM] The 'border-length' property

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:border-radius	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)border-radius	Specifies the radii of the rounded corners.
7.31.7 border-right	[CSS2.1] border-right	
7.8.28 border-right-color	[CSS2.1] border-right-color	
7.8.29 border-right-style	[CSS2.1] border-right-style	
7.8.30 border-right-width	[CSS2.1] border-right-width	
7.28.5 border-separation	[CSS2.1] border-spacing	
7.31.9 border-spacing	[CSS2.1] border-spacing	
	-ah-border-start	Specifies the border of the start side.
7.8.13 border-start-color	-ah-border-start-color	Specifies the border color of the start side.
7.28.6 border-start-precedence		
7.8.14 border-start-style	-ah-border-start-style	Specifies the border style of the start side.
7.8.15 border-start-width	-ah-border-start-width	Specifies the border width of the start side.
7.31.8 border-style	[CSS2.1] border-style	
7.31.10 border-top	[CSS2.1] border-top	
7.8.19 border-top-color	[CSS2.1] border-top-color	
axf:border-top-left-radius	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)border-top-left-radius	Specifies the radius of the top left corner.
axf:border-top-right-radius	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)border-top-right-radius	Specifies the radius of the top right corner.
7.8.20 border-top-style	[CSS2.1] border-top-style	
7.8.21 border-top-width	[CSS2.1] border-top-width	
7.31.11 border-width	[CSS2.1] border-width	
7.6.4 bottom	[CSS2.1] bottom	
	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)box-decoration-break	[CSS3-Background] The 'box-decoration-break' property
axf:box-shadow	[CSS3-Background] (-ah-)box-shadow	Specifies the box shadow.
	[CSS3-UI] (-ah-)box-sizing	[CSS3-UI] 'box-sizing' property
7.20.1 break-after	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)break-after	[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'
7.20.2 break-before	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)break-before	[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'
7.28.7 caption-side	[CSS2.1] caption-side	
7.30.1 change-bar-class	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-class	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.30.2 change-bar-color	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-color	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.30.3 change-bar-offset	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-offset	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.30.4 change-bar-placement	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-side	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.30.5 change-bar-style	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-style	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.30.6 change-bar-width	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)change-bar-width	[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars
7.17.1 character		

XSL	CSS	Description
7.19.1 clear	[CSS2.1] clear	
7.21.1 clip	[CSS2.1] clip	
7.18.1 color	[CSS2.1] color	
7.18.2 color-profile-name		
7.27.2 column-count column-count	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-count	
axf:column-fill	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-fill	Specifies whether to balance the column height.
7.27.3 column-gap column-gap	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-gap	
7.28.8 column-number		
axf:column-number-format		The axf:column-number-format specifies the format of column number.
	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-rule	[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-rule'
axf:column-rule-align	-ah-column-rule-align	The axf:column-rule-align specifies the alignment of the column rule.
axf:column-rule-color	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-rule-color	The axf:column-rule-color specifies the color of the column rule.
axf:column-rule-display	-ah-column-rule-display	axf:column-rule-display specifies whether to also display a rule at the place where column gaps do not exist..
axf:column-rule-length	-ah-column-rule-length	The axf:column-rule-length specifies the length of the column rule.
axf:column-rule-style	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-rule-style	The axf:column-rule-style specifies the style of the column rule.
axf:column-rule-width	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-rule-width	The axf:column-rule-width specifies the width of the column rule.
	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-span	[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-span'
7.28.9 column-width	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)column-width	[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-width'
	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-)columns	[CSS3-Multicol] 'columns'
	[CSS2.1] content	
7.15.4 content-height	-ah-content-height	
7.30.7 content-type	-ah-content-type	
7.15.5 content-width	-ah-content-width	
	[CSS2.1] counter-increment	
	[CSS2.1] counter-reset	
7.10.1 country		
	[CSS3-Content] (-ah-)crop	[CSS3-Content] The 'crop' property
axf:crop-area-visibility	-ah-crop-area-visibility	Specifies whether to display the area that is extended beyond the finished page size. [no-LT]
axf:crop-offset	-ah-crop-offset	Specifies the distance from the physical end to the trim size of the output medium. [no-LT]
axf:crop-offset-bottom	-ah-crop-offset-bottom	Specifies the distance from the physical bottom edge to the trim size of the output medium. [no-LT]
axf:crop-offset-left	-ah-crop-offset-left	Specifies the distance from the physical left edge to the trim size of the output medium. [no-LT]
axf:crop-offset-right	-ah-crop-offset-right	Specifies the distance from the physical right edge to the trim size of the output medium. [no-LT]

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:crop-offset-top	-ah-crop-offset-top	Specifies the distance from the physical top edge to the trim size of the output medium. [no-LT]
axf:destination-type	-ah-destination-type	Specifies the type of destination for the external link. These are the types of destination for PDF as the external link. [no-LT]
axf:diagonal-border-color	-ah-diagonal-border-color	The axf:diagonal-border-color specifies the color of the diagonal border.
axf:diagonal-border-style	-ah-diagonal-border-style	The axf:diagonal-border-style specifies the style of the diagonal border.
axf:diagonal-border-width	-ah-diagonal-border-width	The axf:diagonal-border-width specifies the width of the diagonal border.
7.29.1 direction	[CSS2.1] direction	
	[CSS2.1] display	
7.14.4 display-align display-align	[CSS2.1] vertical-align -ah-display-align	
axf:document-info-include		Specifies how to include document information in multi separate volume. [no-LT]
7.14.5 dominant-baseline	[CSS3-Line] (-ah-)dominant-baseline	[CSS3-Line] Dominant baseline: the 'dominant-baseline' property
7.11.8 end-indent		
7.28.11 ends-row		
axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters	-ah-except-non-end-of-line-characters	Specifies the except-non-end-of-characters in CJK.
axf:except-non-starter-characters	-ah-except-non-starter-characters	Specifies the except-non-starter-characters in CJK.
7.27.4 extent		
7.23.6 external-destination	[HTML] href [XML] xlink:href	
axf:field-button-face		Specifies the caption displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-face-down		Specifies the caption displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-face-rollover		Specifies the caption displayed when rolling over the push button. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-icon		Specifies the icon displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-icon-down		Specifies the icon displayed when pressing the push button. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-icon-rollover		Specifies the icon displayed when rolling over the push button. [no-LT]
axf:field-button-layout		Specifies the positioning between the caption and icon displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]
axf:field-checked		Specifies the initial state of the check box and the radio button. [no-LT]
axf:field-checked-style		Specifies the style of the check box and the radio button. [no-LT]
axf:field-default-text		Specifies the text entered into the text field from the beginning. [no-LT]
axf:field-description		Specifies the descriptive text of the field. [no-LT]
axf:field-editable		Specifies whether the value can be edited with the combo box. [no-LT]

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:field-format		Specifies the format of the text field. [no-LT]
axf:field-format-category		Specifies the format type of the text field. [no-LT]
axf:field-maxlen		Specifies the maximum number of characters which can be entered into the text field. [no-LT]
axf:field-multiline		Specifies whether the text field is a single-line enterable field or a multi-line enterable field. [no-LT]
axf:field-multiple		Specifies whether multiple items can be chosen in the list box. [no-LT]
axf:field-name		Specifies the field name. [no-LT]
axf:field-password		Specifies whether the text field requires the password or not. [no-LT]
axf:field-readonly		Specifies whether the field is read-only or not. [no-LT]
axf:field-required		Specifies whether the field is enter-required or not. [no-LT]
axf:field-scroll		Specifies whether the text field is scrollable or not. [no-LT]
axf:field-submit-coordinates		Specifies whether to send out the coordinates of the mouse when submitting a form field. [no-LT]
axf:field-submit-method		Specifies the way to send the information when submitting a form field. [no-LT]
axf:field-top-index		Specifies the first selected item in the list box, combo box. [no-LT]
axf:field-type		Specifies the field type. [no-LT]
axf:field-value		Specifies the value used when submitting a form field, etc. [no-LT]
7.19.2 float	[CSS2.1] float	
axf:float	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)float	This is a shorthand property for setting float related extension properties.
axf:float-centering-x	-ah-float-centering-x	Specifies whether the float is centered when the width for the text wrapping around the float is insufficient.
axf:float-centering-y	-ah-float-centering-y	Specifies whether the float is centered when the extent for the text placed before and after the float is insufficient.
axf:float-float-margin-x	-ah-float-float-margin-x	Specifies the space between the float and another neighboring float (in x-axis).
axf:float-float-margin-y	-ah-float-float-margin-y	Specifies the space between the float and another neighboring float (in y-axis).
axf:float-margin-x	-ah-float-margin-x	Specifies the space between the float and the text wrapping around the float (in x-axis).
axf:float-margin-y	-ah-float-margin-y	Specifies the space between the float and the text before and after the float (in y-axis).
axf:float-min-wrap-x	-ah-float-min-wrap-x	Specifies the minimum width for the text wrapping around the float.
axf:float-min-wrap-y	-ah-float-min-wrap-y	Specifies the minimum extent for the text placed before and after the float.
axf:float-move	-ah-float-move	Specifies whether the float moves to the next page (or column).
axf:float-offset-x	-ah-float-offset-x	Specifies the offset placement for the float (in x-axis).
axf:float-offset-y	-ah-float-offset-y	Specifies the offset placement for the float (in y-axis).
axf:float-reference	-ah-float-reference	Specifies reference area where the float is placed.

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:float-wrap	-ah-float-wrap	Specifies the text wrapping.
axf:float-x	-ah-float-x	Specifies horizontal (or vertical if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.
axf:float-y	-ah-float-y	Specifies vertical (or horizontal if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.
7.27.18 flow-map-name		
7.27.19 flow-map-reference		
7.27.5 flow-name		
7.27.20 flow-name-reference		
7.31.13 font	[CSS2.1] font	
7.9.2 font-family	[CSS2.1] font-family	
7.9.3 font-selection-strategy		
7.9.4 font-size	[CSS2.1] font-size	
7.9.6 font-size-adjust font-size-adjust	[CSS2.1] font-size-adjust [CSS3-Fonts] (-ah-)font-size-adjust	
7.9.5 font-stretch font-stretch	[CSS2.1] font-stretch [CSS3-Fonts] (-ah-)font-stretch	
7.9.7 font-style	[CSS2.1] font-style	
7.9.8 font-variant font-variant	[CSS2.1] font-variant [CSS3-Fonts] (-ah-)font-variant	:V6.2:
7.9.9 font-weight	[CSS2.1] font-weight	
axf:footnote-align		Specifies the alignment of the footnotes.
axf:footnote-keep		Specifies whether to arrange a footnote and an anchor in the same page
axf:footnote-max-height		Specifies the maximum height of footnote. :V6.2:
axf:footnote-number-format		Specifies the format of footnote number. :no-LT:
axf:footnote-number-initial		Specifies the initial footnote number. :no-LT:
axf:footnote-number-reset		Resets the footnote numbering. :no-LT:
axf:footnote-position		The axf:footnote-position specifies the location to layout the footnote.
axf:footnote-stacking		The axf:footnote-stacking specifies the method to layout the footnote.
7.27.6 force-page-count force-page-count		
7.26.1 format format		
7.29.2 glyph-orientation-horizontal		
7.29.3 glyph-orientation-vertical		
7.26.2 grouping-separator		
7.26.3 grouping-size		
axf:hanging-punctuation	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)hanging-punctuation	The axf:hanging-punctuation specifies whether to hang Japanese punctuation characters or not. :no-LT:
7.15.6 height	[CSS2.1] height	
7.10.4 hyphenate	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)hyphens	[CSS3-Text] Hyphenation Control: the 'hyphens' property

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:hyphenate-hyphenated-word	-ah- hyphenate-hyphenated-word	Specifies whether to hyphenate the already hyphenated word or not.
7.10.5 hyphenation-character	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-) hyphenate-character	[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties
7.16.1 hyphenation-keep	-ah- hyphenation-keep	
7.16.2 hyphenation-ladder-count	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-) hyphenate-lines	[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties
axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count	-ah- hyphenation-minimum-character-count	The axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count specifies the minimum number of the character to hyphenate.
7.10.6 hyphenation-push-character-count	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-) hyphenate-after	[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties
7.10.7 hyphenation-remain-character-count	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-) hyphenate-before	[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties
axf:hyphenation-zone	-ah- hyphenation-zone	axf:hyphenation-zone limits the range where a hyphenation is available.
7.30.8 id	[HTML] id [XML] xml:id	
	-ah- ignore-leading-newline	Specifies whether the newline right after the start tag is disregarded or not.
axf:image-resolution	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-) image-resolution	Specifies the resolution of an image.
axf:image-smoothing	-ah- image-smoothing	Specifies whether to process anti-aliasing of an image on the screen.
axf:indent-here	-ah- indent-here	Aligns the indent position to the region position when a line break occurs. [no-LT]
7.24.1 index-class		
7.24.2 index-key		
7.27.7 initial-page-number		
axf:initial-volume-number		Specifies the initial volume number in multi separate volume. [no-LT]
7.15.7 inline-progression-dimension	-ah- logical-width	Specifies the inline progression dimension.
7.23.8 internal-destination internal-destination	[HTML] href [XML] xlink:href	
7.30.9 intrinsic-scale-value		
7.19.3 intrusion-displace	-ah- intrusion-displace	
axf:japanese-glyph	-ah- japanese-glyph	Specifies the glyph of Japanese Kanji.
axf:justify-nbsp	-ah- justify-nbsp	Specifies whether to justify NON-BREAKING SPACE or not.
axf:kansuji-grouping-letter	-ah- kansuji-grouping-letter	Specifies the grouping character used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]
axf:kansuji-letter	-ah- kansuji-letter	Specifies the character used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]
axf:kansuji-style	-ah- kansuji-style	Specifies the style used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]
7.20.3 keep-together	[CSS3-Multicol] (-ah-) break-inside	[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'
7.20.4 keep-with-next		
7.20.5 keep-with-previous		

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:kerning-mode	-ah-kerning-mode	The axf:kerning-mode specifies whether to process the kerning.
7.10.2 language	-ah-language	
7.16.3 last-line-end-indent	-ah-last-line-end-indent	
axf:layer	-ah-layer	Specifies to which layer the area is arranged. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:layer-settings	-ah-layer-settings	Defines layers. [V6.2] [no-LT]
7.22.1 leader-alignment leader-alignment		
axf:leader-expansion	-ah-leader-expansion	axf:leader-expansion specifies whether to expand a leader forcibly. [no-LT]
7.22.4 leader-length		
7.22.2 leader-pattern		
7.22.3 leader-pattern-width		
7.6.5 left	[CSS2.1] left	
7.17.2 letter-spacing	[CSS2.1] letter-spacing	
axf:letter-spacing-side	-ah-letter-spacing-side	Specifies on which side of the character the space by letter-spacing is distributed.
7.26.4 letter-value		
axf:ligature-mode	-ah-ligature-mode	Specifies whether to perform the ligature processing.
axf:line-break	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)line-break	The axf:line-break specifies the method of line breaking.
axf:line-continued-mark	-ah-line-continued-mark	The axf:line-continued-mark specifies whether to show line continued marks. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-background-color	-ah-line-continued-mark-background-color	The axf:line-continued-mark-background-color specifies the background color of line continued marks. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-color	-ah-line-continued-mark-color	The axf:line-continued-mark-color specifies the color of line continued marks. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-font-family	-ah-line-continued-mark-font-family	The axf:line-continued-mark-font-family specifies the font family of line continued marks. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-font-size	-ah-line-continued-mark-font-size	The axf:line-continued-mark-font-size specifies the font size of line continued marks. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-font-style	-ah-line-continued-mark-font-style	The axf:line-continued-mark-font-style specifies whether to make the font style italic. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight	-ah-line-continued-mark-font-weight	The axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight specifies the font weight of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-continued-mark-offset	-ah-line-continued-mark-offset	The axf:line-continued-mark-offset specifies the offset of line continued marks. [no-LT]
7.16.4 line-height	[CSS2.1] line-height	
7.16.5 line-height-shift-adjustment	-ah-line-height-shift-adjustment	
axf:line-number	-ah-line-number	The axf:line-number specifies whether to show line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-background-color	-ah-line-number-background-color	The axf:line-number-background-color specifies the background color of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-color	-ah-line-number-color	The axf:line-number-color specifies the color of line numbers. [no-LT]

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:line-number-display-align	-ah-line-number-display-align	The axf:line-number-display-align specifies the alignment, in the block-progression-direction, of line numbers in the line area. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-font-family	-ah-line-number-font-family	The axf:line-number-font-family specifies the font family of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-font-size	-ah-line-number-font-size	The axf:line-number-font-size specifies the font size of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-font-style	-ah-line-number-font-style	The axf:line-number-font-style specifies whether to make the font style italic. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-font-weight	-ah-line-number-font-weight	The axf:line-number-font-weight specifies the font weight of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-format	-ah-line-number-format	The axf:line-number-format specifies the format of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-initial	-ah-line-number-initial	The axf:line-number-initial specifies the line number of the first line. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-interval	-ah-line-number-interval	The axf:line-number-interval specifies the interval of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-offset	-ah-line-number-offset	The axf:line-number-offset specifies the offset of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-orientation	-ah-line-number-orientation	Rotates line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-position	-ah-line-number-position	The axf:line-number-position specifies the position of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-prefix	-ah-line-number-prefix	The axf:line-number-prefix sets the prefix of line number. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-reset	-ah-line-number-reset	The axf:line-number-reset resets line numbering. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-start	-ah-line-number-start	The axf:line-number-start specifies the starting line number. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-text-align	-ah-line-number-text-align	The axf:line-number-text-align specifies the alignment of line numbers in the line area. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-text-decoration	-ah-line-number-text-decoration	The axf:line-number-text-decoration specifies the test decoration of line numbers. [no-LT]
axf:line-number-width	-ah-line-number-width	The axf:line-number-width specifies the width of line numbers. [no-LT]
7.16.6 line-stacking-strategy	-ah-line-stacking-strategy	
7.16.7 linefeed-treatment	[CSS2.1] white-space	
	-ah-link	Generates a hyper-link.
	[CSS2.1] list-style	
	[CSS2.1] list-style-image	
	[CSS2.1] list-style-position	
	[CSS2.1] list-style-type [CSS3-Lists] (-ah-)list-style-type	Specifies the list style.
7.31.14 margin	[CSS2.1] margin	
7.11.2 margin-bottom	[CSS2.1] margin-bottom	
	-ah-margin-break	Specifies how to treat the margin when the page/column breaks.
7.11.3 margin-left	[CSS2.1] margin-left	
7.11.4 margin-right	[CSS2.1] margin-right	
7.11.1 margin-top	[CSS2.1] margin-top	

XSL	CSS	Description
7.25.1 marker-class-name		
7.27.8 master-name		
7.27.9 master-reference		
7.15.8 max-height	[CSS2.1] max-height -ah-max-logical-height -ah-max-logical-width	Specifies the maximum block progression dimension. Specifies the maximum inline progression dimension.
7.15.9 max-width	[CSS2.1] max-width	
7.27.10 maximum-repeats		
axf:media-duration	-ah-media-duration	Specifies the duration of a time period of the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:media-extraction-policy	-ah-media-extraction-policy	Specifies whether the creation of temporary files is allowed or not when playing the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:media-play-mode	-ah-media-play-mode	Specifies the number of times to play the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:media-volume	-ah-media-volume	Specifies the volume of the sound when playing the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]
7.24.6 merge-pages-across-index-key-references		
7.24.4 merge-ranges-across-index-key-references		
7.24.5 merge-sequential-page-numbers		
7.15.10 min-height	[CSS2.1] min-height -ah-min-logical-height -ah-min-logical-width	Specifies the minimum block progression dimension. Specifies the minimum inline progression dimension.
7.15.11 min-width	[CSS2.1] min-width	
axf:name		[<axf:document-info>]
axf:normalize	-ah-normalize	Specifies the normalization of text. [no-LT]
axf:normalize-exclude	-ah-normalize-exclude	Specifies whether Composition Exclusions are excluded or not when the normalization is specified. [no-LT]
7.28.12 number-columns-repeated		
7.28.13 number-columns-spanned	[CSS3-Tables] (-ah-)table-column-span [HTML] colspan	[CSS3-Tables] table-column-span and table-row-span properties
7.28.14 number-rows-spanned	[CSS3-Tables] (-ah-)table-row-span [HTML] rowspan	[CSS3-Tables] table-column-span and table-row-span properties
axf:number-transform	-ah-number-transform	Converts the number sequence in the character string. [no-LT]
axf:number-type		The axf:number-type specifies whether to output the page number or to output the column number.
7.27.12 odd-or-even		
axf:origin-id		Specifies the origin of the page number.
7.20.6 orphans	[CSS2.1] orphans	
axf:outline-color	-ah-outline-color	The axf:outline-color specifies the color which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:outline-expand	-ah-outline-expand	The axf:outline-expand specifies whether to display the lower hierarchy of bookmark items or not.
axf:outline-external-destination	-ah-outline-external-destination	Sets the external link in the PDF bookmark. [no-LT]
axf:outline-font-style	-ah-outline-font-style	The axf:outline-font-style specifies the font style which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]
axf:outline-font-weight	-ah-outline-font-weight	The axf:outline-font-weight specifies the font weight which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]
axf:outline-group	-ah-outline-group	The axf:outline-group groups bookmark items, and outputs them collectively.
axf:outline-internal-destination	-ah-outline-internal-destination	Sets the internal link in the PDF bookmark. [no-LT]
axf:outline-level	-ah-outline-level	The axf:outline-level indicates the hierarchy level of bookmark items.
axf:outline-title	-ah-outline-title	The axf:outline-title specifies the string which appears as a title of bookmarks.
axf:output-volume-break		Separates the file in multi volume. [no-LT]
axf:output-volume-filename		Specifies the document file name in multi separate volume. [no-LT]
7.21.2 overflow overflow	[CSS2.1] overflow	
axf:overflow-align	-ah-overflow-align	Specifies the alignment of the overflowed block.
axf:overflow-condense	-ah-overflow-condense	The axf:overflow-condense specifies how to condense the overflowed text within the region.
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size	-ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-size	axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size specifies the minimum font size when axf:overflow-condense="font-size" is specified.
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch	-ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch	axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch specifies the minimum value when axf:overflow-condense="font-stretch" is specified.
axf:overflow-limit	-ah-overflow-limit	Specifies the overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]
axf:overflow-limit-block	-ah-overflow-limit-block	Specifies the block overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]
axf:overflow-limit-inline	-ah-overflow-limit-inline	Specifies the inline overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]
axf:overflow-replace	-ah-overflow-replace	An alternative character string for the specified overflow text.
axf:overprint	-ah-overprint	Specifies the overprint. [V6.2MR2] [no-LT]
7.31.15 padding	[CSS2.1] padding	
7.8.32 padding-after	-ah-padding-after	Specifies the padding of the after side.
7.8.31 padding-before	-ah-padding-before	Specifies the padding of the before side.
7.8.36 padding-bottom	[CSS2.1] padding-bottom	
7.8.34 padding-end	-ah-padding-end	Specifies the padding of the end side.
7.8.37 padding-left	[CSS2.1] padding-left	
7.8.38 padding-right	[CSS2.1] padding-right	
7.8.33 padding-start	-ah-padding-start	Specifies the padding of the start side.
7.8.35 padding-top	[CSS2.1] padding-top	
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)page	[CSS3-Page] Using named pages: 'page' [CSS3-GCPM] Named page lists
7.31.16 page-break-after	[CSS2.1] page-break-after	

XSL	CSS	Description
7.31.17 page-break-before	[CSS2.1] page-break-before	
7.31.18 page-break-inside	[CSS2.1] page-break-inside	
7.30.10 page-citation-strategy		
7.27.13 page-height		
axf:page-number-prefix		The axf:page-number-prefix sets the prefix of page number.
7.24.3 page-number-treatment		
7.27.14 page-position		
7.27.15 page-width		
axf:pdftag	-ah-pdftag	Specifies the tag name of Tagged PDF files. [no-LT]
axf:physical-page-number		The axf:physical-page-number gets physical page number.
7.31.20 position	[CSS2.1] position	
axf:poster-content-type	-ah-poster-content-type	Specifies the content type of the poster image for embedded multimedia. [no-LT]
axf:poster-image	-ah-poster-image	Specifies the poster image for embedded multimedia. [no-LT]
7.27.16 precedence		
axf:printer-bin-selection	-ah-printer-bin-selection	Selects the printer tray. [no-LT]
axf:printer-duplex	-ah-printer-duplex	Specifies to print in duplex mode. [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)marks	Specifies the Printing marks, such as a crop mark. Specifies the action of external link. [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks-line-color	-ah-printer-marks-line-color	Specifies the line color of printer marks. [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks-line-length	-ah-printer-marks-line-length	Specifies the line length of printer marks. [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks-line-width	-ah-printer-marks-line-width	Specifies the line width of printer marks. [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks-spine-width	-ah-printer-marks-spine-width	Specifies the spine width of the facing page. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:printer-marks-zero-margin	-ah-printer-marks-zero-margin	Specifies the margin between the page and the printer marks when bleed is 0. [no-LT]
7.30.12 provisional-distance-between-starts		
7.30.11 provisional-label-separation		
axf:punctuation-spacing	-ah-punctuation-spacing	The axf:punctuation-spacing specifies the trimming spacing between a full width punctuation and a full width character in Japanese.
axf:punctuation-trim	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)punctuation-trim	The axf:punctuation-trim specifies whether to treat full width punctuations as half width in Japanese. [no-LT]
	[CSS2.1] quotes	
7.30.13 ref-id		
7.24.7 ref-index-key		
7.21.3 reference-orientation	-ah-reference-orientation	
7.27.17 region-name		
7.27.21 region-name-reference		
7.14.6 relative-align	[CSS2.1] vertical-align	
7.13.5 relative-position	[CSS2.1] position	

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break	-ah-repeat-cell-content-at-break	axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break specifies whether to copy the contents of a cell when a cell breaks.
axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-footer	-ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-footer	Specifies whether to repeat the fo:footnote in the fo:table-footer that is repeated by table-omit-footer-at-break="false".
axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-header	-ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-header	Specifies whether to repeat the fo:footnote in the fo:table-header that is repeated by table-omit-header-at-break="false".
axf:repeat-page-sequence-master		The axf:repeat-page-sequence-master specifies the repetition of the page sequence. [no-LT]
7.25.5 retrieve-boundary		
7.25.2 retrieve-boundary-within-table		
7.25.3 retrieve-class-name		
7.25.4 retrieve-position		
7.25.6 retrieve-position-within-table		
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color	-ah-reverse-diagonal-border-color	The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color specifies the color of the reverse diagonal border.
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style	-ah-reverse-diagonal-border-style	The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style specifies the style of the reverse diagonal border.
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width	-ah-reverse-diagonal-border-width	The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width specifies the width of the reverse diagonal border.
axf:reverse-page		Outputs pages in reverse order. [no-LT]
axf:revision-bar-color	-ah-revision-bar-color	The axf:revision-bar-color specifies the color of the revision bar.
axf:revision-bar-offset	-ah-revision-bar-offset	The axf:revision-bar-offset specifies the offset of the revision bar.
axf:revision-bar-position	-ah-revision-bar-position	The axf:revision-bar-position specifies the position of the revision bar.
axf:revision-bar-style	-ah-revision-bar-style	The axf:revision-bar-style specifies the style of the revision bar.
axf:revision-bar-width	-ah-revision-bar-width	The axf:revision-bar-width specifies the width of the revision bar.
7.6.3 right	[CSS2.1] right	
7.5.2 role		
axf:ruby-align	[CSS3-Ruby] (-ah-)ruby-align	Specifies the alignment of ruby.
axf:ruby-color	-ah-ruby-color	Specifies the color of ruby text.
axf:ruby-condense	-ah-ruby-condense	Specifies the font condense when the ruby text is longer than its base.
axf:ruby-font-family	-ah-ruby-font-family	Specifies the font family of ruby text.
axf:ruby-font-size	-ah-ruby-font-size	Specifies the font size of ruby text.
axf:ruby-font-stretch	-ah-ruby-font-stretch	Specifies the font stretching of ruby text.
axf:ruby-font-style	-ah-ruby-font-style	Specifies the font style of ruby text.
axf:ruby-font-weight	-ah-ruby-font-weight	Specifies the font weight of ruby text.
axf:ruby-limit-overhang	-ah-ruby-limit-overhang	Specifies the limit of the amount that ruby overhangs the adjacent base character when ruby is longer than its own base character.

XSL	CSS	Description
axf:ruby-limit-space	-ah-ruby-limit-space	Specifies the limit of the amount of spaces leading and following the ruby text when the ruby text is shorter than its base characters.
axf:ruby-minimum-font-size	-ah-ruby-minimum-font-size	Specifies the minimum font size of ruby text.
axf:ruby-offset	-ah-ruby-offset	Specifies the spacing between the ruby text and its base characters.
axf:ruby-overhang	[CSS3-Ruby] (-ah-)ruby-overhang	Specifies how ruby overhangs the adjacent base character.
axf:ruby-position	[CSS3-Ruby] (-ah-)ruby-position	Specifies on which side of the base characters the ruby text appears.
axf:ruby-small-kana	-ah-ruby-small-kana	Specifies whether to allow using small kana for ruby text.
7.22.5 rule-style		
7.22.6 rule-thickness		
7.30.14 scale-option		
7.15.12 scaling	-ah-scaling	
7.30.15 score-spaces		
7.10.3 script	-ah-script	
axf:show-controls	-ah-show-controls	Specifies whether to show the player control bar for multimedia. [no-LT]
7.23.9 show-destination		
7.31.21 size size	[CSS2.1] size [CSS3-Page] (-ah-)size	
axf:soft-hyphen-treatment	-ah-soft-hyphen-treatment	
7.5.1 source-document		
7.11.6 space-after	-ah-margin-after	Specifies the margin of the after side.
7.11.5 space-before	-ah-margin-before	Specifies the margin of the before side.
7.12.5 space-end	-ah-margin-end	Specifies the margin of the end side.
7.12.6 space-start	-ah-margin-start	Specifies the margin of the start side.
7.21.4 span		
7.30.16 src	[HTML] src	
7.11.7 start-indent		
7.28.15 starts-row		
	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)string-set	[CSS3-GCPM] Setting named strings: the 'string-set' property
axf:suppress-duplicate-footnote		Specifies whether to delete footnotes duplicated in the same page.
axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number	-ah-suppress-duplicate-page-number	The axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number specifies to delete the duplicated page numbers.
axf:suppress-folio-prefix		Invalidates the prefix of page numbers.
axf:suppress-folio-suffix		Invalidates the suffix of page numbers.
axf:suppress-if-first-on-page	-ah-suppress-if-first-on-page	axf:suppress-if-first-on-page specifies whether to suppress the block at the beginning of a page. [no-LT]
	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)tab-size	
7.28.16 table-layout	[CSS2.1] table-layout	
7.28.17 table-omit-footer-at-break	-ah-table-omit-footer-at-break	

XSL	CSS	Description
table-omit-footer-at-break	-ah-table-omit-footer-at-break	
7.28.18 table-omit-header-at-break table-omit-header-at-break	-ah-table-omit-header-at-break	
axf:table-summary	-ah-table-summary	Describes the table summary.
7.16.9 text-align	[CSS2.1] text-align [CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-align	
axf:text-align-first	-ah-text-align-first	axf:text-align-first specifies the text alignment of the first line.
7.16.10 text-align-last	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-align-last	[CSS3-Text] Last Line Alignment: the 'text-align-last' property
axf:text-align-string	-ah-text-align-string	axf:text-align-string specifies the text alignment when text-align=" <string>".</string>
7.29.4 text-altitude		
axf:text-autospace	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-autospace	The axf:text-autospace specifies whether to add space surrounding ideographic glyphs or not.
axf:text-autospace-width	-ah-text-autospace-width	The axf:text-autospace-width specifies the width for axf:text-autospace in Japanese.
	[CSS3-WritingModes] (-ah-)text-combine	[CSS3-WritingModes] Glyph Composition: the 'text-combine' property
axf:text-combine-horizontal	[CSS3-WritingModes] (-ah-)text-combine-horizontal	Sets horizontal-in-vertical composition in vertical writing mode automatically. [no-LT]
7.17.4 text-decoration	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-decoration-line	[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Lines: the 'text-decoration-line' property
	[CSS2.1] text-decoration [CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-decoration	[CSS2.1] 16.3.1 Underlining, overlining, striking, and blinking [CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Shorthand: the 'text-decoration' property
	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-decoration-color	[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Color: the 'text-decoration-color' property
	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-decoration-style	[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Style: the 'text-decoration-style' property
7.29.5 text-depth		
	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-emphasis	
axf:text-emphasis-color	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-emphasis-color	Specifies the color of emphasis marks.
axf:text-emphasis-font-family	-ah-text-emphasis-font-family	Specifies the font family of emphasis marks.
axf:text-emphasis-font-size	-ah-text-emphasis-font-size	Specifies the font size of emphasis marks.
axf:text-emphasis-font-stretch	-ah-text-emphasis-font-stretch	Specifies the font stretching of emphasis marks.
axf:text-emphasis-font-style	-ah-text-emphasis-font-style	Specifies whether emphasis marks are made Italic.
axf:text-emphasis-font-weight	-ah-text-emphasis-font-weight	Specifies the font weight of emphasis marks.
axf:text-emphasis-offset	-ah-text-emphasis-offset	Specifies the space between emphasis marks and the base characters.
axf:text-emphasis-position	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-emphasis-position	Specifies on which side of base characters emphasis marks are put.
axf:text-emphasis-skip	-ah-text-emphasis-skip	Specifies the character to which emphasis marks are not applied.
axf:text-emphasis-style	[CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-emphasis-style	Specifies the style of emphasis marks.

XSL	CSS	Description
7.16.11 text-indent	[CSS2.1] text-indent	
axf:text-justify-trim	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-justify-trim	Specifies the way to trim in text justification.
axf:text-kashida-space	-ah-text-kashida-space	Specifies the percentage of Kashida in Arabic justification.
axf:text-line-color	-ah-text-line-color	axf:text-line-color specifies the color of underline, strikethrough, and overline.
axf:text-line-style	-ah-text-line-style	axf:text-line-style specifies the style of underline, strikethrough, and overline.
axf:text-line-width	-ah-text-line-width	axf:text-line-width specifies the width of underline, strikethrough, and overline.
axf:text-orientation	[CSS3-WritingModes] (-ah-)text-orientation	Specifies the orientation of text in vertical writing mode. [V6.2] [no-LT]
axf:text-replace	[CSS3-GCPM] (-ah-)text-replace	Replaces the character strings.
7.17.5 text-shadow	[CSS2.1] text-shadow [CSS3-TextDecor] (-ah-)text-shadow	Specifies the text shadow. [V6.2] [no-LT]
7.17.6 text-transform text-transform	[CSS2.1] text-transform [CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-transform	
axf:text-underline-position	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)text-underline-position	axf:text-underline-position specifies the position of underline.
7.6.2 top	[CSS2.1] top	
axf:transform	[CSS3-Transforms] (-ah-)transform	Specifies the block transformation. [no-LT]
axf:transform-origin	[CSS3-Transforms] (-ah-)transform-origin	Specifies the origin of the block transformation. [no-LT]
7.29.6 unicode-bidi	[CSS2.1] unicode-bidi	
axf:value		☞ <axf:document-info>
7.31.22 vertical-align	[CSS2.1] vertical-align [CSS3-Line] (-ah-)vertical-align	[CSS3-Line] Vertical alignment: the 'vertical-align' shorthand baseline alignment property
axf:vertical-underline-side	-ah-vertical-underline-side	The axf:vertical-underline-side specifies on which side of the text to put underline in vertical writing-mode.
7.30.17 visibility	[CSS2.1] visibility	
7.31.23 white-space	[CSS2.1] white-space	
7.16.12 white-space-collapse	[CSS2.1] white-space	
7.16.8 white-space-treatment	[CSS2.1] white-space	
7.20.7 widows	[CSS2.1] widows	
7.15.14 width	[CSS2.1] width	
axf:word-break	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)word-break	The axf:word-break specifies whether to enable line breaking even inside a word.
7.17.8 word-spacing	[CSS2.1] word-spacing	
axf:word-wrap	[CSS3-Text] (-ah-)word-wrap	Specifies whether to break word forcibly when line break cannot be performed.
7.16.13 wrap-option	[CSS2.1] white-space	
7.29.7 writing-mode	[CSS3-WritingModes] (-ah-)writing-mode	
7.30.18 z-index	[CSS2.1] z-index	

XSL/CSS Extensions

AH Formatter V6.2 provides you with numerous XSL proprietary extension elements and properties. When you use the extension elements or properties, please be sure to specify the namespace URL <http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions>.

```
<fo:root xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
          xmlns:axf="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions">
```

AH Formatter V6.2 also provides a lot of CSS extension. In this document, CSS2.1 or CSS3 properties with restrictions are written together with XSL properties. See also "[XSL/CSS Properties List](#)". Although many of CSS3 specifications are included, many of them are in the state before Recommendation. It is safer for these properties of CSS3 specifications to use by adding the -ah-prefix. It is written as (-ah-) in this document. Although the property without adding -ah- will work with **AH Formatter V6.2**, the specification may change in the future. It is not necessary to add -ah- to the property of Recommendation (or Candidate Recommendation, Proposed Recommendation) such as CSS2.1.

- [Extended Elements](#)
- [Extended Properties](#) ↗ [XSL/CSS Properties List](#)
- [Extended Values](#)
- [Extended Functions](#)
- [Extended Units](#)
- [Other Extensions](#)

Extended Elements

Extended elements are provided only for XSL.

Element name	Description
<fo:change-bar-begin>	Extends the child element so that <fo:float> can be described as the content of the element. [no-LT]
<axf:document-info> / HTML <meta>	Specifies the document information. This information is embedded into the PDF.
<axf:footnote-number>	Generates a footnote number. [no-LT]
<axf:footnote-number-citation>	Cites a footnote number. [no-LT]
<axf:font-face> / CSS @font-face	Appends a font. [no-LT]
<axf:form>	Encloses the unit of the form action. [no-LT]
<axf:form-field>	Generates a form field. [no-LT]
<axf:form-field-option>	Specifies the component elements of the list box, combo box. [no-LT]
<axf:formatter-config>	Specifies additional option setting information. [no-LT]
<axf:hyphenation-info>	Specifies additional hyphenation information. [no-LT]
<axf:output-volume-info>	Outputs PDF in Multi Separate Volume. [no-LT]
<axf:ruby>	Generates the ruby structure.
<axf:ruby-base>	Specifies the base character of ruby.
<axf:ruby-text>	Specifies ruby.
<axf:space-after-punctuation>	Specifies the amount of space after the punctuation in European Typography.
<axf:space-before-punctuation>	Specifies the amount of space before the punctuation in European Typography.
<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation>	Specifies the amount of space between the digit and the punctuation in European Typography.
<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit>	Specifies the amount of space between the punctuation and digit in European Typography.
<axf:table-cell-repeated-marker>	Specifies the contents to be displayed in the split cell. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Extended Values

Extended values are provided both for XSL and CSS, but values may differ.

Property name	Description
border-style border-*style rule-style	<p>Extended the dot-dash, dot-dot-dash, and wave properties defined in old CSS3. These styles are preferred in the following order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. double 2. solid 3. dashed 4. dot-dash 5. dot-dot-dash 6. dotted 7. ridge 8. outset 9. groove 10. inset 11. wave <p>This order is not described in CSS3.</p>
display-align	Extends the value of the display-align property.
font-size-adjust	Extends the value of the font-size-adjust property.
font-stretch	Extends the value of the font-stretch property.
font-variant	Extends the value of the font-variant property.
force-page-count	Extends the value of the force-page-count property.
format	Extends the value of the format property.
internal-destination	Extends the value of the internal-destination property. [no-LT]
leader-alignment	Extends the value of the leader-alignment property.
overflow	Extends the value of the overflow property.
size	Extends the value of the size property.
table-omit-footer-at-break	Extends the value of the table-omit-footer-at-break property. [no-LT]
table-omit-header-at-break	Extends the value of the table-omit-header-at-break property. [no-LT]
text-transform	Extends the value of the text-transform property. [no-LT]

Extended Functions

Both FO and CSS functions are extended.

For CSS3 functions, see also [CSS3 Functions](#).

Function name	Description
rgb-icc()	Extends the rgb-icc function.
rgba()	Available to use rgba() function in CSS3 RGBA color values both with CSS and FO. [V6.2]
linear-gradient() radial-gradient() repeating-linear-gradient() repeating-radial-gradient()	<p>It is a function expressing the gradation. [no-LT]</p>
CSS counter()	Extends the counter function of CSS.
CSS attr()	Corresponds to the specification of CSS3 Values and Units.
CSS -ah-attr-from()	Extends the attr function.

Extended Units

Besides the units defined by the XSL specification, the following units can be used. These can also be applied to CSS.

Unit name	Description
ex	Unit of the value based on x-height of the font defined by CSS 2.1 4.3.2 Length . When the font does not have x-height, a value of 0.5em should be used.
jpt	Unit of the absolute value defined by JIS Z 8305. 1jpt = 0.3514mm.
q	Unit of the absolute value expressing Q (quarter). 1q = 0.25mm. (JIS X 4052, JIS Z 8125)
dpi	Used when expressing the resolution with axf:image-resolution .
dd	Unit of the absolute value expressing didot. 1dd = 0.01483in.
cc	Unit of the absolute value expressing cicero. 1cc = 12dd.
rem	Unit of em in the root element. It cannot be used for the value of the font-size property in the root element.
ch	Unit of the length expressing the width of character 0(U+0030) to be 1. When the glyph is not in the font, it becomes 0.5em.
wch	Unit of the length expressing the width of character U+3000 to be 1. When the glyph is not in the font, it becomes 1em.
lh	Unit of the length expressing the line-height to be 1. Even if line-height="2" is specified, for example, lh is converted into the absolute value. It cannot be used for the value of the line-height property.
rh	Unit of lh in the root element. It cannot be used for the value of the line-height property in the root element.
vw	Unit of the width expressing the viewport width as 100.
vh	Unit of the height expressing the viewport height as 100.
vmin	Equal to the smaller length of vw or vh.
vmax	Equal to the larger length of vw or vh.
pvw	Unit of the width expressing the page width as 100.
pvh	Unit of the height expressing the page height as 100.
pvmin	Equal to the smaller length of pvw or pvh.
pvmax	Equal to the larger length of pvw or pvh.
gr	Unit to specify spanning columns .

Other Extensions

- In the XSL Specification, the width of the padding or the border specified to fo:region-body or fo:region-before, etc. should be zero. **AH Formatter V6.2** can accept and process values other than zero. The following is sample code.

```
<fo:region-body padding="1.5cm" border-color="red" border-style="solid" border-width="2pt" />
```

- In the XSL Specification, the value of the <script> specified in the script property is supposed to be regulated in [ISO 15924](#). **AH Formatter V6.2** assigns a script called Math to mathematical operators, such as U+2200 to U+22FF for the accommodation of MathML.
- Although only xml:lang of the XML specification is explicitly stated in the XSL specification, **AH Formatter V6.2** accepts the following XML input. The same is applied to XHTML and XML+CSS.
 - xml:lang
 - xml:base
Functions the same as [axf:base-uri](#).
 - xml:id
Functions the same as [7.30.8 id](#).
 - xlink:href
Treats the href attribute of the [XLink](#) namespace as a link.

Document Information for PDF Output

This section describes how to embed document information into PDF file.

<axf:document-info> / HTML <meta>

Document information such as an author and title can be embedded in the PDF. **AH Formatter V6.2** generates document information automatically by adding the following extended elements. The information that was embedded into PDF can be seen by Adobe Acrobat or Reader.

In HTML, the setting equivalent to axf:document-info can be specified with the <meta> tag. The setting of <meta name="document-title"> will take precedence over the setting of <title>.

```
<meta name="document-title" content="The document title" />
<meta name="subject" content="The document subject" />
<meta name="author" content="The author" />
<meta name="keywords" content="Comma separated keywords list" />
...
...
```

Common Usage:

Specifies the document information. The information is not included in the generated areas. For example, this information is embedded into PDF.

Areas:

None.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:document-info EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST axf:document-info name    CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST axf:document-info value   CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

The axf:document-info extension property can be placed in any position right under the fo:root and before fo:page-sequence. Its properties are "name" and "value", which are required. The value of 'name' must be one of the followings: The information with * will be outputted either to the first document or all documents generated by multi-volume output by specifying the [axf:document-info-include](#) property. Other information will be always outputted to all documents generated by multi-volume output.

- **document-title**
Specifies the title of the document.
- **subject**
Specifies the subtitle of the document.
- **author**
Specifies the author of the document.
- **author-title** [no-LT]
Specifies the title or some keywords of the author.
- **description-writer** [no-LT]
Specifies the author of the document description.
- **keywords**
Enumerates the comma-delimited keyword.
- **copyright-status** [no-LT]
Specifies the status of the copyright using either of the following.
 - Unknown
 - Copyrighted
 - PublicDomain
- **copyright-notice** [no-LT]
Specifies the information of the copyright.
- **copyright-info-url** [no-LT]
Specifies the URL of the copyright information. This URL is treated just as a character string and the program does not access this URL.
- **xmp** [no-LT]
Specifies the URL of [XMP](#). This URL follows <uri-specification> in the XSL specification. See also [URI](#). The following settings become invalid when XMP is specified.

- author-title
- description-writer
- copyright-status
- copyright-notice
- copyright-info-url

The validity of a XMP file is checked simply whether it is well-formed or not. The contents are not detected. When contradictory or incorrect contents are included, the effect is not guaranteed.

- **pagemode ***

Specifies the method of the display when the document is opened. The following one can be specified.

- UseNone
Neither document outline nor thumbnail images visible
- UseOutlines
Document outline visible
- UseThumbs
Thumbnail images visible
- FullScreen
Full-screen mode, with no menu bar, window controls, or any other window visible
- UseOC
Optional content group panel visible

UseOC can be specified for PDF1.5 or later. The default is UseOutlines when the outline exists.

- **pagelayout ***

Specifies the page layout when a document is opened. You can specify either of the followings.

- SinglePage
Display one page at a time
- OneColumn
Display the pages in one column
- TwoColumnLeft
Display the pages in two columns, with odd-numbered pages on the left
- TwoColumnRight
Display the pages in two columns, with odd-numbered pages on the right
- TwoPageLeft
Display the pages two at a time, with odd-numbered pages on the left
- TwoPageRight
Display the pages two at a time, with odd-numbered pages on the right

TwoPageLeft and TwoPageRight can be specified for PDF1.5 or later. The default value is SinglePage.

- **hidetoolbar ***

Specifies whether to hide a tool bar or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false.

- **hidemenuubar ***

Specifies whether to hide a menu bar or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false.

- **hidewindowui ***

Specifies whether to hide user interface elements (a scroll bar, the control for navigation, etc.) or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false.

- **fitwindow ***

Specifies whether to change the size of a document window to fit the page size or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false.

- **centerwindow ***

Specifies whether to arrange a document window in the center of a screen or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false.

- **displaydoctitle ***

Specifies whether to display the title of a document or not when a document is opened with the value of true or false. The default value is false. Effective with PDF 1.4 or later.

- **openaction ***

Specifies the address displayed when the document is opened or the action executed. The value similar to <number-with-fragment> of [internal-destination](#) can be described here. Refer to [Making Link](#) too. Action with a name and JavaScript can also be specified at this time.

- value="#Named=Print"
The print dialog will be displayed when the document is opened.
- value="#Named=LastPage"

- The last page is displayed when the document is opened.
- o value="#JavaScript=arbitrary JavaScript program"
Executes the specified JavaScript.
- # Named coming right after or JavaScript are case insensitive. Actions which can be specified to Named correspond to the menu name of a viewer. The operation in the case where an unknown name is specified to Named, or in the case where the wrong program is specified to JavaScript are not guaranteed. JavaScript cannot be specified with PDF/A

Contents:

EMPTY

Examples:

```
<fo:root xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
          xmlns:axf="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions">
  <axf:document-info name="document-title" value="The document title"/>
  <axf:document-info name="subject" value="The document subject"/>
  <axf:document-info name="author" value="The author"/>
  <axf:document-info name="keywords" value="Comma separated keywords list"/>
  ...

```

axf:document-info as a child of fo:page-sequence is effective only for PDF output in multi separate volume. axf:document-info as a child of fo:page-sequence overwrites axf:document-info as a child of fo:root and is utilized for an information of the document when outputting in separate volume. Therefore the same document information is embedded in all the separate volumes unless axf:document-info is specified to fo:page-sequence.

"openaction" and "pagemode" cannot be specified for the multi separate volume. Only the specification of the right under of fo:root is effective. When the separate volume is outputted, it is specified for the first separate volume.

With **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**, axf:document-info specified to fo:page-sequence is ignored.

axf:pdftag / CSS -ah-pdftag

Specifies the tag name of Tagged PDF files. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Customizes the tag name when outputting Tagged PDF. When you want to make the tag name of the relevant element "paragraph", e.g., specify as follows:

```
<fo:block axf:pdftag="Paragraph">
```

PDF Output in Multi Separate Volume

AH Formatter V6.2 makes it possible to output PDF in Multi Separate Volume. These features are not available in CSS. These features are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

<axf:output-volume-info>

Common Usage:

Makes it possible to output PDF in separate volume per fo:page-sequence when outputting the formatted result.

Areas:

None.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:output-volume-info EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST axf:output-volume-info initial-volume-number NUMBER "1">
<!ATTLIST axf:output-volume-info format CDATA "1">
<!ATTLIST axf:output-volume-info bookmark-include (first|all|separate) "separate">
```

The axf:output-volume-info is placed as a child of fo:root. If it comes before fo:page-sequence appears, it is possible to put it in an arbitrary position under a child of fo:root.

Contents:

EMPTY

Examples:

```

<axf:output-volume-info
    initial-volume-number="2"
    format="-1"
    bookmark-include="separate"
/>

<fo:page-sequence>
    PAGE-SEQUENCE-1
    ...
</fo:page-sequence>
<fo:page-sequence>
    PAGE-SEQUENCE-2
    ...
</fo:page-sequence>
<fo:page-sequence axf:output-volume-break="true">
    PAGE-SEQUENCE-3
    ...
</fo:page-sequence>

```

Effective only when outputting to files. It's not available for printing or stream output. At that time the file name should be given by GUI, command line parameter or etc. The file names of separate volumes are given automatically based on the output file names. This process is done by inputting the strings formatted by the format property right before the file extension of the output file name. In the above example, when document.pdf is given to the file name, PAGE-SEQUENCE-1 and PAGE-SEQUENCE-2 are outputted to document-2.pdf, PAGE-SEQUENCE-3 is outputted to document-3.pdf.

The numeric value applied to the format property can be given by the [axf:initial-volume-number](#) property as the initial value. The format property is the same as "7.26.1. [format](#)" in the XSL-FO specification.

The volume is separated by the [axf:output-volume-break](#) property specified to fo:page-sequence. If the [axf:output-volume-file-name](#) property is specified, only the separated volumes can be outputted with the specified file name.

The book mark of PDF in multi separate volume can be set by the [axf:bookmark-include](#) from the following options.

- Adds a bookmark to the first separate volume only.
- Adds bookmarks to all the separate volumes.
- Adds each bookmark to each separate volume.

The following conditions are required for the actual separate volume.

- The [<axf:output-volume-info>](#) element should be included in FO.
- The following items are set in each interface.

GUI	Multi Volume should be checked in the PDF Output Dialog .
Command-line	The -multivol parameter should be specified.
.NET	true should be specified to the MultiVolume property.
COM	true should be specified to the MultiVolume property.
Java	The separate volume should be specified by XfoObj::setMultiVolume() .
C/C++	The separate volume should be specified by XfoObj::setMultiVolume() .

axf:bookmark-include

Specifies how to include bookmarks in multi separate volume. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: first | all | separate
Initial: separate
Applies to: [axf:output-volume-info](#)
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

first

Adds a bookmark to the first separate volume.

all

Adds bookmarks to all the separate volumes.

separate

Adds each bookmark to each separate volume. Bookmarks are added to the volume where axf:outline-level="1" appears. The bookmark that goes across the volume is added to the previous volume. For that reason, the external link to the other volume may be included even though axf:bookmark-include="separate" is specified.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:document-info-include

Specifies how to include document information in multi separate volume. [no-LT]

Value: first | all

Initial: first

Applies to: axf:output-volume-info

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

first

Adds document information to the first separate volume.

all

Adds document information to all the separate volumes.

Please refer to [<axf:document-info>](#). This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:initial-volume-number

Specifies the initial volume number in multi separate volume. [no-LT]

Value: <number>

Initial: 1

Applies to: axf:output-volume-info

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

This value is applied for the format property and utilized for the PDF file name to output. In the following example, the file name of the separate volume is [document-2.pdf](#), [document-3.pdf](#), [document-4.pdf](#),...

```
<axf:output-volume-info
    initial-volume-number="2"
    format="-1"
/>
```

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:output-volume-break

Separates the file in multi volume. [no-LT]

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:page-sequence

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Separates the volume newly from this fo:page-sequence.

false

Do not separates the volume newly from this fo:page-sequence.

Specifies `axf:output-volume-break="true"` to `fo:page-sequence` where you want to start separating the volume. The document number increases one by one. When separating the volume, `axf:output-volume-break="true"` is regarded as always being specified to the first `fo:page-sequence`. If `axf:output-volume-break="false"` is specified explicitly, it is ignored.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:output-volume-filename

Specifies the document file name in multi separate volume. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

If nothing specified, the automatic file name using the format property is adopted. If this property is specified, the specified name is adopted. This property is effective only with the top `fo:page-sequence` or with the `fo:page-sequence` where `axf:output-volume-break="true"` is specified.

In the following example, suppose that if `document.pdf` is specified as the file name of the PDF output, the separated file names will be `document-2.pdf`, `chapterX.pdf`, `document-4.pdf`,...

```
<axf:output-volume-info
    initial-volume-number="2"
    format="-1"
/>

<fo:page-sequence>
  ...
</fo:page-sequence>
<fo:page-sequence axf:output-volume-break="true" axf:output-volume-filename="ChapterX.pdf">
  ...
</fo:page-sequence>
<fo:page-sequence axf:output-volume-break="true">
  ...
</fo:page-sequence>
```

The original PDF file name cannot be omitted even though `axf:output-volume-filename` is specified to all the `fo:page-sequence`. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

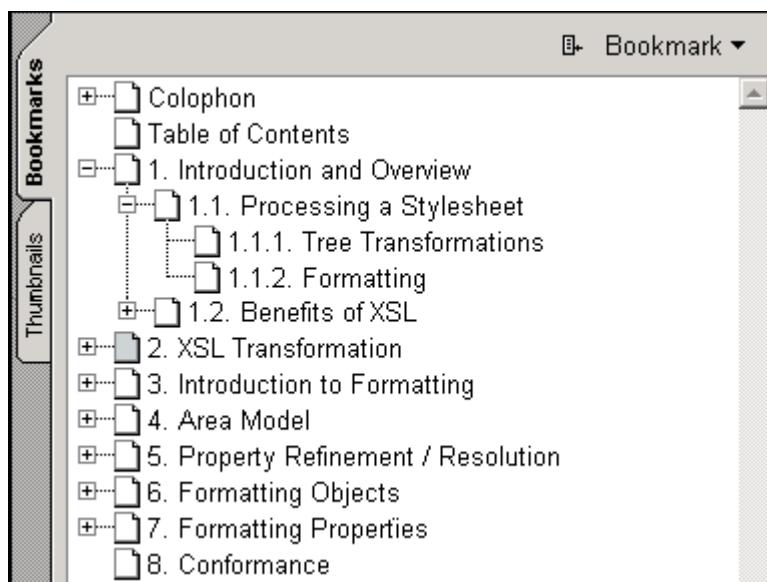
Bookmark and Link in PDF Output

This section describes how to create bookmark and link within the PDF file.

Making Bookmark

A PDF document has a function called bookmarks. Bookmarks in Adobe Acrobat or Reader consist of a tree-structured hierarchy which serve as a "visual table of contents," allowing the user to navigate to the target place by clicking on items.

CAUTION: A similar function is equipped in XSL1.1. Please make use of `fo:bookmark`. However, please use `axf:outline-*` instead of `fo:bookmark` when you output PDF in [Multi Separate Volume](#).



AH Formatter V6.2 generates bookmarks automatically by adding the extended properties to the objects to have bookmarks.

The following sample illustrates how to create the bookmark of the above picture.

```

<fo:root xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
           xmlns:axf="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions">
  ...
  <fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
            axf:outline-expand="false"
            axf:outline-title="Colophon">
    ...
  </fo:block>
  <fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
            axf:outline-expand="false"
            axf:outline-title="Table of Contents">
    ...
  </fo:block>
  <fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
            axf:outline-expand="true"
            axf:outline-title="1. Introduction and Overview">
    <fo:block axf:outline-level="2"
              axf:outline-expand="true"
              axf:outline-title="1.1. Processing a Stylesheet">
      <fo:block axf:outline-level="3"
                axf:outline-expand="false"
                axf:outline-title="1.1.1. Tree Transformations">
        ...
      </fo:block>
      <fo:block axf:outline-level="3"
                axf:outline-expand="false"
                axf:outline-title="1.1.2. Formatting">
        ...
      </fo:block>
    </fo:block>
    <fo:block axf:outline-level="2"
              axf:outline-expand="false"
              axf:outline-title="1.2. Benefits of XSL">
      ...
    </fo:block>
  </fo:block>
  <fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
            axf:outline-expand="false"
            axf:outline-title="2. XSL Transformation">
    ...
  </fo:block>
  ...

```

axf:outline-expand / CSS -ah-outline-expand

The axf:outline-expand specifies whether to display the lower hierarchy of bookmark items or not.

<i>Value:</i>	true false
<i>Initial:</i>	true
<i>Applies to:</i>	block-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

True specifies to display the lower hierarchy in the expanded state. False specifies to display in the collapsed state. In CSS, (-ah-)bookmark-state is also available.

axf:outline-group / CSS -ah-outline-group

The axf:outline-group groups bookmark items, and outputs them collectively.

<i>Value:</i>	<string>
<i>Initial:</i>	empty string
<i>Applies to:</i>	block-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

If this property is omitted or specifies empty string, bookmark items are not grouped. If this specifies any string, the string is used as the name of group. The group with the same name is outputted collectively. The non-grouped bookmark is outputted as the group without the group name.

axf:outline-level / CSS -ah-outline-level

The axf:outline-level indicates the hierarchy level of bookmark items.

<i>Value:</i>	<number>
<i>Initial:</i>	0
<i>Applies to:</i>	block-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

The <number> must be a non-negative integer. Initial value is zero and it means that bookmarks should not be created. The highest level of bookmarks is 1 and it becomes 2 or more according to the hierarchy level of the bookmarks. In CSS, (-ah-)bookmark-level is also available.

axf:outline-title / CSS -ah-outline-title

The axf:outline-title specifies the string which appears as a title of bookmarks.

<i>Value:</i>	<string>
<i>Initial:</i>	empty string
<i>Applies to:</i>	block-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

If this property is omitted or has an empty string, the text of the object to which the property is added will become the title. In other words, the following two samples create the same bookmark.

```
<fo:block axf:outline-level="2" axf:outline-title="1. Introduction">...
<fo:block axf:outline-level="2">1. Introduction</fo:block>
```

In CSS, (-ah-)bookmark-label is also available.

axf:outline-color / CSS -ah-outline-color

The axf:outline-color specifies the color which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]

<i>Value:</i>	<color>
<i>Initial:</i>	the value of the 'color' property
<i>Applies to:</i>	block-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

This property is effective with PDF 1.4 or later. This property is not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.

axf:outline-font-style / CSS -ah-outline-font-style

The axf:outline-font-style specifies the font style which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]

Value: normal | italic
Initial: normal
Applies to: block-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Specifies normal style.

italic

Specifies italic.

This property is effective with PDF 1.4 or later. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:outline-font-weight / CSS -ah-outline-font-weight

The axf:outline-font-weight specifies the font weight which appears as a title of bookmarks. [no-LT]

Value: normal | bold
Initial: normal
Applies to: block-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Specifies normal weight.

bold

Specifies bold weight.

This property is effective with PDF 1.4 or later. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Remarks

- These properties have to be created in block areas or inline areas. (fo:block, fo:inline ...) If you specify them in an fo:wrapper, for example, they are not effective.
- When the language is not supported in Acrobat and the font that belongs to the unsupported language is specified for the bookmark, there may be a possibility of the font displaying incorrectly in Adobe Acrobat or Reader.

Making Link

In FO, PDF links can be created easily by using fo:basic-link. In HTML, <a> is used to create links.

PDF links are classified either as an internal link to a specified position in the PDF document, or as an external link to an external document. The internal-destination property of fo:basic-link indicates a link to a position in the same document. The external-destination property indicates a link to an external document. Below are the examples of both.

- Internal Link

```
<fo:block>
Answer may be found in <fo:basic-link internal-destination="appendix-a">Appendix-A</
fo:basic-link>.
</fo:block>
...
<fo:block id="appendix-a">
Appendix-A
</fo:block>
```

- External Link

```
<fo:block>
```

```
Here is <fo:basic-link external-destination="http://www.w3.org/">W3C Home Page</fo:basic-link>.
</fo:block>
```

The external link specified by the relative address is transformed into either 'Open the file' or 'World Wide Web link' by the [use-launch-for-relative-uri](#) property in [PDF Output Setting](#). The external link specified by the absolute address is always transformed into 'World Wide Web link'.

Furthermore, it's possible to specify professional links as follows. For further understanding see also "[PDF Reference](#)" by Adobe Systems Incorporated. The professional links are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

- Specifies the following actions for the external link explicitly.
 - Moves the destination inside PDF (GoToR)
 - Opens the file (Launch)
 - World Wide Web link (URI)
- Possible to specify ID for the external link in PDF as well as the internal link.
- Possible to specify the page number for the external link in PDF.
- Possible to specify the page number for the internal link.
- Possible to specify the type of destination for the external link.
- Possible to specify the external link in the bookmark.
- Possible to specify the internal link in the bookmark.

The setting of external-destination for the external link in PDF conforms to the following specification of PDF parameters. Not all the parameters are effective with **AH Formatter V6.2**. The invalid parameters are ignored.

- [PDF Open Parameters](#)

This specification provides the following examples.

- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#nameddest=Chapter6>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#page=3>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#page=3&zoom=200,250,100>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#zoom=50>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#page=72&view=fitH,100>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#view=fitb&nameddest=Chapter3>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#pagemode=none>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#pagemode=bookmarks&page=2>
- <http://mydocs/doc.pdf#page=3&pagemode=thumbs>

Only the following parameters are effective with **AH Formatter V6.2**. The case sensitivity is ignored.

- nameddest
- page
- zoom
- view
- viewrect

For example, it's invalid to specify fitH, fitR and fitBH for the external link. These are effective only with the internal link. If the required values for the PDF parameters are omitted in fitH, etc., the values are accounted as 0.

With the external link for PDF, it's possible to specify whether to open a new window by the show-destination property. A link destination except PDF is invalid. If show-destination="new" is specified, a new window will be opened and PDF will be displayed on the window. If show-destination="replace" is specified, a new window will not be opened but PDF will be displayed in the current window. When nothing specified, it depends on the operation of the PDF viewer application. Although it is defined as "replace" in the XSL-FO specification when the property is omitted, **AH Formatter V6.2** complies with the specification a little differently. show-destination property is invalid under the following conditions.

- Other than the case that [axf:action-type](#) is specified as "gotor" or as "launch" when the link destination is PDF.
- In the internal link. There may be a case that an internal link is embedded as an external link when separating the volume. show-destination specified to the internal link is effective only in that case.

AH Formatter V6.2 provides the following extension properties for the professional link.

axf:action-type / CSS -ah-action-type

Specifies the action of [external link](#) or [form action](#). In CSS, form actions are invalid.

Value: goto | launch | uri | reset | submit | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:basic-link, axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

gor

Opens the link destination by the "GoToR" action as PDF. The URI of the destination is regarded as PDF.

launch

Opens the link destination by the "Launch" action as the file.

uri

Opens the link destination by the "URI" action as URI (World Wide Web).

reset [no-LT]

Resets a form filed as a form action and can be specified to [axf:form-field](#). It's invalid in CSS.

submit [no-LT]

Submits a form filed as a form action and can be specified to [axf:form-field](#). It's invalid in CSS.

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

When the link destination is not a local file, such as http:, the action type is "URI" at any time. When axf:action-type="auto" specified, the external link specified by the relative address is transformed into either 'Open the file' or 'World Wide Web link' by the [use-launch-for-relative-uri](#) property in [PDF Output Setting](#). The external link specified by the absolute address is always transformed into 'World Wide Web link'.

axf:destination-type / CSS -ah-destination-type

Specifies the type of destination for the external link. These are the types of destination for PDF as the external link. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: block level formatting object
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The destination type has the following options. If nothing specified, it's accounted as axf:destination-type="xyz-top". The case sensitivity is ignored.

CAUTION: Although the link functions in GUI, destination-type is invalid and it is always considered as xyz-left-top.

Destination Type of PDF	How to specify axf:destination-type
[page /XYZ left top zoom]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of left/top. However it's possible to specify null or non-null explicitly. The user can specify the arbitrary value for zoom. axf:destination-type="xyz" Specifies left and top as null. axf:destination-type="xyz-left" Specifies top as null. axf:destination-type="xyz-top" Specifies left as null. axf:destination-type="xyz-left-top" If nothing is specified t zoom, it's accounted as null. Specifies % value to zoom as follows. axf:destination-type="xyz-top 75" If only the numbers are specified, the value is accounted for xyz-top. axf:destination-type="75"
[page /Fit]	axf:destination-type="fit"
[page /FitH top]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of top. Effective only to specify in the internal link. axf:destination-type="fith"
[page /FitV left]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of left. axf:destination-type="fitv"
[page /FitR left bottom right top]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of left/bottom/right/top. Effective only to specify in the internal link. axf:destination-type="fitr"

Destination Type of PDF	How to specify axf:destination-type
[page /FitB]	axf:destination-type="fitb"
[page /FitBH top]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of top. Effective only to specify in the internal link. axf:destination-type="fitbh"
[page /FitBV left]	AH Formatter V6.2 calculates the value of left. axf:destination-type="fitbv"

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:outline-external-destination / CSS -ah-outline-external-destination

Sets the external link in the PDF bookmark. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: block-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<uri-specification>

Specifies the URI of the link destination.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:outline-internal-destination / CSS -ah-outline-internal-destination

Sets the internal link in the PDF bookmark. [no-LT]

Value: empty string | <idref> | <number-with-fragment>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: block-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<idref>

Specifies the ID of the link destination.

<number-with-fragment>

Specifies the page number of the link destination. This string is simple numeric characters or the following string that combines numeric characters and a fragment with #. Refer to [Making Link](#) for the fragment.

123#zoom=50

The page number also can be specified in the fragment.

#page=123&zoom=50

When the page number is not specified, it is usually regarded as the 1st page. However, when the top position is specified, it is regarded as the head of the page of a block where axf:outline-internal-destination is contained. For example, it is specified as follows.

```
#view=fit
#view=fith
#zoom=,,0
```

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

ID in the External Link

When specifying the ID in the external link, the type of the destination should be given to the ID of the link destination. Name-ddest is only effective as the parameter in the URI. The type of the destination can be specified to the link destination. Values indicated in [axf:destination-type](#) can be specified for "xxxx".

- Link origin:

```
<fo:basic-link external-destination="http://mydocs/doc.pdf#nameddest=Chapter6"
    axf:action-type="gotoR">
```

- Link destination:

```
<fo:block id="Chapter6" axf:destination-type="xxxx">
```

ID in the Internal Link

When specifying the ID in the internal link, the type of the destination should be given to the ID of the link destination as well as the external link.

- Link origin:

```
<fo:basic-link internal-destination="Chapter6">
```

- Link destination:

```
<fo:block id="Chapter6" axf:destination-type="xxxx">
```

Page Number in the External Link

The page number can be accounted by the page parameter in the URI. If both page and nameddest are specified, nameddest takes priority. When specifying the page number, the destination information cannot be set to the link destination. Therefore the type of the destination is given by reading the parameter in the URI. The unreadable parameter is discarded.

```
<fo:basic-link external-destination="http://mydocs/doc.pdf?page=72&view=fitH,100"
    axf:action-type="gotoR">
```

When neither page nor nameddest are included in the parameter of the URI, it's accounted as page=1. The page number is accounted as physical in PDF.

Page Number in the Internal Link

Adds extension in order to specify the page number to the value of `internal-destination`.

```
<fo:basic-link internal-destination="72">
```

The type of the destination can be specified by adding the parameter of the external link URI.

```
<fo:basic-link internal-destination="72#view=fitH,100">
```

The page number is accounted as physical in PDF. If only the page number is specified, the type of the destination is accounted as `view=fit`.

Bookmark with the External Link

Specify the `axf:outline-external-destination` property as follows in order to specify the external link to the bookmark.

```
<fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
    axf:outline-title="Chapter 6"
    axf:outline-external-destination="http://mydocs/doc.pdf#nameddest=Chapter6"
    axf:action-type="gotoR"
    show-destination="new">
```

At that time, this bookmark becomes independent of the block such as `fo:block`, etc., which the bookmark belongs to.

Bookmark with the Internal Link

Specify the `axf:outline-internal-destination` property as follows in order to specify the internal link to the bookmark.

```
<fo:block axf:outline-level="1"
    axf:outline-title="Chapter 6"
    axf:outline-internal-destination="Chapter6">
```

At that time, this bookmark becomes independent of the block such as `fo:block`, etc., which the bookmark belongs to.

Remarks

- Specify either `internal-destination` or `external-destination`.

- There may be a case that an internal link is accounted as an external link when [separating the volume](#). At that time, the action type of the link is accounted as axf:action-type="gotor".
- When an unintended link is created, please confirm the setting of your PDF viewer application first. For example, in Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat, the feature of "Create links from URLs" may create a link automatically.

Annotation in PDF Output

Annotations can be added to PDF with **AH Formatter V6.2**. See also "[PDF Reference](#)" for more details. Annotations which can be specified here are a part of those defined in "[PDF Reference](#)". This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-type / CSS -ah-annotation-type

Specifies the type of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Any of the following types of the annotation can be specified.

- Empty string
No annotations.
- "Text"
Text annotation.
- "FreeText"
Free text annotation.
- "Stamp"
Rubber stamp annotation.
- "FileAttachment"
File attachment annotation.

Character strings are case insensitive.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-author / CSS -ah-annotation-author

Specifies the author of the annotation. [V6.2MR2] [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-title / CSS -ah-annotation-title

Specifies the title of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is effective with PDF 1.5 or later. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-contents / CSS -ah-annotation-contents

Specifies the content of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Specifies the character strings to be displayed when any of the following types of the annotations ([axf:annotation-type](#)) is specified.

- "Text"
- "FreeText"
- "Stamp"
- "FileAttachment"

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-color / CSS -ah-annotation-color

Specifies the color used for the **background** of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <color> | none
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-flags / CSS -ah-annotation-flags

Specifies the flag of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies the following character sequences by enumerating using the white space. They are case insensitive.

- Invisible
- Hidden
- Print
- NoZoom
- NoRotate
- NoView
- ReadOnly
- Locked
- ToggleNoView
- LockedContents [V6.2MR3]

See also "[PDF Reference](#)" to learn more.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-open / CSS -ah-annotation-open

Specifies the **initial state** of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies whether it is displayed in the open state when the type of the annotation ([axf:annotation-type](#)) is as follows.

- "Text"

Values have the following meanings.

true

Displays the annotation in the open state.

false

Displays the annotation in the closed state.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-icon-name / CSS -ah-annotation-icon-name

Specifies the name of the icon used for displaying the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>

Initial: empty string

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Although arbitrary name can be specified for the icon used for the display of annotations, whether it can be displayed or not depends on the viewer application of a document. The annotation type ([axf:annotation-type](#)) shows the standard name which can be specified.

- "Text"

Standard names are as follows:

- "Comment"
- "Help"
- "Insert"
- "Key"
- "NewParagraph"
- "Note"
- "Paragraph"

Empty string is regarded as "None".

- "Stamp"

Standard names are as follows:

- "Approved"
- "AsIs"
- "Confidential"
- "Departmental"
- "Draft"
- "Experimental"
- "Expired"
- "Final"
- "ForComment"
- "ForPublicRelease"
- "NotApproved"
- "NotForPublicRelease"
- "Sold"
- "TopSecret"

Empty string is regarded as "Draft".

- "FileAttachment"

Standard names are as follows:

- "Graph"
- "Paperclip"
- "PushPin"
- "Tag"

Empty string is regarded as "PushPin".

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-position-horizontal / CSS -ah-annotation-position-horizontal

Specifies the horizontal position of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <length>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

The position specified is the distance from the left edge of the region and is used for the position of pop-up or icons and the position of rubber stamp annotations.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-position-vertical / CSS -ah-annotation-position-vertical

Specifies the vertical position of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <length>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

The position specified is the distance from the top edge of the region and is used for the position of pop-up or icons and the position of rubber stamp annotations.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-width / CSS -ah-annotation-width

Specifies the width of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <length> | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

This property is used for the width of pop-up and the width of rubber stamp annotations.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-height / CSS -ah-annotation-height

Specifies the height of the annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <length> | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

This property is used for the height of pop-up and the height of rubber stamp annotations.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-font-family / CSS -ah-annotation-font-family

Specifies the font family of the free text annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <string>

Initial: depends on user agent

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-font-size / CSS -ah-annotation-font-size

Specifies the font size of the free text annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: depends on user agent

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the font size

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-font-weight / CSS -ah-annotation-font-weight

Specifies the font weight of the free text annotation. [no-LT]

Value: normal | bold
Initial: normal
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-font-style / CSS -ah-annotation-font-style

Specifies whether to make the font of the free text annotation italic. [no-LT]

Value: normal | italic
Initial: normal
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-text-color / CSS -ah-annotation-text-color

Specifies the color of the free text annotation. [no-LT]

Value: <color>
Initial: depends on user agent
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-text-align / CSS -ah-annotation-text-align

Specifies the alignment of the free text annotation. [no-LT]

Value: left | center | right
Initial: left
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:annotation-file-attachment / CSS -ah-annotation-file-attachment

Specifies the file with which file attachment annotation is related. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Acroform in PDF Output

It's possible to create PDF forms with **AH Formatter V6.2**. Forms consist of the field to fill in the text and buttons, etc. Moreover, the action accompanied by push-button can be specified. These features are not available in CSS.

- [Form Fields](#)
- [Form Actions](#)

Forms can be specified by describing `<axf:form-field>` inside `<axf:form>`.

```
<axf:form
    external-destination="http://www.antenna.co.jp/form-test.cgi"
```

```

field-submit-method="post"
field-submit-coordinates="true">
<fo:block>
  Submit:
  <axf:form-field
    field-type="button"
    field-name="SubmitButton"
    action-type="submit"
    field-button-layout="caption"
    field-button-face="Submit!"
    width="5em"
    background-color="#eee"
    border="2px silver outset"
  />
</fo:block>
<fo:block>
  Text Field:
  <axf:form-field
    field-type="text"
    field-name="InputText"
    field-default-text="Input text here!"
    field-multiline="false"
    field-scroll="true"
    field maxlen="32"
    width="10em"
    height="1.2em"
    background-color="#ff8"
    border="1pt silver inset"
  />
</fo:block>
</axf:form>

```

When `<axf:form-field>` is not inside of `<axf:form>` and action-type is "submit" or "reset", these do not function. `<axf:form-field>` other than these will work fine regardless of `<axf:form>`. This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

`<axf:form>`

Common Usage:

Encloses the unit of the form action. [no-LT]

Areas:

Generates and returns a block-area.

Contents:

(%block;)*

`<axf:form-field>`

Common Usage:

Generates a form field. [no-LT]

Areas:

Generates and returns a single normal inline-area.

Contents:

(`axf:form-field-option`)*

`<axf:form-field-option>`

Common Usage:

Specifies the component elements of the list box, combo box. [no-LT]

Areas:

No areas generated.

Contents:

#PCDATA

axf:field-type

Specifies the field type. [no-LT]

Value: text | button | checkbox | radio | listbox | combobox | signature
Initial: N/A, value is required
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

text

Specifies the text field.

button

Specifies the push button field.

checkbox

Specifies the check box field

radio

Specifies the radio button field

listbox

Specifies the list box field

combobox

Specifies the combo box field

signature

axf:field-name

Specifies the field name. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: N/A, value is required
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-description

Specifies the descriptive text of the field. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-value

Specifies the value used when submitting a form field, etc. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-readonly

Specifies whether the field is read-only or not. [no-LT]

Value: true | false

Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

The field is read-only.

false

The field is not read-only.

axf:field-required

Specifies whether the field is enter-required or not. [no-LT]

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

The field is enter-required.

false

The field is not enter-required.

axf:field-default-text

Specifies the text entered into the text field from the beginning. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-multiline

Specifies whether the text field is a single-line enterable field or a multi-line enterable field. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The text field is a single-line enterable field.

true

The text field is a multi-line enterable field.

axf:field-scroll

Specifies whether the text field is scrollable or not. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The text field is not scrollable.

true

The text field is scrollable.

axf:field-password

Specifies whether the text field requires the password or not. [no-LT]

Value: false | true

Initial: false

Applies to: axf:form-field

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The text field does not require the password.

true

The text field requires the password. Entered characters are shown as *, etc.

axf:field-maxlen

Specifies the maximum number of characters which can be entered into the text field. [no-LT]

Value: <number>

Initial: 0

Applies to: axf:form-field

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

When 0 or less is specified, the number of characters is not limited.

CAUTION: When the maximum number of characters is specified and the number of characters set as initial value of the text field in [axf:field-default-text](#) exceeds the specified maximum number, the initial value will be discarded.

axf:field-format-category

Specifies the format type of the text field. [no-LT]

Value: none | number | percentage | date | time

Initial: none

Applies to: axf:form-field

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Does not specify the format.

number

Specifies the format for numerical values.

percentage

Specifies the format for percentage values.

date

Specifies the format for date values.

time

Specifies the format for time values.

Actual formats can be specified by [axf:field-format](#).

CAUTION: As for the character string set as initial values of the text field in `axf:field-default-text`, its validity is inspected when a format is specified. Nonconforming initial values will be discarded.

axf:field-format

Specifies the format of the text field. [no-LT]

Value: auto | [[<string> | <number>] [<string> | <number> | true | false]*]
Initial: auto
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The setting of the format will differ depending on the type of formats specified by `axf:field-format-category`. When **auto** is specified, the default is adopted to all values. In other cases, values of `axf:field-format-category` can be specified as follows:

number

Values can be specified with a maximum of 5 as follows:

```
axf:field-format="2 0 1 '$' true"
```

These values have the following meanings in sequence.

1. The number of digits after the decimal point. (default: 2)
 When the inputted value has many digit numbers after the decimal point, it is displayed by rounding off.
2. How to display numbers with different separators. One of the following values can be specified. (default: 0)
 - 0.
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - 3.
 - 4.
3. How to display negative numbers. (default: 0)
 0. No processing.
 1. Display in red.
 2. Display with parentheses.
 3. Display in red with parentheses.
4. Currency symbol. Any character strings can be specified. (default: empty)
 When putting a currency symbol before numbers, it's better to put a white space after numbers like "\$ ". When putting it after the numbers, put the white space before numbers.
5. Position of a currency symbol. If **true** is specified, it is displayed before numbers, if **false** is specified, it is displayed after numbers. (default: true)

percentage

Values can be specified with a maximum of 2 as follows:

```
axf:field-format="2 0"
```

Values have the same meaning as **number**.

date

Specifies the format by the numerical value or character strings. One of the following numerical values can be specified. (default: 0)

- 0.
- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.
- 7.
- 8.

- 9.
- 10.
- 11.
- 12.
- 13.

The following 2 settings have the same meaning.

```
axf:field-format="2"
axf:field-format="'mm/dd/yy'"
```

Although an arbitrary format can be specified in the character string, the operation when specifying the mistaken format will not be guaranteed. Please refer to the specifications of JavaScript, etc. to learn the meaning of the character in the format.

time

Specifies the format by the numerical value or character strings. One of the following numerical values can be specified. (default: 0)

- 0.
- 1.
- 2.
- 3.

The following 2 settings have the same meaning.

```
axf:field-format="0"
axf:field-format="'HH:MM'"
```

Although an arbitrary format can be specified in the character string, the operation when specifying the mistaken format will not be guaranteed. Please refer to the specifications of JavaScript, etc. to learn the meaning of the character in the format.

CAUTION: The specified format might be invalid depending on the version of Acrobat.

axf:field-button-layout

Specifies the positioning between the caption and icon displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]

Value: caption | icon | caption-below-icon | caption-above-icon | icon-caption | caption-icon | caption-over-icon
Initial: caption
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

caption

Only a caption is displayed on the button. An icon is not displayed.

icon

Only an icon is displayed on the button. A caption is not displayed.

caption-below-icon

A caption is displayed under the icon.

caption-above-icon

A caption is displayed on top of the icon.

icon-caption

A caption is displayed on the right side of the icon.

caption-icon

A caption is displayed on the left side of the icon.

caption-over-icon

A caption is displayed on the icon in piles.

axf:field-button-face

Specifies the caption displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-button-icon

Specifies the icon displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-button-face-down

Specifies the caption displayed in the push button field. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-button-icon-down

Specifies the icon displayed when pressing the push button. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-button-face-rollover

Specifies the caption displayed when rolling over the push button. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-button-icon-rollover

Specifies the icon displayed when rolling over the push button. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-checked

Specifies the initial state of the check box and the radio button. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The initial state is unchecked.

true

The initial state is checked.

axf:field-checked-style

Specifies the style of the check box and the radio button. [no-LT]

Value: checkmark | circle | square | cross | star
Initial: checkmark
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:field-top-index

Specifies the first selected item in the list box, combo box. [no-LT]

Value: <number>
Initial: 1
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The specified value indicates what number of [<axf:form-field-option>](#) it is. The beginning number is 1. When less than 1 is specified or the specified number exceeds the number of elements contained, the value is regarded as 1.

axf:field-multiple

Specifies whether multiple items can be chosen in the list box. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

Multiple items cannot be chosen.

true

Multiple items can be chosen.

axf:field-editable

Specifies whether the value can be edited with the combo box. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form-field
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The value cannot be edited.

true

The value can be edited.

axf:field-submit-method

Specifies the way to send the information when submitting a form field. [no-LT]

Value: get | post

Initial: get
Applies to: axf:form
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

get

Sends out a form as GET request.

post

Sends out a form as POST request.

axf:field-submit-coordinates

Specifies whether to send out the coordinates of the mouse when submitting a form field. [no-LT]

Value: false | true
Initial: false
Applies to: axf:form
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

Does not send out the coordinates.

true

Sends out the coordinates.

Form Fields

These fields can be added to your forms:

- [Text field](#)
 - one line text
 - multi line text
- [Button field](#)
 - [Push Button field](#)
 - [Checkbox field](#)
 - [Radio Button field](#)
- [Select field](#)
 - [Listbox field](#)
 - [Combobox field](#)

These are all expressed by the `<axf:form-field>` extension element. `<axf:form-field>` is an inline element. Although many common extension properties can be specified to `<axf:form-field>`, the effective property differs depending on the field type. The size of the field can be specified with the width and the height properties. When omitted, a suitable size will be applied. Below shows the example of the setting for each form field.

Text field

Text field can be specified by `field-type="text"`. The contents are empty. Whether it is a single line or not depends on the setting of `field-multiline`.

```
<axf:form-field
    field-type="text"
    field-default-text="TEXT"
    field-multiline="false"
    field-scroll="false"
    field-password="true"
    field maxlen="100"
/>
```

The contents of `field-default-text` are not displayed in GUI.

Push Button field

Push Button field can be specified by field-type="button". The contents are empty. The Push button is usually an object used to perform an action.

```
<axf:form-field
    field-type="button"
    field-button-layout="caption"
    field-button-face="TEXT"
    field-button-icon="URI"
    field-button-face-down="DOWN"
    field-button-icon-down="URI"
    field-button-face-rollover="OVER"
    field-button-icon-rollover="URI"
/>
```

The contents of field-button-face are not displayed in GUI.

Checkbox field

Checkbox field can be specified by field-type="checkbox". The contents are empty.

```
<axf:form-field
    field-type="checkbox"
    field-checked="true"
    field-checked-style="checkmark"
/>
```

The status of field-checked="true" are not displayed in GUI.

Radio Button field

Radio Button field can be specified by field-type="radio". The contents are empty.

```
<axf:form-field
    field-type="radio"
    field-checked="true"
    field-checked-style="checkmark"
    field-name="Card"
    field-value="MasterCard"
/>
```

Radio buttons are usually arranged in groups of two or more. The group is identified as a radio button with the same field-name. Users can select only one of the radio buttons. Even if checked="true" is set multiply, only one button in a group is checked.

The status of field-checked="true" is not displayed in GUI.

Listbox field

Listbox field can be specified by field-type="listbox". <axf:form-field-option> is required for the contents. It should not be empty. <axf:form-field-option> expresses the contents of the list and these are lined up in the appearance order in the list. Neither the value of field-value nor the content text in <axf:form-field-option> should be empty or white-space characters.

```
<axf:form-field
    field-type="listbox"
    field-top-index="1"
    field-multiple="true"
>
<axf:form-field-option field-value="M">MasterCard</axf:form-field-option>
<axf:form-field-option field-value="V">Visa</axf:form-field-option>
<axf:form-field-option field-value="A">AMEX</axf:form-field-option>
</axf:form-field>
```

The contents of the list box are not displayed in GUI.

Combobox field

Combobox field can be specified by field-type="combobox". <axf:form-field-option> is required for the contents. The contents should not be empty. <axf:form-field-option> is the same as that of the list box.

```

<axf:form-field
    field-type="combobox"
    field-top-index="1"
    field-editable="true"
>
    <axf:form-field-option field-value="M">MasterCard</axf:form-field-option>
    <axf:form-field-option field-value="V">Visa</axf:form-field-option>
    <axf:form-field-option field-value="A">AMEX</axf:form-field-option>
</axf:form-field>

```

The contents of the combo box are not displayed in GUI.

Form Actions

Form actions are realized by specifying the event to be triggered and the action corresponding to the event to each field. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the action can be specified to the field which is included in `<axf:form>`. The contents of `<axf:form>` are arbitrary and generate a block area. Usually, `<axf:form-field>` is included in `<axf:form>`. The action is generated only by pushing the bottom. The action has the following three types.

- Reset
- Submit
- Link

`axf:action-type` is extended for Form actions.

Reset

Reset initializes the value of all the fields included in `<axf:form>` to their initial state. Specify `axf:action-type="reset"` to the button to reset.

```

<axf:form>
    <axf:form-field field-type="button" action-type="reset" .../>
    <axf:form-field field-type="text" default-text="XXX" .../>
    ...
</axf:form>

```

Submit

Submit sends out the information by using HTTP. The contents of each field are sent out as GET or the POST request of HTTP. That is, the information is submitted using the same HTTP method of HTML.

```

<axf:form
    external-destination="URI"
    field-submit-method="post"
    field-submit-coordinates="false"
>
    <axf:form-field field-type="button" action-type="submit" .../>
    <axf:form-field field-type="text" default-text="YYY" .../>
    ...
</axf:form>

```

Link

Link cannot be specified to `<axf:form>` but directly specified to the Button field. The method is the same as that of `<fo:basic-link>`. The internal link can be specified as follows. Nothing is specified to action-type.

```
<axf:form-field field-type="button" internal-destination="URI" .../>
```

The internal link can be specified as follows. You can specify any one of goto, launch or uri to action-type.

```
<axf:form-field field-type="button" external-destination="URI"
    action-type="goto" .../>
```

Layer in PDF Output

Layers can be specified to PDF with **AH Formatter V6.2**. Layer settings are effective only with PDF 1.5 or later. These features are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:layer-settings / CSS (-ah-)layer-settings

Defines layers. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: none | <layer-setting> [, <layer-setting>]*
Initial: none
Applies to: root element
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

No definition.

<layer-setting>

<layer-setting> has the following syntax:

```
<layer-setting> = <layer-name> [on | off]? [ view [on | off] || print [on | off] || export [on | off] || locked || lang
<string> prefered? ]?
<layer-name> = <string>
```

Multiple layers can be defined by comma-separated items. <layer-name>, the name which identifies a layer is indispensable with the definition of the layer. Others are ommissible. on|off specify the default state of a layer. When omitted, it is considered as on. It is also possible to specify the default state of on/off for every feature of view, print, and export. When locked is specified the layer will be locked. lang specifies the language.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:layer / CSS (-ah-)layer

Specifies to which layer the area is arranged. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: none | <layer-name>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

The area is arranged to no layer.

<layer-name>

The area is arranged to the layer with the name specified by <layer-settings>.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Extension for European Rule

AH Formatter V6.2 provides the extension for adjusting the amount of space before and after the punctuation in European Typography. Although these features cannot be used as a style in CSS, the setting of <space-after-punctuation> etc. in [Option Setting File](#) is effective.

<axf:space-after-punctuation>

Specifies the amount of space after the punctuation.

<axf:space-before-punctuation>

Specifies the amount of space before the punctuation.

<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation>

Specifies the amount of space between the digit and the punctuation.

<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit>

Specifies the amount of space between the punctuation and the digit.

These extension elements are all empty element and can be put on the right under <fo:declarations>. The area is not generated. The following properties can be specified.

language

Specifies the language code (RFC3066). It is not possible to omit it.

Value: <language>
Initial: N/A
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

space

Specifies the amount of space. Specification is invalid when 0 or less.

Value: <number> | <length> | <percentage> | figure | punctuation | thin | hair
Initial: N/A
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

figure

Indicates the same amount as U+2007.

punctuation

Indicates the same amount as U+2008.

thin

Indicates the same amount as U+2009.

hair

Indicates the same amount as U+200A.

code

Specifies the code point to be applied.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

language and space are applied to all the specified code points.

For instance, the following would be specified to format French.

```
<axf:space-before-punctuation code="?" space="1 div 3" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-before-punctuation code="!" space="1 div 3" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-before-punctuation code=";" space="1 div 3" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-before-punctuation code=":" space="1 div 4" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-before-punctuation code="&#xBB;" space="1 div 4" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-after-punctuation code="&#xAB;" space="1 div 4" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit code="+" space="thin" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit code="&#x2212;" space="thin" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit code="&#xB1;" space="thin" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation code="%" space="thin" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation code="&#x2103;" space="thin" language="fr"/>
<axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation code="&#x2109;" space="thin" language="fr"/>
```

These settings for European Typography can also be specified by the [Option Setting File](#). The setting in FO overwrites it.

Appending a Font

This element is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2**.

<axf:font-face> / CSS @font-face

Common Usage:

Specifies an additional font. This element does not generate area. These functions are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**. [no-LT]

Areas:

None.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:font-face EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST axf:font-face src          CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST axf:font-face font-family CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST axf:font-face font-style   (%font-style;) "normal">
<!ATTLIST axf:font-face font-weight  (%font-weight;) "normal">
```

The <axf:font-face> element can be placed directly under <fo:declarations>.

Contents:

EMPTY

Examples:

```
<fo:declarations>
  <axf:font-face src="url(http://www.hixie.ch/resources/fonts/AHEM____.TTF)"
                  font-family="AHEM"/>
</fo:declarations>
```

A font specified by <axf:font-face> / @font-face is always embedded. A font with embedding prohibition information cannot be specified.

The following properties can be specified to <axf:font-face> / @font-face.

src

Specifies the font resource.

<i>Value:</i>	[<uri> [format(<string>)]? <font-face-name>]#
<i>Initial:</i>	N/A
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

URI can be specified to <uri> with the file name of the font, or the url() function. The type of fonts can be specified by the format() function. When omitted, it will be recognized by the extension of the font resource. Available types are as follows:

woff

WOFF (Web Open Font Format)

truetype

TrueType

opentype

OpenType

<axf:font-face> can be used as follows;

```
<fo:declarations>
  <axf:font-face
    src="url(woff/MyPrivate.woff) format(woff)"
    font-family="MyWOFF"
  />
</fo:declarations>
...
<fo:block font-family="MyWOFF">
...

```

When using the already installed font, specify the installed font name with the local() function.

```
<fo:declarations>
<axf:font-face
  src="local(Arial)"
  ...
```

font-family

Specifies the font family.

Value: <string>
Initial: N/A
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

font-style

Specifies the font style.

Value: normal | italic
Initial: normal
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

font-weight

Specifies the font weight.

Value: normal | bold | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900
Initial: normal
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Appending Option Setting Information

AH Formatter V6.2 can specify the additional option setting information used inside the document. These features are not available in CSS.

<axf:formatter-config>

Common Usage:

Specifies additional option setting information. This element doesn't generate the area tree. These features are not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite. [no-LT]

Areas:

None.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:formatter-config (%axs-settings;)*>
<!ATTLIST axf:formatter-config src CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

The axf:formatter-config extension element can be set as many as you want right under fo:declarations.

The src property can optionally specify the external Option Setting File. It's an additional setting to the original settings and effective only in this FO. It becomes base-uri for the relative path. A part of the element which is the same as %axs-settings under the specified file is evaluated.

Contents:

%axs-settings; is an element which belongs to the name space <http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Settings>. The properties in the **Option Setting File** are included in the name space, however currently only the following elements can be described. The other elements will be disregarded.

- <pdf-settings>
- <text-settings>
- <svg-settings>
- <inx-settings>
- <mif-settings>

- <ps-settings>

Examples:

```
<fo:declarations>
<axf:formatter-config src="add-settings.xml"
  xmlns:axs="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Settings">
  <axs:pdf-settings pdf-version="PDF1.6" tagged-pdf="true"/>
</axf:formatter-config>
</fo:declarations>
```

In this example, an additional option setting file, add-settings.xml is specified, and then PDF setting is added.

Remarks

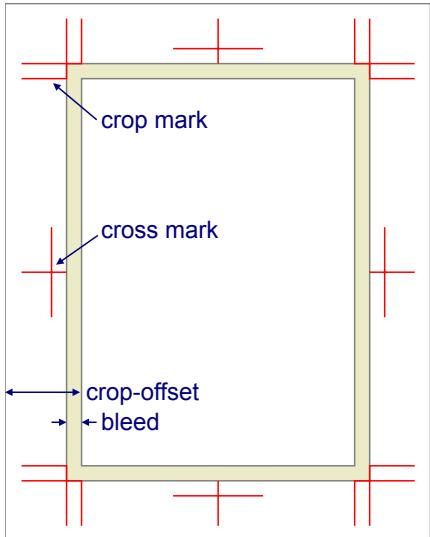
Usually, the additional setting by <axf:formatter-config> never influences the formatting process of the following document. However, when the following settings are done by [GUI](#), the additional settings will be reflected on the default settings, then reflected on the formatting of the following document.

- Format Option Setting
- PDF Option Setting
- Other Settings
- Import Option Setting
- Export Option Setting

The addition option setting information by <axf:formatter-config> is not reflected in the area tree.

Printer Marks

AH Formatter V6.2 can draw printer marks in PDF etc. Since printer marks are drawn outside of the actual page size (trim size) specified with the page-width and page-height properties, they have no effect on the contents of the document. This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.



axf:crop-offset / CSS -ah-crop-offset
axf:crop-offset-top / CSS -ah-crop-offset-top
axf:crop-offset-bottom / CSS -ah-crop-offset-bottom
axf:crop-offset-left / CSS -ah-crop-offset-left
axf:crop-offset-right / CSS -ah-crop-offset-right

Specifies the distance from the physical end to the trim size of the output medium. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: <length>
Initial: Opt
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The trim size is specified by the page-width and page-height properties (CSS size property). crop-offset is for specifying how much the space is taken outside the trim size. In order to specify the same values vertically and horizontally, axf:crop-offset can

be used. In order to specify individual values, axf:crop-offset-top, axf:crop-offset-bottom, axf:crop-offset-left, and axf:crop-offset-right can be used. When axf:crop-offset and others are specified simultaneously, individual axf:crop-offset-* properties take priority.

These properties are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:crop-area-visibility / CSS -ah-crop-area-visibility

Specifies whether to display the area that is extended beyond the finished page size. [no-LT]

Value: hidden | visible
Initial: hidden
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies whether the area that overflows on the margin specified with [axf:crop-offset](#) is clipped with the finished page size or the extended area is displayed.

These properties are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:bleed / CSS (-ah-)bleed **axf:bleed-top / CSS -ah-bleed-top** **axf:bleed-bottom / CSS -ah-bleed-bottom** **axf:bleed-left / CSS -ah-bleed-left** **axf:bleed-right / CSS -ah-bleed-right**

Specifies the width of the bleed region for cutting off. [[CSS3-GCPM](#)] Page marks and bleed area [no-LT]

Value: <length>
Initial: 0pt
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The region of the bleed is taken outside the trim size. In order to specify the same values vertically and horizontally, axf:bleed can be used. In order to specify individual values, axf:bleed-top, axf:bleed-bottom, axf:bleed-left, and axf:bleed-right can be used. When axf:bleed and others are specified simultaneously, individual axf:bleed-* properties take priority.

These properties are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks / CSS (-ah-)marks

Specifies the Printing marks, such as a crop mark. Specifies the action of external link. [[CSS3-GCPM](#)] Page marks and bleed area [no-LT]

Value: [crop || cross || <uri-specification> [<uri-specification>]*] | none
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

crop

Outputs crop marks.

cross

Outputs cross marks, registration marks.

<uri-specification>

Original printer marks, color bars, etc. can be outputted by specifying images, such as SVG. 2 or more URIs can be specified.

Crop marks becomes what unites the inner printer marks (crop marks) and the outside printer marks (bleed marks) when there is specification of [axf:bleed](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks-line-color / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-color

Specifies the line color of printer marks. [no-LT]

Value: <color> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When the value is auto, the color is regarded as the registration color.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks-line-length / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-length

Specifies the line length of printer marks. [no-LT]

Value: <length> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When the value is auto, the length depends on the system setting. The default length of a printer mark is 10mm, it can be adjusted in the [Option Setting File](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks-line-width / CSS -ah-printer-marks-line-width

Specifies the line width of printer marks. [no-LT]

Value: <length> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When the value is auto, the width depends on the system setting. The default width of a printer mark is 0.24pt, it can be adjusted in the [Option Setting File](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks-zero-margin / CSS -ah-printer-marks-zero-margin

Specifies the margin between the page and the printer marks when [bleed](#) is 0. [no-LT]

Value: <length> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When the value is auto, the margin depends on the system setting. The default margin is 3mm, it can be adjusted in the [Option Setting File](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-marks-spine-width / CSS -ah-printer-marks-spine-width

Specifies the spine width of the facing page. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: <length>
Initial: 0pt
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master / CSS @page
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When a value greater than 0pt is specified, the printing image is assumed to be constructed as facing pages, the center mark of the spine will be outputted as a spine-width printer mark.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Printing Control

axf:printer-bin-selection / CSS -ah-printer-bin-selection

Selects the printer tray. [no-LT]

Value: <string> | <integer>

Initial: Depends on the environment

Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Effective only with the Windows version and functions when outputting to a printer. Whether it is effective also depends on a printer. What can be specified by the character string is the tray name which comes out in each printer setting dialog. This is the tray name acquired from a printer driver. The specified name which does not match to the tray name acquired from a printer driver is invalid. The specified integer needs to match to the tray number acquired from a printer driver.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:printer-duplex / CSS -ah-printer-duplex

Specifies to print in duplex mode. [no-LT]

Value: <integer>

Initial: Depends on the environment

Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Effective only with the Windows version and functions when outputting to a printer. Whether it is effective also depends on a printer. Specify the value which is specified by the printer driver. Most printers support following integer values.

1. Simplex Printing.
2. Duplex Printing. Flip on Long Edge.
3. Duplex Printing. Flip on Short Edge.

See also [SeparatePrinterDuplexJob](#) in the Option Setting File. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:overprint / CSS -ah-overprint

Specifies the overprint. [V6.2MR2] [no-LT]

Value: auto | <overprint>#

Initial: auto

Applies to: all formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

<overprint> = <opcolor> [[stroke || paint || [full | nonzero]] | none]?

<opcolor> = <color> | k100 | separation | all

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The setting of the [overprint](#) in the Option Setting File is adopted. If you specify overprint="k100" in the Option Setting File, even if nothing is specified in FO, black overprinting will be done on all pages.

<color>

Specifies a color you want to apply the overprint. A color with alpha value cannot be specified.

k100

Applies the overprint to rgb-icc(#CMYK,0,0,0,1).

separation

Applies the overprint to the separation color shown rgb-icc (#Separation). The registration color is not included.

all

Applies the overprint to all colors except for a color with alpha value.

stroke

Applies the overprint for the line stroke.

paint

Applies the overprint for the paint.

full**nonzero**

Specifies the operation in case the color ingredient is 0 when applying the overprint. When full is specified, the color ingredient is set to 0, when nonzero is specified, the color ingredient is not changed. (It is considered as no color). This setting is effective only with CMYK.

none

The overprint is not applied.

If you specify only the color as follows;

```
axf:overprint=""
```

it is considered as follows;

```
axf:overprint=" stroke paint nonzero"
```

In addition, when neither stroke nor paint is specified, it is considered that stroke and paint are specified. Please specify none to remove them from the overprint.

```
axf:overprint="k100, rgb-icc(#CMYK,0,0,0,1) stroke full, all paint"
```

As specified above, when a certain color can be interpreted as multiple settings, the settings will be investigated in the following order and the first matched setting will be adopted.

1. <color>
2. k100
3. separation
4. all

The effect of the overprint varies by the actual printing environment, in relation between the background color and the foreground color with overprint specified. The effect of the typical overprint by the color space is shown below. When `rgb-conversion="cmyk"` is specified in the Option Setting File, RGB serves as CMYK.

		Foreground (overprint is specified)			
		CMYK	Separation	RGB	Grayscale
Background	CMYK	Yes	Yes	No	No
	Separation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	RGB	Yes	Yes	No	No
	Grayscale	No	Yes	No	No

See also 4.5.6 Overprint Control in "PDF Reference" for more details.

CAUTION: The overprint is effective only with the PDF output. It is invalid when printing to paper directly. Also it is not applied to shading and the form field.

CAUTION: The setting does not affect on the embedded PDF. Please create PDF by specifying the overprint before embedding it.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Page Control Extensions

axf:repeat-page-sequence-master

The axf:repeat-page-sequence-master specifies the repetition of the page sequence. [no-LT]

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:page-sequence-master

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

When the value is true, if the page output reaches in the end of fo:page-sequence-master and the page which should still be outputted remains, page output repeats from the start of fo:page-sequence-master.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:reverse-page

Outputs pages in reverse order. [no-LT]

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:page-sequence

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Outputs pages in reverse order.

false

Outputs pages in order.

Specifies whether to output pages within fo:page-sequence in reverse order. This setting does not cover all the output destinations. Effective only with [PDF output](#). [PDF output in multi separate volume](#) is not available.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Block Extensions

axf:suppress-if-first-on-page / CSS -ah-suppress-if-first-on-page

axf:suppress-if-first-on-page specifies whether to suppress the block at the beginning of a page. [no-LT]

Value: false | true

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:block, fo:block-container

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

Does nothing.

true

Suppresses a block when it comes at the beginning of a page. Since it is actually not deleted but exists without display as a block of size zero, it's effective to refer to ID, etc.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Transformation

axf:transform / CSS (-ah-)transform

Specifies the block transformation. [\[CSS3-Transforms\]](#) [The 'transform' Property](#) [no-LT]

Value: none | <transform-function> [<transform-function>]*

Initial: none

Applies to: transformable objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Does not transform the block.

<transform-function>

Performs the specified transformation. The following transformations can be specified.

- matrix(<number>, <number>, <number>, <number>, <number>, <number>)
- translate(<translation-value>[, <translation-value>])
- translateX(<translation-value>)
- translateY(<translation-value>)
- scale(<number>[, <number>])
- scaleX(<number>)
- scaleY(<number>)
- rotate(<angle>)
- skew(<angle>[, <angle>])
- skewX(<angle>)
- skewY(<angle>)

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:transform-origin / CSS (-ah-)transform-origin

Specifies the origin of the block transformation. [\[CSS3-Transforms\]](#) [The ‘transform-origin’ Property](#) no-LT

Value: [<percentage> | <length> | left | center | right | top | bottom] | [[<percentage> | <length> | left | center | right]
&& [<percentage> | <length> | top | center | bottom]]
Initial: center center
Applies to: transformable objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of the bounding box

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Baseline Grid

axf:baseline-grid / CSS -ah-baseline-grid

Sets or clears the baseline grid. V6.2 no-LT

Value: normal | none | root | new
Initial: normal
Applies to: block-level formatting objects, fo:flow and fo:static-content / block containers
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Neither sets nor clears the baseline grid.

none

Clears the baseline grid and the content will not align with a baseline grid.

new

Sets a new baseline grid. The new baseline grid is established by using the font and the line-height settings of this element.

root

Sets the baseline grid defined by the root element. The root baseline grid is defined by using the font and the line-height settings of the root element.

Inside the area line that a baseline grid is set, the lines are aligned with baselines on the baseline grid. Half-leading is not added before the first line and after the last line so that the em-box edges are aligned with the before and after edges of the content box.

The baseline grid is not available in the area with display-align other than auto.

An HTML+CSS example with baseline grids:

```

:root {
    font-size: 10pt;
    line-height: 18pt;
    font-family: "Yu Mincho", serif;
}

@page {
    size: 128mm 188mm;
    margin: auto;
    width: 28rem;
    height: calc(24rlh - (1rlh - 1rem));
}

body {
    -ah-baseline-grid: root;
}

h1 {
    -ah-baseline-grid: new;
    -ah-baseline-block-snap: center;
    font-size: 16pt;
    line-height: 20pt;
    margin-top: 16pt;
    margin-bottom: 16pt;
}

figure {
    -ah-baseline-grid: none;
    -ah-baseline-block-snap: auto;
}

```

An XSL-FO example with baseline grids:

```

<fo:root xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
          xmlns:axf="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions"
          font-size="10pt" line-height="18pt" font-family="Yu Mincho, serif">
    ...
    <fo:page-sequence master-reference="master">
        <fo:flow flow-name="xsl-region-body" axf:baseline-grid="root">
            <fo:block axf:baseline-grid="new" axf:baseline-block-snap="center"
                      font-size="16pt" line-height="20pt" space-before="16pt" space-after="16pt">
                Heading ...
            </fo:block>
            <fo:block>The quick brown fox jumps....</fo:block>
            ...
            <fo:block axf:baseline-grid="none" axf:baseline-block-snap="auto">
                Figure ...
            </fo:block>
            ...
        </fo:flow>
    </fo:page-sequence>
</fo:root>

```

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:baseline-block-snap / CSS -ah-baseline-block-snap

Specifies how to align blocks on the baseline grid. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: none | [auto | before | after | center] || [border-box | margin-box]

Initial: auto border-box

Applies to: block-level elements with 'baseline-grid: new' or 'baseline-grid: none'

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

The block is not aligned with the baseline grid.

auto

Same as 'before' on top of column, same as 'after' at bottom of column, otherwise 'center'.

before

The before edge of the block is aligned with a text-before-edge baseline on the baseline grid.

after

The after edge of the block is aligned with a text-after-edge baseline on the baseline grid.

center

The block is centered between a text-before-edge and a text-after-edge baselines on the baseline grid.

border-box

The border edge is used to align the block on the baseline grid.

margin-box

The margin edge is used to align the block on the baseline grid.

This property specifies how to align blocks other than normal line boxes, such as headings, figures and tables, on the baseline grid.

See [baseline-grid](#) for usage.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Line Breaking

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to control the line-breaking. Usually, the line-breaking complies with [UAX#14: Line Breaking Properties](#). Also refer to [Line Breaking](#) in [Technical Notes](#).

axf:line-break / CSS (-ah-)line-break

The axf:line-break specifies the method of line breaking. [\[CSS3-Text\] Breaking Rules for Punctuation: the 'line-break' property](#)

Value: normal | strict

Initial: normal

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Nonstarter Japanese characters (prolonged sound mark, small hiragana letters, small katakana letters, and iteration marks) defined in JIS X 4051:2004 are not treated as Nonstarter characters. Also, the properties of [axf:append-non-starter-characters](#), [axf:except-non-starter-characters](#), [axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters](#), [axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters](#) are disregarded.

strict

Nonstarter character is treated for Japanese. Also, the characters specified to the properties of [axf:append-non-starter-characters](#), [axf:except-non-starter-characters](#), [axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters](#), [axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters](#) are included.

The Nonstarter character in [LineBreak-5.0.0.txt](#) is as follows. [\[JIS\]](#) is classified into the Nonstarter character in JIS X 4051:2004.

U+17D6 KHMER SIGN CAMNUC PII KUUH	
U+203C DOUBLE EXCLAMATION MARK	!!
U+203D INTERROBANG	?
U+2047 DOUBLE QUESTION MARK	
U+2048 QUESTION EXCLAMATION MARK	
U+2049 EXCLAMATION QUESTION MARK	
U+3005 IDEOGRAPHIC ITERATION MARK	々 [JIS]
U+301C WAVE DASH	∽ [JIS]
U+303B VERTICAL IDEOGRAPHIC ITERATION MARK	
U+303C MASU MARK	
U+3041 HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL A	あ [JIS]
U+3043 HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL I	い [JIS]
U+3045 HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL U	う [JIS]

U+3047	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL E	え [JIS]
U+3049	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL O	お [JIS]
U+3063	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL TU	つ [JIS]
U+3083	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL YA	や [JIS]
U+3085	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL YU	ゆ [JIS]
U+3087	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL YO	よ [JIS]
U+308E	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL WA	わ [JIS]
U+3095	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL KA	[JIS]
U+3096	HIRAGANA LETTER SMALL KE	[JIS]
U+309B	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA VOICED SOUND MARK	`
U+309C	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA SEMI-VOICED SOUND MARK	◦
U+309D	HIRAGANA ITERATION MARK	ゞ [JIS]
U+309E	HIRAGANA VOICED ITERATION MARK	ゞ [JIS]
U+30A0	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA DOUBLE HYPHEN	
U+30A1	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL A	ア [JIS]
U+30A3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL I	イ [JIS]
U+30A5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL U	ウ [JIS]
U+30A7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL E	エ [JIS]
U+30A9	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL O	オ [JIS]
U+30C3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL TU	ツ [JIS]
U+30E3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YA	ヤ [JIS]
U+30E5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YU	ュ [JIS]
U+30E7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YO	ヨ [JIS]
U+30EE	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL WA	ワ [JIS]
U+30F5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KA	カ [JIS]
U+30F6	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KE	ケ [JIS]
U+30FB	KATAKANA MIDDLE DOT	・
U+30FC	KATAKANA-HIRAGANA PROLONGED SOUND MARK	— [JIS]
U+30FD	KATAKANA ITERATION MARK	ヾ [JIS]
U+30FE	KATAKANA VOICED ITERATION MARK	ヾ [JIS]
U+31F0	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL KU	[JIS]
U+31F1	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL SI	[JIS]
U+31F2	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL SU	[JIS]
U+31F3	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL TO	[JIS]
U+31F4	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL NU	[JIS]
U+31F5	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HA	[JIS]
U+31F6	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HI	[JIS]
U+31F7	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HU	[JIS]
U+31F8	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HE	[JIS]
U+31F9	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL HO	[JIS]
U+31FA	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL MU	[JIS]
U+31FB	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RA	[JIS]
U+31FC	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RI	[JIS]
U+31FD	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RU	[JIS]
U+31FE	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RE	[JIS]
U+31FF	KATAKANA LETTER SMALL RO	[JIS]
U+A015	YI SYLLABLE WU	
U+FE54	SMALL SEMICOLON	
U+FE55	SMALL COLON	
U+FF1A	FULLWIDTH COLON	:
U+FF1B	FULLWIDTH SEMICOLON	;
U+FF65	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA MIDDLE DOT	・
U+FF67	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL A	ア [JIS]
U+FF68	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL I	イ [JIS]
U+FF69	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL U	ウ [JIS]
U+FF6A	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL E	エ [JIS]
U+FF6B	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL O	オ [JIS]
U+FF6C	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YA	ヤ [JIS]
U+FF6D	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YU	ュ [JIS]
U+FF6E	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL YO	ヨ [JIS]
U+FF6F	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA LETTER SMALL TU	ツ [JIS]
U+FF70	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA-HIRAGANA PROLONGED SOUND MARK	— [JIS]
U+FF9E	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA VOICED SOUND MARK	◦
U+FF9F	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA SEMI-VOICED SOUND MARK	◦

axf:append-non-starter-characters / CSS -ah-append-non-starter-characters

Specifies the append-non-starter-characters in CJK.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When `axf:line-break="strict"` is specified, the characters included in <string> can be appended to the non-starter-characters. If the specified characters are also specified in `axf:except-non-starter-characters` as well in the same tag, the effect could be wrong. White space, closing parenthesis and punctuations, that are originally non-starter, are disregarded even though they are specified. The initial value of non-starter-characters can be set by `append-non-starter-characters` in the Option Setting File.

axf:except-non-starter-characters / CSS -ah-except-non-starter-characters

Specifies the except-non-starter-characters in CJK.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When `axf:line-break="strict"` is specified, the characters included in <string> can be eliminated from the non-starter-characters. If the specified characters are also specified to `axf:append-non-starter-characters` in the same tag as well, the effect is not guaranteed. White space, closing parenthesis and punctuations, that are originally non-starter, are disregarded even though they are specified. The initial value of non-starter-characters can be set by `append-non-starter-characters` in the Option Setting File.

axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters / CSS -ah-append-non-end-of-line-characters

Specifies the append-non-end-of-characters in CJK.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When `axf:line-break="strict"` is specified, the characters included in <string> can be appended to the non-end-of-line-characters. If the specified characters are also specified to `axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters` as well in the same tag, the effect could be wrong. White space, opening parenthesis and punctuations, that are originally non-end-of-line, are disregarded even though they are specified. The initial value of non-end-of-line-characters can be set by `append-non-end-of-line-characters` in the Option Setting File.

axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters / CSS -ah-except-non-end-of-line-characters

Specifies the except-non-end-of-characters in CJK.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence / CSS :root element
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

When `axf:line-break="strict"` is specified, the characters included in <string> can be eliminated from the non-end-of-line-characters. If the specified characters are also specified to `axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters` in the same tag as well, the effect is not guaranteed. White space, opening parenthesis and punctuations, that are originally non-end-of-line, are disregarded even though they are specified. The initial value of non-end-of-line-characters can be set by `append-non-end-of-line-characters` in the Option Setting File.

axf:word-break / CSS (-ah-)word-break

The `axf:word-break` specifies whether to enable line breaking even inside a word. [CSS3-Text] Breaking Rules for Letters: the 'word-break' property

Value: normal | break-all | keep-all
Initial: normal
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Follows a normal line breaking rule.

break-all

The line breaking is enabled between all the characters in the word. This is effective only with the following scripts.

- Latn
- Cyril
- Grek
- Zyyy

`axf:word-wrap="normal"` is disregarded.

keep-all

Does not break inside words. A word here indicates a character string which consists of the following category (General Category) of Unicode.

- Letter
- Mark
- Number

Whether to break lines on a boundary with characters other than these follows the rule of the standard line break. Moreover, `hyphenate="true"` is disregarded.

Within the word oriented upright by `axf:text-orientation="upright"`, it is always regarded as `axf:word-break="break-all"`.

axf:word-wrap / CSS (-ah-)word-wrap

Specifies whether to break word forcibly when line break cannot be performed. [CSS3-Text] Force Wrapping: the 'word-wrap' property

<i>Value:</i>	normal break-word
<i>Initial:</i>	break-word (XSL) / normal (CSS)
<i>Applies to:</i>	all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

The line is not broken forcibly. The text will overflow across the region.

break-word

The line is broken forcibly at an appropriate position.

axf:abbreviation-character-count / CSS -ah-abbreviation-character-count

Specifies the minimum number of characters considered to be an abbreviation.

<i>Value:</i>	auto <number>
<i>Initial:</i>	auto
<i>Applies to:</i>	fo:block
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The value specified by `abbreviation-character-count` in the Option Setting File is adopted.

<number>

Specifies the number of characters considered to be an abbreviation.

`axf:abbreviation-character-count` controls the line break of the abbreviation delimited by U+002F or /. In general, the line break occurs with km/h or w/o, etc. because the position right after / is the target for the line break and it's not desirable. In [UAX#14: Line Breaking Properties](#), it is written to avoid splitting in such cases. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, when the number of characters of the word right after / is less than or equal the specified number with `axf:abbreviation-character-count`, the word is considered as

the abbreviation and the line does not break. The same behavior is also applied to the hyphenation. Only when the string is one of the following scripts, it is considered as an abbreviation.

- Latin
- Cyril
- Greek
- Zyyy

The axf:abbreviation-character-count must be an integer number of 0 or more. 0 does not control over the abbreviation. In addition, when the line overflows without finding the line break position, the line break may forcibly occur right after /.

Extension for Hyphenations

AH Formatter V6.2 provides the extended features for hyphenations.

axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count / CSS -ah-hyphenation-minimum-character-count

The axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count specifies the minimum number of the character to hyphenate.

<i>Value:</i>	<number>
<i>Initial:</i>	1
<i>Applies to:</i>	fo:block, fo:character
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

The axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count must be an integer number of 1 or more.

axf:hyphenation-zone / CSS -ah-hyphenation-zone

axf:hyphenation-zone limits the range where a hyphenation is available.

<i>Value:</i>	none <length>
<i>Initial:</i>	none
<i>Applies to:</i>	fo:block
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Nothing is limited in hyphenation.

<length>

If the length from the end of a word to the end of line is less or equal to the specified value, the following word is not hyphenated.

It is invalid when 0 or less value is specified.

axf:hyphenate-hyphenated-word / CSS -ah-hyphenate-hyphenated-word

Specifies whether to hyphenate the already hyphenated word or not.

<i>Value:</i>	true false
<i>Initial:</i>	true
<i>Applies to:</i>	fo:block, fo:character
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Hyphenates a word.

false

Does not hyphenate a word. The line may break only at the hyphen position.

The followings are recognized as hyphens.

U+002D HYPHEN-MINUS
U+00AD SOFT HYPHEN

U+2010 HYPHEN
U+2011 NON-BREAKING HYPHEN

This setting is invalid when hyphenate="false" is specified.

CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-after

[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties

Value: <integer> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [hyphenation-push-character-count](#)

CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-before

[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties

Value: <integer> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [hyphenation-remain-character-count](#)

CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-character

[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties

Value: auto | <string>
Initial: auto
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [hyphenation-character](#)

CSS (-ah-)hyphenate-lines

[CSS3-GCPM] Hyphenate properties

Value: no-limit | <integer>
Initial: no-limit
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [hyphenation-ladder-count](#)

CSS (-ah-)hyphens

[CSS3-Text] Hyphenation Control: the 'hyphens' property

Value: none | manual | auto
Initial: manual
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [hyphenate](#)

<axf:hyphenation-info>

Common Usage:

Specifies additional hyphenation information. This element doesn't generate the area tree. This feature is not available in CSS. This feature is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Areas:

None.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:hyphenation-info (%axh-elements;)*>
<!ATTLIST axf:hyphenation-info language CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ATTLIST axf:hyphenation-info src      CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

The axf:hyphenation-info extension element can be set as many as you want right under fo:declarations.

The language property is indispensable to indicate which language this element is associated with. It is not available to do hyphenation if the specified language is originally not hyphenated. This setting is invalid for Thai.

The src property can optionally specify the exception dictionary. It's an additional setting to the original dictionary and effective only in this FO. There is no language dependency constraint for the file name unlike the original dictionary. It is a relative base-uri for the relative path. It's not a relative path to the **environment** **valueable** of the hyphenation dictionary. <exceptions> in the specified dictionary is evaluated. When multiple words of the same spelling are registered, the information on the last registered word becomes effective.

Contents:

%axs-settings; is an element which belongs to the name space <http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Hyphenations>. The elements in the **Hyphenation Exception Dictionary** are included in the name space, however currently only <exceptions> (and its child element, <hyphen>) can be described.

Examples:

```
<fo:declarations>
  <axf:hyphenation-info language="eng" src="en-add.xml"
    xmlns:axh="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Hyphenations">
    <axh:exceptions>
      abc-defg
    </axh:exceptions>
  </axf:hyphenation-info>
</fo:declarations>
```

In this example, an additional exception dictionary, en-add.xml is specified for English language, and then the exception hyphenation is specified for the word spelled abcdefg.

In the example above, do not use the following setting. (<hyphen/> is disregarded.)

abc<hyphen/>defg

CAUTION:

Instead, please make sure to specify

abc<axh:hyphen/>defg

Output Glyph by SOFT HYPHEN

Generally SOFT HYPHEN (U+00AD) is displayed only when the line breaks and is not displayed when the line does not break. However in this processing, it is often the case that the glyph assigned to U+00AD may not be printed when the fonts such as pictographic characters are used.

AH Formatter V6.2 implements the extension property axf:soft-hyphen-treatment which makes it possible to eliminate this problem.

```
<fo:block axf:soft-hyphen-treatment="preserve" font-family="Wingdings">abc&#xAD;xyz
```

axf:soft-hyphen-treatment / CSS -ah-soft-hyphen-treatment

Value: auto | preserve

Initial: auto

Applies to: all formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

SOFT HYPHEN is deleted except when needed for line breaking. (normal)

preserve

SOFT HYPHEN is not deleted and the target glyph is output.

Trimming and Hanging

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to trim and to hang.

axf:punctuation-trim / CSS (-ah-)punctuation-trim

Specifies whether to treat full width punctuations in Japanese. [CSS3-Text] Fullwidth Punctuation Kerning: the 'punctuation-trim' property

Value: none | [start | start-except-first] || [end | allow-end | end-except-fullstop] || adjacent] | all | <string> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Punctuation characters are not trimmed.

start

Punctuation characters (open parenthesis etc.) at start of line are trimmed.

start-except-first

Same as start except for a start line of a paragraph or a line right after the forced line break.

end

When text-align="right" or text-align="justify" (or text-align-last="justify") is specified and full width punctuation marks (closing parenthesis etc.) come to the end of the sentence, the character is treated as half width forcibly.

allow-end

When text-align="right" or text-align="justify" (or text-align-last="justify") is specified and full width punctuation marks (closing parenthesis etc.) come to the end of the sentence, characters are treated as full width if text fits into one line, characters are treated as half width if text does not fit into one line.

end-except-fullstop

Behaves as the same as the end value except for the following two characters.

U+3002 IDEOGRAPHIC FULL STOP 。
 U+FF0E FULLWIDTH FULL STOP 。

adjacent

The space between a full width punctuation and a full width character in Japanese is trimmed.

- Between full width close parenthesis and full width open parenthesis.
- Between full width close parenthesis and full width close parenthesis.
- Between full width close parenthesis and full width middle dots.
- Between full width close parenthesis and full width space.
- Between full width close parenthesis and full width non punctuation characters.
- Between full width open parenthesis and full width open parenthesis.
- Between full width middle dots and full width open parenthesis.
- Between full width space and full width open parenthesis.
- Between full width non punctuation character and full width open parenthesis.

Full width punctuation characters are treated the same as full width close parenthesis. The adjacent value is equivalent to axf:kerning-mode="contextual" with **XSL Formatter V4**.

all

Trim all parentheses, middle dots, and punctuations of full width and treat them as half width.

<string>

Behave the same as "all", but only the character included in the character strings specified here is treated as a half width. Other than parentheses, middle dots, and punctuations of full width are disregarded.

auto

Dependent on the system setting. It is regarded as "none" or "start end adjacent" by [punctuation-trim](#) in the Option Setting File.

Full width punctuation open parenthesis processed by axf:punctuation-trim are:

U+2018	LEFT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK	'
U+201C	LEFT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK	"
U+3008	LEFT ANGLE BRACKET	<
U+300A	LEFT DOUBLE ANGLE BRACKET	«
U+300C	LEFT CORNER BRACKET	「
U+300E	LEFT WHITE CORNER BRACKET	『
U+3010	LEFT BLACK LENTICULAR BRACKET	〔
U+3014	LEFT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET	〘
U+3016	LEFT WHITE LENTICULAR BRACKET	〘
U+3018	LEFT WHITE TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET	〙
U+301A	LEFT WHITE SQUARE BRACKET	〘
U+301D	REVERSED DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK	”
U+FF08	FULLWIDTH LEFT PARENTHESIS	(
U+FF3B	FULLWIDTH LEFT SQUARE BRACKET	[
U+FF5B	FULLWIDTH LEFT CURLY BRACKET	{
U+FF5F	FULLWIDTH LEFT WHITE PARENTHESIS	

Full width punctuation close parenthesis processed by axf:punctuation-trim are:

U+2019	RIGHT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK	,
U+201D	RIGHT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK	”
U+3009	RIGHT ANGLE BRACKET	>
U+300B	RIGHT DOUBLE ANGLE BRACKET	»
U+300D	RIGHT CORNER BRACKET	」
U+300F	RIGHT WHITE CORNER BRACKET	』
U+3011	RIGHT BLACK LENTICULAR BRACKET	】
U+3015	RIGHT TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET	〙
U+3017	RIGHT WHITE LENTICULAR BRACKET	〙
U+3019	RIGHT WHITE TORTOISE SHELL BRACKET	〙
U+301B	RIGHT WHITE SQUARE BRACKET	〙
U+301E	DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK	”
U+301F	LOW DOUBLE PRIME QUOTATION MARK	“
U+FF09	FULLWIDTH RIGHT PARENTHESIS)
U+FF3D	FULLWIDTH RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET]
U+FF5D	FULLWIDTH RIGHT CURLY BRACKET	}
U+FF60	FULLWIDTH RIGHT WHITE PARENTHESIS	

Full width punctuations processed by axf:punctuation-trim are:

U+3001	IDEOGRAPHIC COMMA	,
U+3002	IDEOGRAPHIC FULL STOP	。
U+FF0C	FULLWIDTH COMMA	,
U+FF0E	FULLWIDTH FULL STOP	:

Full width middle dots processed by axf:punctuation-trim are:

U+30FB	KATAKANA MIDDLE DOT	・
U+FF1A	FULLWIDTH COLON	:
U+FF1B	FULLWIDTH SEMICOLON	;

CAUTION: To make the behavior of axf:punctuation-trim="both" in [XSL Formatter V4](#) the same, please specify axf:punctuation-trim="start end" or axf:punctuation-trim="start allow-end" in [AH Formatter V6.2](#). In addition, if you use this extension together with [axf:kerning-mode="contextual"](#), please specify axf:punctuation-trim="start end adjacent" etc. with [AH Formatter V6.2](#).

axf:text-justify-trim / CSS (-ah-)text-justify-trim

Specifies the way to trim in text justification. [\[CSS3-Text\]](#) Additional compression: The 'text-justify-trim' property

Value: none | [punctuation || punctuation-except-fullstop || punctuation-except-middledot || [kana | ideograph] || inter-word] | auto
Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Do not trim Japanese text.

punctuation

Trim text with parentheses, middle dots, and punctuations of full width in Japanese.

punctuation-except-fullstop

Behaves as the same as the punctuation value except for the following two characters.

U+3002 IDEOGRAPHIC FULL STOP 。

U+FF0E FULLWIDTH FULL STOP .

punctuation-except-middledot

Behaves as the same as the punctuation value except for the following middle dots.

U+30FB KATAKANA MIDDLE DOT ·

U+FF1A FULLWIDTH COLON :

U+FF1B FULLWIDTH SEMICOLON ;

kana

Trim Hiragana and Katakana a bit.

ideograph

Trim spaces between Kanji or Kana.

inter-word

Trim spaces between Western words.

auto

Dependent on the system setting. This is the value specified by [punctuation-trim](#) and [text-justify-mode](#) in the Option Setting File. However, when [axf:avoid-widow-words](#) is "true", it is considered as "Ideograph inter-word" specified.

Trim the spaces between characters as specified so that text fits into a line. When [axf:punctuation-trim="all"](#) is specified, there may be no more space to trim.

axf:kerning-mode / CSS -ah-kerning-mode

The axf:kerning-mode specifies whether to process the kerning.

Value: none | pair | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

The kerning is not processed.

pair

The pair kerning for Western characters is processed.

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

You can specify whether pair kerning for European languages is performed or not by [pair-kerning](#) in the Option Setting File. This can also be set in the [Option Setting dialog](#) in GUI.

CAUTION: axf:kerning-mode="contextual" with **XSL Formatter V4** was abolished with **AH Formatter V6.2**. Please use [axf:punctuation-trim="adjacent"](#) instead.

axf:kerning-mode does not work when letter-spacing is specified.

axf:punctuation-spacing / CSS -ah-punctuation-spacing

The axf:punctuation-spacing specifies the trimming spacing between a full width punctuation and a full width character in Japanese.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

The initial value of this space can be set by [punctuation-spacing](#) in the Option Setting File.

Values have the following meanings.

<length>

Specifies the amount of the trimming space with an absolute value.

<percentage>

It's a relative setting to the font size when actually applied.

auto

Dependent on the system setting. This is the value specified by [punctuation-spacing](#) in the Option Setting File.

This space is used for the following space amount specified by `axf:punctuation-trim="adjacent"`.

- Between full width close parenthesis and full width open parenthesis.
- Between full width close parenthesis and full width non punctuation characters.
- Between full width non punctuation character and full width open parenthesis.

axf:hanging-punctuation / CSS (-ah-)hanging-punctuation

Specifies whether to hang punctuations at the start of the line or end of the line. [\[CSS3-Text\] Hanging Punctuation: the 'hanging-punctuation' property](#)

Value: none | [start || first || [force-end | allow-end] || last]

Initial: none

Applies to: fo:block

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Do not hang punctuations at the start of the line or end of the line.

start

Hangs punctuations at the start of the line. If the target character for hanging comes to the start of the line, the character is hanged forcibly.

first

Behaves as the same as the start value only with the start line of a paragraph.

force-end

Hangs punctuations at the end of the line. When `text-align="right"` or `text-align="justify"` (or `text-align-last="justify"`) is specified and a target character for hanging comes to the end of the sentence, the character is hanged forcibly. When anything else is specified to `text-align`, the character is hanged naturally. the `end` value before V5 is taken as the `allow-end` value.

allow-end

Hangs punctuations at the end of the line. When `text-align="right"` or `text-align="justify"` (or `text-align-last="justify"`) is specified and a target character for hanging comes to the end of the sentence, the character is not hanged if text fits into one line, the character is hanged if text does not fit into one line. When anything else is specified to `text-align`, the character is hanged naturally.

last

Behaves the same as the force-end value only with the end of the line of a paragraph.

The target punctuation marks is as follows.

- force-end, allow-end
Japanese or Simplified Chinese

U+3001	IDEOGRAPHIC COMMA	,
U+3002	IDEOGRAPHIC FULL STOP	。
U+FF0C	FULLWIDTH COMMA	,
U+FF0E	FULLWIDTH FULL STOP	。

Traditional Chinese

U+FE50	SMALL COMMA	,
U+FE51	SMALL IDEOGRAPHIC	,
U+FE52	SMALL FULL STOP	。
U+FF64	HALFWIDTH IDEOGRAPHIC COMMA	,

Other languages

Same as the last value.

- last
quotation marks, closing parentheses, period, comma and hyphen
- start, first
quotation marks, closing parentheses and bullet

axf:avoid-widow-words / CSS -ah-avoid-widow-words

The axf:avoid-widow-words specifies spacing behavior between words or characters so that the last line of the paragraph does not have only one word left (one character for CJK).

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:block

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Adjusts the spacing so that the last line of the paragraph does not have only one word left (one character for CJK) when the spacing behavior is available by trimming the space between Japanese characters or Western words.

false

Does nothing.

If the width of columns (length of the line) is short, it is not so effective because there is not enough space to run on. In addition, in case there is no room for a word to be placed at the end of the line, axf:avoid-widow-words has no effect. Please note that there may have no more space to trim by setting [axf:punctuation-trim](#) or [axf:text-justify-trim](#). With non-CJK languages, adjusting by sending a character to the next will not be done.

Spacing and Alignment

Adding Space

axf:text-autospace / CSS (-ah-)text-autospace

The axf:text-autospace specifies whether to add space surrounding ideographic glyphs or not. [\[CSS3-Text\] Adding space: the 'text-autospace' property](#)

Value: none | [ideograph-numeric || ideograph-alpha || ideograph-parenthesis || ideograph-punctuation] | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Space is not added.

ideograph-numeric

Space is added between ideograph character and non-ideographic number character. Non-ideographic number character mentioned here indicates the character of Nd classified by Unicode and the non-full-width character.

ideograph-alpha

Space is added between ideograph character and non-ideographic alphabet character. Non-ideographic alphabet character mentioned here indicates the character of Lu, Li, Lt, Lm and Lo classified by Unicode.

ideograph-parenthesis

Space is added between ideograph character and non-ideographic parenthesis character. However space is not added between ideograph character and non-ideographic closing parenthesis or between non-ideographic opening parenthesis and ideograph character.

ideograph-punctuation

Space is added between ideograph character and non-ideographic punctuation character. Non-ideographic punctuation character mentioned here indicates the character of Ps, Pe, Po, Pi, and Pf classified by Unicode excluding parenthesis character and quotation mark. Space is added between period and ideograph character. However space is not added between ideograph character and period. The same rule is applied to comma.

auto

Dependent on the system setting. It's regarded as "none" or "ideograph-numeric ideograph-alpha" according to the setting.

The initial value of whether space is added or not can be set by [text-autospace](#) in the Option Setting File. It can also be set in the [Format Option Setting Dialog](#) in the GUI.

axf:text-autospace-width / CSS -ah-text-autospace-width

The axf:text-autospace-width specifies the width for axf:text-autospace in Japanese.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

The initial value of this space can be set by [text-autospace-width](#) in the Option Setting File.

Values have the following meanings.

<length>

Specifies the amount of the space with an absolute value.

<percentage>

It's a relative setting to the font size when actually applied.

auto

Dependent on the system setting. This is the value specified by [text-autospace-width](#) in the Option Setting File.

This space is used in [axf:text-autospace](#).

axf:letter-spacing-side / CSS -ah-letter-spacing-side

Specifies on which side of the character the space by letter-spacing is distributed.

Value: both | start | end

Initial: both

Applies to: inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

both

Half the amount of space is distributed on both side of the character for each.

start

The space is distributed only on the start side of the character.

end

The space is distributed only on the end side of the character.

axf:auto-letter-spacing / CSS -ah-auto-letter-spacing

Changes letter-spacing depending on the number of characters. [no-LT]

Value: [none | <length> | <percentage>]*

Initial: none

Applies to: inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

none

Does not specify letter-spacing.

Values can be enumerated corresponding to the number of characters of 2 or more. For example, if specified as follows;

```
axf:auto-letter-spacing="2em 1em 0.5em 0.25em"
```

when the number of characters in this FO is 2, then letter-spacing="2em" is applied. When 3 characters, then letter-spacing="1em" is applied. When 4 characters, then letter-spacing="0.5em" is applied. When 5 characters, then letter-spacing="0.25em" is applied. Nothing is done with the other numbers of characters. Only the characters included in the first in-line element is counted.

This property is defined mainly assuming the chapter in CJK. In the following case,

[第1章 はじめに](#)

it's better to use **axf:letter-spacing-side** together as follows.

```
第1章 <fo:inline axf:auto-letter-spacing="2em 1em 0.5em 0.25em" axf:letter-spacing-side="end">はじめに</fo:inline>
```

It's not possible to apply this property to the text to which the number of characters (like page numbers, etc.) is not decided.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

CSS -ah-margin-break

Specifies how to treat the margin when the page/column breaks.

Value: [auto | discard | keep] keep?

Initial: auto

Applies to: block elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Retains the margin on the before side of the block placed at the start of the document or right after the forced page/column break. Except for that, it is the same as **discard**.

discard

Discards the margin.

keep

Retains the margin on the before side. When the second **keep** is specified, the margin on the after side is also retained.

CSS -ah-ignore-leading-newline

Specifies whether the newline right after the start tag is disregarded or not.

Value: false | true | auto

Initial: false

Applies to: <pre> element

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

false

The newline right after the start tag is not disregarded.

true

The newline right after the start tag is disregarded.

auto

The newline right after the start tag is disregarded with HTML, not disregarded with XHTML.

This is effective with the element that does not disregard the newline like <pre>.

Text Alignment

axf:text-align-string / CSS -ah-text-align-string

axf:text-align-string specifies the text alignment when text-align=<string>.

Value: start | center | end | inside | outside | left | right
Initial: end

Applies to: fo:block

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

start
center
end
inside
outside
left
right

Same as text-align or text-align-last.

Although the specification of <string> to fo:table-cell aligns the character position of decimal point, etc., there is no definition for the alignment of the whole character string. At a default, **AH Formatter V6.2** displayed it right aligned according to the illustration of [17.5.4 Horizontal alignment in a column](#). **AH Formatter V6.2** extends the alignment and makes it possible to align left or align center

axf:text-align-first / CSS -ah-text-align-first

axf:text-align-first specifies the text alignment of the first line.

Value: relative | start | center | end | justify | inside | outside | left | right

Initial: relative

Applies to: fo:block

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

relative

Does nothing. axf:text-align-first is invalid.

start
center
end
justify
inside
outside
left
right

Same as text-align or text-align-last.

Specifies the alignment of the child of the first line area and the alignment of the line coming right after the line with U+000A at the end. Priority is given above text-align-last.

Refer to [axf:leader-expansion](#).

axf:leader-expansion / CSS -ah-leader-expansion

axf:leader-expansion specifies whether to expand a leader forcibly. `:no-LT;`

Value: auto | force
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:block
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Operates as usual by specifying text-align.

force

Considers a line with leaders as text-align="justify". Consequently, leaders will expand.

Suppose you create a table of contents using leaders. Then you might want to format as follows with the length of a label, or the length of the number of pages.

1. Short Label 10, 20, 30
2. Short Label ... 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100,
..... 110, 120, 130, 140, 150
3. Very Looooooooooooooooooooong Label ...
..... 10, 20, 30
4. Very Looooooooooooooooooooong Label ...
..... 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120,
..... 130, 140, 150
5. Very Very Very Looooooooooooooong
Long Long Label 10, 20, 30
6. Very Very Very Looooooooooooooong
Long Long Label 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90,
..... 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150

When the following XSL Standard is specified,

```
<fo:block text-align="justify" text-align-last="justify">
  Label
  <fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
  Pages
</fo:block>
```

only the simple 1. and 5. can get the expected results. And 3. can be performed by the following specification.

```
<fo:block text-align="justify" text-align-last="justify">
  Label
  <fo:leader leader-length.minimum="Opt" leader-pattern="dots"/><fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
  Pages
</fo:block>
```

Next, by using **axf:text-align-first** as follows,

```
<fo:block text-align="justify" text-align-last="right" axf:text-align-first="justify">
  Label
  <fo:leader leader-length.minimum="Opt" leader-pattern="dots"/><fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
  Pages
</fo:block>
```

all cases excluding 3. and 5. gets the result as expected. Furthermore, by using **axf:leader-expansion** as follows,

```
<fo:block text-align="justify" text-align-last="right" axf:text-align-first="justify"
          axf:leader-expansion="force">
  Label
  <fo:leader leader-length.minimum="Opt" leader-pattern="dots"/><fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
  Pages
</fo:block>
```

all cases of 1. to 6. gets the result as expected.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:text-kashida-space / CSS -ah-text-kashida-space

Specifies the percentage of Kashida in Arabic justification.

Value: <percentage> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: yes

Values have the following meanings.

<percentage>

Indicates the percentage of white space and Kashida. If the value is 0%, Kashida is not inserted and only the white space expands as well as the normal justification. If the value is 100%, Kashida is inserted as much as possible. The value should be from 0% to 100%.

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

The initial value of the percentage can be set by [text-kashida-space](#) in the Option Setting File.

axf:justify-nnbsp / CSS -ah-justify-nnbsp

Specifies whether to justify NON-BREAKING SPACE or not.

Value: true | false
Initial: true
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

NON-BREAKING SPACE is included for justification.

false

NON-BREAKING SPACE is not included for justification.

Generally, NON-BREAKING SPACE (U+00A0) is intended for justification. The axf:justify-nnbsp property can be used when you want to check off U+00A0 from justification.

axf:indent-here / CSS -ah-indent-here

Aligns the indent position to the region position when a line break occurs. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: none | <length>
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:inline
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Nothing is done.

<length>

Aligns the indent position to the shifted position by <length> from the beginning of the specified line area.

In order to indent lines, specify <fo:inline> which contains this property as follows. The start position of <fo:inline> becomes the standard of indentation.

```
<fo:block>Indent-here: <fo:inline axf:indent-here="0pt"/>The quick brown fox jumps over the
lazy dog....</fo:block>
```

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Character and Text Decoration

axf:text-line-color / CSS -ah-text-line-color

axf:text-line-color specifies the color of underline, strikethrough, and overline.

Value: auto | <color>

Initial: auto

Applies to: all elements with and generated content with textual content

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

axf:text-line-style / CSS -ah-text-line-style

axf:text-line-style specifies the style of underline, strikethrough, and overline.

Value: <border-style>

Initial: solid

Applies to: all elements with and generated content with textual content

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

none cannot be specified to <border-style>.

axf:text-line-width / CSS -ah-text-line-width

axf:text-line-width specifies the width of underline, strikethrough, and overline.

Value: auto | <border-width>

Initial: auto

Applies to: all elements with and generated content with textual content

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

axf:text-underline-position / CSS (-ah-)text-underline-position

axf:text-underline-position specifies the position of underline. [CSS3-Text] Other text decoration simple properties: 'text-underline-position'

Value: auto | [[before-edge | alphabetic | after-edge] || [<percentage> | <length>]]

Initial: auto

Applies to: all elements with and generated content with textual content

Inherited: no

Percentages: refers to the "line-height" of the parent area

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The underline is placed on the automatically adjusted position. The specification of [axf:vertical-underline-side](#) in vertical writing mode is effective.

before-edge

The underline is placed on the before-edge. When <percentage> or <length> is not specified, the upper end of the height of an underline is placed on the before-edge. When <percentage> or <length> is specified, the center of the height of an underline is placed on the before-edge.

alphabetic

The underline is placed on the position of the baseline. When <percentage> or <length> is not specified, the upper end of the height of an underline is placed on the baseline. When <percentage> or <length> is specified, the center of the height of an underline is placed on the baseline.

after-edge

The underline is placed on the after-edge. When <percentage> or <length> is not specified, the upper end of the height of an underline is placed on the after-edge. When <percentage> or <length> is specified, the center of the height of an underline is placed on the after-edge.

<percentage> <length>

The underline position is shifted by the specified amount. When the underline is placed on the right side by [axf:vertical-underline-side](#), it is moved to the opposite direction of the left side.

axf:vertical-underline-side / CSS -ah-vertical-underline-side

The axf:vertical-underline-side specifies on which side of the text to put underline in vertical writing-mode.

Value: left | right | depend-on-language | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

left

The underline is placed on the left side.

right

The underline is placed on the right side.

depend-on-language

The underline is placed on the right side when the language property is Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor). The underline is placed on the left side when the language property is other than Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor).

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

This property is effective only when [axf:text-underline-position="auto"](#) is specified. The overline is placed on the opposite position of the underline.

The initial value of the underline position can be set by [vertical-underline-side](#) in the Option Setting File. It can also be set in the [Format Option Setting Dialog](#) in the GUI.

When axf:vertical-underline-side="auto" is specified and the initial value of the system is also auto, the underline is placed on the right side when the language property is Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor). The underline is placed on the left side when the language property is other than Japanese(jpn) or Korean(kor). If there is no language properties specified, it depends on the [Default CJK language setting](#).

CSS (-ah-)text-decoration

[CSS2.1] 16.3.1 Underlining, overlining, striking, and blinking

[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Shorthand: the 'text-decoration' property

Value: <text-decoration-line> || <text-decoration-color> || <text-decoration-style>

Initial: none

Applies to: all elements and generated content

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-color

[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Color: the 'text-decoration-color' property

Value: <color>

Initial: currentColor

Applies to: all elements and generated content

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

 [axf:text-line-color](#)

CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-line

[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Lines: the 'text-decoration-line' property

Value: none | [underline || overline || line-through]

Initial: none

Applies to: all elements and generated content

Inherited: no (but see prose)
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] text-decoration

CSS (-ah-)text-decoration-style

[CSS3-TextDecor] Text Decoration Style: the 'text-decoration-style' property

Value: <border-style>
Initial: solid
Applies to: all elements and generated content
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ axf:text-line-style

axf:text-orientation / CSS (-ah-)text-orientation

Specifies the orientation of text in vertical writing mode. [CSS3-WritingModes] Orienting Text: the 'text-orientation' property [no-LT]

Value: mixed | upright | sideways-right | sideways | none
Initial: none (XSL) / mixed (CSS)
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

mixed

Rotates alphanumeric characters, etc. 90-degree clockwise. (As shown in the figure on the right)

upright

Renders all the characters upright except for punctuations, such as parentheses. (As shown in the figure on the left)

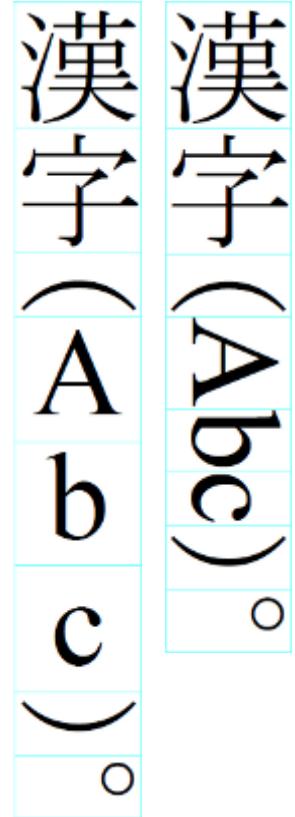
sideways-right

sideways

Rotates all the characters 90-degree clockwise. This has the same effect as setting some parts in horizontal layout in the vertical writing mode.

none

Dependent on the system. Although the operation is close to "mixed", which character is rotated is decided by considering the compatibility with the old version.



See also [Upright rendering of text in vertical writing mode](#) to learn more about the behavior of "mixed" and "upright".

This property is not effective in horizontal writing mode. In addition, complicated scripts, such as Arabic or Thai, cannot be rendered upright.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:text-combine-horizontal / CSS (-ah-)text-combine-horizontal

Sets horizontal-in-vertical composition in vertical writing mode automatically. [CSS3-WritingModes] Horizontal-in-Vertical Composition: the 'text-combine-horizontal' property [no-LT]

Value: none | all | [digits <integer> || alpha <integer> || alphanumeric <integer>]
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Does not set horizontal-in-vertical composition.

all

The whole inline element which consists of only text is set to horizontal-in-vertical composition.

digits

A sequence of consecutive numbers (0-9) that are less than or equal to the digit number specified by <integer> is set to horizontal-in-vertical composition.

alpha

A sequence of consecutive alphabetic characters (A-Z, a-z) that are less than or equal to the digit number specified by <integer> is set to horizontal-in-vertical composition.

alphanumeric

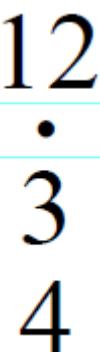
A sequence of consecutive alphanumeric characters (0-9, A-Z, a-z) that are less than or equal to the digit number specified by <integer> is set to horizontal-in-vertical composition.

Usually, horizontal-in-vertical composition will be marked up as follows: The automatic horizontal-in-vertical composition saves time and effort for this.

```
<fo:inline-container writing-mode="lr-tb"
    line-height="1"
    text-align="center"
    text-indent="0pt"
    start-indent="0pt"
    end-indent="0pt"
    padding="0pt"
    wrap-option="no-wrap">
    <fo:block>12</fo:block>
</fo:inline-container>
```

axf:text-combine-horizontal is applied before axf:text-orientation or text-transform, etc. The removable white space placed before and after the character string targeted for horizontal-in-vertical composition will be removed.

When digits is specified to axf:text-combine-horizontal and axf:text-orientation="upright" is also specified, the following behaviors are applied to the sequence of numbers targeted for horizontal-in-vertical composition that are shorter than <integer>, that has adjacent decimal point.



- U+002E and U+FF65 are regarded as decimal points.
- A sequence of numbers targeted for horizontal-in-vertical composition after the decimal point will not be set to horizontal-in-vertical composition. However, the decimal point will be transferred to U+FF65.
- When the decimal point comes after a sequence of numbers targeted for horizontal-in-vertical composition, the sequence of numbers will be set to horizontal-in-vertical composition. The decimal point will be transferred to U+FF65.

The figure on the right shows the example of the horizontal-in-vertical composition set to "12.34" automatically.

```
<fo:block axf:text-combine-horizontal="digits 2"
    axf:text-orientation="upright"
    >12.34</fo:block>
```

Furthermore, with the combination of text-transform, you can set two or more characters in non full-width, change others in full-width in horizontal-in-vertical composition.

```
<fo:block axf:text-combine-horizontal="digits 2"
    axf:text-orientation="upright"
    text-transform="full-width"
    >平成 25 年 4 月 16 日</fo:block>
```

CAUTION: Automatic horizontal-in-vertical composition is not recommended to use in any other way than axf:text-orientation="upright".

Automatic horizontal-in-vertical composition is invalid in the following cases. Emphasis marks in horizontal-in-vertical composition will be deleted.

- In horizontal writing mode (includes the case where the value for axf:text-orientation is sideways in horizontal-in-vertical composition)
- When languages other than CJK are specified
- Within ruby
- Character strings generated dynamically, such as lt;fo:page-number>

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Emphasis Marks

AH Formatter V6.2 is capable of applying emphasis marks to the character string. However, emphasis marks cannot be applied to an arbitrary script. Only to the following scripts in addition to CJK are available.

- Latn
- Cyril
- Grek
- Zyyy

It's not available to apply emphasis marks to the [ruby](#) characters, though it is available to apply to ruby's base characters.

As for the glyph of the emphasis mark in the general font, the size of glyph image is various, you will need to adjust the position and size according to the emphasis mark you use.

```
axf:text-emphasis-style="sesame"
axf:text-emphasis-offset="-0.25"
axf:text-emphasis-font-size="1"
axf:text-emphasis-position="before"

axf:text-emphasis-style="circle"
axf:text-emphasis-offset="0.25"
axf:text-emphasis-font-size="0.25"
axf:text-emphasis-position="before"
```

A free special font suitable for emphasis marks is available. ([Kenten Generic OpenType Font](#)). The font has the same size of emphasis marks, then the same settings for any emphasis marks will be OK.

```
axf:text-emphasis-style="sesame"
axf:text-emphasis-offset="0"
axf:text-emphasis-font-size="0.5"
axf:text-emphasis-font-family="KentenGeneric"
axf:text-emphasis-position="before"
```

axf:text-emphasis-style / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-style

Specifies the style of emphasis marks. [\[CSS3-TextDecor\] Emphasis Mark Style: the 'text-emphasis-style' property](#)

Value: none | [[filled | open] || [dot | circle | double-circle | triangle | sesame]] | <string>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

No emphasis marks.

filled

Specifies a character with color-fill.

open

Specifies a character with an outline without color-fill.

dot

Specifies a filled dot. **filled dot** is U+2022 ●, **open dot** is U+25E6 ○.

circle

Specifies a circle. **filled circle** is U+25CF ●, **open circle** is U+25CB ○.

double-circle

Specifies a double-circle. **filled double-circle** is U+25C9 ○, **open double-circle** is U+25CE ○.

triangle

Specifies a triangle. **filled triangle** is U+25B2 ▲, **open triangle** is U+25B3 △.

sesame

Specifies a sesame dot. **filled sesame** is U+FE45 ↘, **open sesame** is U+FE46 ↙.

<string>

Specifies an arbitrary character string. When multiple characters are specified, overlapping of emphasis marks is not considered though everything is displayed.

when **filled** or **open** is not specified, it's considered as **filled**. When **filled** or **open** is specified, it's considered as **circle** in vertical writing mode.

axf:text-emphasis-position / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-position

Specifies on which side of base characters emphasis marks are put. [CSS3-TextDecor] Emphasis Mark Position: the 'text-emphasis-position' property

Value: before | after

Initial: before

Applies to: all elements

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

before

Emphasis marks are put on the before side.

after

Emphasis marks are put on the after side.

axf:text-emphasis-offset / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-offset

Specifies the space between emphasis marks and the base characters.

Value: <number> | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: all elements

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

When specified using <number>, the value is what is obtained by multiplying text-emphasis-font-size by the specified <number>. When **ruby** and emphasis marks are put on the same side, it is adjusted to the larger one of the specified value and the ruby height.

axf:text-emphasis-skip / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-skip

Specifies the character to which emphasis marks are not applied.

Value: none | [spaces || punctuation || symbols || narrow]

Initial: spaces

Applies to: all elements

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

spaces

White space characters are excluded.

punctuation

Punctuations are excluded.

symbols

Symbols are excluded.

narrow

Non full width characters (half width characters, etc.) are excluded.

axf:text-emphasis-font-family / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-family

Specifies the font family of emphasis marks.

Value: [<family-name> | <generic-family>]#
Initial: empty string
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-family.

axf:text-emphasis-font-size / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-size

Specifies the font size of emphasis marks.

Value: <number> | <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0.5
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the font size

When specified using <number>, the value is what is obtained by multiplying font-size by the specified <number>.

axf:text-emphasis-font-style / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-style

Specifies whether emphasis marks are made Italic.

Value: normal | italic
Initial: empty
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-style.

axf:text-emphasis-font-weight / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-weight

Specifies the font weight of emphasis marks.

Value: normal | bold | bolder | lighter | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900
Initial: empty
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-weight.

axf:text-emphasis-font-stretch / CSS -ah-text-emphasis-font-stretch

Specifies the font stretching of emphasis marks.

Value: normal | wider | narrower | ultra-condensed | extra-condensed | condensed | semi-condensed | semi-expanded
| expanded | extra-expanded | ultra-expanded | <percentage> | <number>
Initial: empty
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the text-emphasis-font-size

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-stretch.

axf:text-emphasis-color / CSS (-ah-)text-emphasis-color

Specifies the color of emphasis marks. [\[CSS3-TextDecor\] Emphasis Mark Color: the 'text-emphasis-color' property](#)

Value: <color>
Initial: currentColor
Applies to: emphasis elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as color.

Text Shadow

text-shadow / CSS (-ah-)text-shadow

Specifies the text shadow. [CSS3-TextDecor] Text Shadows: the 'text-shadow' property [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: none | [<length>{2,3} && <color>?]#

Initial: none

Applies to: all elements which can have borders

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

No shadow is displayed.

The meanings of <length>s and a <color> are as follows:

- The first <length> is an offset of a horizontal shadow. It becomes a right-side shadow of a region when a positive value is specified. It becomes a left-side shadow of a region when a negative value is specified.
- The second <length> is an offset of a vertical shadow. It becomes a bottom-side shadow of a region when a positive value is specified. It becomes a top-side shadow of a region when a negative value is specified.
- 3rd <length> starts blurring from the position where the region is extended. This setting is ignored with **AH Formatter V6.2**.
- The color of the shadow can be specified by <color>.

This combination can be specified multiply and shadows can be added several times over. This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

CAUTION: With text-shadow, characters are reproduced and drawn several times over. The problem of accessibility may occur with Tagged PDF.

☞ [XSL1.1] text-shadow

Text Transformation

axf:normalize / CSS -ah-normalize

Specifies the normalization of text. [no-LT]

Value: auto | none | nfc | nfkc | nfd | nfkd

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Depends on the value of **normalize** specified to the Option Setting File.

none

Does not normalize text.

nfc

Performs NFC.

nfkc

Performs NFKC.

nfd

Performs NFD.

nfkd

Performs NFKD.

Specifies whether the normalization defined in [UAX#15: Unicode Normalization Forms](#) is performed. The normalization is performed to the character strings described in the text area. If you use only the normalized code from the start, it is not necessary to specify the normalization. If not, the normalization by NFC will be a good choice for practical use.

In these conversions, all the [Composition Exclusions](#) are excluded from the normalization processing when **axf:normalize-exclude="full-composition-exclusion"** is specified.

CAUTION: Please keep in mind that U+00A0, which is a meaningful code as FO, will be transformed to U+0020, etc. by performing the normalization with NFKC, for example.

This feature is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:normalize-exclude / CSS -ah-normalize-exclude

Specifies whether [Composition Exclusions](#) are excluded or not when the normalization ([axf:normalize](#)) is specified. [no-LT]

Value: full-composition-exclusion | none
Initial: full-composition-exclusion
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

full-composition-exclusion

Excludes all the characters specified in Composition Exclusions.

none

Does not exclude.

This feature is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:text-replace / CSS (-ah-)text-replace

Replaces the character strings. [[CSS3-GCPM](#)] Character substitution

Value: none | [<string> <string>]+
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Do nothing.

<string> <string>

The first pair of character strings is replaced by the latter character strings. You have to specify a character string by a pair. It is not replaced when character strings are odd pieces or the first character string is empty. White space characters will be replaced after being processed by white-space-treatment, etc.

When it is simultaneously specified with text-transform or [axf:number-transform](#), axf:text-replace will be evaluated at the end.

axf:number-transform / CSS -ah-number-transform

Converts the number sequence in the character string. [no-LT]

Value: none | kansuji | kansuji-if-vertical | <list-style-type> | <string>
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Do nothing.

kansuji

Converts the contained number sequence into Japanese numerals. The details of the Japanese numeral format can be specified by [axf:kansuji-style](#), [axf:kansuji-letter](#) and [axf:kansuji-grouping-letter](#).

kansuji-if-vertical

Only with the vertical writing, such as writing-mode="tb-rl", axf:number-transform="kansuji" is applied. Nothing is changed when it's not the vertical writing.

<list-style-type>

Among the [list-style-type](#) defined by CSS, the number related types which can be specified are <algorithmic>, <numeric>, <alphabetic>, <symbolic>, <non-repeating>. Convertible digit numbers may differ depending on list-style-type. Too long number sequence cannot be converted.

<string>

When a character string is specified, the behavior is same as when the character string is specified by [format](#).

A number sequence (number) here indicates character strings of the following forms.

```
number ::= digits
digits ::= [0-9]+
```

When it is simultaneously specified with text-transform or [axf:text-replace](#), axf:number-transform is evaluated previously.

CSS (-ah-)list-style-type

Specifies the list style. [\[CSS3-Lists\] List Content: The 'list-style-type' property](#)

Value: <glyph> | <algorithmic> | <numeric> | <alphabetic> | <symbolic> | <non-repeating> | normal | none

Initial: disc

Applies to: all elements with 'display: list-item'

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

The following <list-style-type> are supported. ↪ [axf:number-transform](#), [format](#)

- none
- normal
- <glyph>
 - box Generates U+25FD. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - check Generates U+2713. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - circle Generates U+25E6. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - diamond Generates U+25C6. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - disc Generates U+2022. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - hyphen Generates U+2043. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
 - square Generates U+25FE. The generated character can be changed by the [Option Setting File](#).
- <algorithmic>
 - upper-roman It is the same as format="I". Use LATIN CAPITAL LETTER, such as U+0049, U+0058 etc. Numerical values up to 39999 can be expressed.
 - lower-roman It is the same as format="i." Use LATIN SMALL LETTER, such as U+0069, U+0078 etc. Numerical values up to 3999 can be expressed.
 - armenian, lower-armenian Same as format="ա".
 - upper-armenian Same as format="Ա".
 - georgian Same as format="ა".
 - ethiopic-numeric Same as format="፩".
 - tamil Same as format="௧".
 - hebrew Same as format="א".
 - cjk-ideographic, japanese-informal Same conversion as:


```
axf:number-transform="kansuji"
axf:kansuji-style="readable"
axf:kansuji-letter="kanji"
```
 - japanese-formal Same conversion as:


```
axf:number-transform="kansuji"
axf:kansuji-style="readable"
axf:kansuji-letter="〇壹弐參"
axf:kansuji-grouping-letter="拾"
```
 - japanese-formal-obsolete Same conversion as:


```
axf:number-transform="kansuji"
axf:kansuji-style="readable"
axf:kansuji-letter="〇壹貳參肆伍陸柒捌玖"
axf:kansuji-grouping-letter="拾佰阡萬"
```
- <numeric>
 - decimal Same as format="1".
 - decimal-leading-zero Same as format="01".
 - super-decimal Same as format="¹".

- arabic-indic Same as format="١".
- bengali Same as format="১".
- cambodian, khmer Same as format="១".
- devanagari Same as format="१".
- gujarati Same as format="૧".
- gurmukhi Same as format="੧".
- kannada Same as format="೧".
- lao Same as format="໑".
- malayalam Same as format="൧".
- mongolian Same as format="᠑".
- myanmar Same as format="၁".
- oriya Same as format="୧".
- persian, urdo Same as format="۱".
- telugu Same as format="౧".
- tibetan Same as format="༡".
- thai Same as format="๑".
- cjk-decimal Same as format="一".
- fullwidth-decimal Same as format="１".
- binary Generates binary numbers. It cannot be specified by format.
- octal Generates octal numbers. It cannot be specified by format.
- upper-hexadecimal Generates upper-case hexadecimal numbers. It cannot be specified by format.
- lower-hexadecimal Generates lower-case hexadecimal numbers. It cannot be specified by format.
- <alphabetic>
 - lower-alpha, lower-latin Same as format="a".
 - upper-alpha, upper-latin Same as format="A".
 - lower-greek Same as format="α".
 - upper-greek Same as format="Α".
 - lower-norwegian Same as format="Å".
 - upper-norwegian Same as format="å".
 - cjk-earthly-branch Same as format="子".
 - cjk-heavenly-stem Same as format="甲".
 - hiragana Same as format="あ".
 - hiragana-iroha Same as format="い".
 - katakana Same as format="ア".
 - katakana-iroha Same as format="イ".
 - hangul Same as format="가".
 - hangul-consonant Same as format="ㄱ".
 - fullwidth-lower-roman Same as format="ｉ".
 - fullwidth-upper-roman Same as format="Ｉ".
 - fullwidth-lower-alpha, fullwidth-lower-latin Same as format="ａ".
 - fullwidth-upper-alpha, fullwidth-upper-latin Same as format="Ａ".
 - halfwidth-katakana Same as format="ｱ"
 - halfwidth-katakana-iroha Same as format="ｲ".
- <symbolic>
 - asterisks Same as format="**". Numerical values up to 999 can be expressed.
 - footnotes Same as format="*⁑†‡". Numerical values up to 999 can be expressed.
- <non-repeating>
 - circled-decimal Same as format="①". Numerical values of 0 to 20 can be expressed.
 - dotted-decimal Same as format="⒈". Numerical values of 1 to 20 can be expressed.
 - double-circled-decimal Same as format="⓵". Numerical values of 1 to 10 can be expressed.
 - filled-circled-decimal Same as format="⓫". Numerical values of 11 to 20 can be expressed.
 - parenthesised-decimal Same as format="⑴". Numerical values of 1 to 20 can be expressed.
 - circled-lower-latin Same as format="ⓐ". Numerical values of 1 to 26 can be expressed.
 - circled-upper-latin Same as format="Ⓐ". Numerical values of 1 to 26 can be expressed.
 - parenthesised-lower-latin Same as format="⒜". Numerical values of 1 to 26 can be expressed.

Japanese Numerals

AH Formatter V6.2 can convert numbers into Japanese numerals using `axf:number-transform`. This function is not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.

axf:kansuji-style / CSS -ah-kansuji-style

Specifies the style used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]

Value: simple | grouping | readable

Initial: simple

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

simple

Converts a number sequence into Japanese numerals by one to one correspondence.

12340 ⇒ 一二三四〇
6700000 ⇒ 六七〇〇〇〇〇

grouping

In adds to the conversion of one to one correspondence, grouping for 万億兆京垓秭穰溝澗正載極 is inserted.

- When all the parts below a certain grouping are zero, they are disregarded.

12340 ⇒ 一万二三四〇
6700000 ⇒ 六七〇万

readable

Inserts grouping of 万億兆... and uses 十百千 additionally so that the character strings becomes readable.

- Preceding zero is disregarded.
- In the huge numerical value which needs the next grouping of 極, the digits more than 極 are converted by one to one correspondence.

12340 ⇒ 一万二千三百四十
6700000 ⇒ 六百七十万
1000000 ⇒ 百万
000015 ⇒ 十五
0 ⇒ 〇

axf:kansuji-letter / CSS -ah-kansuji-letter

Specifies the character used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]

Value: kanji | latin | <string>

Initial: kanji

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

kanji

Use Japanese numerals for numbers. Equivalent to specify `axf:kansuji-letter="〇一二三四五六七八九"`.

〇 : U+3007
一 : U+4E00
二 : U+4E8C
三 : U+4E09
四 : U+56DB
五 : U+4E94
六 : U+516D

七 : U+4E03
 八 : U+516B
 九 : U+4E5D

latin

Use full width western numerals for numbers. Equivalent to specify `axf:kansuji-letter="0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9"`.

0 : U+FF10
 1 : U+FF11
 2 : U+FF12
 3 : U+FF13
 4 : U+FF14
 5 : U+FF15
 6 : U+FF16
 7 : U+FF17
 8 : U+FF18
 9 : U+FF19

<string>

Specifies arbitrary characters as numbers you use. For example, if you want to use traditional Japanese numerals, specify `axf:kansuji-letter="零壹弐參肆伍陸柒捌玖"`. If you want to specify traditional Japanese numerals only to "一二三", specify `axf:kansuji-letter="〇壹弐叁四五六七八九"`. If you specify only the head part like `axf:kansuji-letter="〇壹弐叁"`, it is compensated as `axf:kansuji-letter="〇壹弐叁四五六七八九"`.

零 : U+96F6
 壱 : U+58F1
 弐 : U+5F10
 参 : U+53C2
 叴 : U+8086
 肆 : U+4F0D
 伍 : U+9678
 陸 : U+67D2
 柒 : U+634C
 捌 : U+7396
 玖 : U+7396

axf:kansuji-grouping-letter / CSS -ah-kansuji-grouping-letter

Specifies the grouping character used for Japanese numerals. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

The null character sequence is regarded as "十百千万億兆京垓秭穰溝澗正載極". Please change and specify only a corresponding character if you want to change "万" to "萬", for example. When you specify only the head part like "拾佰阡萬", it is compensated as "拾佰阡萬億兆京垓秭穰溝澗正載極".

十 : U+5341
 百 : U+767E
 千 : U+5343
 万 : U+4E07
 億 : U+5104
 兆 : U+5146
 京 : U+4EAC
 垂 : U+5793
 秧 : U+25771
 穢 : U+7A63
 溝 : U+6E9D
 澗 : U+6F97
 正 : U+6B63
 載 : U+8F09
 極 : U+6975

拾 : U+62FE
 佰 : U+4F70

阡 : U+9621
萬 : U+842C

Ligature

axf:ligature-mode / CSS -ah-ligature-mode

Specifies whether to perform the ligature processing.

Value: none | [latin || kana] | all | auto

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

The ligature processing is not performed.

latin

Processes the ligature in European languages. It is processed when the scripts are the followings.

- Latn
- Grek
- Cyrl

kana

Processes the ligature of Kana + semivoiced sound symbol in JIS X 0213:2004 as follows.

- U+304B + U+309A
- U+304D + U+309A
- U+304F + U+309A
- U+3051 + U+309A
- U+3053 + U+309A
- U+30AB + U+309A
- U+30AD + U+309A
- U+30AF + U+309A
- U+30B1 + U+309A
- U+30B3 + U+309A
- U+30BB + U+309A
- U+30C4 + U+309A
- U+30C8 + U+309A
- U+31F7 + U+309A

Although the ligature of European languages and the ligature of symbols are included in JIS X 0213:2004, these are processed by ligature-mode="latin".

all

latin and kana are considered to be specified.

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

The ligature processed here is the ligature defined in the font itself. The ligature defined in Unicode are not processed. (It is called Canonical Composition) In order to normalize ligatures defined in Unicode Standard, specify [axf:normalize="hfc"](#). Note that [axf:normalize](#) will not be effective with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

You can specify whether ligatures for European languages are performed or not by [latin-ligature](#) in the Option Setting File. These can also be set in the [Option Setting dialog](#) in GUI.

axf:japanese-glyph / CSS -ah-japanese-glyph

Specifies the glyph of Japanese Kanji. Applied only to the Japanese Kanji that has the substitution function for the specific Open type.

Value: none | jp78 | jp83 | jp90 | jp04

Initial: none

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Nothing is done.

jp78

jp78 is applied. Nothing is done when the font does not have jp78.

jp83

Jp83 is applied. Nothing is done when the font does not have jp83.

jp90

Jp90 is applied. Nothing is done when the font does not have jp90.

jp04

Jp04 is applied. Nothing is done when the font does not have jp04.

The glyph of Japanese Kanji is changed more than a little by JIS in which it is being defined. Some of the Open Type font have glyphs that correspond to JIS respectively. The glyphs of such fonts can be specified by the `japanese-glyph` property.

CAUTION: AH Formatter V6.2 supports Unicode Variation Sequence. We recommend to use the feature of [Variation Sequence](#) as much as possible for Japanese Kanji.

CAUTION: In AH Formatter V6.2, the specification of <string> is not recommended. Please use [font-variant](#).

axf:alt-glyph / CSS -ah-alt-glyph

Specifies the alternative glyph of a character.

Value: <number> | <string> <number>?

Initial: 0

Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<number>

Specifies the order of the alternative glyph. 0 is a standard glyph. When the specified order is beyond the number of the glyph which is contained in the font, it is regarded as 0.

<string>

Specifies the tag of OpenType GSUB feature. If omitted, it is regarded as aalt. <number> is required or not required depending on the tag. When <number> is omitted even if it's necessary, it is regarded as 1. The following tags can be specified.

- aalt
- nalt

CAUTION: In AH Formatter V6.2, the specification of <string> is not recommended. Please use [font-variant="annotation\(<number>\)"](#) for nalt.

Some of the OpenType fonts have some alternative glyphs against a certain glyph. In such a font, a glyph can be chosen with the alt-glyph property. AH Formatter V6.2 doesn't offer the method to investigate what type and how many glyphs are contained. It is applied only to the script associated with Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, Latin, Greek, Cyrillic and Number.

URI and Link

axf:base-uri / CSS -ah-base-uri

The axf:base-uri specifies the location which becomes the base of relative URI.

<i>Value:</i>	<uri-specification>
<i>Initial:</i>	empty string
<i>Applies to:</i>	all formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

The axf:base-uri is applied to all relative URI in a document. When making links using fo:basic-link and specify relative URI, the location that is specified using axf:base-uri is interpreted to be base URI. If this property is omitted or this has empty string, the base location is interpreted as current XML file.

☞ [xml:base](#)

In the case of the following example, it links to: "http://www.antennahouse.co.jp/xsl-info/Thai/THAI-BangKokNationalMuseum.pdf".

```

<fo:root xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
          xmlns:axf="http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions"
          axf:base-uri="http://www.antennahouse.co.jp/xsl-info/">
    :
    :
<fo:basic-link external-destination="Thai/THAI-BangKokNationalMuseum.pdf">
    ...
</fo:basic-link>

```

CSS -ah-link

Generates a hyper-link.

<i>Value:</i>	<uri-specification> none
<i>Initial:</i>	N/A
<i>Applies to:</i>	all inline elements
<i>Inherited:</i>	no
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] [7.23.6 external-destination](#), [7.23.8 internal-destination](#), [xlink:href](#)

Page Number

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to control the page number.

axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number / CSS -ah-suppress-duplicate-page-number

The axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number specifies to delete the duplicated page numbers.

CAUTION: A similar function is equipped in XSL1.1. Please make use of `marge-*:index-key-reference`.

<i>Value:</i>	true false
<i>Initial:</i>	false
<i>Applies to:</i>	all formatting objects
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

When formatting a index, generally several fo:page-number-citation line up for one index item. In such case, when fo:page-number-citation refers to the same page number of the index, page numbers are output repeatedly using the standard property.

For example:

When axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number is not specified.

```

<fo:block text-align-last="justify">
  <fo:block>bcd
  <fo:leader lender-pattern="dots"/>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID1">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID1"/>
  </fo:basic-link>

```

```

<fo:/block>
<fo:block>index
  <fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID2">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID2"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID3">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID3"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID4">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID4"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID5">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID5"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID6">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID6"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
  <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID7">
    <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID7"/>,
  </fo:basic-link>
</fo:block>
</fo:block>

```

Format example of the above text is as follows.

bcd	2
index	3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 4

When axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number is specified.

```

<fo:block text-align-last="justify" axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number="true">
  <fo:block>bcd
    <fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID1">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID1"/>
    </fo:basic-link>
  </fo:block>
  <fo:block>index
    <fo:leader leader-pattern="dots"/>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID2">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID2"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID3">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID3"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID4">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID4"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID5">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID5"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID6">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID6"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
    <fo:basic-link internal-destination="ID7">
      <fo:page-number-citation ref-id="ID7"/>,
    </fo:basic-link>
  </fo:block>
</fo:block>

```

Format example of the above text is as follows.

bcd	2
index	3, 4

axf:page-number-prefix

The axf:page-number-prefix sets the prefix of page number.

CAUTION: A similar function is equipped in XSL1.1. Please make use of fo:folio-prefix.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies the prefix for page numbers. Specified string will be outputted before the page number by fo:page-number and fo:page-number-citation. Also this string will be used as the page label in the PDF.

```
<fo:page-sequence axf:page-number-prefix="A-" format="i" initial-page-number="10">
  <fo:static-content ...>
    ...<fo:page-number/>...
  </fo:static-content>
  ...
</fo:page-sequence>
```

Arabic and Hebrew cannot be specified for the value of axf:page-number-prefix.

axf:physical-page-number

The axf:physical-page-number gets physical page number.

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: fo:page-number, fo:page-number-citation, fo:page-number-citation-last
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

The value of initial-page-number property is disregarded and the physical page number that is not affected by the page-sequence is obtained. In order to obtain the total number of pages, ID is given to the last page per the following example:

```
<fo:page-number-citation ref-id="lastpage" axf:physical-page-number="true"/>
```

See also fo:page-number-citation-last in XSL1.1.

axf:origin-id

Specifies the origin of the page number.

Value: <idref>
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:page-number, fo:page-number-citation, fo:page-number-citation-last
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

ID for the origin of the page number can be specified in fo:page-number or fo:page-number-citation. The output page number is as follows:

```
[ref-id page] - [origin-id page] + 1
```

If the specified Page is after the ref-id page, the value becomes 0. In fo:page-number, ref-id is considered to be the position of fo:page-number itself.

axf:assumed-page-number / CSS -ah-assumed-page-number

Specifies the assumed page number.

Value: <number>
Initial: N/A
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

When <fo:page-number-citation> appears, the reference area is sometimes undecided. In evaluation of <fo:page-number-citation>, the temporary area is secured first, and when a page number is decided, it is adjusted to the right contents. Since the size of an area may change at this time, the formatted result is sometimes not desirable. For example, when an area becomes narrow, it seems that there is an unnecessary line break, and condition that a character will overflow if an area becomes large appears. axf:assumed-page-number gives the assumed page number at that time.

AH Formatter V6.2 expects the area of at least three-digit page number and formats temporarily. What is necessary will be just to specify `axf:assumed-page-number="99"` etc., when the page number is clearly less than that.

axf:number-type

The `axf:number-type` specifies whether to output the page number or to output the column number.

Value: page | column | page-and-column
Initial: page
Applies to: fo:page-number, fo:page-number-citation, fo:page-number-citation-last
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

page

Outputs the page number.

column

Outputs the column number.

page-and-column

Outputs both of the page number and the column number.

It can be specified to `fo:page-number`, etc. and the column number can be outputted instead of the page number. While `format` property is applied to the format of the page number, `axf:column-number-format` property is applied to the format of the column number. The column number is not outputted if multiple column is not specified by specifying of `column-count="1"` or `span="all"`.

axf:column-number-format

The `axf:column-number-format` specifies the format of column number.

Value: <string>
Initial: A
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

It applies to the format of column number specified by `axf:number-type` property. It can be specified with the same way as `format` property.

axf:suppress-folio-prefix

Invalidates the prefix of page numbers.

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: fo:page-number, fo:page-number-citation, fo:page-number-citation-last
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies whether to invalidate the prefix set by `fo:folio-prefix`.

Values have the following meanings.

true

Invalidates the prefix.

false

Validates the prefix.

axf:suppress-folio-suffix

Invalidates the suffix of page numbers.

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: fo:page-number, fo:page-number-citation, fo:page-number-citation-last
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies whether to invalidate the suffix set by fo:folio-suffix.

Values have the following meanings.

true

Invalidates the suffix.

false

Validates the suffix.

Line Numbering

Place line numbers as part of the text. Line numbers can be placed against the line area. Even though the place looks empty, if there is a line area, line numbers can be placed. These are not placed in the space or in the margin. The axf:line-number is not effective inside fo:float or fo:footnote.

CAUTION: Placing the line numbering for the page formatted complexly with fo:block-container or fo:table, etc. might get unintended consequences. Please apply the line numbering to a simple structural document as much as possible.

This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number / CSS -ah-line-number

The axf:line-number specifies whether to show line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: none | show | hide

Initial: none

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes (except for fo:table-column)

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Line numbers are not generated.

show

Line numbers are shown.

hide

Line numbers are not shown but the numbers of the line are counted.

Line numbers are counted against the lines inside the block where axf:line-number="show" or axf:line-number="hide" is specified.

If axf:line-number is specified to fo:table-column, independent line numbers are added to the column of the table. At this time, the same setting available for fo:page-sequence can be specified. The id reference can be specified to fo:table-column as axf:line-number-initial="#xxx." The id must be the same as the one specified to the existing fo:table-column. The value specified to that column is adopted as the default value of the line number information. The backward reference is invalid. [V6.2]

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-background-color / CSS -ah-line-number-background-color

The axf:line-number-background-color specifies the background color of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <color> | transparent

Initial: transparent

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-color / CSS -ah-line-number-color

The axf:line-number-color specifies the color of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <color>

Initial: the value of the 'color' property

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-display-align / CSS -ah-line-number-display-align

The axf:line-number-display-align specifies the alignment, in the block-progression-direction, of line numbers in the line area. [no-LT]

Value: auto | before | center | after

Initial: auto

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

before

Align the line numbers in the upper end of the line area.

center

Align the line numbers in the middle of the line area.

after

Align the line numbers in the lower end of the line area.

auto

It is considered after in horizontal writing, and center in vertical writing.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-font-family / CSS -ah-line-number-font-family

The axf:line-number-font-family specifies the font family of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: [<family-name> | <generic-family>]#

Initial: depends on UA

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-font-size / CSS -ah-line-number-font-size

The axf:line-number-font-size specifies the font size of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: medium

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-font-style / CSS -ah-line-number-font-style

The axf:line-number-font-style specifies whether to make the font style italic. [no-LT]

Value: normal | italic

Initial: normal

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-font-weight / CSS -ah-line-number-font-weight

The axf:line-number-font-weight specifies the font weight of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: normal | bold | bolder | lighter | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900

Initial: normal
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-format / CSS -ah-line-number-format

The axf:line-number-format specifies the format of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: 1
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Line numbers are shown as the specified format. The way to specify is the same as that for the [format](#) property.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-initial / CSS -ah-line-number-initial

The axf:line-number-initial specifies the line number of the first line. [no-LT]

Value: auto | <number>
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Line numbers are not initialized, and it is succeeded from previous fo:page-sequence. When previous fo:page-sequence does not exist, it becomes 1.

<number>

Initializes the line number with the specified value. The value must be greater than or equal to 1. Actual initialization takes place at the time when [axf:line-number-reset](#) is specified.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-interval / CSS -ah-line-number-interval

The axf:line-number-interval specifies the interval of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <number> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The specification of previous fo:page-sequence is succeeded. When previous fo:page-sequence does not exist, it becomes 1.

<number>

Sets the interval of the line numbers to the value specified.

Specifies to show the line numbers like 5, 10, 15. In this case, axf:line-number-initial="1" axf:line-number-start="5" axf:line-number-interval="5" can be applied.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-offset / CSS -ah-line-number-offset

The axf:line-number-offset specifies the offset of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: <length>

Initial: 0pt
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-orientation / CSS -ah-line-number-orientation

Rotates line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: 0 | 90 | 180 | 270 | -90 | -180 | -270
Initial: 0
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Rotates line numbers with specified degrees.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-position / CSS -ah-line-number-position

The axf:line-number-position specifies the position of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: start | end | inside | outside | alternate
Initial: start
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [V6.2]
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

start

Places line number at start-edge.

end

Places line number at end-edge.

inside

Places line number at start-edge on odd pages, at end-edge on even pages.

outside

Places line number at end-edge on odd pages, at start-edge on even pages.

alternate

Places line number at end-edge in the last column of multi-column layout, except for the last column, places it at start-edge.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-prefix / CSS -ah-line-number-prefix

The axf:line-number-prefix sets the prefix of line number. [no-LT]

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Specifies the prefix for line numbers. Specified string will be outputted before the page number by [axf:line-number](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-reset / CSS -ah-line-number-reset

The axf:line-number-reset resets line numbering. [no-LT]

Value: auto | none | page | column | force
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence, fo:block

Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The specification of previous fo:page-sequence is succeeded. When the previous fo:page-sequence does not exist, it will become none.

none

Line numbers are not reset.

page

Line numbers are reset when pages break.

column

Line numbers are reset when columns break.

force

Line numbers are reset forcibly. It can be specified to fo:block.

Line numbers are reset to the value specified to [axf:line-number-initial](#).

CAUTION: **force** can be specified only to fo:block. On the contrary, other values cannot be specified to fo:block.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-start / CSS -ah-line-number-start

The axf:line-number-start specifies the starting line number. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: <number> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The specification of the previous fo:page-sequence is succeeded. When the previous fo:page-sequence does not exist, it will become 1.

<number>

Sets the line number that begins outputting to the value specified.

Line numbers are shown when the value is greater than or equal to the value specified here. When axf:line-number-initial="1", axf:line-number-start="5" are specified, the first 4 line numbers are not shown but the 5th line number will be outputted as the beginning number. When axf:line-number-initial="5", axf:line-number-start="6" are specified, the first line number is not shown but the next line number is outputted as 6.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-text-align / CSS -ah-line-number-text-align

The axf:line-number-text-align specifies the alignment of line numbers in the line area. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: auto | start | center | end | inside | outside | left | right
Initial: auto
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [\[V6.2\]](#)
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

start
center
end
inside
outside
left
right

Same as text-align.

auto

When the position of the line numbers is in the start side, it is regarded as end. When the position of the line numbers is in the end side, it is regarded as start. The position of line numbers is specified by [axf:line-number-position](#).

When [axf:line-number-width](#) is not specified, It is always regarded as auto.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-text-decoration / CSS -ah-line-number-text-decoration

The axf:line-number-text-decoration specifies the test decoration of line numbers. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: same as text-decoration
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [\[V6.2\]](#)
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the same meaning as text-decoration.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-number-width / CSS -ah-line-number-width

The axf:line-number-text-align specifies the width of line numbers. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: auto | <length>
Initial: auto
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow, fo:table-column [\[V6.2\]](#)
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The width of line numbers becomes the width of the text of the line.

When specifying the arrangement of line numbers by [axf:line-number-text-align](#), the value other than auto should be specified for the width.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Line Continued Mark

When the line with long text strings is broken and continues to the next line, line continued marks can be applied to the end of line. It is invalid inside fo:float or fo:footnote.

This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark

The axf:line-continued-mark specifies whether to show line continued marks. [\[no-LT\]](#)

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<string>

Line continued marks with the specified character strings are shown. If the character strings are empty, line continued marks are not shown.

CAUTION: Complicated character strings which consist of multiple scripts or complicated scripts, such as Arabic, Thai, etc., are not supported.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-background-color / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-background-color

The axf:line-continued-mark-background-color specifies the background color of line continued marks. [no-LT]

Value: <color> | transparent

Initial: transparent

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-color / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-color

The axf:line-continued-mark-color specifies the color of line continued marks. [no-LT]

Value: <color>

Initial: depends on the current line area

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-font-family / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-family

The axf:line-continued-mark-font-family specifies the font family of line continued marks. [no-LT]

Value: [<family-name> | <generic-family>]#

Initial: depends on the current line area

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-font-size / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-size

The axf:line-continued-mark-font-size specifies the font size of line continued marks. [no-LT]

Value: <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: depends on the current line area

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-font-style / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-style

The axf:line-continued-mark-font-style specifies whether to make the font style italic. [no-LT]

Value: normal | italic

Initial: depends on the current line area

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-font-weight

The axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight specifies the font weight of line numbers. [no-LT]

Value: normal | bold | bolder | lighter | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900
Initial: depends on the current line area
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:line-continued-mark-offset / CSS -ah-line-continued-mark-offset

The axf:line-continued-mark-offset specifies the offset of line continued marks. [no-LT]

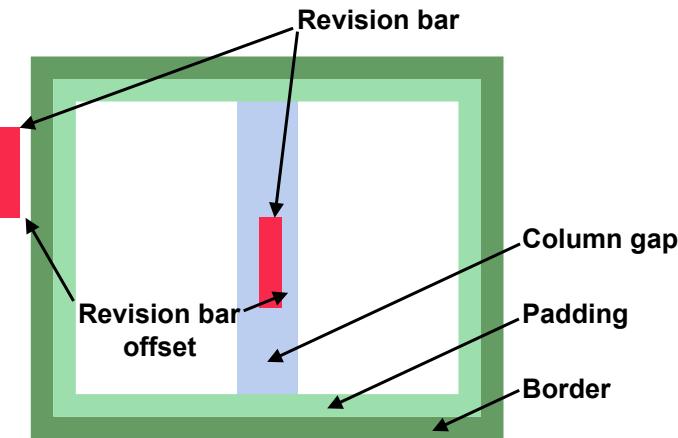
Value: <length>
Initial: 0pt
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Revision Bar

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to layout the revision bars in the documents. The revision bar is shown above the border or the column rule.

CAUTION: A similar function is equipped in XSL1.1. Please make use of fo:change-bar-begin and fo:change-bar-end.



axf:revision-bar-color / CSS -ah-revision-bar-color

The axf:revision-bar-color specifies the color of the revision bar.

Value: <color>
Initial: the value of the 'color' property
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:revision-bar-offset / CSS -ah-revision-bar-offset

The axf:revision-bar-offset specifies the offset of the revision bar.

Value: <length>
Initial: 0pt
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:revision-bar-position / CSS -ah-revision-bar-position

The axf:revision-bar-position specifies the position of the revision bar.

Value: start | end | inside | outside | alternate | both

Initial: start
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

start

Places revision bar at start-edge.

end

Places revision bar at end-edge.

inside

Places revision bar at start-edge on odd pages, at end-edge on even pages.

outside

Places revision bar at end-edge on odd pages, at start-edge on even pages.

alternate

Places revision bar at end-edge in the last column of multi-column layout, except for the last column, places it at start-edge.

both

Places revision bar at start-edge and end-edge.

axf:revision-bar-style / CSS -ah-revision-bar-style

The axf:revision-bar-style specifies the style of the revision bar.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:revision-bar-width / CSS -ah-revision-bar-width

The axf:revision-bar-width specifies the width of the revision bar.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: medium
Applies to: all block-level and inline-level formatting objects which are descendants of fo:flow
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-class

[\[CSS3-GCPM\] Change bars](#)

Value: <name>
Initial: N/A
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] change-bar-class](#)

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-color

[\[CSS3-GCPM\] Change bars](#)

Value: <color>
Initial: the value of the 'color' property
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] change-bar-color](#)

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-offset

[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars

Value: <length>
Initial: 6pt
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] change-bar-offset

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-side

[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars

Value: start | end | left | right | inside | outside | alternate
Initial: start
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] change-bar-placement

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-style

[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] change-bar-style

CSS (-ah-)change-bar-width

[CSS3-GCPM] Change bars

Value: <border-width>
Initial: medium
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] change-bar-width

Footnote

(-ah-)float is used to create footnotes and sidenotes in CSS. See also "[Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS](#)".

Footnote Positioning

With **AH Formatter V6.2**, footnotes can be arranged per each column or footnotes duplicated in the same page can be deleted. Also, sidenotes can be generated.

axf:footnote-align

Specifies the alignment of the footnotes.

Value: auto | before | after
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:footnote
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Footnotes are placed automatically. Footnotes are the usual arrangement. When the text is one column, sidenotes are arranged with an anchor position, and in the case of 2 or more columns, sidenotes are arranged near by the before side.

before

Sidenotes are arranged near by the before side. In the case of usual footnotes which are not sidenotes, footnotes are arranged immediately after the text in a page.

after

Sidenotes are arranged near by the after side. In the case of usual footnotes which are not sidenotes, footnotes are arranged at the last of a page.

Specifies the method of arrangement of footnotes or sidenotes. When it is sidenotes (footnote arrangement into region-start or region-end is specified by [axf:footnote-position](#)), it's possible to specify whether it is arranged automatically, or it is arranged near by the before side, or it is arranged near by the after side.

axf:footnote-stacking

The axf:footnote-stacking specifies the method to layout the footnote.

Value: block | inline

Initial: block

Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:footnote

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

block

Arranges the footnotes in the block progression direction.

inline

Arranges the footnotes in the inline progression direction.

axf:footnote-position

The axf:footnote-position specifies the location to layout the footnote.

Value: page | start | end | inside | outside | column | start-column | end-column | inside-column | outside-column

Initial: page

Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:footnote

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

page

Footnotes are placed at the bottom of each page in region-body. This is the standard layout of XSL specification.

start

Footnotes are placed at each page in region-start.

end

Footnotes are placed at each page in region-end.

inside

Footnotes are placed at each even-page in region-end and each odd-page in region-start.

outside

Footnotes are placed at each even-page in region-start and each odd-page in region-end.

column

Footnotes are placed at the bottom of each column.

start-column

Footnotes are placed at the bottom of the first column.

end-column

Footnotes are placed at the bottom of the last column.

inside-column

Footnotes are placed in the same way as end-column at even-page and in the same way as start-column at odd-page.

outside-column

Footnotes are placed in the same way as start-column at even-page and in the same way as end-column at odd-page.

It is possible to arrange footnotes inside the region-start or the region-end (these notes are called sidenotes). Besides specifying them to fo:region-body, it is also effective to specify to individual fo:footnote. It is possible to make several types of notes intermingled by this extension.

There are following restrictions for sidenotes.

- The sidenotes which run over from the specified area will overflow.
- The xsl-footnote-separator is not effective.

start-column, end-column, inside-column and outside-column have the following limitations.

- It is not possible to specify these values to fo:footnote. It is only available to specify them to region-body.
- When you specify these values to region-body, column cannot be specified to fo:footnote.
- These values cannot be used with the forcible column break such as break-before="column", etc. These values cannot be used for a large volume of footnotes.

axf:footnote-keep

Specifies whether to arrange a footnote and an anchor in the same page

Value: auto | always

Initial: auto

Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:footnote

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

When a footnote does not fit within the column, it is sent to the next page or the next column.

always

When a footnote does not fit within the column, the following line of the anchor and the subsequent lines are sent to the following page, and a footnote and an anchor are arranged in the same page. When [axf:footnote-position="column"](#) is specified, a footnote and an anchor are arranged in the same column.

axf:footnote-max-height

Specifies the maximum height of footnote. V6.2

Value: auto | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: auto

Applies to: fo:region-body

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the height of the page

Specifies the maximum height of footnote. The behavior when **auto** is specified depends on the value of [auto-break-footnote](#) in the Option Setting File.

- When axf:footnote-max-height="auto" and auto-break-footnote="false" are specified

Up to **AH Formatter V6.1**, page break (column break) did not occur within footnote-body. This setting performs such previous operation. In case a footnote is big and exceeds the page height, an overflow occurs. However, only in case a footnote is small, is it possible to format without breaking a footnote.

- When axf:footnote-max-height="auto" and auto-break-footnote="true" are specified

It is considered that auto-break-footnote="page height" is specified and page break (column break) occurs within footnote-body.

- When axf:footnote-max-height="value" is specified

The value must be a positive. auto-break-footnote is not referred to. At this time, page (column) break may occur within footnote-body. The footnote will be put after an anchor position as much as possible and the remaining part will be split and sent to the next page (Column).

These features are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:suppress-duplicate-footnote

Specifies whether to delete footnotes duplicated in the same page.

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:footnote

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Deters the display of duplicated footnotes on the same footnote region when the same footnote is assigned to 2 or more places in the same page. When [axf:footnote-position="column"](#) is specified, it is effective only for the footnote in the same column.

Footnote Numbering

These features are not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

<axf:footnote-number>

Common Usage:

Generates a footnote number. [no-LT]

Areas:

Generates and returns a single normal inline-area.

Constraints:

<axf:footnote-number> can be specified only as an anchor area. That is, it can be specified only as a descendant of <fo:inline> which is a child of <fo:footnote>.

Contents:

EMPTY

This element is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

<axf:footnote-number-citation>

Common Usage:

Cites a footnote number. [no-LT]

Areas:

Generates and returns a single normal inline-area.

Constraints:

<axf:footnote-number-citation> can be specified only as a descendant of <fo:footnote-body>. The ref-id property is required, and the ID should be referenced by <axf:footnote-number> in the same anchor area.

Contents:

EMPTY

This element is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:footnote-number-format

Specifies the format of footnote number. [no-LT]

Value: <string>

Initial: 1

Applies to: fo:page-sequence

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Adopted as a format of [axf:footnote-number](#). It can be specified in the same way as the [format](#) property.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:footnote-number-initial

Specifies the initial footnote number. [no-LT]

Value: auto | <number>
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Succeeded from the before existing fo:page-sequence without initializing a footnote number. When fo:page-sequence does not exist before, it is set to 1.

<number>

Initializes the footnote number with the specified value. The value must be greater than or equal to 1. Actual initialization takes place at the time when [axf:footnote-number-reset](#) is specified.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:footnote-number-reset

Resets the footnote numbering. [no-LT]

Value: auto | none | page | odd-page | even-page | column
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:page-sequence
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Succeeded from the before existing fo:page-sequence. When fo:page-sequence does not exist before, it is set to none.

none

Does not reset the footnote number.

page

Resets the footnote number when a page breaks.

odd-page

Resets the footnote number when an odd page breaks.

even-page

Resets the footnote number when an even page breaks.

column

Resets the footnote number when a column breaks.

A footnote number is reset by the value specified by [axf:footnote-number-initial](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Columns

In FO, these properties are placed as fo:region-body and fo:block-container.

CSS (-ah-)columns

[CSS3-Multicol] 'columns'

Value: [[<integer> | auto] || [<length> | auto]]
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: block-level elements

Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

column-count / CSS (-ah-)column-count

[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-count'

Value: <number> (XSL) / <number> | auto (CSS)
Initial: 1 (XSL) / auto (CSS)
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

column-gap / CSS (-ah-)column-gap

[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-gap'

Value: <length> | <percentage> (XSL) / <length> | normal (CSS)
Initial: 12pt (XSL) / normal (CSS)
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: refer to width of the fo:block-container
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)column-span

[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-span'

Value: none | all
Initial: none
Applies to: static, non-floating elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)column-width

[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-width'

Value: <length> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:column-fill / CSS (-ah-)column-fill

Specifies whether to balance the column height. [CSS3-Multicol] 'column-fill'

Value: auto | balance
Initial: balance
Applies to: multi-column elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Do not balance the height. However if span="all" is specified, it is balanced before the spanned column.

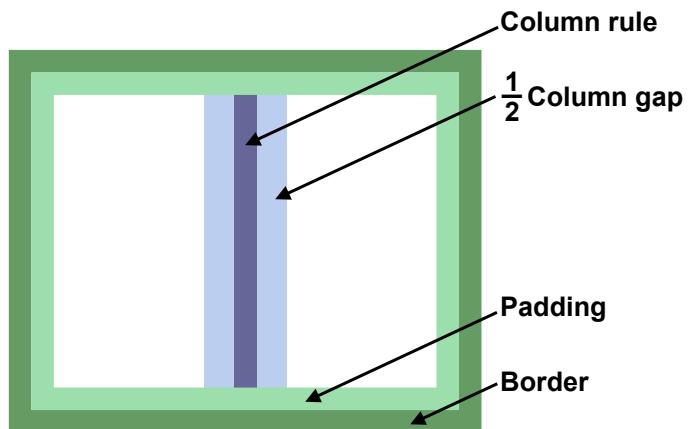
balance

Balance the height.

Column Rule

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to layout the column rules in the column gaps. The column rule is placed above the border and below the revision bar.

CAUTION: The following figure shows the associated width in FO. In CSS, the width of column-rule in column-gap is not taken into consideration.



CSS (-ah-)column-rule

[CSS3-Multicol] 'column-rule'

Value: <border-width> || <border-style> || [<color> | transparent]
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: multi-column elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:column-rule-align / CSS -ah-column-rule-align

The axf:column-rule-align specifies the alignment of the column rule.

Value: before | center | after
Initial: center
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:column-rule-color / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-color

The axf:column-rule-color specifies the color of the column rule. [CSS3-Multicol] 'column-rule-color'

Value: <color>
Initial: the value of the 'color' property
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:column-rule-display / CSS -ah-column-rule-display

axf:column-rule-display specifies whether to also display a rule at the place where column gaps do not exist..

Value: gap | end | all
Initial: gap
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

gap

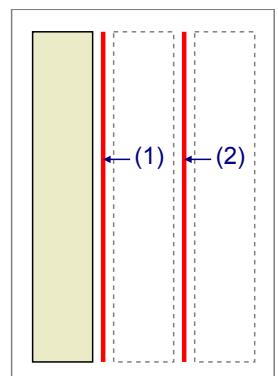
Displays a rule only between the existing columns.

end

Displays a rule at the end side of the existing column. However, the most end side of the column is not included.

all

Displays all rules between the non-existing columns at the end of a page, etc.



Suppose contents are only in the left column of the three columns as shown in the figure on the right. When **gap** is specified, rules are not displayed at all. When **end** is specified, a rule (1) is displayed, when **all** is specified, rules (1) and (2) are displayed.

axf:column-rule-length / CSS -ah-column-rule-length

The axf:column-rule-length specifies the length of the column rule.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 100%
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the height of the column

In case where the column is short by specifying span="all" in FO, or in case of the block containing columns in CSS, that height of the column indicates 100%.

axf:column-rule-style / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-style

The axf:column-rule-style specifies the style of the column rule. [CSS3-Multicol] 'column-rule-style'

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:column-rule-width / CSS (-ah-)column-rule-width

The axf:column-rule-width specifies the width of the column rule. [CSS3-Multicol] 'column-rule-width'

Value: <border-width>
Initial: medium
Applies to: fo:region-body, fo:block-container
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Borders

CSS -ah-border-after

Specifies the border of the after side.

Value: <border-width> || <border-style> || <color>
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: same as 'border'
Inherited: no
Percentages: see individual properties

This is a shorthand property for setting the width, style, and color of the after side.

CSS -ah-border-before

Specifies the border of the before side.

Value: <border-width> || <border-style> || <color>
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: same as 'border'
Inherited: no
Percentages: see individual properties

This is a shorthand property for setting the width, style, and color of the before side.

CSS -ah-border-end

Specifies the border of the end side.

Value: <border-width> || <border-style> || <color>
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: same as 'border'
Inherited: no
Percentages: see individual properties

This is a shorthand property for setting the width, style, and color of the end side.

CSS -ah-border-start

Specifies the border of the start side.

Value: <border-width> || <border-style> || <color>
Initial: see individual properties
Applies to: same as 'border'
Inherited: no
Percentages: see individual properties

This is a shorthand property for setting the width, style, and color of the start side.

CSS -ah-border-after-color

Specifies the border color of the after side.

Value: <color>
Initial: currentColor
Applies to: same as 'border-color'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] border-after-color

CSS -ah-border-before-color

Specifies the border color of the before side.

Value: <color>
Initial: currentColor
Applies to: same as 'border-color'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] border-before-color

CSS -ah-border-end-color

Specifies the border color of the end side.

Value: <color>
Initial: currentColor
Applies to: same as 'border-color'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] border-end-color

CSS -ah-border-start-color

Specifies the border color of the start side.

Value: <color>
Initial: currentColor
Applies to: same as 'border-color'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] border-start-color

CSS -ah-border-after-style

Specifies the border style of the after side.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-style'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] border-after-style

CSS -ah-border-before-style

Specifies the border style of the before side.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-style'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] border-before-style](#)

CSS -ah-border-end-style

Specifies the border style of the end side.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-style'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] border-end-style](#)

CSS -ah-border-start-style

Specifies the border style of the start side.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-style'
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] border-start-style](#)

CSS -ah-border-after-width

Specifies the border width of the after side.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] border-after-width](#)

CSS -ah-border-before-width

Specifies the border width of the before side.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] border-before-width](#)

CSS -ah-border-end-width

Specifies the border width of the end side.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] border-end-width](#)

CSS -ah-border-start-width

Specifies the border width of the start side.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'border-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] border-start-width

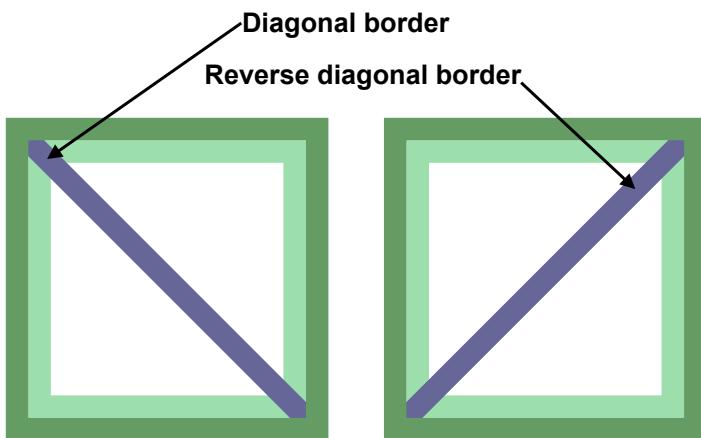
CSS (-ah-)border-length

[CSS3-GCPM] The 'border-length' property

Value: <length> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to width of element

Diagonal Border

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to draw the diagonal border in the area such as the table cell where the border can be specified. The diagonal border by axf:diagonal-border-* is drawn from the edge of before-start to the edge of after-end. The diagonal border by axf:reverse-diagonal-border-* is drawn from the edge of before-end to the edge of after-start. When the writing-mode="lr-tb" is specified, the diagonal border is drawn as follows. When the writing-mode="rl-tb" or "tb-rl" is specified, it is drawn in a reverse way.



axf:diagonal-border-color / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-color

The axf:diagonal-border-color specifies the color of the diagonal border.

Value: <color>
Initial: the value of the 'color' property
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:diagonal-border-style / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-style

The axf:diagonal-border-style specifies the style of the diagonal border.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

axf:diagonal-border-width / CSS -ah-diagonal-border-width

The axf:diagonal-border-width specifies the width of the diagonal border.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: medium
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-color

The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color specifies the color of the reverse diagonal border.

Value: <color>
Initial: the value of the 'color' property
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-style

The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style specifies the style of the reverse diagonal border.

Value: <border-style>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

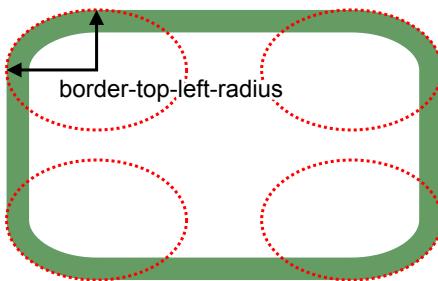
axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width / CSS -ah-reverse-diagonal-border-width

The axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width specifies the width of the reverse diagonal border.

Value: <border-width>
Initial: medium
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Rounding Border**axf:border-radius / CSS (-ah-)border-radius****axf:border-top-left-radius / CSS (-ah-)border-top-left-radius****axf:border-top-right-radius / CSS (-ah-)border-top-right-radius****axf:border-bottom-left-radius / CSS (-ah-)border-bottom-left-radius****axf:border-bottom-right-radius / CSS (-ah-)border-bottom-right-radius**

Specifies the radii of the rounded corners. [\[CSS3-Background\] Curve Radii: the 'border-radius' properties](#)



Value: [<length>|<percentage>] [<length>|<percentage>]?
Initial: 0
Applies to: all elements which can have borders
Inherited: no
Percentages: border box [V6.2MR3]

The first value is the horizontal radius (or vertical if the 'writing-mode' is vertical). If the second length is omitted it is equal to the first. If either length is less or equal 0, the corner is square, not rounded. For rounded table borders, when border-collapse="collapse" is specified, border-radius is effective only when specified to fo:table.

Box Shadow

axf:box-shadow / CSS (-ah-)box-shadow

Specifies the box shadow. [CSS3-Background] Drop Shadows: the 'box-shadow' property

Value: none | inset? && [<length>{2,4} && <color>?]#

Initial: none

Applies to: all elements which can have borders

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

No shadow is displayed.

inset

An inner shadow is displayed. This setting is ignored with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite. [V6.2] [no-LT]

The meanings of <length>s and a <color> are as follows:

- The first <length> is an offset of a horizontal shadow. It becomes a right-side shadow of a region when a positive value is specified. It becomes a left-side shadow of a region when a negative value is specified.
- The second <length> is an offset of a vertical shadow. It becomes a bottom-side shadow of a region when a positive value is specified. It becomes a top-side shadow of a region when a negative value is specified.
- The 3rd <length> must be a non-negative value and specifies the blur radius. If the value is 0, there is no blur. This setting is ignored with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite. [V6.2] [no-LT]
- The 4th <length> extends a shadow. When a positive value is specified, the region will be expanded. When a negative value is specified, the region will be reduced. [V6.2] [no-LT]
- The color of the shadow can be specified by <color>.

This combination can be specified multiply and shadows can be added several times over. [V6.2]

CAUTION: The minimum unit of <length> which can be specified is 1/96in=0.265mm. The value is rounded to its multiple number.

CAUTION: The blur is invalid with the device which cannot output transparency like PDF/X.

Table

<axf:table-cell-repeated-marker>

Common Usage:

Specifies the contents to be displayed in the split cell. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Areas:

This element does not generate a region directly.

Constraints:

Available to specify only one as a first child (except for a marker) of fo:table-cell.

Contents:

(#PCDATA|%inline;%block;)*

When `axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break="true"` is specified and `<axf:table-cell-repeated-marker>` is contained in the cell, the contents of `<axf:table-cell-repeated-marker>` is used instead of the contents of the cell. This element is not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.

axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break / CSS -ah-repeat-cell-content-at-break

axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break specifies whether to copy the contents of a cell when a cell breaks.

Value: true | false

Initial: false

Applies to: fo:table-cell

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

When the content of table cell fits in table-cell-area without breaking and table-cell-area breaks according to the break of other table-cell in the same row, or according to the break among the plural rows with number-rows-spanned, usually the content of table-cell-area becomes empty. When axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break is specified to table-cell, the content of the cell before break is copied and repeated.

false

The content of the cell is not copied.

axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-footer / CSS -ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-footer

Specifies whether to repeat the fo:footnote in the fo:table-footer that is repeated by table-omit-footer-at-break="false".

Value: true | false

Initial: true

Applies to: fo:table-footer

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Process fo:footnote repeatedly.

false

Do not process fo:footnote repeatedly.

axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-header / CSS -ah-repeat-footnote-in-table-header

Specifies whether to repeat the fo:footnote in the fo:table-header that is repeated by table-omit-header-at-break="false".

Value: true | false

Initial: true

Applies to: fo:table-header

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Process fo:footnote repeatedly.

false

Do not process fo:footnote repeatedly.

axf:table-summary / CSS -ah-table-summary

Describes the table summary.

Value: <string>

Initial: empty

Applies to: fo:table

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

This is equivalent to <table summary> in HTML. It doesn't affect the formatting result. It is outputted with Tagged PDF.

CSS (-ah-)table-column-span

[CSS3-Tables] table-column-span and table-row-span properties

Value: <number> | attr(...)

Initial: 1

Applies to: table cells

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] number-columns-spanned

CSS (-ah-)table-row-span

[CSS3-Tables] table-column-span and table-row-span properties

Value: <number> | attr(...)
Initial: 1
Applies to: table cells
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

 [XSL1.1] number-rows-spanned

Images, Multimedia

axf:alttext / CSS -ah-alttext / HTML alt

Specifies the alternate text of the image.

Value: <string>
Initial: empty string
Applies to: fo:external-graphic, fo:instream-foreign-object
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Effective when outputting [Tagged PDF](#). When there is no specification of axf:alttext, the value of the role property is used as an alternate text. But, since it's not an original use of the role property, it's not recommended.

axf:image-resolution / CSS (-ah-)image-resolution

Specifies the resolution of an image. [\[CSS3-GCPM\] Image resolution](#)

Value: normal | [from-image || <dpi>]
Initial: from-image (XSL) / normal (CSS)
Applies to: fo:external-graphic, fo:instream-foreign-object
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Depends on the default value of the system. It's the value specified as `pxpi` in the Option Setting File. Ignores the actual resolution of an image.

from-image

Uses the actual resolution of an image. When an image does not have the resolution, it will follow the `<dpi>` specification. If nothing is specified, it is the same as normal.

<dpi>

Specifies the resolution (dpi) Ignores the actual resolution of an image.

The resolution of a background image is specified by [axf:background-image-resolution](#). In case of vector images, such as SVG, it is applied to numerical values with no units. from-image is ignored.

axf:image-smoothing / CSS -ah-image-smoothing

Specifies whether to process anti-aliasing of an image on the screen.

Value: auto | true | false
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:external-graphic fo:instream-foreign-object
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Depends on [smoothing settings in GUI](#).

true

Processes anti-aliasing of an image.

false

Does not process anti-aliasing of an image.

axf:background-content-width / CSS -ah-background-content-width
axf:background-content-height / CSS -ah-background-content-height
axf:background-content-type / CSS -ah-background-content-type
axf:background-scaling / CSS -ah-background-scaling

content-width, content-height, content-type, and scaling can be applied to background-image, which are the same properties applied to fo:external-graphic.

axf:background-image-resolution / CSS -ah-background-image-resolution

Specifies the resolution of a background image.

Value: normal | [from-image || <dpi>]
Initial: from-image (XSL) / normal (CSS)
Applies to: fo:external-graphic, fo:instream-foreign-object
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Depends on the default value of the system. It's the value specified as [pxpi](#) in the Option Setting File. Ignores the actual resolution of an image.

from-image

Uses the actual resolution of an image. When an image does not have the resolution, it will follow the <dpi> specification. If nothing is specified, it is the same as normal.

<dpi>

Specifies the resolution (dpi) Ignores the actual resolution of an image.

The resolution of a non-background image is specified by [axf:image-resolution](#). In case of vector images, such as SVG, it is applied to numerical values with no units. from-image is ignored.

CSS (-ah-)background-clip

[\[CSS3-Background\]](#) The 'background-clip' property

Value: [border-box | padding-box | content-box | no-clip] [, [border-box | padding-box | content-box | no-clip]]*
Initial: border-box
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)background-origin

[\[CSS3-Background\]](#) The 'background-origin' property

Value: [border-box | padding-box | content-box] [, [border-box | padding-box | content-box]]*
Initial: padding-box
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)background-size

[\[CSS3-Background\]](#) The 'background-size' property

Value: [[<length> | <percentage> | auto]{1,2} | cover | contain] [, [<length> | <percentage> | auto]{1,2} | cover | contain]*
Initial: auto
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no

Percentages: see text

axf:poster-image / CSS -ah-poster-image

Specifies the poster image for embedded multimedia. [no-LT]

Value: <uri-specification> | none | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<uri-specification>

Specifies the URL of the poster image. Multimedia, such as video or audio, cannot be specified.

none

Specifies no poster images.

auto

Uses the plain fallback image for the poster image.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

See also [Multimedia](#).

axf:poster-content-type / CSS -ah-poster-content-type

Specifies the content type of the poster image for embedded multimedia. [no-LT]

Value: <string> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<string>

Specifies the content type of the poster image.

auto

Recognizes the content type from the poster image.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

See also [Multimedia](#).

axf:show-controls / CSS -ah-show-controls

Specifies whether to show the player control bar for multimedia. [no-LT]

Value: true | false
Initial: false
Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

true

Shows the player control bar.

false

Does not show the player control bar.

The control bar is shown under the playing multimedia object. To prevent overlapping the control bar with another object, it is necessary to make enough space below the multimedia object.

CAUTION: Whether the control bar is shown or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

See also [Multimedia](#).

axf:media-volume / CSS (-ah-)media-volume

Specifies the volume of the sound when playing the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: <percentage>

Initial: 100%

Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects

Inherited: no

CAUTION: Whether the setting is effective or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:media-play-mode / CSS (-ah-)media-play-mode

Specifies the number of times to play the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: once | continuously | <number>

Initial: once

Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects

Inherited: no

Values have the following meanings.

once

Plays the multimedia only one time.

continuously

Plays the multimedia continuously.

<number>

Plays the multimedia only the specified number of times.

CAUTION: Whether the setting is effective or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:media-duration / CSS (-ah-)media-duration

Specifies the duration of a time period of the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: intrinsic | infinity | <number>

Initial: intrinsic

Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects

Inherited: no

Values have the following meanings.

intrinsic

Plays the multimedia only the period of time that the resource has.

infinity

Plays the multimedia indefinitely.

<number>

Plays the multimedia only the specified period of time. The value is the number of seconds.

This setting is invalid when `axf:media-play-mode="once"` is specified.

CAUTION: Whether the setting is effective or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:media-extraction-policy / CSS (-ah-)media-extraction-policy

Specifies whether the creation of temporary files is allowed or not when playing the multimedia. [V6.2] [no-LT]

Value: tempnever | tempextract | tempaccess | tempalways
Initial: tempaccess
Applies to: fo:external-graphic / multimedia objects
Inherited: no

Values have the following meanings.

tempnever

The creation of temporary files is not allowed.

tempextract

Only when the "copy of the contents" is given to the user right to access PDF, the creation of temporary files is allowed.

tempaccess

Only when the "content extraction for accessibility" is given to the user right to access PDF, the creation of temporary files is allowed.

tempalways

The creation of temporary files is always allowed.

CAUTION: Whether the setting is effective or not depends on the multimedia data, the viewer or the player.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Overflow Extensions

AH Formatter V6.2 extends the value of the [overflow](#) property and provides the extension property to regulate the behavior of the value.

axf:overflow-align / CSS -ah-overflow-align

Specifies the alignment of the overflowed block.

Value: normal | start | end | center
Initial: normal
Applies to: block-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

normal

Specifies the alignment of the block according to the text-align setting.

start

Specifies the alignment of the block to the start side.

end

Specifies the alignment of the block to the end side.

center

Specifies the block to center aligned.

axf:overflow-condense / CSS -ah-overflow-condense

The axf:overflow-condense specifies how to condense the overflowed text within the region.

Value: letter-spacing | font-stretch | font-size | line-height | auto | none
Initial: auto
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

letter-spacing

Condenses the text by adjusting the letter spacing.

font-stretch

Condenses the text by adjusting the font width.

font-size

Condenses the text by adjusting the font size.

line-height

Condenses the text by adjusting the line height.

auto

Dependent on the system setting.

none

Specifies not to condense the text. This can also be specified to the in-line element and is not inherited.

Condensing the text within the region can be specified with the properties [overflow="condense"](#). The adjustment for condensing the text includes both the inline progression direction and the block progression direction. The system will process the specified method by combining the methods considered as suitable.

There is a difference in the condensation process between inline and block. The condensation process occurs in the inline when there is only one line with [`<fo:inline-container>`](#) or [`<fo:block-container keep-together.within-line="always">`](#) etc. In other cases, the condensation process occurs in the block.

The length of the absolute value specified inside the block will not be adjusted. For example, in the following case, the length will not be adjusted.

```
<fo:block-container width="4in" overflow="condense" axf:overflow-condense="font-size">
  this text will be condensed
  <fo:block font-size="24pt">no condensed text</fo:block>
</fo:block-container>
```

Moreover, when the adjustment by font-size or font-stretch in the block takes place, [text-align-last="justify"](#) is set implicitly. Please specify [text-align-last="left"](#) etc., explicitly when justify is unnecessary.

axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size / CSS -ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-size

[axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size](#) specifies the minimum font size when [axf:overflow-condense="font-size"](#) is specified.

Value: `<length> [visible | hidden | scroll | error-if-overflow | repeat]`

Initial: `0pt`

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<length>

Specifies the minimum font size. A font is not made smaller than that value. It is invalid when 0 or less are specified.

When the content exceeds the limit shown by `<length>`, the region still overflows. Then a solution can be specified as follows.

```
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size="4pt hidden"
```

axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch / CSS -ah-overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch

[axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch](#) specifies the minimum value when [axf:overflow-condense="font-stretch"](#) is specified.

Value: `[<number> | <percentage>] [visible | hidden | scroll | error-if-overflow | repeat]`

Initial: `0`

Applies to: all block-level formatting objects

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

<percentage>

Specifies the percentage against the minimum font width. Font size becomes above this percentage. The 0 or less percentage value is invalid.

<number>

Equivalent to <percentage> / 100.

When the content exceeds the limit shown by <percentage> or <number>, the region still overflows. Then a solution can be specified as follows.

```
axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch="30% hidden"
```

axf:overflow-replace / CSS -ah-overflow-replace

An alternative character string for the specified overflow text.

Value: <string>
Initial: depends on system
Applies to: all block-level formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

When [overflow="replace"](#) is specified, the overflow text is replaced by repeating the specified string. The font shown by an alternative character string is decided to one font by the value of the script property or the typical script of its own. A complex character string cannot be specified.

axf:overflow-limit / CSS -ah-overflow-limit

Specifies the overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]

Value: <length>{1,2}
Initial: depends on system
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

The lengths specify the overflow limit values. If one length is specified, it gives both the inline and block overflow limit values. If two are specified, the first gives the inline overflow limit value and the second the block overflow limit value. Lengths may not be negative.

When [overflow="error-if-overflow"](#) is specified, overflows greater than the overflow limit value are reported as error level 2 (warning) "Area Overflow" and smaller overflows are reported as error level 1 (information) "Area Overflow, minor".

The initial values of the overflow limit can be set by [overflow-limit-inline](#) and [overflow-limit-block](#) in the Option Setting File.

This is a shorthand property for setting [axf:overflow-limit-inline](#) and [axf:overflow-limit-block](#).

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:overflow-limit-inline / CSS -ah-overflow-limit-inline

Specifies the inline overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]

Value: <length>
Initial: depends on system
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

The length specifies the inline overflow limit value. The length may not be negative.

See [axf:overflow-limit](#) for details.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

axf:overflow-limit-block / CSS -ah-overflow-limit-block

Specifies the block overflow limit value. [V6.2MR3] [no-LT]

Value: <length>
Initial: depends on system
Applies to: all formatting objects
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

The length specifies the block overflow limit value. The length may not be negative.

See [axf:overflow-limit](#) for details.

This property is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Extended Applies

AH Formatter V6.2 has properties and elements whose applicable targets are extended.

<fo:change-bar-begin>

Extends the child element so that <fo:float> can be described as the content of the element. As a result, arbitrary characters can be placed for side marks. [no-LT]

```
<fo:change-bar-begin change-bar-class="xxx">
<fo:float float="start">
<fo:block-container width="2.5em" absolute-position="absolute" left="-4em">
<fo:block font-size="12pt">This is a change log.</fo:block>
</fo:block-container>
</fo:float>
</fo:change-bar-begin>
```

This extension is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Page Background

AH Formatter V6.2 provides extension properties to set the background of the page. These properties are placed as fo:simple-page-master or fo:page-sequence.

background-color

Value: <color> | transparent
Initial: transparent
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master, fo:page-sequence, all formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

background-image

Value: <uri-specification> | none
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master, fo:page-sequence, all formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

background-position-horizontal

Value: <percentage> | <length> | left | center | right
Initial: 0%
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master, fo:page-sequence, all formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of the padding-rectangle

background-position-vertical

Value: <percentage> | <length> | top | center | bottom
Initial: 0%
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master, fo:page-sequence, all formatting objects
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of the padding-rectangle

background-repeat

Following bold value is extended.

Value: repeat | repeat-x | repeat-y | no-repeat | **paginate**
Initial: repeat
Applies to: fo:simple-page-master, fo:page-sequence, all formatting objects
Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Extended values have the following meanings.

paginate

Effective when embedding PDF in the background image and indicates to embed plural pages of PDF. For details, please refer to [PDF Embedding](#). This value cannot be specified by **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

Extended Values

AH Formatter V6.2 extends some values of the FO properties. In order to use these values, you have to specify exactly as follows:

`axf:overflow="condense"`

However, with **AH Formatter V6.2**, even if axf: is not added, it is made so that it may function similarly. Moreover, the FO standard property and the extended property can be specified simultaneously as follows:

`overflow="hidden" axf:overflow="condense"`

At this time, the standard property will be overwritten by the extended property and only axf:overflow="condense" becomes effective. That is, it is the same as having overflow="condense" specified. However, in order to avoid the confusion, please do not use such specification.

display-align / CSS -ah-display-align

Following bold value is extended.

Value: auto | before | center | after | **justify**

Values have the following meanings.

justify

Justifies the text to block-progression dimension by adjusting the space between lines.

font-size-adjust / CSS (-ah-)font-size-adjust

Following bold value is extended. [\[CSS3-Fonts\]](#) Relative sizing: the font-size-adjust property

Value: none | <number> | **<string>**

Values have the following meanings.

<string>

Considers a character string as a font name and acquires the x-height value of the font. When a font does not exist or it does not have x-height information, it is regarded as none.

font-stretch / CSS (-ah-)font-stretch

Following bold values are extended. [\[CSS3-Fonts\]](#) Font width: the font-stretch property

Value: normal | wider | narrower | ultra-condensed | extra-condensed | condensed | semi-condensed | semi-expanded | expanded | extra-expanded | ultra-expanded | **<percentage>** | **<number>**

Values have the following meanings.

<percentage>

Specifies the percentage against the font width.

<number>

Equivalent to <percentage> / 100.

font-variant / CSS (-ah-)font-variant

Following bold values are extended. [\[CSS3-Fonts\]](#) Overall shorthand for font rendering: the font-variant property

Value: normal | **none** | [**<font-variant-caps>** || **<font-variant-numeric>** || **<font-variant-alternates>** || **<font-variant-ligatures>** || **<font-variant-position>** || **<font-variant-east-asian>**]

<font-variant-caps> = small-caps | all-small-caps | petite-caps | all-petite-caps | titling-caps | unicase

<font-variant-numeric>	= <numeric-figure-values> <numeric-spacing-values> <numeric-fraction-values>
<numeric-figure-values>	= ordinal slashed-zero
<numeric-spacing-values>	= lining-nums oldstyle-nums
<numeric-fraction-values>	= proportional-nums tabular-nums
<font-variant-alternates>	= diagonal-fractions stacked-fractions
<font-variant-ligatures>	= historical-forms stylistic(<number>) swash(<number>) ornament(<number>) annotation(<number>) styleset(<number>#) character-variant(<number>#) [V6.2]
<common-lig-values>	= <common-lig-values> <discretionary-lig-values> <historical-lig-values> <contextual-alt-values> [V6.2]
<discretionary-lig-values>	= common-ligatures no-common-ligatures [V6.2]
<historical-lig-values>	= discretionary-ligatures no-discretionary-ligatures [V6.2]
<contextual-alt-values>	= historical-ligatures no-historical-ligatures [V6.2]
<font-variant-position>	= contextual no-contextual [V6.2]
<font-variant-east-asian>	= sub super [V6.2]
<east-asian-variant-values>	= <east-asian-variant-values> <east-asian-width-values> ruby [V6.2]
<east-asian-width-values>	= jis78 jis83 jis90 jis04 hojo-kanji nikkaji simplified traditional
	= full-width half-width third-width quarter-width proportional-width

These are achieved by using the GSUB feature of OpenType fonts. small-caps and all-small-caps are emulated to the fonts which don't have the GSUB feature. The other is disregarded.

force-page-count

Following bold values are extended.

Value: auto | even | **doubly-even** | odd | end-on-even | **end-on-doubly-even** | end-on-odd | **doubly-even-document** | [**end-on** | **document**] <number> [<number>] | no-force

Values have the following meanings.

doubly-even

Force an doubly-even number of pages in this page-sequence.

end-on-doubly-even

Force the last page in this page-sequence to be an doubly-even-page.

doubly-even-document

Force the number of pages counted from the document head to be an doubly-even number.

[**end-on** | **document**] <number> [<number>] [no-LT]

Suppose that the first <number> is A, the next <number> is B, the number of pages of specified page-sequence is set as a multiple number of A + B. A must be an integer greater than or equal to 1, B must be an integer greater than or equal to 0 and less than A. When B is omitted, it is regarded as 0. when end-on was specified, the page number of the last page of the specified page-sequence is applied. When document is specified, The number of the page counted from the beginning of the document is applied. For example (assuming 5 pages of content in a page sequence):

- force-page-count="even"
equivalent to force-page-count="2"
- force-page-count="odd"
equivalent to force-page-count="2 1"
- force-page-count="doubly-even"
equivalent to force-page-count="4"
- force-page-count="end-on-doubly-even"
equivalent to force-page-count="end-on 4"
- force-page-count="end-on 2"
total number of pages is 6 with 1 blank page
- force-page-count="end-on 4"
total number of pages is 8 with 3 blank page
- force-page-count="end-on 4 1"
total number of pages is 5 with 0 blank pages
- force-page-count="end-on 4 3"
total number of pages is 7 with 2 blank pages
- force-page-count="end-on 6 5"
total number of pages is 5 with 0 blank pages
- force-page-count="end-on 6 4"
total number of pages is 10 with 5 blank pages

format

The format tokens for the format property supports the format tokens defined in the XSLT 1.0 Recommendation and some extensions. [axf:column-number-format](#) is also the same.

- Numerals

Regular decimal representation of the numbers is generated. The minimum number of figures can be specified as 01, 001, etc. The following numbers can be specified as a format token.

Format Token		Digits	Description
1	0		
U+0031	U+0030	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	DIGIT
U+00B9	U+2070	۰ ۱ ۲ ۳ ۴ ۵ ۶ ۷ ۸ ۹	SUPERSCRIPT DIGIT
U+0661	U+0660	߱ ߲ ߳ ߴ ߵ ߶ ߷ ߸ ߹ ߹	ARABIC-INDIC DIGIT
U+06F1	U+06F0	߱ ߲ ߳ ߴ ߵ ߶ ߷ ߸ ߹ ߹	EXTENDED ARABIC-INDIC DIGIT
U+0967	U+0966	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	DEVANAGARI DIGIT
U+09E7	U+09E6	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	BENGALI DIGIT
U+0A67	U+0A66	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	GURMUKHI DIGIT
U+0AE7	U+0AE6	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	GUJARATI DIGIT
U+0B67	U+0B66	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	ORIYA DIGIT
U+0C67	U+0C66	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	TELUGU DIGIT
U+0CE7	U+0CE6	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	KANNADA DIGIT
U+0D67	U+0D66	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	MALAYALAM DIGIT
U+0E51	U+0E50	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	THAI DIGIT
U+0ED1	U+0ED0	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	LAO DIGIT
U+0F21	U+0F20	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	TIBETAN DIGIT
U+1041	U+1040	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	MYANMAR DIGIT
U+17E1	U+17E0	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	KHMER DIGIT
U+1811	U+1810	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	MONGOLIAN DIGIT
U+4E00	U+3007	〇 一 二 三 四 五 六 七 八 九	CJK IDEOGRAPH DIGIT
U+C77C	U+C601	영 일 이 삼 사 오 육 칠 팔 구	HANGUL DIGIT
U+FF11	U+FF10	୦ ୧ ୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯	FULLWIDTH DIGIT

- Roman Numerals

Roman Numeral, such as I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX X ..., is generated.

Format Token	Numerals	Description
U+0049 (I)	I V X L C D M ແກ	LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I
U+0069 (i)	i v x l c d m	LATIN SMALL LETTER I
U+2160 (I)	I V X I C D M ແກ	ROMAN NUMERAL ONE
U+2170 (i)	i v x I c d m	SMALL ROMAN NUMERAL ONE
U+FF29 (I)	I V X L C D M ແກ	FULLWIDTH LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I
U+FF49 (i)	i v x I c d m	FULLWIDTH LATIN SMALL LETTER I

Numerical values with upper case up to 39999 and numerical values with lower case up to 3999 can be expressed.

- Hebrew Numerals

Hebrew Numeral, such as טו ד ג י ב י א ... ה ד ג ב ..., is generated.

Format Token	Numerals	Description
U+05D0 (א)	א ב ג ד ח ס מ ל כ י ט ח ז ו ה ד ג ב א	HEBREW LETTER ALEF

The specification of the grouping-separator and grouping-size properties are ignored and always regarded as grouping-separator=" " grouping-size="3".

- Armenian Numerals

Formats Armenian numerals. It's available to express up to 99999999.

Format Token	Numerals	Description
U+0531 (Ա)	Ա Բ Գ Դ Ե Զ Է Ծ Թ Ժ Ի Լ Խ Ծ Կ Հ Զ Ղ Ճ Մ Ց Ց Ն Շ Ո Չ Պ Ջ Ռ Ա Վ Տ Տ Ր Ց Ւ Փ Ք	ARMENIAN CAPITAL LETTER AYB
U+0561 (ա)	ա բ գ դ ե զ է լ ր ժ ի լ խ ծ կ հ ձ ն ճ մ յ ն շ ո ւ պ տ ր ց ւ փ ք	ARMENIAN SMALL LETTER AYB

- Georgian Numerals

Formats Georgian numerals. It's available to express up to 19999.

Format Token	Numerals	Description
U+10D0 (၁)	ა ბ გ დ ე ვ ჸ ჵ თ ი კ ლ მ ნ ა ღ ა ჟ რ ს ტ უ ფ ქ ლ ე შ ჩ ც ძ წ ჭ ხ პ ჰ	GEORGIAN LETTER AN

• Ethiopian Numerals

Formats Ethiopic numerals.

- Tamil Numerals

Formats Tamil numerals.

Format Token	Numerals	Description
U+0BE7 (க)	க கு மூ சு பு கூ எ அ கை	TAMIL DIGIT ONE

• Alphabets

Alphabets sequence, such as A B C ... Z AA AB AC ... is generated.

Format Token	Alphabets	Description
U+0041 (A)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A
U+0061 (a)	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z	LATIN SMALL LETTER A
U+00C5 (Å)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z Æ Ø Å	LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH RING ABOVE
U+00E5 (å)	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z æ ø å	LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH RING ABOVE
U+0391 (A)	Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ Σ Τ Υ Φ Χ Ψ Ω	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER ALPHA
U+03B1 (a)	α β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ μ ν ξ ο π ρ σ τ ι φ χ ψ ω	GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA
U+0410 (A)	А Б В Г Д Е Ж З И К Л М Н О П Р С Т У Ф Х Ц Ч Ш Щ Ь Ю Я	CYRILLIC CAPITAL LETTER А
U+0430 (a)	а б в г д е ж з и к л м н о п р с т у ф х ц ч ш щ ъ ю я	CYRILLIC SMALL LETTER А
U+0623 (أ)	أ ب ه ن م ل ك ق ف غ ع ظ ط ض ص ش س ز ر ذ د ح ح ث ت ب أ	ARABIC LETTER ALEF WITH HAMZA ABOVE
U+3042 (あ)	あ い う え お か き く け こ さ し す せ そ た ち つ て と な に ぬ ね の は ひ ふ へ ほ ま み む め も や ゆ よ ら り る れ ろ わ を ん	HIRAGANA AUEO

Format Token	Alphabets	Description
U+3044 (い)	いろはにほへとちりぬるをわかよたれそつねならむうゐのおくやまけふこえてあさきゆめみしゑひもせす	HIRAGANA IROHA
U+30A2 (ア)	アイウエオカキクケコサシスセソタチツテトナニヌネノハヒフヘホマミムメモヤユヨラリルレロワヲン	KATAKANA AIUEO
U+30A4 (イ)	イロハニホヘトチリヌルヲワカヨタレソツネナラムウヰノオクヤマケフコエテアサキユメミシエヒモセス	KATAKANA IROHA
U+3131 (ㄱ)	ㄱ ㄴ ㄷ ㄹ ㅁ ㅂ ㅅ ㅇ ㅈ ㅊ ㅋ ㅌ ㅍ ㅎ	HANGUL CHOSUNG
U+5B50 (子)	子 丑 寅 卯 辰 巳 午 未 申酉 戌 亥	CHINESE ZODIAC 12
U+7532 (甲)	甲 乙 丙 丁 戊 己 庚 辛 壬 癸	CHINESE ZODIAC 10
U+AC00 (가)	가 나 다 라 마 바 사 아 자 차 카 타 파 하	HANGUL GANADA
U+FF21 (A)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	FULLWIDTH LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A
U+FF41 (a)	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z	FULLWIDTH LATIN SMALL LETTER A
U+FF71 (ｱ)	アイウエオカキクケコサシスセソタチツテトナニヌネノハヒフヘホマミムメモヤユヨラリルレロワヲン	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA AIUEO
U+FF72 (ｲ)	イロハニホヘトチリヌルヲワカヨタレソツネナラムウノオクヤマケフコエテアサキユメミシエヒモセス	HALFWIDTH KATAKANA IROHA

- Non-repeating

Format Token	Characters	Description
U+7532 U +5B50 (甲子)	甲子 乙丑 丙寅 丁卯 戊辰 己巳 庚午 辛未 壬申 癸酉 甲戌 乙亥 丙子 丁丑 戊寅 己卯 庚辰 辛巳 壬午 癸未 甲申 乙酉 丙戌 丁亥 戊子 己丑 庚寅 辛卯 壬辰 癸巳 甲午 乙未 丙申 丁酉 戊戌 己亥 庚子 辛丑 壬寅 癸卯 甲辰 乙巳 丙午 丁未 戊申 己酉 庚戌 辛亥 壬子 癸丑 甲寅 乙卯 丙辰 丁巳 戊午 己未 庚申 辛酉 壬戌 癸亥	CHINESE ZODIAC 60 1 to 60 can be expressed.

- The strings which consist of the same character with 2 or more altogether
For example, when format="**" is specified, * is repeated by the number of numerical values. Up to 999 can be expressed.
- The symbols of all different character with 2 or more altogether
For example, if format="†‡" is specified, the regular expression of "**** †***‡*** ****††*** ‡‡***... will be generated. Up to 999 can be expressed.
- The character string which does not include symbols, with all different 2 or more characters altogether
For example, character strings such as "上中下", which means the sequence of "first, second and third classes, etc.", is considered as a format token and generates the sequence of "上" "中" "下" "上上" "上中" "上下" ... order.

internal-destination

Following bold value is extended. `[no-LT]`

Value: empty string | <idref> | <number-with-fragment>

Values have the following meanings.

<number-with-fragment>

Effective for the internal link in PDF. indicates the page number of the link destination. This string is simple numeric characters or the following string that combines numeric characters and a fragment with #. Refer to [Making Link](#) for fragment.

`123#zoom=50`

The page number also can be specified in the fragment.

`#page=123&zoom=50`

When the page number is not specified, it is usually regarded as the 1st page. However, when the top position is specified, it is regarded as the head of the page of a block where internal-destination is contained. For example, it is specified as follows.

```
#view=fit
#view=fith
#zoom=,,0
```

This property is not extended with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

leader-alignment

Following bold values are extended.

Value: none | reference-area | page | **start** | center | end
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:leader
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

start

When leader-pattern="dots" or leader-pattern="use-content" is specified and the contents are only the text, leaders are aligned on the start side.

center

When leader-pattern="dots" or leader-pattern="use-content" is specified and the contents are only the text, leaders are center aligned.

end

When leader-pattern="dots" or leader-pattern="use-content" is specified and the contents are only the text, leaders are aligned on the end side.

overflow

Following bold values are extended.

Value: visible | hidden | scroll | error-if-overflow | repeat | **replace** | **condense** | auto

Values have the following meanings.

replace

The string specified by `axf:overflow-replace` is repeated in a full area. When the specified string is empty, the string of the area is replaced with an empty string. The original string is discarded.

condense

Condenses the overflowed text within the region. How to condense the text can be specified by `axf:overflow-condense`.

These values are applied to `fo:block-container` or `fo:inline-container` only.

size / CSS (-ah-)size

Following bold value is extended. [\[CSS3-Page\]](#) Page size: the 'size' property

Value: <length>{1,2} | auto | [<page-size> || [portrait | landscape]]

Values have the following meanings.

<page-size>

Specifies the paper size. The following can be specified. Case insensitive.

<page-size>	Short×Long
A3	297×420mm
A4	210×297mm
A5	148×210mm
A6	105×148mm
B4	250×353mm
ISO-B4	250×353mm
JIS-B4	257×364mm
B5	176×250mm
ISO-B5	176×250mm
JIS-B5	182×257mm
B6	125×176mm
ISO-B6	125×176mm
JIS-B6	128×182mm
Letter	8.5×11in
Legal	8.5×14in
Ledger	11×17in
Statement	5.5×8.5in
Executive	7.25×10.5in
Folio	210×330mm
Quarto	8.5×10.83in
C	17×22in
D	22×34in
E	34×44in
ISO-Designated	110×220mm
ISO-C3	324×458mm

<page-size>	Short×Long
ISO-C4	229×324mm
ISO-C5	162×229mm
ISO-C6	114×162mm
Hagaki	100×148mm

table-omit-footer-at-break / CSS -ah-table-omit-footer-at-break

Following bold value is extended. [no-LT]

Value: true | false | column

Values have the following meanings.

column

Omits footer on column breaks, but not on page breaks.

This property is not extended with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

table-omit-header-at-break / CSS -ah-table-omit-header-at-break

Following bold value is extended. [no-LT]

Value: true | false | column

Values have the following meanings.

column

Omits header on column breaks, but not on page breaks.

This property is not extended with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

text-transform / CSS (-ah-)text-transform

Following bold values are extended. [CSS3-Text] Transforming Text: the 'text-transform' property

Value: none | [[capitalize | uppercase | lowercase | **capitalize-lowercase**] || [fullwidth | fullwidth-if-vertical] || **fullsize-kana**]]

Values have the following meanings.

capitalize-lowercase

Makes an initial letter an upper case and makes the remainder lower cases. See also [Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4](#).

fullwidth

Converts the character of U+0021 - U+007E into full width. [no-LT]

fullwidth-if-vertical

Only with the vertical writing (writing-mode="tb-rl"), text-transform="fullwidth" will be applied. Nothing is changed when it's not the vertical writing. [no-LT]

fullsize-kana

Converts small kana into regular kana. Only fullwidth (not halfwidth) characters are converted.

Extended Functions

AH Formatter V6.2 extends some FO functions and CSS functions.

rgb-icc()

The format of the argument which the rgb-icc function can accept is as follows. An identifier beginning with # is case insensitive. Formats using identifiers which begins with # are extended specifications in **AH Formatter V6.2**. The specified RGB is an alternative color. It is used when the devices (display etc.) cannot display CMYK or the separation color directly.

- `rgb-icc(#Grayscale,<Scale>)`
Specifies Grayscale. The depth in color can be specified by `<Scale>`.
 - `rgb-icc(<R>,<G>,,#CMYK,<C>,<M>,<Y>,<K>)`
 - `rgb-icc(#CMYK,<C>,<M>,<Y>,<K>)`
Specifies CMYK. When RGB is omitted, it is calculated from CMYK.
 - `rgb-icc(<R>,<G>,,#Separation,<Name>,<Tint>,<C>,<M>,<Y>,<K>)` [no-LT]
 - `rgb-icc(<R>,<G>,,#Separation,<Name>,<Tint>)` [no-LT]
 - `rgb-icc(<R>,<G>,,#Separation,<Name>)` [no-LT]
 - `rgb-icc(#Separation,<Name>,<Tint>,<C>,<M>,<Y>,<K>)` [no-LT]
- Specifies Separation color (Spot color). The name of the ink in use is specified as `<Name>`. For example, specify "PANTONE 131 PC". The color tone is specified as `<Tint>`. When `<Tint>` is omitted, it is considered as 1.0. It is also necessary to specify RGB or CMYK. When RGB is omitted, it is calculated from CMYK.
- `rgb-icc(#Separation,<Name>,<Tint>)` [no-LT]
 - `rgb-icc(#Separation,<Name>)` [no-LT]

If you purchase AH Formatter PANTONE® Option, it includes the ability for more than 1,000 PANTONE® Colors to be converted into RGB or CMYK values automatically. This is specified in the FO as follows:

```
rgb-icc(#Separation, 'PANTONE 131 PC')
```

- `rgb-icc(#Registration,<Tint>)` [no-LT]
- `rgb-icc(#Registration)` [no-LT]

Specifies Registration color. The color tone is specified as `<Tint>`. When `<Tint>` is omitted, it is considered as 1.0. Registration color is used for the registered trademark outputted to all the color versions. Registration color can also be expressed by specifying "All" as the `<Name>` of `#Separation`.

Arguments take the following values, respectively.

- `<R>,<G>,` = % value or 0 to 255 integer value
- `<C>,<M>,<Y>,<K>` = % value or 0.0 to 1.0 float value
- `<Scale>` = % value or 0.0 (black) to 1.0 (white) float value
- `<Tint>` = % value or 0.0 (lightest) to 1.0 (darkest) float value

linear-gradient() [no-LT]

Expresses the linear gradient. It can be specified as a value of background-image.

```
linear-gradient( [ [ <angle> | to <side-or-corner> ], ]? <color-stop>[, <color-stop> ]+ )
<side-or-corner> = [ left | right ] || [ top | bottom ]
<color-stop>      = <color> [ <percentage> | <length> ]?
```

Arguments have the following meanings.

<angle>

Specifies the angle of the gradient. 0deg indicates top, 90deg indicates right.

<side-or-corner>

Specifies the angle of the gradient by keywords. to top, to right, to bottom and to left indicate 0deg, 90deg, 180deg and 270deg for each.

<color-stop>

Specifies the color, percent and length for the gradient.

☞ [CSS3-Images] Linear Gradients: the 'linear-gradient()' notation

This function is not available with AH Formatter V6.2 Lite.

radial-gradient() [no-LT]

Expresses the radial gradient. It can be specified as a value of background-image.

```
radial-gradient( [ [ <shape> || <size> ] [ at <position> ]? , | at <position>, ]? <color-stop> [ , <color-stop> ]+ )
<shape>       = circle | ellipse
<size>        = closest-side | farthest-side | closest-corner | farthest-corner | [ <length> | [ <length> | <percentage> ]{2} ]
<color-stop>   = <color> [ <percentage> | <length> ]?
```

Arguments have the following meanings.

<shape>

Specifies the shape of the gradient.

<size>

Specifies the size of the gradient.

<position>

Specifies the center position of a circle or an oval. The value is the same as that of the background-position in CSS2.1.

<color-stop>

Specifies the color, percent and length for the gradient.

☞ [CSS3-Images] Radial Gradients: the ‘radial-gradient()’ notation

This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

repeating-linear-gradient() [no-LT]

Expresses the repeating linear gradient. It can be specified as a value of background-image. The syntax is the same as that of [linear-gradient\(\)](#).

☞ [CSS3-Images] Repeating Gradients: the ‘repeating-linear-gradient()’ and ‘repeating-radial-gradient()’ notations

This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

repeating-radial-gradient() [no-LT]

Expresses the repeating radial gradient. It can be specified as a value of background-image. The syntax is the same as that of [radial-gradient\(\)](#).

☞ [CSS3-Images] Repeating Gradients: the ‘repeating-linear-gradient()’ and ‘repeating-radial-gradient()’ notations

This function is not available with **AH Formatter V6.2 Lite**.

CSS counter()

Although any counter name can be specified to the ident argument in counter (ident, list-style-type) of CSS, there are some counter names defined already. Counters with these same names cannot be defined.

- page
Counters apply to pages (@page). This is useful for page numbers defined in [\[CSS3-Pages\] Page-based counters](#).
- pages
Counters apply to pages (@page). This is useful for page numbers defined in [\[CSS3-Pages\] Page-based counters](#).
- footnote
Counters apply to footnotes (@footnote). This is useful for footnote numbers. This is useful for page numbers defined in [\[CSS3-GCPM\] Footnotes](#). ☞ [Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS](#)
- sidenote
Counters apply to sidenotes (@sidenote). This is useful for sidenote numbers. ☞ [Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS](#)

CSS attr()

[CSS3-Values] Attribute References: ‘attr()’

`attr(<attr-name> <type-or-unit>? [, <fallback>]?)`

CSS -ah-attr-from()

It is an extension of attr function. Specify the element of the ancestor which applies attr() to the first parameter.

`-ah-attr-from(<from-name> , <attr-name> <type-or-unit>? [, <fallback>]?)`

CSS3 Properties

This section enumerates the properties based on CSS3 specification supported with **AH Formatter V6.2** which have not been described until now.

CSS (-ah-)alignment-adjust

[CSS3-Line] Setting the alignment point: the 'alignment-adjust' property

Value: auto | baseline | before-edge | text-before-edge | middle | central | after-edge | text-after-edge | ideographic | alphabetic | hanging | mathematical | <percentage> | <length>
Initial: auto
Applies to: inline-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to line-height of element

☞ [XSL1.1] alignment-adjust

CSS (-ah-)alignment-baseline

[CSS3-Line] Aligning the alignment point of an element: the 'alignment-baseline' property

Value: auto | baseline | before-edge | text-before-edge | middle | central | after-edge | text-after-edge | ideographic | alphabetic | hanging | mathematical
Initial: auto
Applies to: inline-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] alignment-baseline

CSS (-ah-)baseline-shift

[CSS3-Line] Repositioning the dominant baseline: the 'baseline-shift' property

Value: baseline | sub | super | <percentage> | <length>
Initial: baseline
Applies to: inline-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to line-height of parent element

☞ [XSL1.1] baseline-shift

CSS (-ah-)bookmark-label

[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks

Value: content | <attr> | <string>
Initial: content
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ axf:outline-title

CSS (-ah-)bookmark-level

[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks

Value: none | <integer>
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ axf:outline-level

CSS (-ah-)bookmark-state

[CSS3-GCPM] Bookmarks

Value: open | closed
Initial: open
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ axf:outline-expand

CSS (-ah-)box-decoration-break

[CSS3-Background] The 'box-decoration-break' property

Value: slice | clone
Initial: slice
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)box-sizing

[CSS3-UI] 'box-sizing' property

Value: content-box | border-box
Initial: content-box
Applies to: all elements that accept width or height
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)break-after

[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'

Value: auto | always | page | column | avoid | avoid-page | avoid-column | left | right
Initial: auto
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] break-after

CSS (-ah-)break-before

[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'

Value: auto | always | page | column | avoid | avoid-page | avoid-column | left | right
Initial: auto
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] break-before

CSS (-ah-)break-inside

[CSS3-Multicol] 'break-before', 'break-after', 'break-inside'

Value: auto | avoid | avoid-page | avoid-column
Initial: auto
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] keep-together

CSS (-ah-)crop

[CSS3-Content] The 'crop' property

Value: <shape> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: replaced elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: relative to intrinsic size

CSS (-ah-)dominant-baseline

[CSS3-Line] Dominant baseline: the 'dominant-baseline' property

Value: auto | use-script | no-change | reset-size | ideographic | alphabetic | hanging | mathematical | central | middle | text-after-edge | text-before-edge

Initial: auto
Applies to: inline-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

[\[XSL1.1\] dominant-baseline](#)

CSS -ah-logical-height

Specifies the block progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: same as 'height'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical height of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] block-progression-dimension](#)

CSS -ah-logical-width

Specifies the inline progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | auto
Initial: auto
Applies to: same as 'width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] inline-progression-dimension](#)

CSS -ah-margin-after

Specifies the margin of the after side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'margin'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] space-after](#)

CSS -ah-margin-before

Specifies the margin of the before side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'margin'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] space-before](#)

CSS -ah-margin-end

Specifies the margin of the end side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'margin'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

[\[XSL1.1\] space-end, \[XSL1.1\] end-indent](#)

CSS -ah-margin-start

Specifies the margin of the start side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0

Applies to: same as 'margin'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] space-start, [XSL1.1] start-indent

CSS -ah-max-logical-height

Specifies the maximum block progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | none
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'max-height'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical height of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] block-progression-dimension

CSS -ah-max-logical-width

Specifies the maximum inline progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage> | none
Initial: none
Applies to: same as 'max-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] inline-progression-dimension

CSS -ah-min-logical-height

Specifies the minimum block progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'min-height'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical height of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] block-progression-dimension

CSS -ah-min-logical-width

Specifies the minimum inline progression dimension.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'min-width'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] inline-progression-dimension

CSS -ah-padding-after

Specifies the padding of the after side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'padding'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] padding-after

CSS -ah-padding-before

Specifies the padding of the before side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'padding'

Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] padding-before

CSS -ah-padding-end

Specifies the padding of the end side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'padding'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] padding-end

CSS -ah-padding-start

Specifies the padding of the start side.

Value: <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0
Applies to: same as 'padding'
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the logical width of the containing block

☞ [XSL1.1] padding-start

CSS (-ah-)page

[CSS3-Page] Using named pages: 'page'

[CSS3-GCPM] Named page lists

Value: auto | [<identifier>]+ auto?
Initial: auto
Applies to: block-level elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)string-set

[CSS3-GCPM] Setting named strings: the 'string-set' property

Value: [[<identifier> <content-list>] , <identifier> <content-list>]*] | none
Initial: none
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

env() is not supported yet.

The 'string-set' sets the named strings for running headers.

☞ [CSS3-GCPM] Named strings

To make the element with structure, not only the text, into running headers, use the *running elements*.

☞ [CSS3-GCPM] Running elements

CSS (-ah-)text-align

[CSS2.1] 16.2 Alignment

[CSS3-Text] Text Alignment: the 'text-align' property

Value: start | end | left | right | inside | outside | center | justify | <string>
Initial: start
Applies to: all elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] text-align

CSS (-ah-)text-align-last

[CSS3-Text] Last Line Alignment: the 'text-align-last' property

Value: auto | start | end | left | right | inside | outside | center | justify
Initial: auto
Applies to: block elements
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] text-align-last

CSS (-ah-)text-combine

[CSS3-WritingModes] Glyph Composition: the 'text-combine' property

Value: none | horizontal
Initial: none
Applies to: non-replaced inline elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

CSS (-ah-)vertical-align

[CSS3-Line] Vertical alignment: the 'vertical-align' shorthand baseline alignment property

Value: baseline | sub | super | top | text-top | middle | central | bottom | text-bottom | <percentage> | <length>
Initial: baseline
Applies to: inline-level and table-cell elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the line-height

☞ [XSL1.1] vertical-align

CSS (-ah-)writing-mode

[CSS3-WritingModes] Block Flow Direction: the 'writing-mode' property

Value: horizontal-tb | vertical-rl | lr-tb | rl-tb | tb-rl
Initial: horizontal-tb
Applies to: all elements except table row groups, table column groups, table rows, and table columns
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

☞ [XSL1.1] writing-mode

Float Extension

By implementing the advanced float features, **AH Formatter V6.2** is capable of arranging the float content in an arbitrary place of the page, arranging the float content in multi-column layout with column spanning of the float. As a result, **AH Formatter V6.2** can meet various demands of the arrangement while formatting documents with illustrations, etc.

Using with XSL-FO, the float extension properties (`axf:float-*`) are applied to the `fo:float` objects.

Using with CSS, the float extension properties (`-ah-float-*`) are applied to elements that will become floated elements.

Float Extension Properties

axf:float / CSS (-ah-)float

This is a shorthand property for setting float related extension properties. [CSS3-GCPM] Page floats

Value:	<code><float-x> <float-y> <float-wrap> <float-reference> <float-move></code> (XSL) <code>[<float-x> <float-y> <float-wrap> <float-reference> <float-move>] footnote sidenote</code> (CSS)
Initial:	<code>none</code>
Applies to:	<code>fo:float / floated elements</code>
Inherited:	<code>no</code>
Percentages:	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

<float-x> = none | start | end | left | right | top | bottom | center | inside | outside

Specifies horizontal (or vertical if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.

<float-y> = none | before | after | top | bottom | left | right | center | inside | outside

Specifies vertical (or horizontal if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.

<float-wrap> = wrap | skip

Specifies whether the text wraps around the float.

<float-reference> = auto | normal | page | column | multicol

Specifies reference area where the float is positioned.

<float-move> = next | auto-next | auto-move | keep | keep-float

Specifies whether the float moves to the next page (or column).

footnote

Generates footnotes in CSS. [Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS](#)

sidenote

Generates sidenotes in CSS. [Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS](#)

This extension property is treated as a shorthand and maps to individual extension properties. For example,

```
<!-- XSL-FO example -->
<fo:float axf:float="before column auto-move">
  ...
</fo:float>

<!-- XHTML+CSS example -->
<div style="-ah-float: before column auto-move">
  ...
</div>
```

is equivalent to the following:

```
<!-- XSL-FO example -->
<fo:float axf:float-x="none" axf:float-y="before"
           axf:float-reference="column" axf:float-move="auto-move">
  ...
</fo:float>
```

```
<!-- XHTML+CSS example -->
<div style="-ah-float-x: none; -ah-float-y: before;
           -ah-float-reference: column; -ah-float-move: auto-move">
  ...
</div>
```

See individual extension properties for details.

The values **left**, **right**, **top**, **bottom**, **center**, **inside**, and **outside** which express absolute directions have the ambiguity to extend to both <float-x> and <float-y>. This can be solved as follows.

- **none** is ignored.
- When one of **before**, **after**, **start**, or **end** is contained, either <float-x> or <float-y> will be selected. The remaining ambiguous value will become another value.
- When none of **before**, **after**, **start** or **end** is contained, the first value which expresses the absolute direction will be <float-x>, the latter value will be <float-y>.

axf:float-x / CSS -ah-float-x

Specifies horizontal (or vertical if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.

Value: none | start | end | left | right | top | bottom | center | inside | outside
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Not floated horizontally (or vertically if writing-mode is vertical).

start

Floated to the start side. Same as **left** in horizontal left-to-right writing-mode.

end

Floated to the end side. Same as **right** in horizontal left-to-right writing-mode.

left

Floated to the left side. Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

right

Floated to the right side. Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

top

Floated to the top. Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

bottom

Floated to the bottom. Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

center

Floated to the center horizontally (or vertically if writing-mode is vertical).

inside

Floated to the inside (left side on a right page, right side on a left page). Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

outside

Floated to the outside (right side on a right page, left side on a left page). Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

axf:float-y / CSS -ah-float-y

Specifies vertical (or horizontal if writing-mode is vertical) float alignment.

Value: none | before | after | top | bottom | left | right | center | inside | outside
Initial: none

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Not floated vertically (or horizontally if writing-mode is vertical).

before

Floated to the before side. Same as **top** in horizontal left-to-right writing-mode.

after

Floated to the after side. Same as **bottom** in horizontal left-to-right writing-mode.

top

Floated to the top. Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

bottom

Floated to the bottom. Used only for horizontal writing. It cannot be specified for vertical writing.

left

Floated to the left side. Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

right

Floated to the right side. Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

center

Floated to the center vertically (or horizontally if writing-mode is vertical).

inside

Floated to the inside (left side on a right page, right side on a left page). Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

outside

Floated to the outside (right side on a right page, left side on a left page). Used only for vertical writing. It cannot be specified for horizontal writing.

axf:float-reference / CSS -ah-float-reference

Specifies reference area where the float is placed.

Value: auto | normal | page | column | multicol
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Same as **normal**. However, when **float-y** is none in CSS, the float positioning is affected by block indents where the block contains the float anchor.

normal

The float is placed in the current reference area.

page

The float is placed in the page area (region-body).

column

The float is placed in the column area.

multicol

The float is placed in the multi-column area.

When **float-y** is **none**, the reference area in x-axis will be set.

When using with CSS, if **float-y** is **none** and the float-reference is **auto** the float positioning is affected by block indents where the block contains the float anchor, but by specifying **normal**, **page**, or **column**, it is possible to position floats regardless of the block indents.

axf:float-move / CSS -ah-float-move

Specifies whether the float moves to the next page (or column).

Value: auto | next | auto-next | auto-move | keep | keep-float
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Same as **keep** if **float-y** is **none**, same as **auto-next** otherwise.

next

The float is moved to the next page (or column).

auto-next

The float is moved to the next page (or column) if there is no sufficient space in the current page (or column).

auto-move

The float is moved to the next page (or column) if there is no sufficient space in the current page (or column). It is also possible that the float anchor and around text are moved to the next page (or column) instead.

keep

The float and its anchor are always placed on the same page (or column). If there is no sufficient space for that, a page (or column) break occurs before the float anchor and a blank space is left.

keep-float

Although it is almost the same as **keep**, the following points differ. With **keep**, keep-with-next="always" is automatically set to anchor area and a page break (or column break) is deterred between the next area. However, it is not performed by **keep-float**. The difference on operation will appear when the height of anchor area is zero.

If both **float-x** and **float-y** are **none**, the object is not floated and the float-move specification is ineffective.

axf:float-wrap / CSS -ah-float-wrap

Specifies the text wrapping.

Value: auto | wrap | skip
Initial: auto
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

Same as **wrap** if **float-x** is other than **none**. Same as **skip** if it is **none**.

wrap

Wraps the text around the float. However, when there is a space on both side of a float within the column (by specifying **center** to **float-x** or **float-offset-x**), it is the same as **skip**.

skip

The text doesn't wrap around the float. The text is positioned by skipping the float.

axf:float-min-wrap-x / CSS -ah-float-min-wrap-x

Specifies the minimum width for the text wrapping around the float.

Value: normal | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: normal
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

If the width for the text wrapping around the float is smaller than the width specified by this property, the text doesn't wrap.

The initial value, **normal** is minimum wrapping width of normal floats. It is same as Opt.

axf:float-min-wrap-y / CSS -ah-float-min-wrap-y

Specifies the minimum extent for the text placed before and after the float.

Value: normal | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: normal
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

When the **float-y** value is not **none** and there is remaining space to place the text before or after the float within the formatting target area, if the extent of that space is smaller than the extent specified by this property, the text is not placed to that space.

When the **float-y** value is **none** and the **float-move** value is **auto-next** and there is remaining space to place the text after the float within the formatting target area, if the extent of that space is smaller than the extent specified by this property, the float position will move so that the extent may become zero. The text placed after the float will move in front of the float.

When the **float-y** value is **none** and the **float-move** value is **auto-move**, the behavior is similar to **auto-next**; if the space extent for the text not only after but also before the float is smaller than the extent specified by this property within the formatting target area, the float position will move so that the extent may become zero. The text placed before the float will move after the float.

The initial value, **normal** is the same as Opt.

axf:float-centering-x / CSS -ah-float-centering-x

Specifies whether the float is centered when the width for the text wrapping around the float is insufficient.

Value: none | auto | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

Values have the following meanings.

none

The float is not centered.

auto

The float is centered when the width for the text wrapping around the float is less than the width specified by the **float-min-wrap-x** property.

<length>

<percentage>

The float is centered when the width for the text wrapping around the float is less than the width specified by this property.

axf:float-centering-y / CSS -ah-float-centering-y

Specifies whether the float is centered when the extent for the text placed before and after the float is insufficient.

Value: none | auto | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: none
Applies to: fo:float / floated elements
Inherited: no
Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

Values have the following meanings.

none

The float is not centered.

auto

The float is centered when the extent for the text placed before and after the float is less than the extent specified by the [float-min-wrap-y](#) property.

<length>
<percentage>

The float is centered when the extent for the text placed before and after the float is less than the extent specified by this property.

axf:float-margin-x / CSS -ah-float-margin-x

Specifies the space between the float and the text wrapping around the float (in x-axis).

Value: [<length> | <percentage>] [<length> | <percentage>]?

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

When two values are specified, the first one will be the value of the start side, the next one will be the value of the end side.

axf:float-margin-y / CSS -ah-float-margin-y

Specifies the space between the float and the text before and after the float (in y-axis).

Value: [<length> | <percentage>] [<length> | <percentage>]?

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

When two values are specified, the first one will be the value of the before side, the next one will be the value of the after side.

axf:float-float-margin-x / CSS -ah-float-float-margin-x

Specifies the space between the float and another neighboring float (in x-axis).

Value: auto | [[<length> | <percentage>] [<length> | <percentage>]?]

Initial: auto

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

The initial value **auto** is same as the [float-margin-x](#) value. When two values are specified, the first one will be the value of the start side, the next one will be the value of the end side.

The float-float-margin-x value cannot exceed the the [float-margin-x](#) value.

axf:float-float-margin-y / CSS -ah-float-float-margin-y

Specifies the space between the float and another neighboring float (in y-axis).

Value: auto | [[<length> | <percentage>] [<length> | <percentage>]?]

Initial: auto

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block

The initial value **auto** is same as the [float-margin-y](#) value. When two values are specified, the first one will be the value of the before side, the next one will be the value of the after side.

The float-float-margin-y value cannot exceed the [float-margin-y](#) value.

axf:float-offset-x / CSS -ah-float-offset-x

Specifies the offset placement for the float (in x-axis).

Value: <length> | <percentage>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block minus the size of the float

If **float-x** is **start**, the offset to the end side is specified. If it is **end**, the offset to the start side is specified.

axf:float-offset-y / CSS -ah-float-offset-y

Specifies the offset placement for the float (in y-axis).

Value: <length> | <percentage>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: fo:float / floated elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: refer to the size of containing block minus the size of the float

If **float-y** is **before**, the offset to the after side is specified. If it is **after**, the offset to the before side is specified.

Unit 'gr' to specify spanning columns

The unit 'gr' is a special length unit and it counts both column-width and column-gap as 1gr. n-column-spanning can be specified as $(2n-1)gr$. Fractions of gr unit can be used to specify halfway length of column-width or column-gap. Negative value cannot be specified.

The following is an example of two-column-spanning float:

```
<fo:float axf:float="multicol top left">
  <fo:block-container width="3gr">
    <fo:block>This is a two-column-spanning float.</fo:block>
  </fo:block-container>
</fo:float>
```

Note that the '3gr' means 2 column-widths plus 1 column-gap.

```
0.5gr = 0.5 columnWidth
1gr = 1 columnWidth
1.5gr = 1 columnWidth + 0.5 columnGap
2gr = 1 columnWidth + 1 columnGap
2.5gr = 1 columnWidth + 1 columnGap + 0.5 columnWidth
3gr = 1 columnWidth + 1 columnGap + 1 columnWidth
(2n-1)gr = n columnWidth + (n-1) columnGap
```

CAUTION: gr is defined only to the float specified as axf:float="multicol". It is not applicable to the other floats or properties other than float. If applied, the operation will be indefinite.

Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS

In order to express footnotes by CSS, (-ah-)float: footnote and @footnote are used. The following shows a very easy example of a footnote.

```
span.footnote {
  -ah-float: footnote;
}
@page {
  @footnote {
    border-top: solid;
    -ah-float: page bottom;
  }
}
<p>
  Lorem dignissim<span class="footnote">Quisque suscipit ante vel eros.</span>, orci ac porta blandit,
```

Thereby, the portion enclosed with `` and `` will be placed at the bottom of the page as a footnote, that portion will be replaced with a reference mark. (-ah-) float: footnote expresses a footnote body. (Equivalent to `<fo:footnote-body>` in FO). The appearance of a footnote can be specified with `@footnote`. You can specify the appropriate position of footnotes using (-ah-)float. `display: inline` is not supported.

The appearance of a reference mark can be specified by `::footnote-call`. The number added to a footnote can be specified by `::footnote-marker`. Those default appearances are specified in the default stylesheet (html.css). The following example shows

the way to put letters of the alphabet, like A, B, C... as an alternative method of numbering. You can specify the same values that can be specified to `list-style-type`.

```
::footnote-call,
::footnote-marker {
    content: counter(footnote, upper-alpha);
}
```

To reset the counter, specify `counter-reset: footnote` to `@page`, etc. accordingly.

In order to express sidenotes by CSS, `(-ah-)float: sidenote` and `@sidenote` are used. The same way as footnotes applies to sidenotes.

```
span.sidenote {
    -ah-float: sidenote;
}
@page {
    @sidenote {
        -ah-float: outside;
        clear: both;
        width: 20%
    }
}

<p>
Lorem dignissim<span class="sidenote">Quisque suscipit ante vel eros.</span>, orci ac porta blandit,
</p>
```

The default stylesheet does not include the setting of `::sidenote-call` and `::sidenote-marker`.

Extended Float Examples

Page Float Examples

In the following example, the float is placed on top of a page.

```
<fo:float axf:float="page top">
    <fo:block>This is a page float.</fo:block>
</fo:float>
```

In the following example, the float is placed on bottom of a page.

```
<fo:float axf:float="page bottom">
    <fo:block>This is a page float.</fo:block>
</fo:float>
```

Column Float Examples

In the following example, the float is placed on top of a column.

```
<fo:float axf:float="column top">
    <fo:block>This is a column float.</fo:block>
</fo:float>
```

In the following example, the float is placed on bottom of a column.

```
<fo:float axf:float="column bottom">
    <fo:block>This is a column float.</fo:block>
</fo:float>
```

Multi-column Float Examples

In the following example, the float is placed on the top right corner spanning three columns on a multi-column area.

```
<fo:float axf:float="multicol top right">
    <fo:block-container width="5gr">
        <fo:block>This is a multicol float.</fo:block>
    </fo:block-container>
</fo:float>
```

In the following example, the float is placed on the bottom inside corner on a multi-column area.

```
<fo:float axf:float="multicol bottom inside">
  <fo:block-container width="1gr">
    <fo:block>This is a multicol float.</fo:block>
  </fo:block-container>
</fo:float>
```

Float Move Example

Since float is arranged at the place of the anchor area, when an image, etc. are contained and there is no sufficient space for that, it will be sent to the next page. As a result, a blank space will remain in the lower part of the page. In order to avoid this, use the **axf:float-move** property to move float automatically from the anchor area. Note that the blank space will remain when there is no room to move.

The following example arranges an image with no text wrap on the right, left or center of a page. If there is no sufficient space at this time, only an image will move to the next page leaving an anchor to that position. Note that it's necessary to specify **axf:float-x** at this time.

```
<fo:float axf:float-x="center"
  axf:float-move="auto-next"
  axf:float-wrap="skip"
  axf:float-reference="page">
  <fo:block>
    <fo:external-graphic src="any-image"/>
  </fo:block>
</fo:float>
```

In the above example, if **axf:float-move="auto-move"** is specified, an anchor (and text around it) will move to the next page depending on the situation of the blank space. As a result, it looks like the image moves to the previous.

You may not want to move the float across over the chapter or the paragraph. Since the float does not move over other float, it is realizable by putting the dummy float into the break of the chapter or the paragraph. The following shows how the empty float prevents the other float from moving across the chapter.

```
<fo:float axf:float-x="end"
  axf:float-move="keep"/>
<fo:block page-break-before="always" New-Chapter ...
```

You may want to allow the float in a new chapter to move to the previous. In the above example, since **keep-with-next="always"** is set to the empty float, there is no room for the float to move before the new chapter. By specifying **axf:float-move="keep-float"**, the setting will be cleared, then this empty float will be arranged at the last of a previous page and the float can move between the next block afterwards.

Restrictions

AH Formatter V6.2 Float Extensions have the following restrictions.

- Float Extensions may not be positioned correctly within **fo:table-cell** or **fo:block-container**.
- When **float-y** is **none** and the **float-reference** value is **multicol** or **page**, the text doesn't wrap around the float except for the specified column, then the text and the float may overlap.
- When **axf:float="page before"** is specified and **xsl-before-float-separator** is defined, it behaves as **float="before"** defined in the standard XSL specification. In other cases, **xsl-before-float-separator** will not be displayed. [V6.2MR3]

Ruby Extension

AH Formatter V6.2 is capable of expressing ruby.

See the followings for details of ruby.

- Requirements for Japanese Text Layout W3C Working Group Note 3 April 2012
- JIS X 4051:2004 Formatting rules for Japanese documents
- CSS3 Ruby Module W3C Working Draft 30 June 2011
- Ruby Annotation W3C Recommendation 31 May 2001 (Markup errors corrected 25 June 2008)

Ruby is expressed by the following three elements.

XSL-FO	HTML	CSS	Meanings
<axf:ruby>	<ruby>	display: ruby	Shows the ruby structure.
<axf:ruby-base>	<rb>	display: ruby-base	Shows the base character of ruby.
<axf:ruby-text>	<rt>	display: ruby-text	Shows ruby.

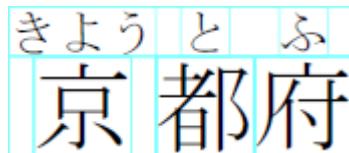
One <axf:ruby-base> maps to one <axf:ruby-text>. A pair of one <axf:ruby-base> and <axf:ruby-text> is called the ruby container. The line can break between a ruby container and another ruby container though the line cannot break within a ruby container.

Ruby has three types and it is classified as follows. (<ruby> <rb> <rt> are used in the following example.)

- Mono-ruby

Mono-ruby is expressed as follows.

```
<ruby><rb>京</rb><rt>きよう </rt></ruby><ruby><rb>都</rb><rt>と </rt></ruby><rb>府</rb><rt>ふ</rt></ruby>
```

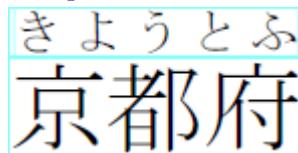


Mono-ruby can be considered as a group ruby whose base character consists of one character. The ruby container of mono-ruby is independent and ruby characters never overhang the base character of the adjacent ruby.

- Group-ruby

Group-ruby is expressed as follows.

```
<ruby><rb>京都府</rb><rt>きようとふ</rt></ruby>
```

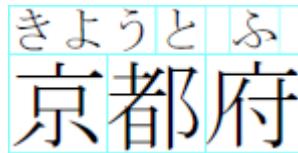


Group-ruby can be considered as a jyukugo (idiom) ruby consisting of one ruby container. Group-ruby is evenly arranged to the entire base characters.

- Jukugo (kanji compound word)-ruby

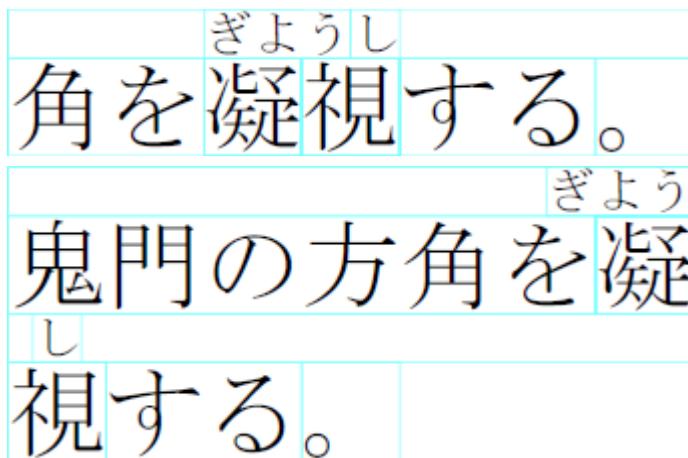
Jukugo-ruby is expressed as follows.

```
<ruby><rb>京</rb><rt>きよう </rt><rb>都</rb><rt>と </rt><rb>府</rb><rt>ふ</rt></ruby>
```



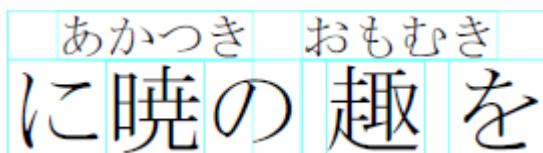
Jyukugo-ruby consists of one or more ruby containers. The line can break between ruby containers. The method of arranging Jyukogo-ruby is complex. As a general rule, the ruby container arranges ruby as group-ruby. However when the ruby text is wider than the ruby base characters, ruby text is allowed to partially overhang any adjacent text in addition to its own base to adjust its position.

鬼門の方角を<ruby><rb>凝</rb><rt>ぎよう </rt><rb>視</rb><rt>し </rt></ruby>する。



When ruby is wider than its own base characters, ruby will overhang the adjacent character. In the following cases, ruby cannot overhang the character.

- The adjacent content is a non-text structure, such as an image or `<fo:inline-container>`.
- The adjacent content is ruby.
- The font size of the adjacent base character differs from the ruby's own base or it's a script other than Kanji or Kana or there is any inappropriateness.
- The adjacent character is a character excluded by `axf:ruby-overhang`.
- Ruby overhangs the adjacent character and there is no enough space between ruby and adjacent to the adjacent ruby. (Ruby might overhang partially.)



Ruby and [emphasis marks](#) can be used together. When the ruby and emphasis marks are put on the same side, emphasis marks will be put outside of ruby. When you want to align emphasis marks to the text without ruby and emphasis marks to ruby, please specify `axf:text-emphasis-offset`.

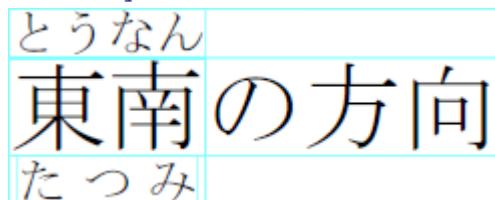


```
... text-emphasis-offset="0.5em">ルビと<ruby><rb>圈点</rb><rt>けんてん</rt></ruby>
```



With [group-ruby](#), ruby can be put on both sides or it can be nested several times. At this time, only ruby specified on the outside can overhang the adjacent character.

```
<ruby ruby-position="after"><rb><ruby ruby-position="before"><rb>東南</rb><rt>とうなん</rt></ruby></rb><rt>たつみ</rt></ruby>の方向
```



In AH Formatter V6.2, ruby has the following restrictions.

- Bopomofo is not supported.
- Emphasis marks can be put on the base characters of ruby, but they cannot be put on ruby characters.
- Within the ruby structure, it doesn't expand by justify. This is defined by JIS X 4051 and "Requirements for Japanese Text Layout".
- Ruby doesn't affect the line height. The line height is decided only by the base characters.

Ruby Extended Elements

<axf:ruby> / CSS display: ruby

Common Usage:

Specifies the ruby structure.

Areas:

Generates and returns the ruby area.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:ruby (axf:ruby-base, axf:ruby-text)+>
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-align      CDATA    "auto">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-position   CDATA    "before">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-offset     CDATA    "Opt">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-overhang   CDATA    "auto">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-limit-overhang CDATA    "1.0">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-limit-space  CDATA    "1.0">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-small-kana   CDATA    "auto">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-font-family  CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-font-size    CDATA    "0.5">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-minimum-font-size CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-font-style   CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-font-weight  CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-font-stretch  CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-condense    CDATA    "none">
<!ATTLIST axf:ruby axf:ruby-color       CDATA    "#IMPLIED">
```

Specifies display: ruby in CSS.

<axf:ruby-base> / CSS display: ruby-base

Common Usage:

Specifies the base character of ruby.

Areas:

Generates and returns the text area.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:ruby-base (#PCDATA | axf:ruby)>
```

Specifies display: ruby-base in CSS.

<axf:ruby-text> / CSS display: ruby-text

Common Usage:

Specifies ruby.

Areas:

Generates and returns the text area. This text area does not impact upon the block progression dimension in the line area.

Constraints:

```
<!ELEMENT axf:ruby-text #PCDATA>
```

Within the axf:ruby elements, the Nth axf:ruby-text element addresses to the Nth axf:ruby-base element. The Nth axf:ruby-text element must be placed after the Nth axf:ruby-base element.

Specifies display: ruby-text in CSS.

Ruby Extended Properties

axf:ruby-align / CSS (-ah-)ruby-align

Specifies the alignment of ruby. [CSS3-Ruby] Ruby alignment: the 'ruby-align' property

<i>Value:</i>	auto [[distribute-space distribute-letter] [center start end start-if-vertical]]
<i>Initial:</i>	auto
<i>Applies to:</i>	axf:ruby
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes
<i>Percentages:</i>	N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

The value specified by [ruby-align](#) in the Option Setting File is adopted.

distribute-space

Same as distribute-space center.

distribute-space center

Spaces leading and following the ruby text are made and the ruby text is evenly distributed. If the ruby text consists of one character, then it's center aligned.

distribute-space start

Spaces leading and following the ruby text are made and the ruby text is evenly distributed. If the ruby text consists of one character, then it is start aligned.

distribute-letter

Same as distribute-letter center.

distribute-letter center

Spaces leading and following the ruby text are not made and the ruby text is evenly distributed. If the ruby text consists of one character, then it is center aligned.

distribute-letter start

Spaces leading and following the ruby text are not made and the ruby text is evenly distributed. If the ruby text consists of one character, then it is start aligned.

center

Ruby is positioned at the center with solid setting.

start

Ruby is positioned on the start side with solid setting.

end

Ruby is positioned on the end side with solid setting.

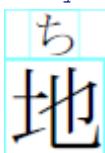
start-if-vertical

Same as start if the writing-mode is vertical, same as center if the writing-mode is horizontal.

axf:ruby-align decides the alignment of ruby. Originally, center alignment and start alignment are the concept of [mono-ruby](#), however, the same concept is also applied for [group-ruby](#) whose base text has 2 or more characters. When ruby is longer than its base characters, ruby will be positioned with solid setting.

Center alignment of mono-ruby can be specified as follows;

```
<ruby ruby-align="center"><rb>地</rb><rt>ち</rt></ruby>
```



Start alignment of mono-ruby can be specified as follows;

```
<ruby ruby-align="start"><rb>地</rb><rt>ち</rt></ruby>
```

The following shows the example of giving spaces leading and following the ruby text in group-ruby. The amount of spaces leading and following the ruby text is half the amount of inter-character space of the ruby text.

```
<ruby ruby-align="distribute-space"><rb>紫陽花</rb><rt>あじさい</rt></ruby>
```

The following shows the example of not giving spaces leading and following the ruby text in group-ruby.

```
<ruby ruby-align="distribute-letter"><rb>紫陽花</rb><rt>あじさい</rt></ruby>
```

axf:ruby-position / CSS (-ah-)ruby-position

Specifies on which side of the base characters the ruby text appears. [CSS3-Ruby] Ruby positioning: the 'ruby-position' property

Value: before | after

Initial: before

Applies to: axf:ruby

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

before

Ruby appears on the before side.

after

Ruby appears on the after side.

axf:ruby-offset / CSS -ah-ruby-offset

Specifies the spacing between the ruby text and its base characters.

Value: <number> | <length> | <percentage>

Initial: 0pt

Applies to: axf:ruby

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

<number>

The used value is this number multiplied by the font size of the ruby text (axf:ruby-font-size).

<length>

Specifies the length.

<percentage>

The computed value is this percentage multiplied by the font size of the axf:ruby element (not the font size of the ruby text).

axf:ruby-overhang / CSS (-ah-)ruby-overhang

Specifies how ruby overhangs the adjacent base character. [CSS3-Ruby] Ruby overhanging: the 'ruby-overhang' property

<i>Value:</i>	none auto [start end except-kanji except-katakana except-start-open-parenthesis except-end-close-parenthesis]
<i>Initial:</i>	auto
<i>Applies to:</i>	axf:ruby
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

none

Does not overhang the adjacent base character.

auto

Same as start end except-kanji

start

Overhangs on the start side of the adjacent base character (if available).

end

Overhangs on the end side of the adjacent base character (if available).

except-kanji

Does not overhang when the adjacent base character is kanji.

except-katakana

Does not overhang when the adjacent base character is katakana.

except-start-open-parenthesis

Does not overhang when the open parenthesis is on the start side.

except-end-close-parenthesis

Does not overhang when the close parenthesis is on the end side.

When only except-* is specified and neither start nor end are specified, it is considered as start and end are specified.

axf:ruby-limit-overhang / CSS -ah-ruby-limit-overhang

Specifies the limit of the amount that ruby overhangs the adjacent base character when ruby is longer than its own base character.

<i>Value:</i>	<number> <length> <percentage>
<i>Initial:</i>	1.0
<i>Applies to:</i>	axf:ruby
<i>Inherited:</i>	yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

<number>

The used value is this number multiplied by the font size of the ruby text ([axf:ruby-font-size](#)). The value must be non-negative.

<length>

Specifies the length. The value must be non-negative.

<percentage>

The computed value is this percentage multiplied by the font size of the [axf:ruby](#) element (not the font size of the ruby text). The value must be non-negative.

This value shows the amount that ruby overhangs the adjacent base character (It is not the protruding amount).

axf:ruby-limit-space / CSS -ah-ruby-limit-space

Specifies the limit of the amount of spaces leading and following the ruby text when the ruby text is shorter than its base characters.

Value: <number> | <length> | <percentage> | none

Initial: 1.0

Applies to: axf:ruby

Inherited: yes

Percentages: refer to the font size

Values have the following meanings.

<number>

The used value is this number multiplied by the font size of the ruby text ([axf:ruby-font-size](#)). The value must be non-negative.

<length>

Specifies the length. The value must be non-negative.

<percentage>

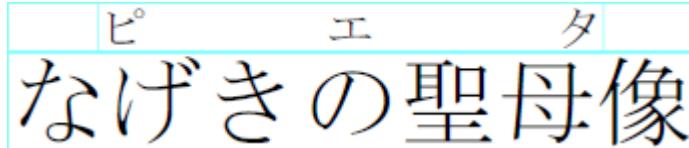
The computed value is this percentage multiplied by the font size of the [axf:ruby](#) element (not the font size of the ruby text). The value must be non-negative.

none

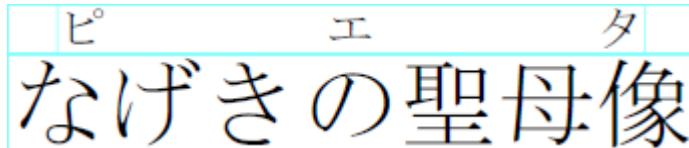
Does not limit the amount of the space.

Possible to avoid generating too much spaces leading and followings the ruby text because the ruby text is too shorter than its base characters when [axf:ruby-align="distribute-space"](#) is specified. The amount of the space will be limited to the specified value.

`<ruby ruby-limit-space="none"><rb>なげきの聖母像</rb><rt>ピエタ</rt></ruby>`



`<ruby ruby-limit-space="1.0"><rb>なげきの聖母像</rb><rt>ピエタ</rt></ruby>`



axf:ruby-small-kana / CSS -ah-ruby-small-kana

Specifies whether to allow using small kana for ruby text.

Value: auto | convert

Initial: auto

Applies to: axf:ruby

Inherited: yes

Percentages: N/A

Values have the following meanings.

auto

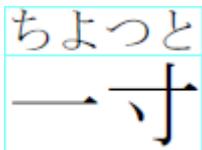
Does nothing.

convert

Small kana is converted into regular kana. Only fullwidth (not halfwidth) characters are converted.

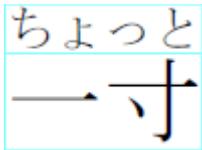
It's made available not to use small kana for ruby text. Even if small kana is specified to the ruby text, it will be transformed into regular kana.

`<ruby ruby-small-kana="convert"><rb>一寸</rb><rt>ちよつと</rt></ruby>`



When `ruby-small-kana="auto"` is specified, there is nothing special. Small kana will appear in the ruby text as is unless `text-transform="fullsize-kana"` is specified.

```
<ruby ruby-small-kana="auto"><rb>一寸</rb><rt>ちよつと</rt></ruby>
```



axf:ruby-font-family / CSS -ah-ruby-font-family

Specifies the font family of ruby text.

Value: [<family-name> | <generic-family>]#
Initial: empty string
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-family.

axf:ruby-font-size / CSS -ah-ruby-font-size

Specifies the font size of ruby text.

Value: <number> | <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: 0.5
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the font size

When `<number>` is specified, the used value is this number multiplied by the element's font size.

axf:ruby-minimum-font-size / CSS -ah-ruby-minimum-font-size

Specifies the minimum font size of ruby text.

Value: none | <absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> | <percentage>
Initial: none
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the font size

axf:ruby-font-style / CSS -ah-ruby-font-style

Specifies the font style of ruby text.

Value: normal | italic
Initial: empty
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-style.

axf:ruby-font-weight / CSS -ah-ruby-font-weight

Specifies the font weight of ruby text.

Value: normal | bold | bolder | lighter | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900
Initial: empty
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-weight.

axf:ruby-font-stretch / CSS -ah-ruby-font-stretch

Specifies the font stretching of ruby text.

Value: normal | wider | narrower | ultra-condensed | extra-condensed | condensed | semi-condensed | semi-expanded
| expanded | extra-expanded | ultra-expanded | <percentage> | <number>
Initial: empty
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the ruby-font-size

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as font-stretch.

axf:ruby-condense / CSS -ah-ruby-condense

Specifies the font condense when the ruby text is longer than its base.

Value: none | <percentage> | <number>
Initial: none
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: refer to the ruby-font-size

Condenses ruby by "stretch" so that length of ruby becomes the same as its base characters when ruby is longer than its base characters. The numerical value shows the limit to be shorten at that time. If none is specified, ruby is not condensed.

axf:ruby-color / CSS -ah-ruby-color

Specifies the color of ruby text.

Value: <color>
Initial: empty
Applies to: axf:ruby
Inherited: yes
Percentages: N/A

If nothing is specified, it's considered the same as color.



SVG Conformance

AH Formatter V6.2 conforms to W3C [Scalable Vector Graphics \(SVG\) 1.1](#) and supports to display SVG images with a newly developed engine. This makes it possible to output high quality SVG images as vectors in the PDF. The basic SVG drawing elements have been implemented. See also [Graphics](#) to learn how to utilize SVG.

The below table shows the implemented SVG elements.

- [yes] in the list means that the formatting object or property is implemented.
- [partial] means that the formatting object or property is partially implemented.
- [no] means not implemented.

CAUTION: This conformance is not for [SVG Output](#).

Element	Condition	Comments / Attributes
<a>	yes	The format such as #nameddest=Chapter6 in Making Link can also be specified. The hotspot region is a rectangle. This element is not available with GUI.
<altGlyph>	no	
<altGlyphDef>	no	
<altGlyphItem>	no	
<animate>	no	
<animatecolor>	no	
<animateMotion>	no	
<animateTransform>	no	
<circle>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, fill, cx, cy, r stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset
<clipPath>	yes	clip-rule clipPathUnits
<color-profile>	no	
<cursor>	no	
<definition-src>	no	
<defs>	yes	
<desc>	no	
<ellipse>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, fill, cx, cy, rx, ry stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset
<feBlend>	no	
<feColorMatrix>	no	
<feComponentTransfer>	no	
<feComposite>	no	
<feConvolveMatrix>	no	
<feDiffuseLighting>	no	
<feDisplacementMap>	no	
<feDistantLight>	no	
<feFlood>	no	
<feFuncA>	no	
<feFuncB>	no	
<feFuncG>	no	
<feFuncR>	no	
<feGaussianBlur>	no	

Element	Condition	Comments / Attributes
<feImage>	no	
<feMarge>	no	
<feMargeNote>	no	
<feMorphology>	no	
<feOffset>	no	
<fePointLight>	no	
<feTile>	no	
<feTurbulence>	no	
<filter>	no	
	no	
<font-face>	no	
<font-face-format>	no	
<font-face-name>	no	
<font-face-src>	no	
<font-face-uri>	no	
<foreignObject>	no	
<g>	yes	
<glyph>	no	
<glyphRef>	no	
<hkem>	no	
<image>	yes	xlink:href, x, y, width, height
<line>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, x1, y1, x2, y2 stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset, marker-start, marker-end
<linearGradient>	yes	gradientUnits, x1, y1, x2, y2, spreadMethod, gradientTransform
<marker>	yes	markerUnits, markerWidth, markerHeight, viewBox, refX, refY, orient
<mask>	no	
<metadata>	no	
<missing-glyph>	no	
<mpath>	no	
<path>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, stroke-linejoin, stroke-miterlimit, fill, fill-rule, d stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset, marker-start, marker-mid, marker-end
<pattern>	yes	id, patternUnits, xlink:href, x, y, width, height, viewBox, patternContentUnits, patternTransform
<polygon>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, stroke-linejoin, stroke-miterlimit, fill, fill-rule, points stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset, marker-start, marker-mid, marker-end
<polyline>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, stroke-linejoin, stroke-miterlimit, points, fill, fill-rule
<radialGradient>	yes	gradientUnits, cx, cy, r, fx, fy, spreadMethod, gradientTransform
<rect>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, stroke-linejoin, stroke-miterlimit, fill, x, y, width, height, rx, ry stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset
<script>	no	
<set>	no	
<stop>	yes	stop-color, offset (stop-opacity)
<style>	partial	type

Element	Condition	Comments / Attributes
<svg>	yes	xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg"
<switch>	partial	The child element which has the "requiredFeatures" or the "requiredExtensions" attribute is ignored. The child element with the "systemLanguage" attribute that matches to the language of running environment, or the first element which doesn't have the "systemLanguage" attribute is effective. When the systemLanguage attribute matches to the xml:lang property and the language attribute in XSL-FO, it will take priority over the operating system language.
<symbol>	yes	
<text>	yes	stroke, stroke-width, stroke-linecap, stroke-linejoin, stroke-miterlimit, fill, x, y, dx, dy, rotate, text-anchor, font-family, writing-mode, font-weight, font-style, font-variant (font-size-adjust), font-size, letter-spacing, word-spacing, xml:space, baseline-shift, stroke-dasharray, stroke-dashoffset, font-stretch
<textPath>	no	
<title>	no	
<tref>	yes	
<tspan>	yes	same as <text>
<use>	yes	xlink:href, x, y, width, height
<view>	no	
<vkern>	no	

The attributes in parentheses are not implemented. The following attributes/functions are implemented and commonly used.

- transform
- viewBox(width, height)
- preserveAspectRatio
- clip-path
- icc-color()

SVG in [gzip](#) file format is also supported.

Restrictions

- Supports fill-opacity and stroke-opacity of the transparency (the opacity attribute). stop-opacity is not supported.
- The values that can be described in the stroke-dasharray attribute are up to 10.
- Strokes with complicated gradation (greater than or equal to 3 colors, repeat, reflect) are not supported.
- Transparency is not supported in PDF 1.3.



CGM Conformance

CGM option is implemented based on the ISO/IEC 8632 CGM, W3C [WebCGM 2.0](#) specification.

The legends of element, attribute condition column are as follows.

- [yes] means that the element or attribute is implemented.
- [partial] means that the element or attribute is partially implemented.
- [no] means not implemented.
- Blank means that the element has no attribute.

The number in the ISO/IEC 8632 and WebCGM column refers to the CGM version. Other legends of ISO/IEC 8632 and WebCGM column are as follows.

- [required] means that the element is essential.
- [permitted] means that the element is permitted.
- [prohibit] means that the element should not be implemented.

Delimiter

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
1	BEGIN METAFILE	yes	metafile name	yes	When CGM contains multiple METAFILES, only the first one is converted, others are ignored. The metafile name is used for referencing a library, but it is not used in rendering.	1	required	1	required
2	END METAFILE	yes				1	required	1	required
3	BEGIN PICTURE	yes	picture name	yes		1	permitted	1	required
4	BEGIN PICTURE BODY	yes				1	permitted	1	required
5	END PICTURE	yes				1	permitted	1	required
6	BEGIN SEGMENT	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
7	END SEGMENT	no				2	permitted	1	prohibit
8	BEGIN FIGURE	partial			Depending on the combination of figure elements, occasionally rendition and filling is not accurately accomplished.	2	permitted	1	permitted
9	END FIGURE	yes				2	permitted	1	permitted
10	BEGIN PROTECTION REGION	partial	region index	yes	Depending on the combination of figure elements, Occasionally an area shape is not accurately accomplished.	3	permitted	2	permitted
11	END PROTECTION REGION	yes				3	permitted	2	permitted
12	BEGIN COMPOUND LINE	no				3	permitted	1	permitted
13	END COMPOUND LINE	no				3	permitted	1	permitted
14	BEGIN COMPOUND TEXT PATH	no				3	permitted	1	permitted

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
15	END COMPOUND TEXT PATH	no				3	permitted	1	permitted
16	BEGIN TILE ARRAY	partial	position	yes	This element is implemented when the TILE is specified as rectangle only. When the TILE is specified as parallelogram, it is outputted as rectangle.	3	permitted	1	permitted
			cell path direction	partial					
			line progression direction	partial					
			number of tiles in path direction	yes					
			number of tiles in line direction	yes					
			number of cells/tile in path direction	yes					
			number of cells/tile in line direction	yes					
			cell size in path direction	yes					
			cell size in line direction	yes					
			image offset in path direction	yes					
			image offset in line direction	yes					
			image number of cells in path direction	yes					
			image number of cells in line direction	yes					
17	END TILE ARRAY	yes				3	permitted	1	permitted
18	BEGIN APPLICATION STRUCTURE	no	application structure identifier	no		4	permitted	1	permitted
			application structure type	no					
			inheritance flag	no					
19	BEGIN APPLICATION STRUCTURE BODY	no				4	permitted	1	permitted
20	END APPLICATION STRUCTURE	no				4	permitted	1	permitted
21	NOP	yes				1	permitted	1	permitted

Metafile Descriptor

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
22	METAFILE VERSION	yes	metafile version number	yes	Program checks the version number. But element is not limited by version number.	1	required	1	required
23	METAFILE DESCRIPTION	yes	metafile description string	no		1	required	1	required
24	VDC TYPE	yes	VDC TYPE	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
25	INTEGER PRECISION	yes	integer precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
26	REAL PRECISION	yes	form of representation for real value	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			field width for exponent or whole part	yes					
			field width for fraction or fraction part	yes					
27	INDEX PRECISION	yes	index precision	yes		1	required	1	required
28	COLOUR PRECISION	yes	colour precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
29	COLOUR INDEX PRECISION	yes	index precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
30	MAXMUM COLOUR INDEX	yes	maximum colour index that may be encountered in the model	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
31	COLOUR VALUE EXTENT	partial	minimum colour value	yes	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
			maximum colour value	yes					
			scale and offset pair for first component	yes					
			scale and offset for second component	yes					
			scale and offset for third component	yes					
32	METAFILE ELEMENT LIST	yes	number of elements specified	yes		1	required	2	required
			list of metafile elements in metafile	yes					
33	METAFILE DEFAULTS REPLACEMENT	yes	parameter that itself contains metafile elements	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
34	FONT LIST	partial	font names	yes	Sometimes font name is incorrectly interpreted when it is not encoded with 8bit.	1	permitted	1	permitted
35	CHARACTER SET LIST	yes	CHARACTER SET TYPE	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			designation sequence tail	yes					
36	CHARACTER CODING ANNOUNCER	yes	character coding announcer	yes		1	permitted	1	required
37	NAME PRECISION	yes	name precision	yes		2	permitted	1	prohibit

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
38	MAXMUM VDC EXTENT	yes	first corner	yes		2	permitted	1	permitted
			second corner	yes					
39	SEGMENT PRIORITY EXTENT	no	minimum segment priority value	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			maximum segment priority value	no					
40	COLOUR MODEL	partial	colour model	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	3	permitted	1	permitted
41	COLOUR CALIBRATION	no	calibration selection	no		3	permitted	1	prohibit
			reference white value X component	no					
			reference white value Y component	no					
			reference white value Z component	no					
			3x3 RGB calibration matrix	no					
			3x3 ABC transformation matrix	no					
			number of lookup table entries(=n)	no					
			2n red lookup table entries: R, R'	no					
			2n green lookup table entries: G, G'	no					
			2n blue lookup table entries: B, B'	no					
			number of grid locations (=m)	no					
			m CMYK grid locations	no					
			m XYZ grid locations, each being	no					
			property indicator	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
			priority	no					
			property value record	no					
43	GLYPH MAPPING	no	character set index	no		3	permitted	1	prohibit
			basis set character set type	no					
			basis set designation sequence tail	no					
			octets per code (=m)	no					
			glyph source	no					
			glyph-code associations	no					
44	SYMBOL LIBRARY LIST	no	n symbol library names	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
45	PICTURE DIRECTORY	no	location data type selector	no		4	permitted	1	prohibit
			list of 3-tuples	no					

Picture Descriptor

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
46	SCALING MODE	yes	scaling mode	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			metric scaling factor	yes					
47	COLOUR SELECTION MODE	yes	colour selection mode	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
48	LINE WIDTH SPECIFICATION MODE	yes	line width specification mode	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
49	MARKER SIZE SPECIFICATION MODE	yes	marker size specification mode	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
50	EDGE WIDTH SPECIFICATION MODE	yes	edge width specification mode	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
51	VDC EXTENT	yes	first corner	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			second corner	yes					
52	BACKGROUND COLOUR	yes	background colour	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
53	DEVICE VIEWPORT	no	first corner	no		2	prohibit	1	prohibit
			second corner	no					
54	DEVICE VIEWPORT SPECIFICATION MODE	no	VC specifier	no		2	prohibit	1	prohibit
			metric scale factor	no					
55	DEVICE VIEWPORT MAPPING	no	isotropy flag	no		2	prohibit	1	prohibit
			horizontal alignment flag	no					
			vertical alignment flag	no					
56	LINE REPRESENTATION	yes	line bundle index	yes	If the line type is out of range or implementation-defined, it is outputted as solid.	2	permitted	1	prohibit
			line type	yes					
			line width	yes					
			line colour	yes					
57	MARKER REPRESENTATION	yes	marker bundle index	yes	If the marker type is out of range or implementation-defined, it is outputted as asterisk.	2	permitted	1	prohibit
			marker type	yes					
			marker size	yes					
			marker colour	yes					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM		
						Ver		Ver		
58	TEXT REPRESENTATION	partial	text bundle index	yes	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented. Italic and oblique are not supported.	2	permitted	1	prohibit	
			text font index	partial						
			text precision	yes						
			character spacing	yes						
			character expansion factor	yes						
			text colour	partial						
59	FILL REPRESENTATION	partial	fill area bundle index	yes	Occasionally fill for some FIGURE element combinations is incorrect. Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented. Interior style that is out of range is outputted as solid. A hatch index that is out of range is outputted as horizontal. Sometimes the pattern size is incorrect with patterned fill.	2	permitted	1	prohibit	
			interior style	yes						
			fill colour	partial						
			hatch index	yes						
			pattern index	partial						
60	EDGE REPRESENTATION	partial	edge bundle index	yes	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	2	permitted	1	prohibit	
			edge type	yes						
			edge width	yes						
			edge colour	partial						
61	INTERIOR STYLE SPECIFICATION MODE	no	style specification mode	no			3	permitted	1	permitted
62	LINE AND EDGE TYPE DEFINITION	yes	line type	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted	
			dash cycle repeat length	yes						
			list of n dash elements	yes						
63	HATCH STYLE DEFINITION	partial	hatch index	partial		3	permitted	1	permitted	
			style indicator	partial						
			hatch direction vectors specifier (x,y,x,y)	partial						
			duty cycle length	partial						
			number of hatch lines (=n)	partial						
			list of n gap widths	partial						
			list of n line types	partial						
64	GEOMETRIC PATTERN DEFINITION	no	geometric pattern index	no			3	permitted	1	prohibit

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
64	GEOMETRIC PATTERN DEFINITION	no	segment identifier	no		3	permitted	1	prohibit
			first corner point	no					
			second corner point	no					
65	APPLICATION STRUCTURE DIRECTORY	no	location data type selector	no		4	permitted	1	prohibit
			list of pairs consisting	no					

Control

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
66	VDC INTEGER PRECISION	yes	VDC integer precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
67	VDC REAL PRECISION	yes	form of representation for real values	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			field width for exponent or whole part	yes					
			field width for fraction or fractional part	yes					
68	AUXILIARY COLOUR	partial	auxiliary colour	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
69	TRANSPARENCY	partial	on-off indicator	yes	This is not effective for CELL ARRAY element.	1	permitted	1	permitted
70	CLIP RECTANGLE	yes	first corner	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			second corner	yes					
71	CLIP INDICATOR	yes	clip indicator	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
72	LINE CLIPPING MODE	partial	clipping mode	partial	Sometimes locus then shape mode is not processed correctly.	2	permitted	1	prohibit
73	MARKER CLIPPING MODE	partial	clipping mode	partial	Sometimes locus then shape mode is not processed correctly.	2	permitted	1	prohibit
74	EDGE CLIPPING MODE	partial	clipping mode	partial	Sometimes locus then shape mode is not processed correctly.	2	permitted	1	prohibit
75	NEW REGION	yes				2	permitted	1	permitted
76	SAVE PRIMITIVE CONTEXT	yes	context name	yes		2	permitted	1	prohibit
77	RESTORE PRIMITIVE CONTEXT	yes	context name	yes		2	permitted	1	prohibit

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
78	PROTECTION REGION INDICATOR	yes	region index	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted
79	GENERALIZED TEXT PATH MODE		region indicator	yes					
80	MITRE LIMIT	yes	text path mode	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
81	TRANSPARENT CELL COLOUR	partial	mitre limit	yes	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	3	permitted	1	permitted
			transparency indicator	yes					
			transparent cell colour specifier	partial					

Graphical Primitive

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
82	POLYLINE	yes	n (X,Y) polyline vertices	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
83	DISJOINT POLYLINE	yes	n (X,Y) line segment endpoints	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
84	POLYMARKER	yes	n (X,Y) marker positions	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
85	TEXT	yes	text position	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			final/not-final flag	yes					
			text string	yes					
86	RESTRICTED TEXT	yes	delta width	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			delta height	yes					
			text position	yes					
			final/not-final flag	yes					
			text string	yes					
87	APPEND TEXT	yes	final/not-final flag	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			text string	yes					
88	POLYGON	yes	n (X,Y) polygon vertices	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
89	POLYGON SET	yes	(X,Y) polygon vertex	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			edge out flag	yes					
90	CELL ARRAY	partial	corner point P	partial	This element is implemented only when CELL form is rectangle. If a CELL is specified as parallelogram, the CELL is outputted as rectangle. Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented. Occasionally a CELL ARRAY element that is described as run-length form is not read correctly.	1	permitted	1	permitted
			corner point Q	partial					
			corner point R	partial					
			nx	yes					
			ny	yes					
			local colour precision	yes					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
90	CELL ARRAY	partial	cell representation mode	yes	This element is implemented only when CELL form is rectangle. If a CELL is specified as parallelogram, the CELL is outputted as rectangle. Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented. Occasionally a CELL ARRAY element that is described as run-length form is not read correctly.	1	permitted	1	permitted
			array of cell colour values	partial					
91	GENERALIZED DRAWING PRIMITIVE	no	GDP identifier	no		1	prohibit	1	prohibit
			n, number of points in 'list of points'	no					
			list of points	no					
			GDP data record	no					
92	RECTANGLE	yes	first corner	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			second corner	yes					
93	CIRCLE	yes	centre of circle	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			radius of circle	yes					
94	CIRCULAR ARC 3 POINT	yes	starting point	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			intermediate point	yes					
			ending point	yes					
95	CIRCULAR ARC 3 POINT CLOSE	yes	starting point	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			intermediate point	yes					
			ending point	yes					
			type of arc closure	yes					
96	CIRCULAR ARC CENTRE	yes	centre of circle	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			delta X for start vector	yes					
			delta Y for start vector	yes					
			delta X for end vector	yes					
			delta Y for end vector	yes					
			radius of circle	yes					
97	CIRCULAR ARC CENTRE CLOSE	yes	centre of circle	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			delta X for start vector	yes					
			delta Y for start vector	yes					
			delta X for end vector	yes					
			delta Y for end vector	yes					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
97	CIRCULAR ARC CENTRE CLOSE	yes	radius of circle	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			type of arc closure	yes					
98	ELLIPSE	yes	centre of ellipse	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			endpoint of first conjugate diameter	yes					
			endpoint of second conjugate diameter	yes					
99	ELLIPTICAL ARC	yes	centre of ellipse	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			endpoint of first conjugate diameter	yes					
			endpoint of second conjugate diameter	yes					
			delta X for start vector	yes					
			delta Y for start vector	yes					
			delta X for end vector	yes					
			delta Y for end vector	yes					
100	ELLIPTICAL ARC CLOSE	yes	centre of ellipse	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			endpoint of first conjugate diameter	yes					
			endpoint of second conjugate diameter	yes					
			delta X for start vector	yes					
			delta Y for start vector	yes					
			delta X for end vector	yes					
			delta Y for end vector	yes					
101	CIRCULAR ARC CENTRE REVERSED	yes	type of arc closure	yes		2	permitted	1	permitted
			centre of circle	yes					
			delta X for start vector	yes					
			delta Y for start vector	yes					
			delta X for end vector	yes					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
101	CIRCULAR ARC CENTRE REVERSED	yes	delta Y for end vector	yes		2	permitted	1	permitted
			radius of circle	yes					
102	CONNECTING EDGE	yes				2	permitted	1	permitted
103	HYPERBOLIC ARC	no	centre point	no		3	permitted	1	prohibit
			transverse radius end point	no					
			conjugate radius end point	no					
			start vector x component	no					
			start vector y component	no					
			end vector x component	no					
			end vector y component	no					
104	PARABOLIC ARC	no	tangent intersection point	no		3	permitted	1	prohibit
			start point	no					
			end point	no					
105	NON-UNIFORM B-SPLINE	no	spline order (=m)	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
			number of control points (=n)	no					
			array of control points	no					
			list of knots, of length n+m	no					
			parameter start value	no					
			parameter end value	no					
106	NON-UNIFORM RATIONAL B-SPLINE	no	spline order (=m)	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
			number of control points (=n)	no					
			array of control points	no					
			list of knots, of length n+m	no					
			parameter start value	no					
			parameter end value	no					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
106	NON-UNIFORM RATIONAL B-SPLINE	no	list of weights, of length n	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
107	POLYBEZIER	yes	continuity indicator	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted
			list of point sequences	yes					
108	POLYSYMBOL	no	symbol index	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit
			n symbol position points	no					
109	BITONAL TILE	partial	compression type	partial	Compression Type 0: null background 1: null foreground 2: T6 3: T4 1-dimensional 4: T4 2-dimensional 5: bitmap (compressed) 6: run length 7: baseline JPEG 8: LZW PNG 9: compression method 0	Supported yes yes yes no no yes yes no yes	3	permitted	1
			row padding indicator	yes					
			cell background colour	yes					
			cell foreground colour	yes					
			method-specific parameters	yes					
			compressed cell colour specifiers	yes					
110	TILE	partial	compression type	partial	Same as BITONAL TILE.	3	permitted	1	permitted
			row padding indicator	yes					
			cell colour precision	yes					
			method-specific parameters	yes					
			compressed cell colour specifiers	yes					

Attribute

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
111	LINE BUNDLE INDEX	yes	line bundle index	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
112	LINE TYPE	yes	line type	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
113	LINE WIDTH	yes	line width	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
114	LINE COLOUR	partial	line colour	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
115	MARKER BUNDLE INDEX	yes	marker bundle index	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
116	MARKER TYPE	yes	marker type	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
117	MARKER SIZE	yes	marker size	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
118	MARKER COLOUR	partial	marker colour	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
119	TEXT BUNDLE INDEX	partial	text bundle index	yes	Occasionally character width becomes incorrect.	1	permitted	1	prohibit
120	TEXT FONT INDEX	yes	text font index	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
121	TEXT PRECISION	yes	text precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
122	CHARACTER EXPANSION FACTOR	yes	character expansion factor	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
123	CHARACTER SPACING	yes	additional inter-character space	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
124	TEXT COLOUR	yes	text colour	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
125	CHARACTER HEIGHT	yes	character height	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
126	CHARACTER ORIENTATION	yes	X character up component	yes	This element is fully implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
			Y character up component	yes					
			X character base component	yes					
			Y character base component	yes					
127	TEXT PATH	yes	text path	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
128	TEXT ALIGNMENT	yes	horizontal alignment	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			vertical alignment	yes					
			continuous horizontal alignment	yes					
			continuous vertical alignment	yes					
129	CHARACTER SET INDEX	yes	character set index	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
130	ALTERNATE CHARACTER SET INDEX	yes	alternate character set index	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
131	FILL BUNDLE INDEX	yes	fill bundle index	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
132	INTERIOR STYLE	partial	interior style	partial	Interior style is not implemented when it is a geometric pattern or interpolated.	1	permitted	1	permitted
133	FILL COLOUR	partial	fill colour	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
134	HATCH INDEX	yes	hatch index	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
135	PATTERN INDEX	yes	pattern index	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
136	EDGE BUNDLE INDEX	yes	edge bundle index	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
137	EDGE TYPE	yes	edge type	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
138	EDGE WIDTH	yes	edge width	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
139	EDGE COLOUR	partial	edge colour	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.	1	permitted	1	permitted
140	EDGE VISIBILITY	yes	edge visibility	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
141	FILL REFERENCE POINT	yes	fill reference point	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
142	PATTERN TABLE	yes	pattern table index	yes					
			nx	yes					
			ny	yes					
			local colour precision	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
			pattern definition	yes					
143	PATTERN SIZE	partial	pattern height vector, x component	partial	This element is not implemented when pattern is specified as parallelogram				
			pattern height vector, y component	partial		1	permitted	1	permitted
			pattern width vector, x component	partial					
			pattern width vector, y component	partial					
144	COLOUR TABLE	partial	starting colour table index	partial	Color spaces other than RGB are not implemented.				
			list of direct colour values	yes		1	permitted	1	permitted
145	ASPECT SOURCE FLAGS	yes	18 parameter-pairs, corresponding to each attribute that may be bundled	yes		1	permitted	1	prohibit
146	PICK IDENTIFIR	no	pick identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
147	LINE CAP	partial	line cap indicator	partial	This element is not implemented when line cap is specified as a projecting square or diamond.				
			dash cap indicator	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
148	LINE JOIN	yes	line join indicator	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted
149	LINE TYPE COTINUATION	no	continuation mode	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
150	LINE TYPE INITIAL OFFSET	no	line pattern offset	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
151	TEXT SCORE TYPE	no	list of score type	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
152	RESTRICTED TEXT TYPE	yes	restriction type	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted
153	INTERPOLATED INTERIOR	no	style	no					
			reference geometry	no					
			number of stages (=m)	no					
			array of m stage designators	no					
			array of k colour specifiers: k=3 for	no					

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
153	INTERPOLATED INTERIOR	no	triangular, m+1 otherwise	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
154	EDGE CAP	partial	edge cap indicator	partial	This element is not implemented when edge cap is specified as projecting square or triangle.	3	permitted	1	permitted
			dash cap indicator	no					
155	EDGE JOIN	yes	edge join indicator	yes		3	permitted	1	permitted
156	EDGE TYPE CONTINUATION	no	continuation mode	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
157	EDGE TYPE INITIAL OFFSET	no	edge pattern	no		3	permitted	1	permitted
158	SYMBOL LIBRARY INDEX	no	symbol library index	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit
159	SYMBOL COLOUR	no	symbol colour	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit
160	SYMBOL SIZE	no	scale indicator	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit
			symbol height	no					
			symbol width	no					
161	SYMBOL ORIENTATION	no	up vector x component	no		3	prohibit	1	prohibit
			up vector y component	no					
			base vector x component	no					
			base vector y component	no					

Escape

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
162	ESCAPE	no	escape identifier	no		1	permitted	1	permitted
			escape data record	no					

External

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver	Ver	Ver	Ver
163	MESSAGE	no	action-required flag	no		1	permitted	1	prohibit
			message string	no					
164	APPLICATION DATA	no	identifier	no		1	permitted	1	prohibit
			application data record	no					

Segment Control and Segment Attribute

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
165	COPY SEGMENT	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			transformation matrix	no					
			segment transformation application	no					
166	INHERITANCE FILTER	no	list of attribute or group designators	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			setting	no					
167	CLIP INHENTANCE	no	clip inheritance	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
168	SEGMENT TRANSFORMATION	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			transformation matrix	no					
169	SEGMENT HIGHLIGHTING	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			highlighting	no					
170	SEGMENT DISPLAY PRIORITY	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			segment display priority	no					
171	SEGMENT PICK PRIORITY	no	segment identifier	no		2	permitted	1	prohibit
			segment pick priority	no					

Application Structure Descriptor

No.	Element	Elem cond.	Attribute	Attr cond.	Notes	ISO/IEC 8632		WebCGM	
						Ver		Ver	
172	APPLICATION STRUCTURE ATTRIBUTE	no	application structure attribute type	no		4	permitted	1	permitted
			data record	no					



MathML Conformance

AH Formatter V6.2 enables to render [Mathematical Markup Language \(MathML\) Version 3.0](#) defined by W3C utilizing its originally developed engine. For that reason it's possible to render high resolution images in PDF. See also [Graphics](#) to learn how to utilize MathML. See also [Option Setting File](#).

AH Formatter V6.2 Lite customers must purchase "AH Formatter MathML Option" to render MathML originally. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

The below table shows the implemented MathML elements and attributes.

- [yes] in the list means that the formatting object or property is implemented.
- [partial] means that the formatting object or property is partially implemented.
- [no] means not implemented.

CAUTION: We strongly recommend to embed fonts when generating PDF.

Presentation Markup

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
2.1.6	id	yes	Evaluates the following CSS properties. As for id and class, external CSS settings will be reflected.
	class	yes	
	style	yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • font-family • font-weight • font-style • font-size • color • background-color
	href	yes	The setting takes precedence over the setting by mathvariant, fontfamily, etc. which are specified within the same tag. In CSS, the CSS property specified to <math> is evaluated as a property of the image even if it's not listed above.
	xref	no	
	other	no	[deprecated attribute]
2.2 <math>		yes	xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML"
	display	yes	
	maxwidth	yes	
	overflow	partial	Implements linebreak only. Except for linebreak, the automatic line break does not occur but the line overflows.
	altimg	no	Ignored.
	altimg-width	no	Ignored.
	altimg-height	no	Ignored.
	altimg-valign	no	Ignored.
	alttext	no	Ignored.
	cdgroup	no	
	macros	no	[deprecated attribute]
3.1.10	mode	yes	[deprecated attribute] The setting by display takes precedence.
	mathcolor	yes	
3.2.1.2 <mglyph>	mathbackground;	yes	
	src	yes	Corresponds only to raster images, such as JPEG or PNG.

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
3.2.2	width	yes	
	height	yes	
	valign	yes	
	alt	yes	
	fontfamily	yes	[deprecated attribute] Invalid when src is specified.
	index	yes	[deprecated attribute] Invalid when src is specified. The value of index is considered as CID. When there is no CID, it is considered as GlyphID.
3.2.2	mathvariant	partial	initial, tailed, looped and stretched are not supported.
3.2.2	mathsize	yes	
3.2.2	dir	yes	
3.2.2	fontfamily	yes	[deprecated attribute] The setting takes precedence over the setting by mathvariant which is specified within the same tag.
3.2.2	fontweight	yes	[deprecated attribute] The setting takes precedence over the setting by mathvariant which is specified within the same tag.
3.2.2	fontstyle	yes	[deprecated attribute] The setting takes precedence over the setting by mathvariant which is specified within the same tag.
3.2.2	fontsize	yes	[deprecated attribute] When mathsize is used together, mathsize is applied to fontsize.
3.2.2	color	yes	[deprecated attribute]
3.2.2	background	yes	[deprecated attribute]
3.2.3 <mi>		yes	Although it is not written in the specification that a number, such as <mi>3</mi> is not made italic, the number does not become italic after the model of lots of implementations. This restriction can be adjusted in the Option Setting File .
3.2.4 <mn>		yes	
3.2.5 <mo>		yes	
3.2.5 <mo>	form	yes	
	lspace	yes	The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File when it's not registered to the operator dictionary.
	rspace	yes	The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File when it's not registered to the operator dictionary.
	fence	yes	
	separator	no	Ignored.
	stretchy	yes	
	symmetric	yes	
	maxsize	yes	
	minsize	yes	The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File .
	largeop	yes	
	movablelimits	yes	
	accent	yes	
	linebreak	yes	
	lineleading	yes	The default value is 0. The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File .
	linebreakstyle	yes	
	linebreakmultchar	yes	
	indentalign	yes	
	indentshift	yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
	indenttarget	yes	The effect is not guaranteed when id in the back or id in the nonreferential position are referred to.
	indentalignfirst	yes	
	indentshiftfirst	yes	
	indentalignlast	yes	
	indentshiftlast	yes	
3.2.6 <mtext>		yes	
3.2.7 <mspace>		yes	mathvariant, mathcolor are invalid.
	width	yes	
	height	yes	
	depth	yes	
	linebreak	yes	indentnewline was abolished. Although it's regarded as newline, the amount of indents can be specified in the Option Setting File . That value will be added to the value of indentshift.
	indentalign	yes	
	indentshift	yes	
	indenttarget	yes	The effect is not guaranteed when id in the back or id in the nonreferential position are referred to.
	indentalignfirst	yes	
	indentshiftfirst	yes	
	indentalignlast	yes	
	indentshiftlast	yes	
3.2.8 <ms>		yes	An escape character can be changed in the Option Setting File . The escape processing is not performed when lquote and rquote are empty.
lquote	yes		
rquote	yes		
3.3.1 <mrow>		yes	
	dir	yes	
3.3.2 <mfrac>		yes	
linethickness	yes		
numalign	yes		
denomalign	yes		
	bevelled	yes	
3.3.3 <msqrt>		yes	
3.3.3 <mroot>		yes	
3.3.4 <mstyle>		yes	
scriptlevel	yes	Applicable to <math>.	
	displaystyle	yes	Applicable to <math>.
	scriptsizemultiplier	yes	Applicable to <math>. The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File .
	scriptminsize	yes	Applicable to <math>. The default value can be changed in the Option Setting File .
	infixlinebreakstyle	yes	Applicable to <math>.
	decimalpoint	yes	Applicable to <math>.

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
	any attributes	yes	Applicable to <math> . Accepts the followings. These are default values of the associated attributes that belong to the internal elements. accent accentunder align alignmentscope bevelled charalign charspacing close columnalign columnlines columnspacing columnspan columnwidth crossout denomalign depth dir edge equalcolumns equalrows fence form frame framespacing groupalign height indentalign indentshift first indentalignlast indentshift indentshiftfirst indentshiftlast indenttarget largeop leftoverhang length linebreak linebreakmultchar linebreakstyle lineleading linethickness location longdivstyle lquote lspace mathsize mathvariant maxsize minlabelspacing minsize movablelimits mslinethickness notation numalign open position rightoverhang rowalign rowlines rowspacing rowspan rquote rspace selection separator separators shift side stackalign stretchy subscriptshift superscriptshift symmetric valign width
	veryverythinmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	verythinmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	thinmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	mediummathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	thickmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	verythickmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	veryverythickmathspace	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	fontfamily	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	fontweight	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	fontstyle	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	fontsize	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	color	yes	[deprecated attribute]
	background	yes	[deprecated attribute]
3.3.5 <merror>		yes	The display style can be specified in the Option Setting File .
3.3.6 <mpadded>		yes	
	width	yes	
	height	yes	
	depth	yes	
	lspace	yes	
	voffset	yes	
3.3.7 <mphantom>		yes	
3.3.8 <mfenced>		yes	
	open	yes	
	close	yes	
	separators	yes	
3.3.9 <menclose>		yes	
	notation	partial	madruwb is not implemented.
3.4.1 <msub>		yes	
	subscriptshift	yes	
3.4.2 <m superscript>		yes	
	superscriptshift	yes	
3.4.3 <msubsup>		yes	
	subscriptshift	yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
	superscriptshift	yes	
3.4.4 <munder>	yes		
	accentunder	yes	
	align	yes	
3.4.5 <mover>	yes		
	accent	yes	
	align	yes	
3.4.6 <munderover>	yes		
	accent	yes	
	accentunder	yes	
	align	yes	
3.4.7 <mmultiscripts>	yes		
3.4.7 <mprescripts>	yes		
3.4.7 <none>	yes		
3.5.1 <mtable>	yes		
	align	yes	
	rowalign	yes	
	columnalign	yes	
	groupalign	yes	
	alignmentscope	no	
	columnwidth	yes	
	width	yes	
	rowspacing	yes	
	columnspacing	yes	
	rowlines	yes	
	columnlines	yes	
	frame	yes	
	framespacing	yes	
	equalrows	yes	
	equalcolumns	yes	
	displaystyle	yes	
	side	partial	leftoverlap and rightoverlap are respectively considered as left and right.
	minlabelspacing	yes	
3.5.2 <mtr>	yes		
	rowalign	yes	
	columnalign	yes	
	groupalign	yes	
3.5.3 <mlabeledtr>	yes		
3.5.4 <mtd>	yes		
	rowspan	yes	
	columnspan	yes	If a cell has colspan greater than 1, <maligngroup> will be ignored.
	rowalign	yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
	columnalign	yes	
	groupalign	yes	
3.5.5 <maligngroup>		yes	If <maligngroup> is not inside <mtd>, <maligngroup> will be ignored.
	groupalign	yes	
3.5.5 <malignmark>		yes	If <malignmark> is not inside <mtd>, <malignmark> will be ignored.
	edge	yes	
3.6.1 <mstack>		yes	
	align	yes	
	stackalign	yes	
	charalign	yes	
	charspacing	yes	The space corresponding to tight, medium, and loose can be specified in the Option Setting File . The automatic adjustment of the space is not performed.
3.6.2 <mlongdiv>		yes	When <msrow> is not contained in the divisor or the result, it is considered as an error. It is also possible to apply <mscarries> to the divisor, the dividend, and the result.
	longdivstyle	yes	
3.6.3 <msgroup>		yes	
	position	yes	position is ignored with the divisor of <mlongdiv>. Also position is ignored with the result of <mlongdiv> when it is not positioned on a dividend.
	shift	yes	
3.6.4 <msrow>		yes	
	position	yes	position is ignored with the divisor of <mlongdiv>. Also position is ignored with the result of <mlongdiv> when it is not positioned on a dividend.
3.6.5 <mscarries>		yes	When <msrow> does not follow <mscarries>, it is considered as an error.
	position	yes	
	location	partial	It is always considered as n.
	crossout	yes	
	scriptsizemultiplier	yes	
3.6.6 <mscarry>		yes	
	location	partial	It is always considered as n.
	crossout	yes	
3.6.7 <mline>		yes	
	position	yes	
	length	yes	
	leftoverhang	yes	
	rightoverhang	yes	
	mstlinethickness	yes	
3.7.1 <maction>		yes	
	actiontype	yes	When actiontype="toggle" is specified, the element specified to selection is displayed, in other cases, only the first element is displayed.
	selection	yes	

Content Markup

It's impossible to change the appearance with reference to the external Content Dictionary dynamically. It is not necessarily displayed similarly as the illustration of MathML3 specifications.

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
4.2	encoding	no	
	definitionURL	no	
4.2.1 <cn>		yes	
	type	yes	
	base	yes	
4.2.1 <sep>		yes	
4.2.2 <ci>		yes	
	type	no	Ignored.
4.2.3 <csymbol>		partial	
	type	no	
	cd	no	
4.2.4 <cs>		yes	
4.2.5 <apply>		yes	As for the shortage and excess of an operand corresponding to an operator, the appearance can be adjusted by enclosing the operand with parentheses and applying <merror>.
4.2.6 <bind>		yes	
4.2.6 <bvar>		yes	
4.2.7 <share>		yes	Corresponds to the reference only to itself, href="#id".
	src	no	
4.2.9 <cerror>		yes	
4.2.10 <cbytes>		yes	
4.3.3.1 <domainofapplication>		yes	
4.3.3.1 <condition>		yes	
4.3.3.1 <lowlimit>		yes	
4.3.3.1 <uplimit>		yes	
4.3.3.2 <degree>		yes	
4.3.3.3 <momentabout>		yes	
4.3.3.3 <logbase>		yes	
4.4.1.1 <interval>		yes	
4.4.1.2 <inverse>		yes	
4.4.1.3 <lambd>		yes	
4.4.1.4 <compose>		yes	
4.4.1.5 <ident>		yes	
4.4.1.6 <domain>		yes	
4.4.1.7 <codomain>		yes	
4.4.1.8 <image>		yes	
4.4.1.9 <piecewise>		yes	
4.4.1.9 <piece>		yes	
4.4.1.9 <otherwise>		yes	
4.4.2.1 <quotient>		yes	
4.4.2.2 <factorial>		yes	
4.4.2.3 <divide>		yes	
4.4.2.4 <max>		yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
4.4.2.5 <min>		yes	
4.4.2.6 <minus>		yes	
			Although there is no unary + in the specification, the following way of writing is allowed.
4.4.2.7 <plus>		yes	<pre><apply> <plus/> <ci>x</ci> </apply></pre>
4.4.2.8 <power>		yes	
4.4.2.9 <rem>		yes	
			Usually, U+2062 (⁢) is used, however when a second operand is <cn>, U+00D7 (×) is used as follow:
4.4.2.10 <times>		yes	<pre><apply> <times/> <cn>1</cn> <cn>7</cn> </apply></pre>
4.4.2.11 <root>		yes	
4.4.2.12 <gcd>		yes	
4.4.2.13 <and>		yes	
4.4.2.14 <or>		yes	
4.4.2.15 <xor>		yes	
4.4.2.16 <not>		yes	
4.4.2.17 <implies>		yes	
4.4.2.18 <forall>		yes	
4.4.2.19 <exists>		yes	
4.4.2.20 <abs>		yes	
4.4.2.21 <conjugate>		yes	
4.4.2.22 <arg>		yes	
4.4.2.23 <real>		yes	
4.4.2.24 <imaginary>		yes	
4.4.2.25 <lcm>		yes	
4.4.2.26 <floor>		yes	
4.4.2.27 <ceiling>		yes	
4.4.3.1 <eq>		yes	
4.4.3.2 <neq>		yes	
4.4.3.3 <gt>		yes	
4.4.3.4 <lt>		yes	
4.4.3.5 <geq>		yes	
4.4.3.6 <leq>		yes	
4.4.3.7 <equivalent>		yes	
4.4.3.8 <approx>		yes	U+2248 (≈) is used as specified in MathML2 specifications or TeX, although U+2243 (≃) is used in MathML3 specifications.
4.4.3.9 <factorof>		yes	
4.4.4.1 <int>		yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
4.4.4.2 <diff>		yes	
4.4.4.3 <partialdiff>		yes	
4.4.4.4 <divergence>		yes	
4.4.4.5 <grad>		yes	
4.4.4.6 <curl>		yes	
4.4.4.7 <laplacian>		yes	
4.4.5.1 <set>		yes	
	type	no	Ignored.
4.4.5.2 <list>		yes	
	order	no	Ignored.
4.4.5.3 <union>		yes	
4.4.5.4 <intersect>		yes	
4.4.5.5 <in>		yes	
4.4.5.6 <notin>		yes	
4.4.5.7 <subset>		yes	
4.4.5.8 <prsubset>		yes	
4.4.5.9 <notsubset>		yes	
4.4.5.10 <notprsubset>		yes	
4.4.5.11 <setdiff>		yes	
4.4.5.12 <card>		yes	
4.4.5.13 <cartesianproduct>		yes	
4.4.6.1 <sum>		yes	
4.4.6.2 <product>		yes	
4.4.6.3 <limit>		yes	
4.4.6.4 <tendsto>		yes	
	type	yes	
4.4.7.1 <sin>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <cos>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <tan>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <sec>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <csc>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <cot>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <sinh>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <cosh>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <tanh>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <sech>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <csch>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <coth>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arcsin>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arccos>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arctan>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arccosh>		yes	

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
4.4.7.1 <arccot>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arccoth>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arccsc>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arccsch>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arcsec>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arcsech>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arcsinh>		yes	
4.4.7.1 <arctanh>		yes	
4.4.7.2 <exp>		yes	
4.4.7.3 <ln>		yes	
4.4.7.4 <log>		yes	
4.4.8.1 <mean>		yes	
4.4.8.2 <sdev>		yes	
4.4.8.3 <variance>		yes	
4.4.8.4 <median>		yes	
4.4.8.5 <mode>		yes	
4.4.8.6 <moment>		yes	
4.4.9.1 <vector>		yes	
4.4.9.2 <matrix>		yes	
4.4.9.3 <matrixrow>		yes	
4.4.9.4 <determinant>		yes	
4.4.9.5 <transpose>		yes	
4.4.9.6 <selector>		yes	
4.4.9.7 <vectorproduct>		yes	
4.4.9.8 <scalarproduct>		yes	
4.4.9.9 <outerproduct>		yes	
4.4.10.1 <integers>		yes	
4.4.10.2 <reals>		yes	
4.4.10.3 <rationals>		yes	
4.4.10.4 <naturalnumbers>		yes	
4.4.10.5 <complexes>		yes	
4.4.10.6 <primes>		yes	
4.4.10.7 <exponentiale>		yes	
4.4.10.8 <imaginaryi>		yes	
4.4.10.9 <notanumber>		yes	
4.4.10.10 <true>		yes	
4.4.10.11 <>false>		yes	
4.4.10.12 <emptyset>		yes	
4.4.10.13 <pi>		yes	
4.4.10.14 <eulergamma>		yes	
4.4.10.15 <infinity>		yes	
4.5.1 <declare>		no	[deprecated element] Ignored.

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
<reln>		yes	[deprecated element]
<fn>		yes	[deprecated element]

Mixing Markup

Element	Attribute	Condition	Comments
5.2.1 <semantics>	partial	The <semantics> tag itself is ignored.	
5.2.2 <annotation>	no	Ignored.	
5.2.3 <annotation-xml>	no	Ignored.	

Operator Dictionary

What is written in the [MathML3.0 2nd Edition](#) is implemented as is in the operator dictionary. However, the following operators are added.

Character	Glyph	Name	form	priority	lspace	rspace	Properties	Remark
︷	~~	presentation form for vertical left curly bracket	infix	20	0	0	stretchy, symmetric	
︸	~~	presentation form for vertical right curly bracket	infix	20	0	0	stretchy, symmetric	

The contents of the operator dictionary can be adjusted with the [Option Setting File](#). There are the following restrictions.

- priority is not supported.
- separator is ignored.

The default operator dictionary which can be used with the Option Setting File is stored in [OperatorDictionary.xml](#). **AH Formatter V6.2** does not refer to this file. It is recommended to extract and use the portion of an operator you want to change.

Conformance Limitations

- The line break does not occur within the elements below.
 - <mfrac>
 - <menclose>
 - <msub>
 - <msup>
 - <msubsup>
 - <munder>
 - < mover>
 - < munderover>
 - < mmultiscripts>
 - < mstack>
 - < mlongdiv>
- The automatic line break does not occur within the elements below.
 - < mtable>
- Complicated scripts, such as Arabic, are not supported.
- When dir="rtl" is specified, although horizontal reverse processing of a region is performed, a root sign or Σ, etc. will not be mirrored.
- Many of <csymbol> are not implemented.
- Many of <bvar> includes unknown implementation method.

 **Hyphenation**

AH Formatter V6.2 can hyphenate over 40 languages. There is no need to prepare the dictionary.

Languages

AH Formatter V6.2 supports the hyphenation for the following languages.

Code		Language	Hyphenation Limited To
af	afr	Afrikaans	Latin characters and Apostrophe
bg	bul	Bulgarian	Cyrillic characters
ca	cat	Catalan	Latin characters and Apostrophe and Decimal point (Full stop or Middle dot)
cs	ces	Czech	Latin characters
cy	cym	Welsh	Latin characters and Apostrophe
da	dan	Danish	Latin characters and Apostrophe
de	deu	German / Swiss German	Latin characters and Apostrophe
el	ell	Greek	Greek characters
en	eng	English	Latin characters and Apostrophe
en-US	eng-US	American	Latin characters and Apostrophe
eo	epo	Esperanto	Latin characters
es	spa	Spanish	Latin characters
et	est	Estonian	Latin characters
eu	eus	Basque	Latin characters
fi	fin	Finnish	Latin characters
fr	fra	French / Canadian French	Latin characters and Apostrophe
ga	gle	Irish (Erse or Gaelic)	Latin characters and Apostrophe
hr	hrv	Croatian	Cyrillic characters or Latin characters
hu	hun	Hungarian	Latin characters
id	ind	Indonesian	Latin characters and Apostrophe and Digit 2
is	isl	Icelandic	Latin characters
it	ita	Italian	Latin characters and Apostrophe
la	lat	Latin	Latin characters
lt	lit	Lithuanian	Latin characters
lv	lav	Latvian	Latin characters
ms	msa	Bahasa Malay	Latin characters and Apostrophe and Digit 2
mt	mlt	Maltese	Latin characters and Apostrophe
nl	nld	Dutch / Flemish	Latin characters and Apostrophe
no	nor	Norwegian	Latin characters and Apostrophe
pl	pol	Polish	Latin characters
pt	por	Portuguese / Brazilian	Latin characters
ro	ron	Romanian / Moldavian	Latin characters and Apostrophe
ru	rus	Russian	Cyrillic characters
sk	slk	Slovak	Latin characters and Apostrophe
sl	slv	Slovenian	Latin characters and Apostrophe

Code		Language	Hyphenation Limited To
sr	srp	Serbian	Cyrillic characters or Latin characters
sv	swe	Swedish	Latin characters and Apostrophe
sw	swa	Swahili	Latin characters and Apostrophe
th	tha	Thai	Thai characters
tr	tur	Turkish	Latin characters
uk	ukr	Ukrainian	Cyrillic characters

AH Formatter V6.2 hyphenates a word considering the character string composed of characters listed in the table above to be a word. If a word contains the other characters, it is not considered to be a word. If you need hyphenation for unsupported characters you will need to use a [TeX dictionary](#).

Example

To use Czech hyphenation the following is placed in the fo file:

```
<fo:block hyphenate="true" language="ces">
Všichni lidé rodí se svobodní a sobě rovní co do důstojnosti a práv. Jsou nadání rozumem a
svědomím a mají spolu jednat v duchu bratrství.
</fo:block>
```

Exception Dictionary

It's not necessary to prepare the dictionary with **AH Formatter V6.2**. However, there may be a case that you want to treat the unexpected hyphenated words as exceptions. In such case, it is possible to register the words in the exception dictionary. In addition, when you edit the exception dictionary while working on GUI, you can re-load the hyphenation dictionary and re-format the document from [menu] - [Format] - [Reload Hyphenation Dic].

The exception dictionary is stored in the [hyphenation](#) folder in the **AH Formatter V6.2** installation folder or in the folder where the AHF62_HYPDIC_PATH (AHF62_64_HYPDIC_PATH for 64bit version) environment variable indicates. The name of the dictionary file conforms to the following rules, which is same as [TeX dictionary](#).

- The file name is made from the Language Tag defined in [RFC1766](#). To make a file name a hyphen is changed to an under bar and the ".xml" extension is added. The Language Tag is made by joining the language code of [ISO 639-2](#) and the country code of ISO 3166 with a hyphen. Sometimes it consists of only the language code. Please be sure that an under bar used in the file name and not a hyphen.
- The language code should be specified by 2-letter code when it exists, and if not, specify it by Terminology code. Also specify the country code by 2-letter code when it exists.

For example: de.xml, en_US.xml and so on. When `xml:lang="nl-BE"` is specified, dictionaries are detected in the following order.

1. nl-BE.xml
2. nl_BE.xml
3. nl.xml

The following shows the content of exception dictionary.

Element	Location	Description
<hyphenation-info>	root element	
<hyphen-char>	child of <hyphenation-info>	The element that indicates the hyphenation character alternative to <hyphen/> in the exception element. Hyphenation character is expressed by the value attribute. The initial value is "-" (U+002D).
<exceptions>	child of <hyphenation-info>	A data of exception dictionary. The text of the exception element is a collection of hyphenated words divided by white space. The hyphen information is indicated by the hyphen element, however the character specified by the hyphen-char element can also be used.
<hyphen>	child of <exceptions>	A full functional hyphen equivalent to TeX's \discretionary. Hyphen element has the pre, post and no attributes. The pre attribute indicates the strings inserted before the hyphenation character when a hyphenation break occurs, The post attribute indicates the strings inserted after the hyphenation character when a hyphenation break occurs, the no attribute indicates the strings appearing when a hyphenation

Element	Location	Description
<hyphen>	child of <exceptions>	break does not occur. Hyphen element is used when the spelling changes when a hyphenation break occurs.
<non-eol-words>	child of <hyphenation-info>	Specifies non-end-of-line words dividing by the white space. The word specified here is adjusted not to be placed at the end of line, however in some case it's inevitable. The non-end-of-line process is effective all the time, independent of the hyphenate property in FO.

CAUTION: With Thai hyphenation, neither a hyphen character nor <hyphen> are specified within <exceptions>.

The DTD of Exception Dictionary is simple as follows:

```
<!ELEMENT hyphenation-info (hyphen-char?, exceptions?, non-eol-words?) >
<!ELEMENT hyphen-char EMPTY >
<!ATTLIST hyphen-char value CDATA #REQUIRED >

<!ELEMENT exceptions (#PCDATA|hyphen)* >

<!ELEMENT hyphen EMPTY >
<!ATTLIST hyphen pre CDATA #IMPLIED >
<!ATTLIST hyphen no CDATA #IMPLIED >
<!ATTLIST hyphen post CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT non-eol-words #PCDATA >
```

Suppose the following exception dictionary is prepared.

```
<hyphenation-info>
<exceptions>
ta-ble
present
ba<hyphen pre="k" no="c"/>ken
</exceptions>
</hyphenation-info>
```

The word table has a possibility of being hyphened only as ta-ble, the word present never be hyphened. The word backen is hyphened as bak-ken. And ta<hyphen/>ble is quite equivalent for ta-ble in this example.

Possible to specify the hyphenation by the hyphen element that change the spelling of the word.

Settings for Exception Dictionary	Word	Hyphenation
ab<hyphen>def	abdef	ab-def
ab<hyphen no="c"/>def	abcdef	ab-def
ab<hyphen pre="x"/>def	abdef	abx-def
ab<hyphen pre="x" no="c"/>def	abcdef	abx-def
ab<hyphen post="z"/>def	abdef	ab-zdef
ab<hyphen no="c" post="z"/>def	abcdef	ab-zdef
ab<hyphen pre="x" post="z"/>def	abdef	abx-zdef
ab<hyphen pre="x" no="c" post="z"/>def	abcdef	abx-zdef

TeX Dictionary

It's also available to do hyphenate using the TeX dictionary with **AH Formatter V6.2**. To hyphenate by Tex dictionary, it's necessary to specify **HyphenationOption="false"** in the [Option Setting File](#). Dictionaries will be required for all the necessary languages. Dictionaries are XML files that are the same format as FOP. See also the [Apache Website](#). Only the hyphenation dictionary for English (en.xml) is ready and provided with XSL Formatter V4.0.

Dictionary Name and Location

Hyphenation Dictionaries are stored in the "hyphenation" folder where **AH Formatter V6.2** is installed. The file name of Hyphenation Dictionary follows the rules shown below.

- The file name is made from the Language Tag defined in [RFC1766](#). To make a file name a hyphen is changed to an under bar and the ".xml" extension is added. The Language Tag is made by joining the 2 letter language code of [ISO 639-2](#) and the country code of ISO 3166 with a hyphen. Sometimes it consists of only the language code. Please be sure that an under bar used in the file name and not a hyphen.

For example : de.xml, en_GB.xml The 3 letter language code in FO is converted to the 2 letter language code automatically. When the country code is also specified in the language setting as below, first the hyphenation dictionary en_GB.xml is detected, then if it's not found, the hyphenation dictionary en.xml is detected. In this case the country code is ignored.

```
<fo:block hyphenate="true" xml:lang="en-GB">
```

Contents of Hyphenation Dictionary

The contents of Hyphenation Dictionary are defined in the [hyphenation.dtd](#). [hyphenation.dtd](#) is included in FOP distribution. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, it is installed in the [hyphenation](#) folder where **AH Formatter V6.2** is installed. Below is a brief explanation of the DTD. Refer to [hyphenation.dtd](#) for more details.

Element	Location	Description
<hyphenation-info>	root element	
<hyphen-char>	child of <hyphenation-info>	This element expresses hyphenation characters in the exception dictionary data. Hyphenation character is expressed by the value attribute. Initial value is "-" (U +002D). But the hyphenation characters in the actual formatted result are given by the hyphenation-character property in the XSL specification.
<hyphen-min>	child of <hyphenation-info>	When hyphenation break occurs, before and after attributes give the minimum number of characters in a hyphenated word before or after the hyphenation character. Before attribute is mapped to XSL hyphenation-remain-character-count property, after is mapped to XSL hyphenation-push-character-count. AH Formatter V6.2 uses these properties and the hyphen-min element in the dictionary is ignored.
<classes>	child of <hyphenation-info>	Defined as character equivalent class. Text of classes' element is white space-separated list of character groups, all characters in a group are to be treated equivalent. Actually each group consists of lowercase and uppercase characters. Following is a sample of English dictionary (en.xml).
		aA bB cC dD eE fF gG hH iI jJ kK lL mM nN oO pP qQ rR sS tT uU vV wW xX yY zZ
<pattern>	child of <hyphenation-info>	The hyphenation patterns, space separated. A pattern consists of character and digits. Character is the beginning characters of classes groups (normally lowercase). Digits between characters indicate the strength of hyphenation potential (hyphenation value).
<exceptions>	child of <hyphenation-info>	Data of hyphenation exception dictionary. Text of exceptions element consists of space-separated list of hyphenated words. A hyphen is indicated by the hyphen element, but you can use character defined in hyphen-char element. Exceptions element is used when hyphenation points determined by hyphenation-pattern dictionary are not appropriate or you want to use special hyphenation patterns of your own.
<hyphen>	child of <exceptions>	A full functional hyphen equivalent to TeX's \discretionary. Hyphen element has the pre, post and no attributes. The pre attribute indicates the strings inserted before the hyphenation character when a hyphenation break occurs, The post attribute indicates the strings inserted after the hyphenation character when a hyphenation break occurs, the no attribute indicates the strings appearing when a hyphenation break does not occur. Hyphen element is used when the spelling changes when a hyphenation break occurs.

Restrictions

If the sentence is placed in the narrow region and there occurs plural hyphenation for one word, sometimes the result does not follow the exception dictionary.

PANTONE® Option

By using AH Formatter PANTONE® Option, the name of color listed in Color Names can be specified to the `rgb-icc()` function. For example, specify as follows in FO:

```
rgb-icc(#Separation, 'PANTONE 131 PC')
rgb-icc(#Separation, 'PANTONE Reflex Blue U')
```



The inc type can be specified to `PC` or `U` that comes after the color name by either of the following.

C	Solid coated	RGB
U	Solid uncoated	
M	Solid matte	
PC	Process coated	CMYK
EC	Euro coated	

Specified color names and other alphabets are case insensitive.

Color Names

PANTONE Color				
Black	Black 2	Black 3	Black 4	Black 5
Black 6	Black 7			
Cool Gray 1	Cool Gray 2	Cool Gray 3	Cool Gray 4	Cool Gray 5
Cool Gray 6	Cool Gray 7	Cool Gray 8	Cool Gray 9	Cool Gray 10
Cool Gray 11				
Warm Gray 1	Warm Gray 2	Warm Gray 3	Warm Gray 4	Warm Gray 5
Warm Gray 6	Warm Gray 7	Warm Gray 8	Warm Gray 9	Warm Gray 10
Warm Gray 11				
Blue 072	Reflex Blue			
Green				
Orange 021				
Purple				
Red 032	Rhodamine Red	Rubine Red	Warm Red	
Violet				
Yellow	Yellow 012			
Process Black	Process Blue	Process Cyan	Process Magenta	Process Yellow
HEXACHROME Black	HEXACHROME Cyan	HEXACHROME Green	HEXACHROME Magenta	HEXACHROME Orange
HEXACHROME Yellow				
100	101	102	103	104
105	106	107	108	109
110	111	112	113	114
115	116	117	118	119
120	121	122	123	124
125	126	127	128	129
130	131	132	133	134
135	136	137	138	139

PANTONE Color				
140	141	142	143	144
145	146	147	148	149
150	151	152	153	154
155	156	157	158	159
160	161	162	163	164
165	166	167	168	169
170	171	172	173	174
175	176	177	178	179
180	181	182	183	184
185	186	187	188	189
190	191	192	193	194
195	196	197	198	199
200	201	202	203	204
205	206	207	208	209
210	211	212	213	214
215	216	217	218	219
220	221	222	223	224
225	226	227	228	229
230	231	232	233	234
235	236	237	238	239
240	241	242	243	244
245	246	247	248	249
250	251	252	253	254
255	256	257	258	259
260	261	262	263	264
265	266	267	268	269
270	271	272	273	274
275	276	277	278	279
280	281	282	283	284
285	286	287	288	289
290	291	292	293	294
295	296	297	298	299
300	301	302	303	304
305	306	307	308	309
310	311	312	313	314
315	316	317	318	319
320	321	322	323	324
325	326	327	328	329
330	331	332	333	334
335	336	337	338	339
340	341	342	343	344
345	346	347	348	349

PANTONE Color				
350	351	352	353	354
355	356	357	358	359
360	361	362	363	364
365	366	367	368	369
370	371	372	373	374
375	376	377	378	379
380	381	382	383	384
385	386	387	388	389
390	391	392	393	394
395	396	397	398	399
400	401	402	403	404
405	406	407	408	409
410	411	412	413	414
415	416	417	418	419
420	421	422	423	424
425	426	427	428	429
430	431	432	433	434
435	436	437	438	439
440	441	442	443	444
445	446	447	448	449
450	451	452	453	454
455	456	457	458	459
460	461	462	463	464
465	466	467	468	469
470	471	472	473	474
475	476	477	478	479
480	481	482	483	484
485	486	487	488	489
490	491	492	493	494
495	496	497	498	499
500	501	502	503	504
505	506	507	508	509
510	511	512	513	514
515	516	517	518	519
520	521	522	523	524
525	526	527	528	529
530	531	532	533	534
535	536	537	538	539
540	541	542	543	544
545	546	547	548	549
550	551	552	553	554
555	556	557	558	559

PANTONE Color				
560	561	562	563	564
565	566	567	568	569
570	571	572	573	574
575	576	577	578	579
580	581	582	583	584
585	586	587	600	601
602	603	604	605	606
607	608	609	610	611
612	613	614	615	616
617	618	619	620	621
622	623	624	625	626
627	628	629	630	631
632	633	634	635	636
637	638	639	640	641
642	643	644	645	646
647	648	649	650	651
652	653	654	655	656
657	658	659	660	661
662	663	664	665	666
667	668	669	670	671
672	673	674	675	676
677	678	679	680	681
682	683	684	685	686
687	688	689	690	691
692	693	694	695	696
697	698	699	700	701
702	703	704	705	706
707	708	709	710	711
712	713	714	715	716
717	718	719	720	721
722	723	724	725	726
727	728	729	730	731
732	801	802	803	804
805	806	807	808	809
810	811	812	813	814
871	872	873	874	875
876	877	1205	1215	1225
1235	1245	1255	1265	1345
1355	1365	1375	1385	1395
1405	1485	1495	1505	1525
1535	1545	1555	1565	1575
1585	1595	1605	1615	1625

PANTONE Color				
1635	1645	1655	1665	1675
1685	1765	1767	1775	1777
1785	1787	1788	1795	1797
1805	1807	1815	1817	1895
1905	1915	1925	1935	1945
1955	2365	2375	2385	2395
2405	2415	2425	2562	2563
2567	2572	2573	2577	2582
2583	2587	2592	2593	2597
2602	2603	2607	2612	2613
2617	2622	2623	2627	2635
2645	2655	2665	2685	2695
2705	2706	2707	2708	2715
2716	2717	2718	2725	2726
2727	2728	2735	2736	2738
2745	2746	2747	2748	2755
2756	2757	2758	2765	2766
2767	2768	2905	2915	2925
2935	2945	2955	2965	2975
2985	2995	3005	3015	3025
3035	3105	3115	3125	3135
3145	3155	3165	3242	3245
3248	3252	3255	3258	3262
3265	3268	3272	3275	3278
3282	3285	3288	3292	3295
3298	3302	3305	3308	3375
3385	3395	3405	3415	3425
3435	3935	3945	3955	3965
3975	3985	3995	4485	4495
4505	4515	4525	4535	4545
4625	4635	4645	4655	4665
4675	4685	4695	4705	4715
4725	4735	4745	4755	4975
4985	4995	5005	5015	5025
5035	5115	5125	5135	5145
5155	5165	5175	5185	5195
5205	5215	5225	5235	5245
5255	5265	5275	5285	5295
5305	5315	5395	5405	5415
5425	5435	5445	5455	5463
5467	5473	5477	5483	5487
5493	5497	5503	5507	5513

PANTONE Color				
5517	5523	5527	5535	5545
5555	5565	5575	5585	5595
5605	5615	5625	5635	5645
5655	5665	5743	5747	5753
5757	5763	5767	5773	5777
5783	5787	5793	5797	5803
5807	5815	5825	5835	5845
5855	5865	5875	7401	7402
7403	7404	7405	7406	7407
7408	7409	7410	7411	7412
7413	7414	7415	7416	7417
7418	7419	7420	7421	7422
7423	7424	7425	7426	7427
7428	7429	7430	7431	7432
7433	7434	7435	7436	7437
7438	7439	7440	7441	7442
7443	7444	7445	7446	7447
7448	7449	7450	7451	7452
7453	7454	7455	7456	7457
7458	7459	7460	7461	7462
7463	7464	7465	7466	7467
7468	7469	7470	7471	7472
7473	7474	7475	7476	7477
7478	7479	7480	7481	7482
7483	7484	7485	7486	7487
7488	7489	7490	7491	7492
7493	7494	7495	7496	7497
7498	7499	7500	7501	7502
7503	7504	7505	7506	7507
7508	7509	7510	7511	7512
7513	7514	7515	7516	7517
7518	7519	7520	7521	7522
7523	7524	7525	7526	7527
7528	7529	7530	7531	7532
7533	7534	7535	7536	7537
7538	7539	7540	7541	7542
7543	7544	7545	7546	7547
8003	8021	8062	8100	8201
8281	8321			

Barcode Generator Option

Barcode Generator Option enables you to embed barcodes directly in the document as images. Barcode fonts are not necessary.

Customers must purchase "AH Formatter AH Formatter Barcode Generator Option" to generate Barcodes. See also [Antenna House website](#) for more details.

Barcode Generator Option supports the following barcode formats.

- QR / MicroQR
- Japan Post Customer Barcode
- Intelligent Mail® Barcode
- POSTNET
- EAN / JAN
- UPC (UPC-A, UPC-E)
- Interleaved 2of5 (ITF)
- Codabar / NW-7
- Code 39
- Code 128
- GS1-128 / EAN-128

The barcode can be specified by using `data:` scheme as follows;

```
<fo:external-graphic src="data:application/vnd.ah-barcode;type=QR;scale=2>Hello%20World!"/>
```

`application/vnd.ah-barcode` is a special media type of its own use. The barcode content you want to output can be specified directly as strings as shown above. Note that at this time, an improper character as URI should be expressed by the % encode. You can also specify it with base64.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="data:application/vnd.ah-barcode;type=QR;base64,PD94bWwgdmVyc2lv..."/>
```

The barcode output is controlled by the parameter of the media type. The parameter is not case-sensitive. The type parameter is indispensable and indicates the types of the barcode to output.

The barcode is always enforced by `axf:image-smoothing="false"`.

CAUTION: The specification of the barcode is not dwelled in this document. Please refer to the specification of the associated barcode.

CAUTION: Barcode Generator Option is an another option and different from the old Barcode Option that utilizes the barcode font.

QR / MicroQR

QR codes comply with the international standard of ISO/IEC 18004:2006. Barcode Generator Option only supports QR Model2, does not support Model1. The following parameters can be specified.

Parameter	Value		Default value	Contents	
type	QR	MicroQR	Required		
ver	auto 1 to 40	auto 1 to 4	auto	Version	
ecl	auto L M Q H		auto	Error correction level	
enc	auto N A B K		auto	Encoding auto Equivalent to NABK N Numbers 0123456789 A Alphanumeric 0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ B Bytes \$%*+-./: space K Kanji Shift JIS	



Parameter	Value		Default value	Contents
mpo	auto 0 to 7	auto 0 to 3	auto	Mask pattern reference
out	svg	png	png	Output formats
dpi	Non-negative numbers	0		The png image resolution. (0, if nothing specified)
scale	Positive numbers	1		Output size in module unit
charset	Arbitrary character strings	UTF-8		Encoding by the direct character string specification

Multiple values can be specified to enc excluding auto. For instance, suppose enc=NAB is specified, these three are mixed and outputted appropriately. If failed to output with the specified encoding, an error will be generated.

Some sort of masking is given to QR so that a monochrome pattern may become even as much as possible. The mpo specification by the mask pattern reference enforces this processing to one particular pattern. It may be less uniformity than the pattern automatically selected, but it doesn't mean the wrong QR.

The dpi specification for image resolution is effective only with png and the value of a real number can be specified. The unit should not be included.

Values that can be specified to scale, the output size in module unit, differ between svg and png.

- **svg**

The positive real number with a unit can be specified. 0 or less cannot be specified. Enter a value and choose a unit option (em, ex, px, pt, pc, and in, cm or mm.) If the unit is omitted, it is considered as px.

- **png**

The integral value greater than or equal to 1 can be specified. The unit should not be included. When the value of a real number is specified, below the decimal point will be dropped.

The charset specification indicates the encoding outputted to QR when the character string is specified directly and it's not base64. This setting is applied when kanji is not specified to the encoding. The data specified by base64 is outputted as is with no conversion.

CAUTION: QR cannot process all range of Shift Jis codes in kanji mode. These characters may not be readable for some QR readers.

Customer Barcode

The customer barcode indicates Japan Post Customer Barcode or Intelligent Mail® Barcode, etc. The following parameters can be specified.

Parameter	Value	Default Value	Contents
type	JPCBC	Required	Japan Post Customer Barcode
	IMBC		Intelligent Mail® Barcode
	POSTNET		
l	Positive numbers	Described later	Length of long bar/full bar
t	Positive numbers	Described later	Length of timing bar/tracker bar
h	Positive numbers	Described later	Length of half bar (POSTNET only)
w	Positive numbers	Described later	Width of bar
p	Positive numbers	Described later	Pitch of bar
hsp	Non-negative numbers	Described later	Horizontal margin
vsp	Non-negative numbers	Described later	Vertical margin
out	svg	png	Output format
dpi	Positive numbers	384	png image resolution

The length and width of the bar, and the margin, etc should be the values with units. Enter a value and choose a unit option (pt, pc, in, cm or mm.) The default values are as follows;

Parameters	JPCBC	IMBC	POSTNET
I	3.6mm	0.15in	0.125in
t	1.2mm	0.05in	
h			0.05in
w	0.6mm	0.02in	0.02in
p	1.2mm	0.045in	0.0416in
hsp	2.0mm	0.125in	0
vsp	2.0mm	0.028in	0

When outputting png, the length and the width of the bar are rounded to the number of pixels by the dpi specification. Therefore, the output may differ slightly from the specified length. When a low resolution is specified, the barcode may not be correctly read.

The dpi specification for image resolution is effective only with png and the value of a real number can be specified. The unit should not be included.

Japan Post Customer Barcode

Japan Post Customer Barcode can be specified by the JPCBC value and the following characters can be specified. The first seven characters indicates the ZIP code. Then the numbers that show postal address will follow afterwards. If the postal address numbers indicates greater than 13 characters, by counting 2 alphabets as 1 character, then the latter parts greater than 13 characters will be discarded. Lower case will be converted into upper case.

0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ-

Intelligent Mail® Barcode

Intelligent Mail® Barcode can be specified by the IMBC value and only numbers with the determined digit numbers can be specified. The allowed digit numbers are 20, 25, 29 or 31. In addition, the second digit must be 0 to 4.

POSTNET

Only numbers with the determined digit numbers can be specified to POSTNET. The allowed digit numbers are 5, 9, or 11.

Linear Barcode

Linear barcodes indicate 1 dimensional barcodes. The following parameters can be specified.

Parameter	Value	Default value	Contents
type	EAN JAN	Required	
	UPC		UPC-A, UPC-E
	ITF		Interleaved 2of5
	Codabar NW-7		
	Code39		
	Code128		
	GS1-128 EAN-128		
w	Positive numbers	0.33mm	Width of thin bar
r	Positive numbers	2.5	Width ratio between thin and wide bars It's not used with EAN JAN UPC Code128 GS1-128 EAN-128
h	Positive numbers	22.86mm	Width of bar
qz	Non-negative numbers	10	Specifies the horizontal margin (quiet zone) by the number of thin bars.
scale	Positive numbers	1	Display magnification
out	svg png	svg	Output format

Parameter	Value	Default value	Contents
dpi	Positive numbers	384	png image resolution
text	none	none	Specifies how the text of an original code is displayed under the barcode.
	auto		
	center		
	justify		

The length and width of the bar, and the margin, etc should be the values with units. Enter a value and choose a unit option (pt, pc, in, cm or mm.)

When outputting png, the length and the width of the bar are rounded to the number of pixels by the dpi specification. Therefore, the output may differ slightly from the specified length. When a low resolution is specified, the barcode may not be correctly read.

The dpi specification for image resolution is effective only with png and the value of a real number can be specified. The unit should not be included.

You can display the text of an original code under the barcode by specifying values to text. Only the typical display format can be specified. This is effective only with SVG output. Specify the font you want to use by [barcode-text-font](#) in Option Setting File. The size of a character is automatically calculated from the size of a barcode.

- none
Does not display text.
- auto
With JAN/EAN/UPC, the standard output, like drawing out a part of bar and pushing the beginning character toward left, will be performed. With other than JAN/EAN/UPC, it is treated as center.
- center
Displays centered text.
- justify
Displays justified text by fitting the right and left edge of the text on the width of the barcode.

EAN / JAN

EAN complies with the international standard of ISO/IEC 15420:2009. JAN is the same as EAN. In EAN/JAN, the allowed digit numbers are 13 or 8 only by the figure. The last digit is the check digit. It is acceptable to input 12 digits or 7 digits excluding the check digit. When 13 digits or 8 digits are given, the last digit will be ignored, calculated and replaced correctly when outputted.

UPC

In UPC, the allowed digit numbers are 12 or 8 only by the figure. 12 digits are UPC-A, and eight digits are UPC-E. In UPC-E, the first digit must be 0 or 1. The last digit is the check digit. It is acceptable to input 11 digits or 7 digits excluding the check digit. When 12 digits or 8 digits are given, the last digit will be ignored, calculated and replaced correctly when outputted. UPC-D is not supported.

Interleaved 2of5

Interleaved 2of5 complies with the international standard of ISO/IEC 16390:2007. Interleaved 2of5 can be specified with ITF. In ITF, only the figure in the even number digit can be specified.

Codabar / NW-7

In Codabar/NW-7, the beginning of a string must be one of ABCD. The end character must be one of ABCD or TN*E. The character in the middle can be specified from the followings in any arbitrary digit. The lower case of the beginning and end of English letters will be converted into the upper case.

0123456789-\$/:.+

You can specify whether to add the check digit or not. When the check digit is added, there may be a limit on characters that can be used.

Parameter	Value	Default value	Contents	Limitations
cd	none	none	None	

Parameter	Value	Default value	Contents	Limitations
cd	m10w2	none	Modulus 10 weight 2	Only figures available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	m10w2r		Modulus 10 weight 2 runes	Only figures available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	m10w3		Modulus 10 weight 3	Only figures available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	m11		Modulus 11	Only figures with greater than or equal to 6 digits available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	wm11		Weight modulus 11	Only figures with less than or equal to 12 digits available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	m16		Modulus 16	
	7dr 7dsr		7 check DR/DSR	Only figures available except for the beginning and end of characters.
	9dr 9dsr		9 check DR/DSR	Only figures available except for the beginning and end of characters.

Code39

Code39 complies with the international standard of ISO/IEC 16388:2007. In Code39, the following characters can be specified in any arbitrary digit. The lower case of the beginning and end of English letters will be converted into the upper case.

0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ-. \$/+% space

You can specify whether to add the check digit or not.

Parameter	Value	Default value	Contents
cd	none	m43	None
	m43		Modulus 43

Code128

Code128 complies with the international standard of ISO/IEC 15417:2007. In Code128, three types of code sets, CODE-A, CODE-B, and CODE-C can be specified by parameters.

Parameter	Value	Default value
code	A B C	B

In Code128, any arbitrary characters of U+0000 to U+007F can be expressed. Among these, U+0000 to U+001F, U+007F, and the control code will be substituted by another codes.

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+0020	SPACE	SPACE	N/A
U+0021	!	!	N/A
U+0022	"	"	N/A
U+0023	#	#	N/A
U+0024	\$	\$	N/A
U+0025	%	%	N/A
U+0026	&	&	N/A
U+0027	'	'	N/A
U+0028	((N/A
U+0029))	N/A
U+002A	*	*	N/A

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+0040	@	@	N/A
U+0041	A	A	N/A
U+0042	B	B	N/A
U+0043	C	C	N/A
U+0044	D	D	N/A
U+0045	E	E	N/A
U+0046	F	F	N/A
U+0047	G	G	N/A
U+0048	H	H	N/A
U+0049	I	I	N/A
U+004A	J	J	N/A

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+0060	U+0000	'	N/A
U+0061	U+0001	a	N/A
U+0062	U+0002	b	N/A
U+0063	U+0003	c	N/A
U+0064	U+0004	d	N/A
U+0065	U+0005	e	N/A
U+0066	U+0006	f	N/A
U+0067	U+0007	g	N/A
U+0068	U+0008	h	N/A
U+0069	U+0009	i	N/A
U+006A	U+000A	j	N/A

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+002B	+	+	N/A
U+002C	,	,	N/A
U+002D	-	-	N/A
U+002E	.	.	N/A
U+002F	/	/	N/A
U+0030	0	0	0
U+0031	1	1	1
U+0032	2	2	2
U+0033	3	3	3
U+0034	4	4	4
U+0035	5	5	5
U+0036	6	6	6
U+0037	7	7	7
U+0038	8	8	8
U+0039	9	9	9
U+003A	:	:	N/A
U+003B	;	;	N/A
U+003C	<	<	N/A
U+003D	=	=	N/A
U+003E	>	>	N/A
U+003F	?	?	N/A

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+004B	K	K	N/A
U+004C	L	L	N/A
U+004D	M	M	N/A
U+004E	N	N	N/A
U+004F	O	O	N/A
U+0050	P	P	N/A
U+0051	Q	Q	N/A
U+0052	R	R	N/A
U+0053	S	S	N/A
U+0054	T	T	N/A
U+0055	U	U	N/A
U+0056	V	V	N/A
U+0057	W	W	N/A
U+0058	X	X	N/A
U+0059	Y	Y	N/A
U+005A	Z	Z	N/A
U+005B	[[N/A
U+005C	\	\	N/A
U+005D]]	N/A
U+005E	^	^	N/A
U+005F	_	_	N/A

Input character	CODE-A	CODE-B	CODE-C
U+006B	U+000B	k	N/A
U+006C	U+000C	l	N/A
U+006D	U+000D	m	N/A
U+006E	U+000E	n	N/A
U+006F	U+000F	o	N/A
U+0070	U+0010	p	N/A
U+0071	U+0011	q	N/A
U+0072	U+0012	r	N/A
U+0073	U+0013	s	N/A
U+0074	U+0014	t	N/A
U+0075	U+0015	u	N/A
U+0076	U+0016	v	N/A
U+0077	U+0017	w	N/A
U+0078	U+0018	x	N/A
U+0079	U+0019	y	N/A
U+007A	U+001A	z	N/A
U+007B	U+001B	{	N/A
U+007C	U+001C		N/A
U+007D	U+001D	}	N/A
U+007E	U+001E	~	N/A
U+00BF	U+001F	U+007F	N/A
U+00C0	FNC3	FNC3	N/A
U+00C1	FNC2	FNC2	N/A
U+00C2	SHIFT	SHIFT	N/A
U+00C3	CODE-C	CODE-C	N/A
U+00C4	CODE-B	FNC4	CODE-B
U+00C5	FNC4	CODE-A	CODE-A
U+00C6	FNC1	FNC1	FNC1

The following characters are available to input.

CODE-A	U+0020 to U+007E, U+00BF to U+00C6
CODE-B	U+0020 to U+007E, U+00BF to U+00C6
CODE-C	Figures with even number digits, U+00C4 to U+00C6

GS1-128 / EAN-128

GS1-128/EAN-128 is Code128 with some kind of restriction. Barcode Generator Option will check the following points (or may not). The restrictions other than these are the same as Code128.

- It is necessary to start with FNC1.
- Characters that can be used excluding the control code are as follows. (white space is not included.)
! "%& ' () *+-./0123456789:;<=>?
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
- FNC2 and FNC4 cannot be used.
- Recognizes the already-known application identifier (AI) and check the number of characters. Does not check the character format.
- Does not check FNC1 in case of the fixed length even if is a necessary format.

The following shows the already registered AI. If you want to change the format or AI is not listed here, It is available to add changes in [Option Setting File](#). The last digit of AI, * shows any arbitrary figures. For instance, 310* indicates 3100 to 3109. Format has the following meanings. The last F of the format shows that FNC1 is required.

- n3 : 3-digit numbers
- x3 : 3-digit arbitrary characters
- n-10 : Numbers with greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 10 digits.
- x3-10 : Arbitrary characters with greater than or equal to 3 and less than or equal to 10 digits.

AI	format
00	n18
01	n14
02	n14
03	n14
04	n16
10	x-20 F
11	n6
12	n6
13	n6
14	n6
15	n6
16	n6
17	n6
18	n6
19	n6
20	n2
21	x-20 F
22	x-29 F
23*	x-19 Note
240	x-30 F
241	x-30 F
242	x-6 F
250	x-30 F
251	x-30 F
252	n27
253	n14-30 F
254	x-20 F
AI	format
30	n-8
310*	n6
311*	n6
312*	n6
313*	n6
314*	n6
315*	n6
316*	n6
320*	n6
321*	n6
322*	n6
323*	n6
324*	n6
325*	n6
326*	n6
327*	n6
328*	n6
329*	n6
330*	n6
331*	n6
332*	n6
333*	n6
334*	n6
335*	n6
336*	n6
337*	n6
AI	format
340*	n6
341*	n6
342*	n6
343*	n6
344*	n6
345*	n6
346*	n6
347*	n6
348*	n6
349*	n6
350*	n6
351*	n6
352*	n6
353*	n6
354*	n6
355*	n6
356*	n6
357*	n6
360*	n6
361*	n6
362*	n6
363*	n6
364*	n6
365*	n6
366*	n6
367*	n6
368*	n6
369*	n6
AI	format
37	n-8 F
390*	n-15 F
391*	n4-18 F
392*	n-15 F
393*	n4-18 F
400	x-30 F
401	x-30 F
402	n17 F
403	x-30 F
410	n13
411	n13
412	n13
413	n13
414	n13
415	n13
420	x-20 F
421	x4-12 F
422	n3 F
423	n4-15 F
424	n3 F
425	n3 F
426	n3 F
7001	n13 F
7002	x-30 F
7003	n10 F
7004	n-4 F
703*	x4-30 F
AI	format
8001	n14 F
8002	x-20 F
8003	x15-30 F
8004	x-30 F
8005	n6 F
8006	n18 F
8007	x-30 F
8008	n9-12 F
8018	n18 F
8020	x-25 F
8100	n6 F
8101	n10 F
8102	n2 F
8110	x-30 F
90	x-30 F
91	x-30 F
92	x-30 F
93	x-30 F
94	x-30 F
95	x-30 F
96	x-30 F
97	x-30 F
98	x-30 F
99	x-30 F

Note: The format of 23* is the fixed length of digit number 2^*+1 against the number * of the last digits. For instance, if it is 234, it becomes x9.



Environment Variables

AH Formatter V6.2 refers to the following environment variables before running. In the Windows version, the installation program sets the initial value of the variables that are marked with an asterisk *. The environment variables that have "AHF62_64_" prefix are for Windows x64 version and the Linux 64bit version. In the non-Windows versions the environment variables have to be set by the user. When [running command-line program from shell script \(run.sh\)](#) on non-Windows versions, after the necessary environment variables are set, the **AH Formatter V6.2** Command line program is executed.

Env-Variable	Description
AHF62_HOME * AHF62_64_HOME *	The directory where AH Formatter V6.2 is installed. The description [Install directory] in this manual indicates the value of this environment variable.
AHF62_XSLT_COMMAND AHF62_64_XSLT_COMMAND	Command strings for invoking external XSLT Processor. See " XSLT Setting " for more details. This setting is equal to the <xslt-settings command>. In the Windows version, MSXML is adopted as the default if this setting is omitted. In the other version, you cannot invoke XSLT conversion without setting " Option Setting File ". In GUI, this environment variable is not referred.
AHF62_XSLT_PARAM AHF62_64_XSLT_PARAM	Parameter format of the command for invoking external XSLT Processor. See " XSLT Setting " for more details. This setting is equal to the <xslt-settings param>. In GUI, this environment variable is not referred.
AHF62_LIC_PATH * AHF62_64_LIC_PATH *	The directory where the license key files are located. In the Windows version the initial values are located in the same place as the <code>XfoEngine62.dll</code> . In the other versions, the license files must be installed in the [Install directory]/etc .
AHF62_HYPDIC_PATH * AHF62_64_HYPDIC_PATH *	The directory where the hyphenation dictionary exists. In the Windows version, initial value for the hyphenation directory is where <code>XfoEngine62.dll</code> exists. In the other versions, it's necessary that hyphenation dictionary is installed in [Install directory]/etc .
AHF62_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS * AHF62_64_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS *	Default CSS for HTML . In the Windows version, the initial value is <code>html.css</code> located in the directory where <code>XfoEngine62.dll</code> exists. In other version, it's necessary that the Default CSS for HTML is installed in [Install directory]/etc .
AHF62_DMC_TBLPATH * AHF62_64_DMC_TBLPATH *	The directory where data for character code conversion is located. In the Windows version, the initial value is <code>base2</code> where <code>AHDMC13.dll</code> is located. In the other version, data for character code conversion must be installed in [Install directory]/sdata/base2 .
AHF62_BROKENIMG AHF62_64_BROKENIMG	Specifies the substitute image displayed when the image specified in FO does not exist. Sample image such as [Install directory]/samples/Broken.png can be also specified.
AHF62_FONT_CONFIGFILE * AHF62_64_FONT_CONFIGFILE *	Font Configuration File. In the Windows version, the initial value is <code>font-config.xml</code> located in the same directory as <code>AHFontService13.dll</code> . In other versions, the Font Configuration File must be installed in the [Install directory]/etc .
AHFCmd62 AHFCmd62_64	Specifies the default parameter with the command-line interface . This setting is compensated before the parameter specified by a user and being evaluated. [no-LT]
PATH *	In the Windows version, [Install directory] is added to PATH environment.
LD_LIBRARY_PATH	When using the Command-line and Java Interface, the directory where <code>*.so</code> is located should be included. When operating the Solaris / Linux version, it's also necessary to set the directory where the <code>*.so</code> files are installed in the [Install directory]/lib .
DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH	When using the Command-line Interface or the Java Interface with the Macintosh version, the place (directory) of <code>*.dylib</code> and <code>*.jnilib</code> must be included. Only the Macintosh version requires this setting. With the Macintosh version, <code>*.dylib</code> and <code>*.jnilib</code> files are installed in [Install directory]/lib .
CLASSPATH	When using the Java Interface, the directory where <code>*.jar</code> exists should be included. <code>*.jar</code> is installed in the [Install directory]/lib .

☞ \ or / are not placed at the end of directory strings.



Symbolic Links

It is necessary to create the Symbolic Links of the library appropriately with the non-Windows versions of **AH Formatter V6.2**. These are automatically generated by the installation program. However if you need to generate them, please refer to the following:

```
$ cd [Install directory]/lib
$ rm -f libXfoEngine.so
$ ln -s libXfoEngine.so.6.2 libXfoEngine.so
$ chmod 755 libXfoEngine.so
$ rm -f libXfoEngine.so.6
$ ln -s libXfoEngine.so.6.2 libXfoEngine.so.6
$ chmod 755 libXfoEngine.so.6
```

Solaris / Linux

Module	Symlink 1	Symlink 2
libXfoCommon.so.6.2	libXfoCommon.so.6	libXfoCommon.so
libXfoEngine.so.6.2	libXfoEngine.so.6	libXfoEngine.so
libXfoFont.so.6.2	libXfoFont.so.6	libXfoFont.so
libXfoGraphic.so.6.2	libXfoGraphic.so.6	libXfoGraphic.so
libXfoHyphen.so.6.2	libXfoHyphen.so.6	libXfoHyphen.so
libXfoRender.so.6.2	libXfoRender.so.6	libXfoRender.so
libXfoText.so.6.2	libXfoText.so.6	libXfoText.so
libXfoTrans.so.6.2	libXfoTrans.so.6	libXfoTrans.so
libXfoJavaCtl62.so		
libXfoInterface.so.6.2	libXfoInterface.so.6	libXfoInterface.so
libPDFCreator.so.6.2	libPDFCreator.so.6	libPDFCreator.so
libPDFRes.so.6.2	libPDFRes.so.6	libPDFRes.so
libPDFToolPage.so.6.2	libPDFToolPage.so.6	libPDFToolPage.so
libPDFLinearizer.so.6.2	libPDFLinearizer.so.6	libPDFLinearizer.so
libINXCreator.so.6.2	libINXCreator.so.6	libINXCreator.so
libPSCreator.so.6.2	libPSCreator.so.6	libPSCreator.so
libSVGCreator.so.6.2	libSVGCreator.so.6	libSVGCreator.so
libXPSCreator.so.6.2	libXPSCreator.so.6	libXPSCreator.so
libMIFCreator.so.6.2	libMIFCreator.so.6	libMIFCreator.so
libAHFontService.so.1.3	libAHFontService.so.1	libAHFontService.so
libAHGraphicService.so.1.1	libAHGraphicService.so.1	libAHGraphicService.so
libAHDMC.so.1.3	libAHDMC.so.1	libAHDMC.so
libAHCommon.so.1.3	libAHCommon.so.1	libAHCommon.so
libAHPDFLib.so.1.2	libAHPDFLib.so.1	libAHPDFLib.so
libicudata.so.52.1	libicudata.so.52	libicudata.so
libicui18n.so.52.1	libicui18n.so.52	libicui18n.so
libicuio.so.52.1	libicuio.so.52	libicuio.so
libicule.so.52.1	libicule.so.52	libicule.so
libiculx.so.52.1	libiculx.so.52	libiculx.so
libicutu.so.52.1	libicutu.so.52	libicutu.so

Module	Symlink 1	Symlink 2
libicuuc.so.52.1	libicuuc.so.52	libicuuc.so

Macintosh

Module	Symlink 1	Symlink 2
libXfoCommon.6.2.dylib	libXfoCommon.6.dylib	libXfoCommon.dylib
libXfoEngine.6.2.dylib	libXfoEngine.6.dylib	libXfoEngine.dylib
libXfoFont.6.2.dylib	libXfoFont.6.dylib	libXfoFont.dylib
libXfoGraphic.6.2.dylib	libXfoGraphic.6.dylib	libXfoGraphic.dylib
libXfoHyphen.6.2.dylib	libXfoHyphen.6.dylib	libXfoHyphen.dylib
libXfoRender.6.2.dylib	libXfoRender.6.dylib	libXfoRender.dylib
libXfoText.6.2.dylib	libXfoText.6.dylib	libXfoText.dylib
libXfoTrans.6.2.dylib	libXfoTrans.6.dylib	libXfoTrans.dylib
libXfoJavaCtl62.jnilib		
libXfoInterface.6.2.dylib	libXfoInterface.6.dylib	libXfoInterface.dylib
libPDFCreator.6.2.dylib	libPDFCreator.6.dylib	libPDFCreator.dylib
libPDFRes.6.2.dylib	libPDFRes.6.dylib	libPDFRes.dylib
libPDFToolPage.6.2.dylib	libPDFToolPage.6.dylib	libPDFToolPage.dylib
libPDFLinearizer.6.2.dylib	libPDFLinearizer.6.dylib	libPDFLinearizer.dylib
libINXCreator.6.2.dylib	libINXCreator.6.dylib	libINXCreator.dylib
libPSCreator.6.2.dylib	libPSCreator.6.dylib	libPSCreator.dylib
libSVGCreator.6.2.dylib	libSVGCreator.6.dylib	libSVGCreator.dylib
libXPSCreator.6.2.dylib	libXPSCreator.6.dylib	libXPSCreator.dylib
libMIFCreator.6.2.dylib	libMIFCreator.6.dylib	libMIFCreator.dylib
libAHFontService.1.3.dylib	libAHFontService.1.dylib	libAHFontService.dylib
libAHGraphicService.1.1.dylib	libAHGraphicService.1.dylib	libAHGraphicService.dylib
libAHDMC.1.3.dylib	libAHDMC.1.dylib	libAHDMC.dylib
libAHCommon.1.3.dylib	libAHCommon.1.dylib	libAHCommon.dylib
libAHPDFLib.1.2.dylib	libAHPDFLib.1.dylib	libAHPDFLib.dylib
libicudata.52.1.dylib	libicudata.52.dylib	libicudata.dylib
libicui18n.52.1.dylib	libicui18n.52.dylib	libicui18n.dylib
libicuo.52.1.dylib	libicuo.52.dylib	libicuo.dylib
libicule.52.1.dylib	libicule.52.dylib	libicule.dylib
libiculx.52.1.dylib	libiculx.52.dylib	libiculx.dylib
libicutu.52.1.dylib	libicutu.52.dylib	libicutu.dylib
libicuuc.52.1.dylib	libicuuc.52.dylib	libicuuc.dylib

 **Installed Modules**

AH Formatter V6.2 installs the following modules.

- Windows version
- Solaris version
- Linux version
- Macintosh version

Windows version

AH Formatter	
AHFormatter.exe	Graphical User interface
AHFormatterJPN.dll	Graphical User interface Japanese resource
AHFCmd.exe	Command-line Interface
AHFDev.exe	Printer setting utility
XfoEngine62.dll	Formatting engine
XfoRender62.dll	Rendering engine
XfoGdiCtl62.dll	GDI control
XfoText62.dll	Text control
XfoFont62.dll	Font control
XfoGraphic62.dll	Graphic control
XfoTrans62.dll	XSLT filter
XfoCommon62.dll	Formatting engine common library
XfoHyphen62.dll	Hyphenation
hyphenation/en.xml	Hyphenation dictionary
hyphenation/hyphenation.dtd	Hyphenation dictionary DTD
XfoDotNet40Ctl62.dll	
XfoDotNet35Ctl62.dll	.NET Interface
XfoDotNet20Ctl62.dll	
XfoComCtl62.dll	COM Interface
XfoJavaCtl62.dll	Java Interface
lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar	
lib/java1.4/XfoJavaCtl.jar	(for Java1.4, only included Windows 32bit version)
include/xfo*.h	C/C++ interface
lib/XfoInterface.lib	
XfoInterface62.dll	Common Interface library
Output engines	
PDFCreator62.dll	
PDFRes62.dll	
PDFToolPage62.dll	PDF output engine
PDFLinearizer62.dll	
PSCreator62.dll	PostScript output engine
SVGCreator62.dll	SVG output engine
INXCreator62.dll	INX output engine

XPSCreator62.dll	XPS output engine
MIFCreator62.dll	MIF output engine
Miscellaneous libraries etc.	
AHFontService13.dll	Font service module
font-config.xml	Font configuration file
AHGraphicService11.dll	Graphic service module
AHDMC13.dll	Character code conversion library
AHCommon13.dll	Common library
AHPDFLib12.dll	PDF library
AHMathML62.dll	MathML library
base2/*	Character code conversion tables
html.css	Default stylesheet for (X)HTML
UserStylesheets/*.css	User stylesheet samples
icu*52.dll	ICU libraries
pthreadVC2.dll	POSIX thread library
msvc80.dll	These are installed under the [Windows System Directory] or [Windows System Directory]\WinSxS directory, when required
msvcp80.dll	
msvcr80.dll	
mfc80.dll	
mfc80u.dll	
mfcm80.dll	
mfcm80u.dll	
atl80.dll	
License	
AHFormatter.lic	License key for Evaluation
Documents and etc.	
EULA.txt	License Agreement text
ReadMe.txt	Read me text
docs/*	Online Manual
docs/javadoc/*	Java Interface manual
docs/cppdoc/*	C/C++ interface manual
samples/*	Samples
license/*	Third-Party Copyright Notices

Solaris / Linux version

AH Formatter	
bin/AHFCmd	Command-line Interface
lib/libXfoEngine.so.6.2	Formatting engine
lib/libXfoRender.so.6.2	Rendering engine
lib/libXfoText.so.6.2	Text control
lib/libXfoFont.so.6.2	Font control
lib/libXfoGraphic.so.6.2	Graphic control

lib/libXfoTrans.so.6.2	XSLT filter
lib/libXfoCommon.so.6.2	Formatting engine common library
lib/libXfoHyphen.so.6.2	Hyphenation
etc/hyphenation/en.xml	Hyphenation dictionary
etc/hyphenation/hyphenation.dtd	Hyphenation dictionary DTD
lib/libXfoJavaCtl62.so	Java Interface
lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar	
include/xfo*.h	C/C++ interface
lib/libXfoInterface.so.6.2	Common interface library
Output engines	
lib/libPDFCreator.so.6.2	PDF output engine
lib/libPDFRes.so.6.2	
lib/libPDFToolPage.so.6.2	
lib/libPDFLinearizer.so.6.2	
lib/libPSCreator.so.6.2	PostScript output engine
lib/libSVGCreator.so.6.2	SVG output engine
lib/libINXCreator.so.6.2	INX output engine
lib/libXPSCreator.so.6.2	XPS output engine
lib/libMIFCreator.so.6.2	MIF output engine
Miscellaneous libraries etc.	
lib/libAHFontService.so.1.3	Font service module
fonts/*	PDF Standard 14 Fonts AFM files and glyph-name list file for ZapfDingbats font
etc/font-config.xml	Font configuration file
lib/libAHGraphicService.so.1.1	Graphic service module
lib/libAHDMC.so.1.3	Character code conversion library
lib/libAHCommon.so.1.3	Common library
lib/libAHPDFLib.so.1.2	PDF library
lib/libAHMathML.so.6.2	MathML library
sdata/base2/*	Character code conversion tables
etc/html.css	Default stylesheet for (X)HTML
etc/UserStylesheets/*.css	User stylesheet samples
lib/libicu*.so.52.1	ICU libraries
License	
etc/AHFormatter.lic	License key for Evaluation
Documents and etc.	
EULA.txt	License Agreement text
ReadMe.txt	Read me text
docs/*	Online Manual
docs/javadoc/*	Java Interface manual
docs/cppdoc/*	C/C++ interface manual
run.sh	Sample shell script for running command line interface
samples/*	Samples
license/*	Third-Party Copyright Notices

Macintosh version

AH Formatter	
bin/AHFCmd	Command-line Interface
lib/libXfoEngine.6.2.dylib	Formatting engine
lib/libXfoRender.6.2.dylib	Rendering engine
lib/libXfoText.6.2.dylib	Text control
lib/libXfoFont.6.2.dylib	Font control
lib/libXfoGraphic.6.2.dylib	Graphic control
lib/libXfoTrans.6.2.dylib	XSLT filter
lib/libXfoCommon.6.2.dylib	Formatting engine common library
lib/libXfoHyphen.6.2.dylib	Hyphenation
etc/hyphenation/en.xml	Hyphenation dictionary
etc/hyphenation/hyphenation.dtd	Hyphenation dictionary DTD
lib/libXfoJavaCtl62.jnilib	Java Interface
lib/XfoJavaCtl.jar	
include/xfo*.h	C/C++ interface
lib/libXfoInterface.6.2.dylib	Common interface library
Output engines	
lib/libPDFCreator.6.2.dylib	PDF output engine
lib/libPDFRes.6.2.dylib	
lib/libPDFToolPage.6.2.dylib	
lib/libPDFLinearizer.6.2.dylib	
lib/libPSCreator.6.2.dylib	PostScript output engine
lib/libSVGCreator.6.2.dylib	SVG output engine
lib/libINXCreator.6.2.dylib	INX output engine
lib/libXPSCreator.6.2.dylib	XPS output engine
lib/libMIFCreator.6.2.dylib	MIF output engine
Miscellaneous libraries etc.	
lib/libAHFontService.1.3.dylib	Font service module
fonth/*	PDF Standard 14 Fonts AFM files and glyph-name list file for ZapfDingbats font
etc/font-config.xml	Font configuration file
lib/libAHGraphicService.1.1.dylib	Graphic service module
lib/libAHDMC.1.3.dylib	Character code conversion library
sdata/base2/*	Character code conversion tables
lib/libAHCommon.1.3.dylib	Common library
lib/libAHPDFLib.1.2.dylib	PDF library
lib/libAHMathML.6.2.dylib	MathML library
etc/html.css	Default stylesheet for (X)HTML
etc/UserStylesheets/*.css	User stylesheet samples
lib/libicu*.52.1.dylib	ICU libraries
License	
etc/AHFormatter.lic	License key for Evaluation

Documents and etc.	
EULA.txt	License Agreement text
ReadMe.txt	Read me text
docs/*	Online Manual
docs/javadoc/*	Java Interface manual
docs/cppdoc/*	C/C++ interface manual
run.sh	Sample shell script for running command line interface
samples/*	Samples
license/*	Third-Party Copyright Notices

 **Error Messages**

AH Formatter V6.2 shows the following error messages.

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
1 (0001)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Out of memory.	System error
2 (0002)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: C++ exception: XXXXX	System error
3 (0003)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: XXXXX is null.	System error
4 (0004)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Argument is out of range.	System error
6 (0006)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: XXXXX arg is created from a different document.	System error
7 (0007)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: XXXXX is not an XFAAttr object.	System error
8 (0008)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: XFAAttr is an XFAAttr that is already an attribute of another XFEElement.	System error
9 (0009)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: XXXXX is not a child of this node.	System error
11 (000B)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Cannot set a value on node type: XXXXX	System error
12 (000C)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: startDocument() must be called just after setOutput().	System error
13 (000D)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: attribute() must be called just after startTag().	System error
14 (000E)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Unexpected endTag().	System error
15 (000F)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: End tag 'XXXXX' does not match the start tag 'XXXXX'.	System error
16 (0010)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Unexpected docdecl().	System error
18 (0012)	4	SYSTEM ERROR: Unsupported node type.	System error
67 (0043)	4	Cannot open file: XXXXX	
68 (0044)	4	Unexpected end of input stream.	
69 (0045)	4	Output stream is not set.	
70 (0046)	4	Input stream error.	
71 (0047)	4	Output stream error.	
77 (004D)	4	Cannot remove temporary file: XXXXX	
78 (004E)	4	Cannot create temporary file: XXXXX	
113 (0071)	4	MSXML CreateInstance is failed.	
114 (0072)	4	MSXML COM interface exception. Description : XXXXX	
115 (0073)	4	MSXML parse error. Reason : XXXXX	
129 (0081)	4	Missing end tag.	
130 (0082)	4	Only one top level element is allowed.	
131 (0083)	4	Invalid root tag name after '<!DOCTYPE'.	
132 (0084)	4	Invalid start tag name.	
133 (0085)	4	Invalid end tag name.	
134 (0086)	4	End tag 'XXXXX' does not match the start tag 'XXXXX'	
135 (0087)	4	Undeclared namespace prefix: XXXXX	
136 (0088)	4	Duplicate attribute: XXXXX	
137 (0089)	4	Invalid attribute name: XXXXX	
138 (008A)	4	Missing '=' after attribute name.	
139 (008B)	4	Missing whitespace between attributes.	
140 (008C)	4	Unexpected character: XXXXX	
141 (008D)	4	Unexpected whitespace after 'XXXXX'.	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
142 (008E)	4	Unexpected text at top level of the document.	
143 (008F)	4	Unexpected '<![XXXXX'.	
144 (0090)	4	Unexpected ']>'.	
145 (0091)	4	Unexpected end of input while looking for CDATA section terminator ']>'.	
146 (0092)	4	Unexpected end of input while looking for comment terminator '-->'.	
147 (0093)	4	Unexpected character after -- in comment	
148 (0094)	4	Unexpected DOCTYPE declaration outside of prolog.	
149 (0095)	4	Cannot have multiple DOCTYPE declarations.	
150 (0096)	4	Missing whitespace after 'XXXXX'.	
151 (0097)	4	ExternalID is expected after 'XXXXX'.	
152 (0098)	4	PubidLiteral is expected after 'XXXXX'.	
153 (0099)	4	SystemLiteral is expected after 'XXXXX'.	
154 (009A)	4	Unexpected end of input in XXXXX declaration.	
155 (009B)	4	Empty entity name.	
156 (009C)	4	Invalid character in entity reference: %XXXXX;	
159 (009F)	4	Entity name is expected after 'XXXXX'.	
160 (00A0)	4	NDATA is expected after 'XXXXX'.	
161 (00A1)	4	Unexpected XML declaration.	
162 (00A2)	4	Missing 'version=' after '<?xml ' in XML declaration.	
163 (00A3)	4	Missing '=' after 'XXXXX' in XML declaration.	
164 (00A4)	4	Missing whitespace after 'XXXXX' in XML declaration.	
165 (00A5)	4	Missing whitespace before 'XXXXX' in XML declaration.	
166 (00A6)	4	Unsupported XML version: X.X	
167 (00A7)	4	Invalid standalone declaration in XML declaration.	
168 (00A8)	4	Invalid syntax in CDATA section.	
169 (00A9)	4	Invalid syntax in comment.	
170 (00AA)	4	Unexpected '<!XXXXX'.	
171 (00AB)	4	The name 'xml' must be lower case: <?XML	
172 (00AC)	4	Missing whitespace after PI target: <?XXXXX	
173 (00AD)	4	Unexpected end of input while looking for PI terminator '?>'.	
174 (00AE)	4	Missing quotation character (' or ").	
175 (00AF)	4	Unexpected end of input while looking for literal terminator X.	
176 (00B0)	4	Unexpected '<' in attribute value.	
177 (00B1)	4	Unexpected whitespace in character reference: &#XXXXX;	
178 (00B2)	4	Invalid character in character reference: &#XXXXX;	
179 (00B3)	4	Invalid Unicode character: &#XXXXX;	
180 (00B4)	4	Invalid character.	
181 (00B5)	4	Unknown or unsupported encoding: XXXXX	
182 (00B6)	4	No-XML document.	
185 (00B9)	4	Conflict encoding: XXXXX	
186 (00BA)	4	Invalid element name: XXXXX	
187 (00BB)	4	Invalid attribute value: XXXXX="YYYYYY"	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
513 (0201)	2	End tag 'XXXXX' does not match the start tag 'XXXXX'	
514 (0202)	2	Reference to undefined entity: %XXXXX;	
515 (0203)	2	Reference to undefined entity: &XXXXX;	
1025 (0401)	4	XXXXX is not specified.	
1026 (0402)	4	FontConfig file is not found: XXXXX	
1027 (0403)	4	No <font-folder> in XXXXX	
1028 (0404)	4	Unexpected start tag: <XXX> in XXXXX	
1029 (0405)	4	Unexpected end tag: </XXX> in XXXXX	
1030 (0406)	4	Invalid value: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1031 (0407)	4	Empty value: <XXX XXX> in XXX	
1032 (0408)	4	No-file path is not allowed: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1033 (0409)	4	Relative path is not allowed: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1034 (040A)	4	Already registered value: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1035 (040B)	4	Invalid font file extension: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1036 (040C)	4	Font file must be base file name: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1037 (040D)	4	Not an integer value: <XXX XXX="XXX"> in XXXXX	
1921 (0781)	1	Font read error: XXXXX	
1923 (0783)	1	Glyph-list open error: XXXXX	
1924 (0784)	1	Glyph-list read error: XXXXX	
1925 (0785)	1	Cannot read printer font: XXXXX	
1926 (0786)	1	Cannot read font information: XXXXX	
1928 (0788)	1	Font file error: XXXXX	
1929 (0789)	1	Font file error: XXXXX	
1930 (078A)	1	Already registered font: XXXXX	
1931 (078B)	1	Cannot open font: XXXXX	
1932 (078C)	1	Cannot create font: XXXXX	
1933 (078D)	1	Cannot read font information: XXXXX	
8193 (2001)	4	XSLT Processor is not given.	
8194 (2002)	4	No XSL Stylesheet is specified.	
8195 (2003)	4	FO transformation is failed.	
8196 (2004)	4	Cannot find MSXML.	
8197 (2005)	4	Cannot load file to XMLDomDocument.	
8198 (2006)	4	Cannot load XSL Stylesheet.	
8199 (2007)	4	Invalid XSL Stylesheet.	
8200 (2008)	4	Cannot find <fo:root> in FO.	
8201 (2009)	4	Invalid name space in FO.	
8202 (200A)	4	Cannot execute external XSLT Processor.	
8205 (200D)	4	Transformed FO is invalid.	
8206 (200E)	4	FO transformation is failed.	
8208 (2010)	4	FO transformation by MSXML DOM is failed.	
8209 (2011)	4	Cannot create the pipe for XSLT Processor.	
8210 (2012)	4	Cannot read from the pipe for XSLT Processor.	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
9103 (238F)	1	XXXXX.	xsl:message output
10241 (2801)	4	XXXXX is not given.	
10242 (2802)	4	Next page-master with master-name="XXXXX" is not found.	
10243 (2803)	4	Page-master with master-name="XXXXX" is not found.	
10244 (2804)	4	fo:flow is not assigned on page: master-name="XXXXX".	
10245 (2805)	4	Unassigned flow: flow-name="XXXXX"	
10246 (2806)	4	fo:flow-map with flow-map-name="XXXXX" is not found.	
10247 (2807)	4	Incorrect flow-map (mixture of fo:static-content and fo:flow): flow-map-name="XXXXX".	
10248 (2808)	4	Incorrect flow-map (same flow-name): flow-map-name="XXXXX", flow-name="XXXXX".	
10249 (2809)	4	Incorrect flow-map (same region-name): flow-map-name="XXXXX", region-name="XXXXX".	
10250 (280A)	4	Duplicated change-bar-class: 'XXXXX'.	
10251 (280B)	4	Missing region-body flow: master-name="XXXXX".	
10252 (280C)	4	Contradictory value of attribute 'XXXXX' with the same form-field name 'XXXXX'.	
10753 (2A01)	2	Unknown FO element: 'XXXXX'.	
10754 (2A02)	2	Unknown property: 'XXXXX'.	
10755 (2A03)	2	Unexpected FO element: 'XXXXX'.	
10756 (2A04)	2	Unexpected FO element: 'XXXXX'.	
10758 (2A06)	2	Unexpected element: 'XXXXX'.	
10759 (2A07)	2	Unexpected element: 'XXXXX'.	
10760 (2A08)	2	Unexpected text: 'XXXXX'.	
10761 (2A09)	2	Invalid property value: XXXXX="XXXXX"	
10762 (2A0A)	2	Invalid compound property: 'XXXXX'	
10763 (2A0B)	2	Unknown extension property: 'XXXXX'	
10764 (2A0C)	2	Missing required property value: 'XXXXX' on XXXXX.	
10765 (2A0D)	2	Satisfied conditional-page-master-reference is not found in fo:page-sequence-master master-name="XXXXX".	
10767 (2A0F)	2	Sub-sequence-specifiers in fo:page-sequence-master master-name="XXXXX" are exhausted.	
10768 (2A10)	2	Duplicate id value: id="XXXXX".	
10769 (2A11)	2	Unresolved id value: "XXXXX".	
10771 (2A13)	2	Not yet supported: XXXXX.	
10772 (2A14)	2	Duplicate color-profile-name: XXXXX.	
10774 (2A16)	2	Expected FO element: 'XXXXX'.	
10775 (2A17)	2	Ambiguous conditional-page-master-references are found in fo:page-sequence-master master-name="XXXXX", master-reference="XXXXX" and "XXXXX".	
10776 (2A18)	2	Duplicate master-name: "XXXXX".	
10777 (2A19)	2	Unresolved index-key value: "XXXXX".	
10778 (2A1A)	2	Empty contents: 'XXXXX'.	
10779 (2A1B)	2	Expected element: 'XXXXX'.	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
10780 (2A1C)	2	Contradictory value of attribute 'XXXXXX' with the same form-field name 'XXXXXX'.	
10781 (2A1D)	2	Unsupported function argument: XXXXXX(XXXXXX).	
11009 (2B01)	3	fo:change-bar-begin with change-bar-class="XXXXXX" is not found.	
11010 (2B02)	3	fo:change-bar-end with change-bar-class="XXXXXX" is not found.	
11141 (2B85)	1	No color value is given in rgb-icc separation: 'XXXXXX'.	
11144 (2B88)	1	Invalid fo:xxxxx with ref-id="XXXXXX".	
11145 (2B89)	1	Unresolved internal-destination: "XXXXXX".	
11146 (2B8A)	1	Unknown extension element: 'XXXXXX'.	
11148 (2B8C)	1	Overlapped table cell: row=XX col=XX.	
11151 (2B8F)	1	Deprecated property: 'XXXXXX'.	
11152 (2B90)	1	Deprecated property value: 'XXXXXX'.	
11154 (2B92)	1	Obsoleted property: 'XXXXXX'.	
11155 (2B93)	1	Obsoleted property value: 'XXXXXX'.	
11156 (2B94)	1	Unknown language: 'XXXXXX'.	
11157 (2B95)	1	Unknown script: 'XXXXXX'.	
11159 (2B97)	1	Ineffective property: XXXXXX on XXXXXX.	
11160 (2B98)	1	Scale to fit image (XXXXXX, XXXXXX).	 issue-scale-to-fit
12802 (3202)	2	Missing declaration separator ';' : 'XXXXXX'.	
12803 (3203)	2	Invalid pseudo element: 'XXXXXX'.	
12804 (3204)	2	Unexpected token: 'XXXXXX'.	
12805 (3205)	2	Invalid class attribute: 'XXXXXX'.	
12806 (3206)	2	Missing attribute name: 'XXXXXX'.	
12807 (3207)	2	Missing closing parenthesis 'X': 'XXXXXX'.	
12808 (3208)	2	Missing opening parenthesis 'X': 'XXXXXX'.	
12810 (320A)	2	Invalid lang value: 'XXXXXX'.	
12811 (320B)	2	Invalid positional condition: 'XXXXXX'.	
12812 (320C)	2	Unknown property: 'XXXXXX'.	
12813 (320D)	2	Invalid property value: XXXXX: XXXXX	
12814 (320E)	2	Invalid @charset value: 'XXXXXX'.	
12815 (320F)	2	Invalid @import url: 'XXXXXX'.	
12816 (3210)	2	Invalid @media value. : 'XXXXXX'.	
12820 (3214)	2	Invalid @namespace url: 'XXXXXX'.	
12821 (3215)	2	Missing style in selector: 'XXXXXX'.	
12822 (3216)	2	Invalid declaration: 'XXXXXX'.	
12823 (3217)	2	Cannot load stylesheet: 'XXXXXX'.	
12824 (3218)	2	Insufficient function parameter: 'XXXXXX'.	
12825 (3219)	2	Too many function parameters: 'XXXXXX'.	
12826 (321A)	2	Invalid function parameter type: function 'XXXXXX', parameter 'XXXXXX'.	
12827 (321B)	2	@import rules must precede all other rules.	
12828 (321C)	2	Invalid color value: 'XXXXXX'.	
13187 (3383)	1	Ignore string-set: XXXXX XXXXX.	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
13188 (3384)	1	Obsolete property value: XXXXX.	
14337 (3801)	4	Invalid Option Setting file. XXXXX	
14338 (3802)	4	Unsupported formatter type: XXX.	
14339 (3803)	4	No AreaTree: XXXXX	
14340 (3804)	4	Unsupported AreaTree version 'XXX.X': XXXXX	
14341 (3805)	4	Start formatting failure: XXXXX	
14342 (3806)	4	Invalid Operator Dictionary file. XXXXX	
14850 (3A02)	2	Area overflow: XXXX (inline/block XXpt) Page XX (XX).	Area overflow occurred, by overflow="error-if-overflow"
15234 (3B82)	1	Area overflow, minor: XXXX (inline/block XXpt) Page XX (XX).	A minor overflow (not greater than the overflow limit) occurred, by overflow="error-if-overflow" with axf:overflow-limit
16385 (4001)	4	Printing is canceled.	In case the Cancel button was being pushed in the Print dialog or StartDoc() failed, etc.
16386 (4002)	4	Printer is not found: XXXXX	
16387 (4003)	4	StartPage() is failed or canceled.	
16388 (4004)	4	EndPage() is failed.	
16390 (4006)	4	PDF output error.	
16391 (4007)	4	PDF output : Font embedding error.	
16392 (4008)	4	PDF output : Encryption error.	
16393 (4009)	4	Cannot open TEXT file.	
16394 (400A)	4	Cannot write TEXT file.	
16398 (400E)	4	PDFLinearizer: Cannot rename PDF file: XXXXX	
16399 (400F)	4	PDFLinearizer: Cannot open PDF file: XXXXX	
16400 (4010)	4	PDFLinearizer error: XXXXX	
16403 (4013)	4	Unsupported PDF version: XXXXX	
16404 (4014)	4	PostScript output error: XXXXX	
16405 (4015)	4	INX output error: XXXXX	
16407 (4017)	4	Unsupported encoding: XXXXX	
16408 (4018)	4	XPS output error: XXXXX	
16411 (401B)	4	MIF output error: XXXXX	
16413 (401D)	4	AHPDF error: XXXXX	
16897 (4201)	2	File name is not specified: axf:annotation-file-attachment.	 axf:annotation-file-attachment
16898 (4202)	2	Attachment is not found: axf:annotation-file-attachment. file: XXXXX	 axf:annotation-file-attachment
16900 (4204)	2	Cannot embed the image: XXXXX	
16901 (4205)	2	No ICC profile specified: XXXXX	
16902 (4206)	2	AHPDF error: XXXXX	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
16903 (4207)	2	AHPDF warning: XXXXX	
16904 (4208)	2	Unsupported PDF Blend Mode: XXXXX	
16905 (4209)	2	Unsupported PDF Shading Type: XXXXX	
16906 (420A)	2	Unsupported PDF Soft Mask: XXXXX	
16907 (420B)	2	Transparency is not allowed.	
16908 (420C)	2	PDF output warning.	
16909 (420D)	2	Cannot import PDF file: XXXXX	
16910 (420E)	2	Cannot open XMP resource: XXXXX	
16911 (420F)	2	Empty XMP resource: XXXXX	
16912 (4210)	2	Invalid XMP resource: XXXXX	
16913 (4211)	2	Multimedia is not supported on XXXXX.	
16914 (4212)	2	Layer is not supported on XXXXX.	
16915 (4213)	2	Blend Mode is not allowed on XXXXX.	
17281 (4381)	1	Invalid printer bin number/name: XXXXX	 axf:printer-bin-selection
17282 (4382)	1	Invalid printer duplex: XXXXX	 axf:printer-duplex
17284 (4384)	1	AHPDF information: XXXXX	
17285 (4385)	1	Too long default value of text field 'XXXXX': XXXXX	
17286 (4386)	1	Invalid default value of text field 'XXXXXX': XXXXX	
17287 (4387)	1	Invalid format of text field 'XXXXXX': XXXXX	
17288 (4388)	1	PostScript output information: XXXXX	
17290 (438A)	1	No effective output intent specified on XXXXX.	
18433 (4801)	4	Cannot remove temporary file: XXXXX	
18434 (4802)	4	PDF file is protected by a password	
18435 (4803)	4	Cannot read PDF: XX	System error
18436 (4804)	4	Excel file is protected by a password.	
18439 (4807)	4	CGM parser error XXXXX	
18440 (4808)	4	CGM renderer error XXXXX	
18441 (4809)	4	MathML parse error: XXXXX	
18442 (480A)	4	PDF reading error: XXXXX	
18945 (4A01)	2	Cannot create temporary file for image.	
18946 (4A02)	2	Graphic file name is not specified.	
18947 (4A03)	2	Cannot load graphic file: XXXXX	
18948 (4A04)	2	Graphic file is not found: XXXXX	
18949 (4A05)	2	Graphic file is broken: XXXXX	
18950 (4A06)	2	Unknown or unsupported graphic file format: XXXXX	
18952 (4A08)	2	SVG parse error: XXXXX	
18953 (4A09)	2	MathML parse error. Reason : XXXXX	
18954 (4A0A)	2	Cannot create temporary stream for image.	
18956 (4A0C)	2	CGM parser error XXXXX	
18957 (4A0D)	2	CGM renderer error XXXXX	
18958 (4A0E)	2	Cannot create Distiller instance.	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
18959 (4A0F)	2	Cannot create Ghostscript instance.	
18960 (4A10)	2	Distiller processing failed: XXXXX	
18961 (4A11)	2	Ghostscript processing failed: XXXXX	
18964 (4A14)	2	Missing barcode type.	
18965 (4A15)	2	Unsupported barcode type: XXXXX.	
18966 (4A16)	2	Barcode generation error: XXXXX.	
18967 (4A17)	2	PDF reading error: XXXXX	
18968 (4A18)	2	Cannot specify this image here: XXXXX	
19329 (4B81)	1	Graphic file has no EPS preview: XXXXX	
19330 (4B82)	1	Conflict media-type: XXXXX actually XXXXX	
19331 (4B83)	1	Unknown media-type: XXXXX	
19332 (4B84)	1	Unknown content-type: XXXXX	
19333 (4B85)	1	SVG parse error. Reason : XXXXX	
19334 (4B86)	1	Missing EOI in JPEG: XXXXX	
19335 (4B87)	1	Joboptions does not exist: XXXXX	
19336 (4B88)	1	Joboptions is not a file: XXXXX	
19337 (4B89)	1	CGM parser error XXXXX	
19338 (4B8A)	1	CGM renderer error XXXXX	
19339 (4B8B)	1	PDF reading error: XXXXX	
21377 (5381)	1	Invalid exception word: XXXXX	
21442 (53C2)	1	U+XXXX cannot be placed after U+XXXX.	
22529 (5801)	4	Create font error: XXXXX	
22530 (5802)	4	Select font error: XXXXX	
23041 (5A01)	2	Missing font family: 'XXXXX'.	☞ missing-font
23042 (5A02)	2	Missing glyph U+XXXX (X) in 'XXXXX'.	☞ missing-glyph
23043 (5A03)	2	Fallbacked glyph U+XXXX (X) to 'XXXXX'.	☞ fallback-glyph
23425 (5B81)	1	Missing font family: 'XXXXX'.	☞ missing-font
23426 (5B82)	1	Missing glyph U+XXXX (X) in 'XXXXX'.	☞ missing-glyph
23427 (5B83)	1	Fallbacked glyph U+XXXX (X) in 'XXXXX'.	☞ fallback-glyph
23428 (5B84)	1	Cannot find script-font: XXXXX	☞ script-font
24582 (6006)	4	Cannot find license file: XXXXX	
24583 (6007)	4	Invalid license file: XXXXX	
24584 (6008)	4	Invalid license data: XXXXX	
24585 (6009)	4	Cannot load license file: XXXXX	
24586 (600A)	4	Invalid license file: XXXXX	
24587 (600B)	4	Invalid license file: XXXXX	
24588 (600C)	4	Invalid license file: XXXXX	
24589 (600D)	4	Invalid license file: XXXXX	
24590 (600E)	4	Invalid license date: XXXXX	
24591 (600F)	4	Evaluation license is expired: XXXXX	
24592 (6010)	4	Invalid license date: XXXXX	
24594 (6012)	4	No license for command line interface: XXXXX	

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
24595 (6013)	4	No license for program interface: XXXXX	
24596 (6014)	4	Invalid license type: XXXXX	
24597 (6015)	4	Invalid license version: XXXXX	
32770 (8002)	4	Cannot open work file: XXXXX	
32771 (8003)	4	Cannot create work file: XXXXX	
32772 (8004)	4	Invalid printer name: XXXXX	
32773 (8005)	4	Cannot read printer setting file: XXXXX	
32774 (8006)	4	Invalid Printer setting file: XXXXX	
32776 (8008)	4	PDF output failed.	System error
32777 (8009)	4	Printing failed.	System error
32778 (800A)	4	Formatting failed.	System error
32779 (800B)	4	No page is available to print.	
32782 (800E)	4	No volume is available to print.	
32783 (800F)	4	Cannot separate to multi volumes.	
32784 (8010)	4	Cannot output multi volumes to stream.	
32785 (8011)	4	TEXT output failed.	System error
32786 (8012)	4	NUL output failed.	System error
32787 (8013)	4	Printer name is required.	
32788 (8014)	4	SVG output failed.	System error
32789 (8015)	4	Empty document.	
32794 (801A)	4	AreaTree output failed.	System error
32796 (801C)	4	Invalid XfoCommon version.	
32799 (801F)	4	Output file same as input file: XXXXX	
32800 (8020)	4	PostScript output failed.	System error
32801 (8021)	4	INX output failed.	System error
32802 (8022)	4	No licensed printer name: XXXXX	
32803 (8023)	4	Invalid license.	
32804 (8024)	4	XPS output failed.	System error
32805 (8025)	4	Cannot create formatting thread (XX).	
32806 (8026)	4	Formatting exception: XXXX	
32807 (8027)	4	No rendering page XX is given.	System error
32810 (802A)	4	MIF output failed.	System error
33794 (8402)	4	Interface instance is not given.	System error (Java Interface)
34818 (8802)	4	Memory access failed.	System error (COM Interface)
34819 (8803)	4	Cannot open work file.	(COM Interface)
34820 (8804)	4	Cannot read work file.	(COM Interface)
34821 (8805)	4	ASP Response data output failed.	(COM Interface)
36865 (9001)	4	Parameter error: XXXXX	(Command-line)
36866 (9002)	4	Cannot transform to FO: XXXXX	(Command-line)
36867 (9003)	4	Printing error: XXXXX	(Command-line)
38913 (9801)	4	XSL Stylesheet is not given.	(.NET Interface)

Error code	Error level	Error message	Comments
38914 (9802)	4	Attribute index is out of range.	(.NET Interface)

The message which is not shown here might be outputted from a lower-level library. The error level is 4 (fatal) although the error code doesn't map to these messages. In case a system error occurs, please [contact us](#).

Technical Notes

- Formatting HTML
- Cascading Order of CSS
- Default CSS for HTML
- Detection of Formatting Type
- Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.1
- Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0
- Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5
- Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4
- Incompatibility of XSL1.0 and XSL1.1
- Shorthand
- URI
- Table Auto Layout
- Line Breaking
- Variation Sequence
- Font Selection
- Upright Rendering of Text in Vertical Writing Mode
- Formatting Large Document
- Temporary File

Formatting HTML

AH Formatter V6.2 can format HTML designed for Web (except for HTML using a frame). However, there may not be much HTML that can obtain a good result without adding adjustment after formatting. The reasons are as follows:

- HTML is designed especially for the browser, the printing media is not taken into consideration.
- HTML does not follow the specification.
- CSS may not be used exactly as the specification.

For example, if an HTML is printed from a Web browser without dropping out the right side part, an appropriate result will be obtained even if it is formatted by AH Formatter V6.2. However, in order to obtain a better result, HTML must be designed both for the browser and printing. In CSS, probably the style is finely specified by the rule like:

```
@media print { ... }
@page { ... }
```

Moreover, there is a big difference in the CSS implementation level between the present Web browsers. If the HTML contains the grammar mistakes by thinking of the appearance with a specific browser, or the HTML uses inaccurate CSS, probably a good result could not be obtained.

The concrete font is not specified to many of (X)HTML on the Web. (It is desirable considering the character of Web.) Since the font setting for every script in the Option Setting File is always effective in AH Formatter V6.2 GUI in Windows version, a suitable font is chosen. However, there is no such thing except GUI of the Windows versions, such as the UNIX version. Please set <script-font> appropriately in the option setting fine and specify the Option Setting File when executing the format.

CAUTION: Since AH Formatter V6.2 formats the document for printing purpose, @media screen is not applied even if it is a screen of GUI.

HTML saved from the web browser

Many web browsers have the feature to save (X)HTML currently referred to. However, XHTML saved by this function may not turn into the right XHTML. When Such XHTML is formatted by AH Formatter V6.2, it will become an error and formatting fails. In such a case, please specify HTML as a formatting type. In addition, there may be a case when a white space is inserted into Japanese text without notice. Such a text cannot be formatted finely.

Cascading Order of CSS

The cascading order of the CSS is defined in the [CSS2 Specification](#) as follows.

1. user agent declarations
2. user normal declarations
3. author normal declarations
4. author important declarations

5. user important declarations

AH Formatter V6.2 corresponds to the followings.

- **user agent declarations**

It is html.css. See also [Default CSS for HTML](#).

- **user declarations**

This can be specified by <usercss>, in the [Option Setting File](#) and by the command line of **-css** or **-s**. (As for the .NET, Java interface, etc, they are equivalent to the corresponding command line.) These are applied in the following order.

1. Applies CSS specified by the Option Setting File and **-css** in the appearance order.
2. Applies CSS specified by **-s**.

Only the Option Setting File is applied in GUI. What is specified on the [CSS page](#) of the Format Option Setting dialog will be reflected in the Option Setting File.

- **author declarations**

This can be specified by <link> or <style> inside HTML, by the processing instruction of <?xml-stylesheet .. ?>. These are applied in the following order.

1. Applies the processing instruction in XML in the appearance order. (XML or XHTML)
2. Applies <link> or <style> inside HTML in the appearance order. (XML or XHTML)

Default CSS for HTML

Default CSS for HTML is used as the first stylesheet (user agent declarations) when formatting (X)HTML. This is html.css which is placed in the directory indicated by the environment variable, [AHF62_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS](#). (When html.css does not exist, it is formatted as all the elements are inline.)

This stylesheet is created based on the display of a web browser, the style specified by CSS, etc. However, there may be specification which cannot be well displayed depending on the environment. Probably, there is also a difference of taste. Users are required to optimize the default CSS according to their own environment etc. Some examples are shown below.

- **<q>**

It is specified as follows by default CSS.

```
q:before { content: '\201C' }
q:after { content: '\201D' }
```

The current **AH Formatter V6.2** cannot change the quotation marks depending on the language. The following specification may be preferable.

```
q:before { content: '\22' }
q:after { content: '\22' }
```

- **footnote**

A footnote number is specified to be placed in the margin of the left page. If you don't want to make it overflow into the margin, please specify padding-left or specify list-style-position:inside to @footnote. decimal is specified for numbering. Although it is written that super-decimal is used in [CSS3 GCPM](#), since there are many fonts without super-decimal, it is not adopted with default CSS. Probably, it is good to correct as follows when you want to use super-decimal.

```
::footnote-call {
    content: counter(footnote, super-decimal);
}
::footnote-marker {
    content: counter(footnote, super-decimal);
    -ah-margin-end: 0.5em;
    text-indent: 0;
}
```

Detection of Formatting Type

When the formatting starts by setting the detection of formatting type automatically, the formatting type will be determined in the following procedures.

1. When MIME is specified, **AH Formatter V6.2** will follow its settings. That is, if `text/html` is specified, it will be detected as HTML. When `application/xhtml+xml` is specified, it will be detected as XHTML.

2. When `auto-formatter-type="html"` is specified in the Option Setting File and the extension of the input document is known, **AH Formatter V6.2** will follow its setting. That is, when the extension is for HTML such as `.htm` or `.html`, it will be detected as HTML. If the extension is for XHTML, such as `.xht` or `.xhtml`, it will be detected as XHTML.
3. When there is no XML declaration and DOCTYPE is for HTML, it will be detected as HTML.
4. When `auto-formatter-type="xhtml"` is specified in the Option Setting File and the name space is for XHTML, it will be detected as XHTML.
5. When there is no XML declaration and name space does not exist and the root element is `<HTML>` with case insensitive, it will be detected as HTML.
6. When CSS which is not XSLT is specified (to the internal or external document), it will be detected as XML+CSS.
7. When the name space is for XSL-FO, it will be detected as XSL-FO.
8. Other than these will be detected as XML+CSS.

Although the document does not need to be XML if it's HTML formatting, it is required except HTML that the document should be well formed XML.

Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.1

There are some differences in formatting between **AH Formatter V6.2** and **AH Formatter V6.1** as listed below.

- **Splitting blocks** [V6.2]

In CSS, when the block with auto-height breaks at the end of a page for example, the block height was the break point as is up to **AH Formatter V6.1**. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the height is adjusted to the end of a page. The difference is remarkable when the background or the border is specified to the block. The same is applied to the end of column. ↗ [5.3. Splitting Boxes](#)

This behavior is not applied to FO.

- **Text wrapping with before float** [V6.2]

When the float width on the before side fills up the region and there is no room for wrapping text, although the text is positioned aside by the float, the block itself has overlapped with the float. This can be checked by adding a background or a border to the block. When `intrusion-displace="block"` is specified, the block itself is positioned aside by the float. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, regardless of the setting of `intrusion-displace`, the block itself is positioned aside by the float.

- **Splitting footnotes** [V6.2]

Up to **AH Formatter V6.1**, a page (column) break did not occur within footnote-body. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, it is possible to break pages (columns) within footnote-body. A footnote breaks by the setting of `axf:footnote-max-height` and it occurs by default. For this reason, the formatted result may differ from **AH Formatter V6.1**. In order to avoid the automatic break, please specify `auto-break-footnote="false"` in the Option Setting File.

- **BIDI** [V6.2]

Up to **AH Formatter V6.1**, there was a known issue in the BIDI processing. With **AH Formatter V6.2**, BIDI processing was corrected. Therefore, the formatted result may differ from V6.1.

Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0

There are some differences in formatting between **AH Formatter V6.2** and **AH Formatter V6.0** as listed below.

- **normalize**

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, Unicode normalization ([UAX#15: Unicode Normalization Forms](#)) can be performed to the inputted text. See also `axf:normalize`. If you don't want to perform the normalization by default, please specify `normalize="none"` in the Option Setting File.

- **font-stretch-mode**

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, when specifying a family name to the font-family, it's made available to choose a condensed font if it actually exists using the information of `font-stretch="condensed"` etc. Specify `font-stretch-mode="6"` in the Option Setting File. The operating differences between `font-stretch-mode="5"` and `"6"` are as follows.

- `font-stretch-mode="5"`

The behavior is the same as **AH Formatter V5**. The information on `font-stretch` is not used for the font selection. That is, even if a condensed font exists in the family, it is not chosen. In order to choose a condensed font, it is necessary to specify the font name. When fonts called `Foo-Regular.otf` and `Foo-Condensed.otf` exist with the family name of `Foo`, `Foo-Condensed.otf` is not chosen even if `<fo:block font-family="Foo" font-stretch="condensed">` is specified. It is necessary to specify `<fo:block font-family="Foo-Condensed">`.

When `<fo:block font-family="Foo" font-stretch="condensed">` is specified, `Foo-Regular.otf` is compressed and displayed. The compression ratio at that time is somewhat smaller (larger when expanding) than the value defined in the OpenType specification.

- `font-stretch-mode="6"`

The information on `font-stretch` is used for the font selection. In the example above, `<fo:block font-family="Foo" font-stretch="condensed">` is specified, `Foo-Condensed.otf` will be chosen. When a numerical

value is specified as font-stretch, a condensed font is not searched. `<fo:block font-family="Foo" font-stretch="extra-condensed">` is specified, and when there is no extra-condensed font, a condensed font is not necessarily compressed but the regular font will be compressed.

A compression ratio in case there is no condensed font will be the following values shown in the specification of Open-Type.

ultra-condensed	50%
extra-condensed	62.5%
condensed	75%
semi-condensed	87.5%
normal	100%
semi-expanded	112.5%
expanded	125%
extra-expanded	150%
ultra-expanded	200%

- **baseline-mode**

Although the position of the baseline was improved by **AH Formatter V5**, when the character (alphanumeric character) of European languages was rendered upright in vertical writing mode, there still remains the problem that the center position was not aligned. The problem has been improved by **AH Formatter V6.2**. Please specify `baseline-mode="5"` in the [Option Setting File](#) when you want to make it the same as V5.

- **viewport-length-units-mode**

The interpretation of the `vw` and `vh` units have been changed. Formerly the unit was based on the entire page size including page margins. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, it is based on the size excluding the page margins. In addition, the `pvw` and `vh` units based on the entire page size have been added. Please specify `viewport-length-units-mode="5"` in the [Option Setting File](#) when you want to make it the same as V5. In this case, the units behave as `vw=pvw`, `vh=vh`, `vmin=pvmin` and `vmax=pvmax`.

- **letter-spacing / word-spacing**

When letter-spacing and word-spacing are specified to the text, the settings of `axf:punctuation-trim`, `axf:text-autospace`, etc. were invalid. **AH Formatter V6.2** removed this restriction.

- **Treatment of ideographic space**

With **AH Formatter V6.2**, the treatment of the ideographic space (U+3000) has been somewhat changed.

- When `axf:punctuation-trim="adjacent"` is specified, the space adjacent to full-width brackets will be trimmed.
- Treated as a non-starter character. It was decided in consideration of the specification change by Unicode 6.3. If you don't want to treat it as a non-starter character, please specify `non-starter-ideographic-space="false"` in the [Option Setting File](#).

Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5

There are some differences in formatting between **AH Formatter V6.2** and **AH Formatter V5** as listed below.

- **span**

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the behavior of `span="all"` differs from that in **AH Formatter V5**.

- In **AH Formatter V5**, the span specified inside of the nested FO, that generates reference area such as `fo:block-container` is also effective. However, in **AH Formatter V6.2**, the span specified in FO nested inside of FO that generates reference area is invalid. For instance,

```
<fo:block-container>
<fo:block span="all">
<fo:block>ABC</fo:block>
</fo:block>
</fo:block-container>
```

In V5, `span="all"` was effective with `<fo:block>ABC</fo:block>`. However it's invalid in **AH Formatter V6.2**. In addition, when "span="all"" is specified to `fo:block` in the column of `fo:block-container`, that uses `axf:column-count`, it is considered that the span is specified to the column of the block-container. In order to keep the same result as V5, please specify `span="all"` to the parent's `fo:block-contianer`.

- Although the specification of the forced page break between the empty block at the beginning of the document and the block with `span="all"` was disregarded in V5, In **AH Formatter V6.2**, a forced page break is effective and a blank page is produced. In order to keep the same result as V5, please specify as follows:
 - Do not place an empty block the block with `break-before="page"` specified, or

- Do not specify break-before="page" (as it is the beginning of fo:flow, it's not necessary.) Or specify it to an empty block.
- In case of one-column format, span="all" was not effective in V5. **AH Formatter V6.2**, even if it's one-column format, a reference area is generated. This causes the following differences, for example:

```
<fo:block>AAA</fo:block>
<fo:block space-before="1cm" span="all">BBB</fo:block>
```

In case of one-column format, the space was generated between AAA and BBB in V5, but it's not generated in **AH Formatter V6.2**. It is because a reference area is generated by span even in one-column format, then the space without the specification of space-before.conditionality="retain" will be deleted at the beginning of the reference area. In order to keep the same result as V5, please do not specify span="all" in one-column format.

• **text-underline-mode**

In **AH Formatter V5**, there were the following problems with the position of underline and overline.

- `axf:vertical-underline-side` doesn't work when `axf:text-underline-position` is specified.
- It is always interpreted as an offset from base-line when the numerical value is specified to `axf:text-underline-position`.
- Even if the position of the underline is changed by `axf:vertical-underline-side`, the position of the overline is not changed.
- In CSS, the position of underline and overline differs between `-ah-line-stacking-strategy:line-height` and `ah-line-stacking-strategy:max-height` specified.
- When the underline etc. are drawn in horizontal writing mode, the line becomes uneven when there are `baseline-shift="super"`, etc. though the line becomes straight in vertical writing mode.

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, these are improved as follows.

- `axf:vertical-underline-side` is effective even if `axf:text-underline-position` is specified.
- The standard position can also be described in the numerical value specified for `axf:text-underline-position`.
- The overline is always positioned on the opposite side of the underline.
- In CSS, the line is drawn at the same position without depending on the value of `ah-line-stacking-strategy`.
- When the underline etc. are drawn in horizontal writing mode, it is aligned in a straight line even if there are `baseline-shift="super"`, etc.

Please specify `text-underline-mode="5"` in the [Option Setting File](#) when you want to make it the same as V5.

• **intrusion-displace-mode**

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the behavior of the intrusion-displace is revised and different from that of AH Formatter V5.

- `text-indent` no longer disappears when `intrusion-displace="line"` or `"auto"`.
- `intrusion-displace="indent"` ensures that relative indents by start-indent and end-indent are preserved. In **AH Formatter V5**, only `text-indent` was preserved when `intrusion-displace="indent"`.

Please specify `intrusion-displace-mode="5"` in the [Option Setting File](#) when you want to make it the same as V5.

• **vertical-block-width-mode**

The behavior of the 'auto' value of the width of vertical-text block within horizontal-text flow (or the height of horizontal-text block within vertical-text flow) is changed with **AH Formatter V6.2**.

In **AH Formatter V5**, the width of vertical-text block was given by the width of the outer area. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the 'auto' width of vertical-text block shrinks to fit the content. If you don't want this behavior you should specify the width explicitly such as `width="100%"`. Also the same behavior will be applied to the height of horizontal-text block within vertical-text flow.

Please specify `vertical-block-width-mode="5"` in the [Option Setting File](#) when you want to make it the same as V5.

• **zwsp-mode**

There is an ambiguous portion of the specification in the operation of ZERO WIDTH SPACE (U+200B). In **AH Formatter V5**, ZERO WIDTH SPACE is also a target for `text-align="justify"` and this portion becomes larger than others. In addition, since leading and trailing ZERO WIDTH SPACE in the block are not exceptions, they spread also. **AH Formatter V6.2** can format as follows:

- Remove ZERO WIDTH SPACE from the target of justify.
- Delete leading and trailing ZERO WIDTH SPACE of a block.

This will avoid the effect of having a one-line space in the block such like `<fo:block>​</fo:block>`. Please specify `zwsp-mode` in the [Option Setting File](#).

Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4

There are some differences in formatting between **AH Formatter V6.2** and **XSL Formatter V4** as listed below.

• **capitalize**

For example, V4 formats the following

```
<fo:block text-transform="capitalize">
  HELLO world!
</fo:block>
```

as follows.

```
Hello World!
```

AH Formatter V6.2 formats as follows.

```
HELLO World!
```

That is, although V4 changes the letters except the initial letter into lower case, **AH Formatter V6.2** does nothing. In order to make it the same as V4, please specify as follows.

```
<fo:block text-transform="capitalize-lowercase">
```

☞ text-transform

- **otf-metrics-mode**

With **AH Formatter V6.2**, the initial value of otf-metrics-mode is changed from "windows" to "typographic". The baseline may slightly change depending on fonts. Especially, a difference will be clear with MORISAWA font.

- **text-justify-mode**

AH Formatter V6.2 improves the processing of trimming a line of text. Although finer control was attained by axf:text-justify-trim with this enhancement, a difference may arise in the number of characters included in one line with **XSL Formatter V4**. When you want to make it the same as V4 by FO which does not use axf:text-justify-trim, please specify [text-justify-mode="4"](#) in the [Option Setting File](#).

- **baseline-mode**

AH Formatter V6.2 improves the processing when putting fonts with different baselines like a mixture of Western and Japanese text. For example,

```
<fo:block>Latin 漢字</fo:block>
<fo:block>漢字 Latin</fo:block>
<fo:block>Latin</fo:block>
<fo:block>漢字</fo:block>
```

like the above, you may specify font-family="Times New Roman", 'MS Mincho'" so that Japanese fonts are not applied to Latin. Since the first font specified as font-family determines a baseline by **XSL Formatter V4** at this time, a difference may arise in the height of a line. Since **AH Formatter V6.2** selects the font in the font-family by the script or the language specification, a suitable baseline will be applied by specifying language="jpn" in the example above. When you want to make it the same as V4, please specify [baseline-mode="4"](#) in the [Option Setting File](#).

- **Font selection**

font-selection-strategy="character-by-character" is supported from **AH Formatter V6.2**. In addition, [auto-fallback-font](#) in the [Option Setting File](#) makes it possible to control the fallback. See also [Font Selection](#).

Incompatibility of XSL1.0 and XSL1.1

Some incompatible changes from XSL1.0 are made to XSL1.1.

- **from-page-master-region()**

In XSL1.1, even if writing-mode or reference-orientation are specified to fo:region-*, these are ignored and not effective. In order to make these specifications effective in XSL1.1, it is necessary to specify the followings to fo:page-sequence.

```
writing-mode="from-page-master-region()"
reference-orientation="from-page-master-region()"
```

In order to evaluate it as well as XSL 1.0 without making any changes in FO, specify [default-from-page-master-region="true"](#) in the [Option Setting File](#).

- **fo:table**

In XSL1.0, fo:table is supposed to generate a reference area (see 5.6 in XSL1.0). However, in XSL1.1, it was corrected that this was an error. The difference is mainly generated when converting from margin-* to start-indent and end-indent specified in fo:table. For example:

```
<fo:block margin-left="10pt">
  <fo:table margin-left="0pt">
    ...
  </fo:table>
</fo:block>
```

In the table like above, left margins may differ between XSL1.0 and XSL1.1. If start-indent etc. are used instead of margin-*, such incompatibility will not be generated.

In order to evaluate it as well as XSL 1.0 without making any changes in FO, specify `table-is-reference-area="true"` in the [Option Setting File](#).

Shorthand

Since the shorthand in the property of XSL has succeeded the definition of CSS, the value is evaluated like CSS. That is,

```
margin="0pt -10pt"
```

is evaluated as 2 values instead of one formula. However, when it's not a shorthand, this is evaluated as one formula. For example, the following is one formula.

```
margin-left="0pt -10pt"
```

AH Formatter V6.2 processes such an ambiguous expression by the shorthand as follows.

- If the expression cannot be one formula like "0pt 10pt", then it is counted as 2 values.
- If the mark and the numerical value have adhered like "0pt -10pt", it is counted as two values.
- If a white space is included between a mark and a numerical value like "0pt - 10pt", it is counted as one formula.
- "0pt-10pt" is an error. (Refer to 5.9.5 Numerics in XSL specification)

In FO, when using a formula in the shorthand, it can be enclosed with parentheses, etc.

With CSS, when a function of calc() is written as `calc(10pt-5pt)`, - is evaluated as a operator. It is because there is no description of whether to separate - from <length-unit> in `calc()` of the CSS3 specification. Syntactically, It is allowed to use <length-unit> with - in succession.

URI

<uri-specification> in XSL specification is supposed to specify the character string which fulfills IRI ([RFC3987](#)) specification in `url()`. IRI is called URI for convenience in this document. Schemes which can actually be specified in **AH Formatter V6.2** are as follows:

- http:
- https:
- file:
- data: ([RFC2397](#))
- jar: ([JarURLConnection](#))

When a bare string is specified without using `url()` and it doesn't match to either of other values, it is considered that URI is specified. For example, the following two are the same.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="url('http://localhost/image.png')"/>
<fo:external-graphic src="http://localhost/image.png"/>
```

Moreover, it's possible to specify the relative URI without specifying the scheme name.

```
<fo:external-graphic src="url('image.png')"/>
<fo:external-graphic src="image.png"/>
```

AH Formatter V6.2 allows specifying the file name on a local file system instead of URI for user's convenience. However, generally there is no compatibility between URI and a local file name. For example, while a white space is not allowed for URI, a white space may be available for a local file name. Moreover, since the direct use of the % may be available to use, a character string called `foo%20bar.png` will point out a different resource between the two cases, evaluating as URI and evaluating as a local file name.

AH Formatter V6.2 solves this problem as follows:

- When the scheme is specified, it is adopted as is.
- When the scheme is not specified and surrounded by `url()`, it is processed as follows:
 1. If URI is correct, it will be adopted as is.
 2. If URI is incorrect, % escape processing is done.
- When the scheme is not specified explicitly and specified barely, it is processed as follows:
 1. In the Windows environment, \ is changed into /.
 2. % escape processing is done.

The relative URI is combined with base-uri and transformed into the absolute URI. All local file names are transformed into a file:scheme at this time. For example, in the Windows environment, when base-uri is `C:\dir\`, it is transformed as follows:

<code>foobar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foobar.png</code>
<code>url('foobar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foobar.png</code>
<code>url('url(foobar.png)')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/url(foobar.png)</code>
<code>subdir\foobar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/subdir/foobar.png</code>
<code>url('subdir\foobar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/subdir%5Cfoobar.png</code>
<code>url('subdir/foobar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/subdir/foobar.png</code>
<code>foo bar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%20bar.png</code>
<code>url('foo bar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%20bar.png</code>
<code>foo%20bar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%2520bar.png</code>
<code>url('foo%20bar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%20bar.png</code>
<code>foo%20bar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%2520bar.png</code>
<code>url('foo%%20bar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%25%2520bar.png</code>
<code>foo#bar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo#bar.png</code>
<code>url('foo#bar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo#bar.png</code>
<code>foo%23bar.png</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%2523bar.png</code>
<code>url('foo%23bar.png')</code>	<code>file:///C:/dir/foo%23bar.png</code>

A local file name cannot be written directly into url(). For example:

```
url('C:\My Document\foobar.png')
```

The string above will not operate as expected. Please specify a local file name without surrounding by url().

is a separator of fragmentation. In `file:///C:/dir/foo#bar.png`, the resource actually accessed is `file:///C:/dir/foo`. Please specify `url('foo%23bar.png')` to access a resource called `foo#bar.png`.

UNC (Universal Naming Convention) in Windows, for example, `\host\My Document\foobar.png` is transformed into `file://host/My%20Document/foobar.png`. Also, `//host/My Document/foobar.png` will be transformed into `http://host/My%20Document/foobar.png` when base-uri is http:. (The same applies to https:.)

☞ Please refer to [Graphics](#) for the data: scheme and the jar: scheme.

Table Auto Layout

The table (fo:table) has the attribute, `table-layout="fixed"` and `table-layout="auto"`. The former specifies the fixed layout which has the fixed column width, and the latter is a specification of the automatic layout which calculates the column width automatically. When the value is omitted, the default value is `table-layout="auto"`. In the XSL specification, the automatic layout serves as implementation-independent. We will explain the implementation of **AH Formatter V6.2** in this document.

An automatic layout takes time not a little for calculating the width of columns. Please specify `table-layout="fixed"`, if a high-speed formatting is desired.

In **AH Formatter V6.2**, the processing method of the table differs between the specification of `table-layout` and the specification of the width to fo:table. When the width of all columns is specified, even if `table-layout="auto"` is specified, it is treated as `table-layout="fixed"`. Moreover, `proportional-column-width()` is supposed to be available to specify only in the case of `table-layout="fixed"` according to the XSL specification. In **AH Formatter V6.2**, when a column with `proportional-column-width()` and a column without the width specification are intermingled, it is considered that `column-width="proportional-column-width(1)"` is specified to the column without the width specification. In addition, it is considered and processed that `table-layout="fixed"` is specified. That is, in such case, all columns will have the width specification.

table-layout	Width of fo:table	Processing Method
fixed	Yes	The width is divided equally and assigned to the column as which width is not specified. When the content exceeds the width, it will overflow.
	No	The table width becomes 100%. The width is divided equally and assigned to the column where the width is not specified. When the content exceeds the width, it will overflow.
auto	Yes	The content of the column are calculated and the width is assigned to the column where the width is not specified. When the table width exceeds its specified width even if the minimum width of a column is adopted, the table width expands to the exceeded width.
	No	The content of the column are calculated and the width is assigned to the column where the width is not specified. When the table width does not fill to 100% even if the maximum width of a column is adopted, it will become the table width. When the table width exceeds 100% even if the width of a column is adopted, it will become the table width. Otherwise, the width of a table becomes 100%.

When `table-layout="auto"` is specified, the content of the column where the width is not specified are investigated. More desirable column width can be determined if all rows are investigated, but it takes too much time for a big table. **AH Formatter V6.2** usually

investigates the contents only to the column for 100 rows at the maximum and determines the width of a column. This number of rows can be changed by [table-auto-layout-limit](#) of [Option Setting File](#).

When `table-layout="fixed"` is specified, since the contents of the column are not investigated, the processing speed is always high.

Line Breaking

AH Formatter V6.2 processes the line breaking according to [UAX#14: Line Breaking Properties](#). There are some cases that the processing differs from UAX#14.

- Nonstarter Japanese characters defined in JIS X 4051:2004 can be controlled by `axf:line-break`.
- Although LB30 in UAX#14 is a non line-breaking rule before and after the parenthesis. **AH Formatter V6.2** permits the line breaking for full-width parentheses. The target objects are full-width open parenthesis, full-width close parenthesis, and full-width punctuation which are indicated in `axf:punctuation-trim`.
- The line breaking class AI in a CJK script is processed as ID. However, U+2015 (HORIZONTAL BAR) is processed as IN since it is non-breaking character in JIS X 4051:2004.
- The line breaking class of half width kana is AL. Unless it leaves a space between words as well as the alphabet, line breaking is not done. **AH Formatter V6.2** treats half width kana as full width kana and processes the line breaking.
- UAX#14 allows a line break immediately after U+002F (SOLIDUS), then a line break occurs with abbreviations such as km/h and w/o. It is described clearly that such breaks are undesirable in UAX#14. **AH Formatter V6.2** makes it possible to control the breaking of the word, such as abbreviations by `axf:abbreviation-character-count`.
- The ideographic space (U+3000) is treated as a non-starter character. It was decided in consideration of the specification change by Unicode 6.3. If you don't want to treat it as a non-starter character, please specify `non-starter-ideographic-space="false"` in the [Option Setting File](#).

Variation Sequence

AH Formatter V6.2 supports the Unicode Character 'Variation Sequence'. When the OpenType font has the capability of Variation Sequence (cmap Format14), it is processed appropriately. For example, Variant Sequences can be expressed as follows.

葛󠄀城市 葛城市
葛󠄁飾区 葛飾区

Even when it is applied to a CID font which does not have the capability of Variation Sequence, CID is selected according to the following IVD ([UTS#37: Ideographic Variation Database](#)).

- [2007-12-14](#) Combined registration of the Adobe-Japan1 collection and of sequences in that collection

󠄀, etc. will be disregarded when it is a font which does not have the capability of Variation Sequence or there is no corresponded variation characters, or the specified Variation Sequence is beyond the range. This indicates that even if the setting is the same, the displayed font face may differ depending on which Variation Sequence the font corresponds to.

CAUTION: Variation Sequences other than Ideographic are not supported.

Font Selection

Fonts in FO or CSS are specified by the `font-family` property. There are various cases in settings when the candidates of the font are enumerated like `font-family="Courier New, serif"`, or when there is no specification of `font-family`, **AH Formatter V6.2** determines which font should be applied to a character string as follows.

1. The character strings in the region are divide into the character strings with the same character by the script information corresponding to the character defined by Unicode, the language specified in FO or CSS, or the script information, etc. and the script of the divided character string is determined. This method of determination is complicated because of the reason that there contains the ambiguous characters to determine if it's a full width character or not in Unicode. Or the language is being unable to determine by kanji only as a character string.
2. When `font-selection-mode="6"` is specified in the [Option Setting File](#) and also `font-selection-strategy="character-by-character"` is specified, each character of this character string is investigated in order whether the font-family specified by FO or CSS has its glyph. Then the font with the first found glyph will be adopted. If these are not specified, each character of this character string is investigated whether the font-family specified by FO or CSS has its glyph, and the font-family supports the Unicode range or script in order. Then the first found supported font will be adopted. When no font-family is specified, it is considered that the generic font family as the [standard font family](#) is specified.

In XSL or CSS, the following five can be used as the generic font family.

- `serif`

- sans-serif
- cursive
- fantasy
- monospace

AH Formatter V6.2 has the information of which font is actually made to correspond to these for every script. Moreover, the default generic font which does not belong to any script can also be defined now. These can be specified in the [Font Setting page](#) of the [Option Setting dialog in GUI](#), and also can be specified with <script-font> in the [Option Setting File](#).

1. When the generic font classified by the script corresponding to the script of the target character string is specified, whether it supports the character string is investigated.
2. When the corresponding generic font classified by the script is not specified, the default generic font is investigated.
3. When `auto-fallback-font="true"` is specified in the [Option Setting File](#) and any fonts specified in the font-family don't support the target character string, the following fallback processing will be performed.
 - a. The font specified to the fallback associated with the corresponding script is investigated.
 - b. The font specified to the fallback of the standard generic font is investigated.
 - c. Even then any fonts don't support the target character string, the following fonts are investigated in order.
 - Windows version
 - i. Lucida Sans Unicode
 - ii. Microsoft Sans Serif
 - iii. IPAGothic
 - iv. Code2000
 - v. MS PGothic
 - vi. Arial Unicode MS
 - Non-Windows version
 - i. Helvetica
 - ii. IPAGothic
 - iii. Code2000
4. It is an error even then the font which supports the target character string is not found.

The settings in the [Option Setting dialog](#) is reflected on the [Option Setting File](#). For example, it is written like

```
<script-font script="Hans" serif="SimSun" sans-serif="SimHei" monospace="SimSun"/>
```

Since there is no specification of cursive here, cursive in the default generic font is adopted to Hans. Like immediately after the installation, when <script-font script="Hans"/> itself is not specified, it is considered that the default group is specified. The following default group is set up with the Windows version. No scripts which are not specified here are set up. Moreover, it is not set up when the font does not actually exist.

Script	serif	sans-serif	cursive	fantasy	monospace
Standard	Times New Roman	Arial	Segeo Script or Comic Sans MS or Monotype Corsiva	Impact	Courier New
Jpan	MS Mincho or MS Gothic	MS Gothic	MS Mincho or MS Gothic	MS Mincho or MS Gothic	MS Gothic or MS Mincho
Hans	SimSun or MS Hei or MS Song	SimHei or MS Hei or MS Song	SimSun or MS Song	SimSun or MS Song	SimHei or MS Hei or MS Song
Hant	MingLiU	MingLiU	MingLiU	MingLiU	MingLiU
Hang	Batang or BatangChe	Gulim or BatangChe	Batang or BatangChe	Batang or BatangChe	BatangChe
Arab	Arabic Typesetting	Arabic Typesetting	Arabic Typesetting	Arabic Typesetting	Arabic Typesetting
Hebr	FrankRuehl	FrankRuehl	FrankRuehl	FrankRuehl	FrankRuehl
Deva	Mangal	Mangal	Mangal	Mangal	Mangal
Beng	Vrinda	Vrinda	Vrinda	Vrinda	Vrinda
Guru	Raavi	Raavi	Raavi	Raavi	Raavi
Gujr	Shruti	Shruti	Shruti	Shruti	Shruti
Taml	Latha	Latha	Latha	Latha	Latha

Script	serif	sans-serif	cursive	fantasy	monospace
Telu	Gautami	Gautami	Gautami	Gautami	Gautami
Knda	Tunga	Tunga	Tunga	Tunga	Tunga
Mlym	Kartika	Kartika	Kartika	Kartika	Kartika
Sinh	Iskoola Pota				
Thai	Angsana New				
Khmr	DaunPenh	DaunPenh	DaunPenh	DaunPenh	DaunPenh
Lao	DokChampa	DokChampa	DokChampa	DokChampa	DokChampa

The following default group is set up with the Macintosh version.

Script	serif	sans-serif	cursive	fantasy	monospace
Standard	Times or Times New Roman	Helvetica or Arial	Monaco or Chalkboard	Monaco or Chalkboard	Courier
Jpan	HiraMinPro W3	HiraKakuPro W3	HiraMaruPro W3 or HiraKakuPro W3	HiraMaruPro W3 or HiraKakuPro W3	HiraKakuPro W3
Hans	STXihei	STSong	STXihei	STXihei	STSong
Hant	LiHeiPro	LiSongPro	LiHeiPro	LiHeiPro	LiSongPro
Hang	AppleMyungjo	AppleGothic	AppleMyungjo	AppleMyungjo	AppleGothic
Arab	Geeza Pro	Geeza Pro	Geeza Pro	Geeza Pro	Geeza Pro
Hebr	NewPeninimMT	NewPeninimMT	NewPeninimMT	NewPeninimMT	NewPeninimMT
Deva	DevanagariMT	DevanagariMT	DevanagariMT	DevanagariMT	DevanagariMT
Thai	Thonburi	Thonburi	Thonburi	Thonburi	Thonburi

The following default group is set up with the other UNIX version.

Script	serif	sans-serif	cursive	fantasy	monospace
Standard	Times	Helvetica	Times	Times	Courier

Upright Rendering of Text in Vertical Writing Mode

There are basically three types of the orientation of text in Japanese or Chinese documents as follows:

In horizontal writing	In vertical writing	
	SVO	MVO
漢字(Abc)。	漢 字 (A b c)	漢 字 (Abc) ○

Expresses the orientation of text in vertical writing mode with U or R. U is a character displayed upright on the paper. R is a character rotated 90 degrees clockwise on the paper. Then the text orientation in vertical writing mode is as follows:

- Japanese characters like "漢字" are U.
- Brackets are R.
- After the glyph for vertical writing is used, punctuations are U.
- European characters like "Abc" are U in SVO, R in MVO.

There is an argument of which characters should be upright or which characters should be rotated 90 degrees at UTR#50: [Unicode Vertical Text Layout](#). Right now only the description of MVO (Mixed Vertical Orientation) is here in tr50-11.html. However, the description of SVO (Stacked Vertical Orientation) was also included in the past ([tr50-6.html](#)). **AH Formatter V6.2** implements axf:text-orientation="mixed" complying with MVO, axf:text-orientation="upright" complying with SVO. However, **AH Formatter V6.2** uses the one with some modifications. ([tr50-x.Orientation.txt](#)). This data can be modified arbitrarily in the [Option Setting File](#). See also [UTR50](#).

Usually, the font supporting the vertical writing mode has the glyph for vertical writing for some characters. It is because some are inapplicable to vertical writing simply by rotating the glyph for horizontal writing mode. They are small kana, punctuations, long vowel, etc. In vertical writing mode, if the character has the glyph for vertical writing, it will be used.

The orientation of text (U or R) is decided and expressed as compared to the orientation of the glyph for horizontal writing mode. However some glyphs for vertical writing mode differ from that for horizontal writing mode. The example below shows the glyph of U+3083, U+FF08, and U+2190. U+FF08 and U+2190 have the different orientation between vertical and horizontal writing mode.

Glyph for horizontal writing	Glyph for vertical writing
や (←)	や ↗

Although "brackets are R" as mentioned above, actually you have to display them as U using the glyph for vertical writing mode. That is, here is a tacit assumption that the glyph for vertical writing mode is designed to have the orientation differently from that for horizontal writing mode. Whether the font has the glyph for vertical writing mode or whether the orientation is the same as that for horizontal writing mode depends on the font. In particular, the difference by a font is remarkable in the orientation of symbols, such as arrows. Since it is impossible to get to know which orientation the glyph is designed, this problem is generally impossible to solve. Therefore, **AH Formatter V6.2** controls the orientation of the character according to the major implementations.

Formatting Large Document

For example, when formatting the simple FO (or HTML etc.) without <fo:page-number-citation> and outputting PDF, since **AH Formatter V6.2** outputs PDF by throwing away pages which has already been formatted, no matter how huge the document is, **AH Formatter V6.2** can process without consuming the memory of greater than 1 page (except for the formatting from GUI). However, if the page refers to the back page by <fo:page-number-citation> we cannot know what page number the currently referenced page will be until the page is actually being formatted. For that reason, if the page containing the unsolved <fo:page-number-citation> appears, **AH Formatter V6.2** will suspend the output, storing the result on the memory in the middle of formatting. When the document has a table of contents at the start, the output will not be performed until all the page number that appears in a table of contents is solved. A limit arises in the number of formatting pages and this means that the formatting of a large-scale document is impossible because of the memory consumption in large quantities.

In order to solve this problem, **AH Formatter V6.2** makes it possible to process the document with 2-pass format. With the first path, the formatting is processed only for the purpose of the solution of <fo:page-number-citation>, and all the required page number information is collected. With the second pass, the formatting starts again from the start of the page. Since all <fo:page-number-citation> is solved at this time, **AH Formatter V6.2** can output the document by throwing away the already formatted pages. Although the processing time will increase, most memories are not consumed and the it becomes available to format the large-scale of document. The following shows how to perform 2 path formatting.

The following shows how to perform 2-path formatting.

- Specify `-2pass` with the [Command-line Interface](#).
- Specify `TwoPassFormatting=true` with the [.NET Interface](#).
- Specify `TwoPassFormatting=true` with the [COM Interface](#).
- Specify `setTwoPassFormatting(true)` with the [JAVA Interface](#).
- Specify `setTwoPassFormatting(true)` with the [C/C++ Interface](#).
- Specify `<formatter-settings two-pass-formatting="true">` in the [Option Setting File](#).

CAUTION: It's not available to process the 2-pass formatting from [GUI](#).

CAUTION: It's not available to process the 2-pass formatting with [AH Formatter V6.2 Lite](#).

Temporary File

AH Formatter V6.2 does not make the temporary file for work except for the case of being inescapable. Followings are the cases that **AH Formatter V6.2** makes the temporary file for work.

- With the [COM interface](#), PDF of a formatted result is saved to a temporary file when outputting PDF to a Web browser directly.
- An XML document passed by using DOM with the [COM interface](#) is processed using a temporary file. However, when FO is specified as the formatting type, the temporary file is not generated because DOM is processed directly.
- When outputting a file while printing, a temporary file is generated.
- When a file interface is required in the XSLT transformation using external XSLT and, a temporary file is generated.
- When the transformation from XML+XSL is required in the render method of a [Java interface](#), the result FO is generated as a temporary file.
- In Windows version, when embedding the image that is not embeddable in PDF, a temporary file is generated in the conversion process.
- In Windows version, a temporary file is generated when processing [MathML](#) using MathPlayer.
- A temporary file is generated when converting EPS to PDF using Distiller or Ghostscript.
- When processing EPS using Distiller, if joboptions is not specified, default joboption will be generated as a temporary file.
- When CGM Option is not installed, a temporary file is generated and rendered by using Windows plug-in.
- A temporary file is generated when outputting to a [XPS](#) file.
- In GUI of Windows version, a temporary file is suitably generated by Windows System.

 **Index**

-	
-?	64
-2pass	63
-base BaseURI	63
-c Copies	59
-collate	64
-copies Copies	64
-css User-Stylesheet	62
-d XML-Document	59
-d XML-DocumentDocument	62
-dph Length	63
-dpw Length	63
-encrypt Key-Length	65
-end End-Page	63
-f Formatter-Type	62
-fontalias name=substname	63
-gdsmooth Value	64
-h	64
-htmlcs Decalt-HTML-Charset	62
-hypdic Directory	63
-i Option-Setting-File	62
-inxemode Value	68
-ix	62
-lpdf	65
-mifip Method	68
-mifemode Value	68
-multivol	63
-nab	65
-nad	65
-nca	65
-ncc	65
-ncg	65
-nff	65
-npt	65
-o Output-File	62
-ownerpwd Password	65
-p Printer-Name	63
-p XML-Document	59
-p3da	67
-param name=value	60, 63
-pcics	67
-pcs	67
-pdf XML-Document PDF-File	59
-pdfheight length	67
-pdfscale scale	67
-pdft XML-Document PDF-File	60
-pdfsts XML-Document PDF-File	60
-pdfver Version	64
-pdfwidth length	67
-peb Value	65
-pee Fontname	65
-pef	65
-peg	65
-pesub Percent	65
-pex	66
-pgbar	64
-picc Value	66
-picg Value	66
-picm Value	66
-pidc Value	66
-pidca dpi	66
-pidct dpi	66
-pidg Value	66
-pidga dpi	66
-pidgt dpi	66
-pidm Value	66
-pidma dpi	66
-pidmt dpi	66
-pjq Percent	67
-plr	67
-pos	67
-ppa Value	65
-prc Value	67
-prevp	63
-prr dpi	67
-ps Printer-Setting-File	59, 64
-pt XML-Document Printer-Name	59
-pts XML-Document Printer-Name	59
-s	59
-s XSL-Stylesheet	62
-silent	64
-start Start-Page	63
-stderr	64
-stdout	64
-svgea	68
-svgee Font-Name	68
-svggef	68
-svgfmt Format	68
-svggzip	68
-svgic Value	68
-svgicp Directory	67
-svgip Method	67
-svgiprpx Prefix	68
-svgiren	67
-svgjq Percent	68
-svgrr dpi	68
-svgsingle	68
-svgspn	68
-svgver Profile	67
-t XSL-Stylesheet	59
-tenc Encoding	69
-teol EOL-mark	69
-tpdf	65
-userpwd Password	65
-v	64
-x Error-Level	63
:	
:active	191
::after	195
::after	191
::before	195
::before	191
::blank	194
::empty	195
::first	192, 194
::first-child	191, 194
::first-letter	191
::first-line	191
::first-of-type	194
::focus	191
::footnote-call	195
::footnote-marker	195
::hover	191
::last-child	194
::last-of-type	194
::left	192, 194
::link	191

::marker	195	Adjacent sibling selectors	190
:not	195	Adobe Font Metrics	127
:nth-child()	194	Adobe Type1 font	126
:nth-last-child()	194	Adobe Type1 fonts	122
:nth-last-of-type()	194	.AFM	127
:nth-of-type()	194	AHF62_64_BROKENIMG	407
:only-child	194	AHF62_64_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS	407
:only-of-type	194	AHF62_64_DMC_TBLPATH	407
:right	192, 194	AHF62_64_FONT_CONFIGFILE	407
:root	194	AHF62_64_HOME	407
:: sidenote-call	195	AHF62_64_HYPDIC_PATH	407
:: sidenote-marker	195	AHF62_64_LIC_PATH	407

@

@AreaTree	63, 74, 85
@bottom-center	194
@bottom-left	194
@bottom-left-corner	194
@bottom-right	194
@bottom-right-corner	194
@charset	190
@font-face	194, 249
@footnote	194
@import	191
@INX	63, 73, 85
@left-bottom	194
@left-middle	194
@left-top	194
@media	191
@MIF	63, 73, 85
@MSXML	173
@namespace	194
@page	192, 194
@PDF	63, 73, 85
@PS	63, 73, 85
@right-bottom	194
@right-middle	194
@right-top	194
@sidenote	194
@STDIN	62, 73, 84
@STDOUT	62, 74, 85
@STDPRN	63, 73, 85
@SVG	63, 73, 85
@TEXT	63, 73, 85
@top-center	194
@top-left	194
@top-left-corner	194
@top-right	194
@top-right-corner	194
@XPS	63, 73, 85

Adjacent sibling selectors	190
Adobe Font Metrics	127
Adobe Type1 font	126
Adobe Type1 fonts	122
.AFM	127
AHF62_64_BROKENIMG	407
AHF62_64_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS	407
AHF62_64_DMC_TBLPATH	407
AHF62_64_FONT_CONFIGFILE	407
AHF62_64_HOME	407
AHF62_64_HYPDIC_PATH	407
AHF62_64_LIC_PATH	407
AHF62_64_XSLT_COMMAND	407
AHF62_64_XSLT_PARAM	407
AHF62_BROKENIMG	407
AHF62_DEFAULT_HTML_CSS	407
AHF62_DMC_TBLPATH	407
AHF62_FONT_CONFIGFILE	407
AHF62_HOME	407
AHF62_HYPDIC_PATH	407
AHF62_LIC_PATH	407
AHF62_XSLT_COMMAND	407
AHF62_XSLT_PARAM	407
AHFCmd	61
AHFCmd.exe	61
AHFCmd62AHFCmd62_64	407
AHFDev.exe	70
AHFSettings	42, 48
AHFSettings(x64).xml	59, 143
AHFSettings.xml	59, 143
AI	151
alias	125
alignment-adjust	183, 336
alignment-baseline	183, 336
Allow Importing Tagged PDF	50
allowed-height-scale	184
allowed-width-scale	184
alt-glyph	290
alttext	318
annotation-author	231
annotation-color	232
annotation-contents	231
annotation-file-attachment	235
annotation-flags	232
annotation-font-family	234
annotation-font-size	234
annotation-font-style	235
annotation-font-weight	235
annotation-height	234
annotation-icon-name	233
Annotation in PDF Output	231
annotation-open	232
annotation-position-horizontal	233
annotation-position-vertical	234
annotation-text-align	235
annotation-text-color	235
annotation-title	231
annotation-type	231
annotation-width	234
ANSI_X3.4	24
Antenna House website	32
anti-aliasing	59
API Specification (C/C++)	98
API Specification (Java)	96
APPDATA	143
append-non-end-of-characters	198, 261
append-non-end-of-line-characters	143, 261
append-non-starter-characters	144, 198, 260
Appending a Font	248
Appending Option Setting Information	250

A

abbreviation-character-count	143, 262
About AH Formatter V6.2	32
About Dialog	59
abs()	176
absolute-position	180
accent	171
accentOffset	167
Acroform in PDF Output	235
action-type	227
active-state	186
Actual Size	30
Adding Space	270
AddOptionFileURI	82, 93
AddUserStylesheetURI	82, 93

application data	143	axf:border-bottom-left-radius	315
application/mathml+xml	141	axf:border-bottom-right-radius	315
application/pdf	142	axf:border-radius	315
application/postscript	140	axf:border-top-left-radius	315
application/vnd.ah-barcode	400	axf:border-top-right-radius	315
application/x-shockwave-flash	109	axf:box-shadow	316
Applied to CSS	46	axf:column-fill	309
Applied to XSL	46	axf:column-number-format	294
applyFunctionSpace	168	axf:column-rule-align	310
arabic	24	axf:column-rule-color	310
Area Alignment Properties	183	axf:column-rule-display	310
Area Dimension Properties	184	axf:column-rule-length	311
AreaTree	33	axf:column-rule-style	311
Assigning property values, Cascading, and Inheritance ...	191	axf:column-rule-width	311
assumed-page-number	293	axf:crop-area-visibility	252
attr-from()	335	axf:crop-offset	251
attr()	195, 335	axf:crop-offset-bottom	251
audio	151	axf:crop-offset-left	251
audio/*	109	axf:crop-offset-right	251
author	218	axf:crop-offset-top	251
author-title	218	axf:destination-type	228
Auto	33	axf:diagonal-border-color	314
auto-break-footnote	144	axf:diagonal-border-style	314
auto-fallback-font	152	axf:diagonal-border-width	315
auto-formatter-type	144	axf:document-info	218
auto-letter-spacing	272	axf:document-info-include	222
auto-restore	186	axf:except-non-end-of-line-characters	261
avoid-widow-words	270	axf:except-non-starter-characters	261
axf:abbreviation-character-count	262	axf:field-button-face	242
axf:action-type	227	axf:field-button-face-down	242
axf:alt-glyph	290	axf:field-button-face-rollover	242
axf:alttext	318	axf:field-button-icon	242
axf:annotation-author	231	axf:field-button-icon-down	242
axf:annotation-color	232	axf:field-button-icon-rollover	242
axf:annotation-contents	231	axf:field-button-layout	241
axf:annotation-file-attachment	235	axf:field-checked	242
axf:annotation-flags	232	axf:field-checked-style	243
axf:annotation-font-family	234	axf:field-default-text	238
axf:annotation-font-size	234	axf:field-description	237
axf:annotation-font-style	235	axf:field-editable	243
axf:annotation-font-weight	235	axf:field-format	240
axf:annotation-height	234	axf:field-format-category	239
axf:annotation-icon-name	233	axf:field maxlen	239
axf:annotation-open	232	axf:field-multiline	238
axf:annotation-position-horizontal	233	axf:field-multiple	243
axf:annotation-position-vertical	234	axf:field-name	237
axf:annotation-text-align	235	axf:field-password	239
axf:annotation-text-color	235	axf:field-readonly	237
axf:annotation-title	231	axf:field-required	238
axf:annotation-type	231	axf:field scroll	238
axf:annotation-width	234	axf:field-submit-coordinates	244
axf:append-non-end-of-line-characters	261	axf:field-submit-method	243
axf:append-non-starter-characters	260	axf:field-top-index	243
axf:assumed-page-number	293	axf:field-type	237
axf:auto-letter-spacing	272	axf:field-value	237
axf:avoid-widow-words	270	axf:float	342
axf:background-content-height	319	axf:float-centering-x	346
axf:background-content-type	319	axf:float-centering-y	346
axf:background-content-width	319	axf:float-float-margin-x	347
axf:background-image-resolution	319	axf:float-float-margin-y	347
axf:background-scaling	319	axf:float-margin-x	347
axf:base-uri	291	axf:float-margin-y	347
axf:baseline-block-snap	258	axf:float-min-wrap-x	345
axf:baseline-grid	257	axf:float-min-wrap-y	346
axf:bleed	252	axf:float-move	345
axf:bleed-bottom	252	axf:float-offset-x	347
axf:bleed-left	252	axf:float-offset-y	348
axf:bleed-right	252	axf:float-reference	344
axf:bleed-top	252	axf:float-wrap	345
axf:bookmark-include	221	axf:float-x	343

axf:float-y	343	axf:normalize-exclude	284
axf:font-face	249	axf:number-transform	284
axf:footnote-align	304	axf:number-type	294
axf:footnote-keep	306	axf:origin-id	293
axf:footnote-max-height	306	axf:outline-color	225
axf:footnote-number	307	axf:outline-expand	225
axf:footnote-number-citation	307	axf:outline-external-destination	229
axf:footnote-number-format	307	axf:outline-font-style	226
axf:footnote-number-initial	308	axf:outline-font-weight	226
axf:footnote-number-reset	308	axf:outline-group	225
axf:footnote-position	305	axf:outline-internal-destination	229
axf:footnote-stacking	305	axf:outline-level	225
axf:form	236	axf:outline-title	225
axf:form-field	236	axf:output-volume-break	222
axf:form-field-option	236	axf:output-volume-filename	223
axf:formatter-config	250	axf:output-volume-info	220
axf:hanging-punctuation	269	axf:overflow-align	322
axf:hyphenate-hyphenated-word	263	axf:overflow-condense	322
axf:hyphenation-info	264	axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-size	323
axf:hyphenation-minimum-character-count	263	axf:overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch	323
axf:hyphenation-zone	263	axf:overflow-limit	324
axf:image-resolution	318	axf:overflow-limit-block	324
axf:image-smoothing	318	axf:overflow-limit-inline	324
axf:indent-here	275	axf:overflow-replace	324
axf:initial-volume-number	222	axf:overprint	254
axf:japanese-glyph	290	axf:page-number-prefix	293
axf:justify-nbsp	275	axf:pdftag	220
axf:kansuji-grouping-letter	288	axf:physical-page-number	293
axf:kansuji-letter	287	axf:poster-content-type	320
axf:kansuji-style	287	axf:poster-image	320
axf:kerning-mode	268	axf:printer-bin-selection	254
axf:layer	247	axf:printer-duplex	254
axf:layer-settings	247	axf:printer-marks	252
axf:leader-expansion	274	axf:printer-marks-line-color	252
axf:letter-spacing-side	271	axf:printer-marks-line-length	253
axf:ligature-mode	289	axf:printer-marks-line-width	253
axf:line-break	259	axf:printer-marks-spine-width	253
axf:line-continued-mark	300	axf:printer-marks-zero-margin	253
axf:line-continued-mark-background-color	301	axf:punctuation-spacing	269
axf:line-continued-mark-color	301	axf:punctuation-trim	266
axf:line-continued-mark-font-family	301	axf:repeat-cell-content-at-break	316
axf:line-continued-mark-font-size	301	axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-footer	317
axf:line-continued-mark-font-style	301	axf:repeat-footnote-in-table-header	317
axf:line-continued-mark-font-weight	301	axf:repeat-page-sequence-master	255
axf:line-continued-mark-offset	302	axf:reverse-diagonal-border-color	315
axf:line-number	295	axf:reverse-diagonal-border-style	315
axf:line-number-background-color	295	axf:reverse-diagonal-border-width	315
axf:line-number-color	295	axf:reverse-page	256
axf:line-number-display-align	296	axf:revision-bar-color	302
axf:line-number-font-family	296	axf:revision-bar-offset	302
axf:line-number-font-size	296	axf:revision-bar-position	302
axf:line-number-font-style	296	axf:revision-bar-style	303
axf:line-number-font-weight	296	axf:revision-bar-width	303
axf:line-number-format	297	axf:ruby	353
axf:line-number-initial	297	axf:ruby-align	354
axf:line-number-interval	297	axf:ruby-base	353
axf:line-number-offset	297	axf:ruby-color	359
axf:line-number-orientation	298	axf:ruby-condense	359
axf:line-number-position	298	axf:ruby-font-family	358
axf:line-number-prefix	298	axf:ruby-font-size	358
axf:line-number-reset	298	axf:ruby-font-stretch	359
axf:line-number-start	299	axf:ruby-font-style	358
axf:line-number-text-align	299	axf:ruby-font-weight	358
axf:line-number-text-decoration	300	axf:ruby-limit-overhang	356
axf:line-number-width	300	axf:ruby-limit-space	357
axf:media-duration	321	axf:ruby-minimum-font-size	358
axf:media-extraction-policy	321	axf:ruby-offset	355
axf:media-play-mode	321	axf:ruby-overhang	356
axf:media-volume	321	axf:ruby-position	355
axf:normalize	283	axf:ruby-small-kana	357

axf:ruby-text	353	baseline-grid	257
axf:show-controls	320	Baseline Grid	257
axf:soft-hyphen-treatment	265	baseline-mode	144
axf:space-after-punctuation	247	baseline-shift	184, 336
axf:space-before-punctuation	247	BaseURI	74, 86
axf:space-between-digit-and-punctuation	247	basic-link	179
axf:space-between-punctuation-and-digit	248	BatchPrint	81, 92
axf:suppress-duplicate-footnote	307	bevelledAngle	168
axf:suppress-duplicate-page-number	291	bevelledHeight	169
axf:suppress-folio-prefix	294	bidi-override	178
axf:suppress-folio-suffix	294	Big5	24
axf:suppress-if-first-on-page	256	blank-or-not-blank	187
axf:table-cell-repeated-marker	316	bleed	198, 252
axf:table-summary	317	bleed-bottom	252
axf:text-align-first	273	bleed-left	252
axf:text-align-string	273	bleed-right	252
axf:text-autospace	270	bleed-top	252
axf:text-autospace-width	271	block	178
axf:text-combine-horizontal	278	Block and Line-related Properties	184
axf:text-emphasis-color	282	block-container	178
axf:text-emphasis-font-family	282	Block Extensions	256
axf:text-emphasis-font-size	282	Block-level Formatting Objects	178
axf:text-emphasis-font-stretch	282	block-progression-dimension	184
axf:text-emphasis-font-style	282	BMP	137
axf:text-emphasis-font-weight	282	body-start()	177
axf:text-emphasis-offset	281	bold-ratio	144
axf:text-emphasis-position	281	bookmark	180
axf:text-emphasis-skip	281	Bookmark and Link in PDF Output	223
axf:text-emphasis-style	280	bookmark-include	221
axf:text-justify-trim	267	bookmark-label	336
axf:text-kashida-space	275	bookmark-level	336
axf:text-line-color	276	bookmark-state	336
axf:text-line-style	276	bookmark-title	180
axf:text-line-width	276	bookmark-tree	180
axf:text-orientation	278	Bookmark with the External Link	230
axf:text-replace	284	Bookmark with the Internal Link	230
axf:text-underline-position	276	border	189, 191
axf:transform	256	border-after	311
axf:transform-origin	257	border-after-color	181, 312
axf:vertical-underline-side	277	border-after-precedence	187
axf:word-break	261	border-after-style	181, 312
axf:word-wrap	262	border-after-width	181, 313
azimuth	181	border-before	311

B

Back	30	border-before-color	181, 312
background	189, 193	border-before-precedence	188
background-attachment	181, 193	border-before-style	181, 313
background-clip	319	border-before-width	181, 313
background-color	181, 192, 325	border-bottom	189, 191
background-content-height	319	border-bottom-color	182, 191
background-content-type	319	border-bottom-left-radius	315
background-content-width	319	border-bottom-right-radius	315
background-image	181, 192, 325	border-bottom-style	182, 191
background-image-resolution	319	border-bottom-width	182, 191
background-origin	319	border-collapse	188, 193
background-position	189, 193	border-color	189, 191
background-position-horizontal	181, 325	Border Color	31
background-position-vertical	181, 325	border-end	311
background-repeat	181, 192, 325	border-end-color	182, 312
background-scaling	319	border-end-precedence	188
background-size	319	border-end-style	182, 313
BaKoMa Fonts	172	border-end-width	182, 313
Barcode Generator Option	400	border-left	189, 191
barcode-text-font	152	border-left-color	182, 191
base-uri	291	border-left-style	182, 191
baseline-adjust	124	border-left-width	182, 191
baseline-block-snap	258	border-length	314
		border-medium-width	144
		border-radius	315
		border-right	189, 191
		border-right-color	182, 191

border-right-style	182, 191	charspacingTight	169
border-right-width	182, 191	check	150
border-separation	188	Child selector	190
border-spacing	189, 193	CID font	134
border-start	312	circle	150
border-start-color	181, 312	Class selectors	191
border-start-precedence	188	Classes (.NET)	72
border-start-style	181, 313	CLASSPATH	95, 407
border-start-width	181, 314	clear	185, 191
border-style	189, 191	Clear	82, 93
border-thick-width	144	ClearFontAlias	82, 93
border-thin-width	144	ClearXSLParam	82, 93
border-top	189, 191	clip	185, 192
border-top-color	182, 191	Close	29
border-top-left-radius	315	cm	176
border-top-right-radius	315	cmap table	133
border-top-style	182, 191	#CMYK	334
border-top-width	182, 191	code	150, 151, 152, 248
border-width	189, 191	Code Page	128
Border Width	45	color	185, 192
Borders	311	Color Functions	177
bottom	180, 183, 191	Color Images	52
box	150	color-profile	177
box-decoration-break	337	color-profile-name	185
Box model	191	Color-related Properties	185
box-shadow	316	Color, Border, Unit (Format Option Setting Dialog)	45
Box Shadow	316	Colors and Backgrounds	192
box-sizing	337	column-count	187, 309
break-after	185, 337	column-fill	309
break-before	185, 337	Column Float Examples	349
break-inside	337	column-gap	187, 309
Building the sample programs (C/C++)	97	column number	294
column-number	188	column-number-format	294
column-rule	310	column-rule	310
Column Rule	309	column-rule-align	310
columns	308	column-rule-color	310
Columns	308	column-rule-display	310
COM Interface	84	column-rule-length	311
command	173	column-rule-style	311
Command-line Interface	61	column-rule-width	311
Command-line Parameters	61	column-span	309
Common Absolute Position Properties	180	column-width	188, 309
Common Accessibility Properties	180	columnlineThickness	169
Common Aural Properties	180	columns	308
Common Border, Padding, and Background Properties	181	Columns	308
Common Font Properties	182	COM Interface	84
Common Hyphenation Properties	183	command	173
Common Margin Properties-Block	183	Command-line Interface	61
Common Margin Properties-Inline	183	Command-line Parameters	61
Common Relative Position Properties	183	Common Absolute Position Properties	180
Compiler issues (C/C++)	97	Common Accessibility Properties	180
Component Registration (.NET)	72	Common Aural Properties	180
Compression	53	Common Border, Padding, and Background Properties	181
Compression (PDF Option Setting Dialog)	52	Common Font Properties	182
conditional-page-master-reference	178	Common Hyphenation Properties	183
Conformance Limitations(MathML Conformance)	389	Common Margin Properties-Block	183
content	192	Common Margin Properties-Inline	183
content-height	184	Common Relative Position Properties	183
Content Markup	384	Compiler issues (C/C++)	97
content-type	188	Component Registration (.NET)	72

C

C/C++ Interface	97
calc()	195
Cambria Math Fonts	172
caption-side	188, 193
Carta	129
Cascading Order of CSS	425
case-name	186
case-title	186
cc	217
ceiling()	176
center-shift	170
centerwindow	219
CGM	141
CGM Conformance	363
ch	217
change-bar-begin	180, 325
change-bar-class	188, 303
change-bar-color	188, 303
change-bar-end	180
change-bar-offset	188, 304
change-bar-placement	188
change-bar-side	304
change-bar-style	188, 304
change-bar-width	188, 304
Change Permissions Password	51
Changes Allowed	52
Changing the glyph name mapping	129
char-units	165
character	178, 185
Character and Text Decoration	276
Character Properties	185
Character Sets, Encoding (PDF Output)	106
charspacingLoose	169
charspacingMedium	169

content-width	184	default stylesheet	48
Contents of Hyphenation Dictionary	393	defaultLineleading	168
Continuous	31	defaultLSpace	167
convert-colorspace	154	defaultMinsize	168
Copy	30, 32	defaultRSpace	167
copy-image-path	163	Define the alias name of the font family	131
copy-image-prefix	163	Definitions of Units of Measure	176
copyright-info-url	218	deg	176
copyright-notice	218	Descendant selectors	190
copyright-status	218	description-writer	218
Core Function Library	176	Deselect	30
counter-increment	192	destination-placement-offset	186
counter-reset	192	destination type	228
counter()	192, 195, 335	destination-type	228
counters()	192	Detection of Formatting Type	426
country	183	device-cmyk()	195
crop	337	DEVMODE	70
crop-area-visibility	252	.dfon	133
crop-offset	251	.dfont	133
crop-offset-bottom	251	Diagonal Border	314
crop-offset-left	251	diagonal-border-color	314
crop-offset-right	251	diagonal-border-style	314
crop-offset-top	251	diagonal-border-width	315
crossoutThickness	169	diamond	150
css	151	Dictionary Name and Location	392
CSS (Format Option Setting Dialog)	48	Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V5	428
CSS Conformance	190	Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.0	427
css-media-type	144	Difference in Formatting with AH Formatter V6.1	427
CSS2.1	190	Difference in Formatting with XSL Formatter V4	429
CSS3	193	direction	188, 191
CSS3 Properties	335	disc	150
cue	189	display	191
cue-after	181	display-align	184, 326
cue-before	181	Display Glyph	31
cursive	43, 154	Display ToolTip on Area	58
cursor	193	displaydoctitle	219
cyrillic	24	Dispose	82

D

data scheme	104	document-info	218
data: scheme	137	document-info-include	222
dd	217	Document Information	30
declarations	177	Document Information Dialog	40
Declarations and Pagination and Layout Formatting Objects	177	Document Information for PDF Output	218
default-CJK	144	Document Open Password	51
Default CJK Language	44	document-title	218
default-color	144	Document(Document/Stylesheet Dialog)	33
Default Color	45	Document/Stylesheet Dialog	33
Default CSS for HTML	426	DocumentURI	73, 84
default-font-family	152	dominant-baseline	184, 337
Default Font Family	43	Down sampling	108
default-font-size	144	Downsampling	53
Default Font Size	45	dpi	217
default-from-page-master-region	144	dst	154
default-html-charset	144	DTD of Exception Dictionary	392
default-lang	145	DTD of Font Configuration File	126
default-lang2	145	dummy image	137
Default Line-Height	45	DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH	95, 407
Default Margin	46	Dynamic Effects: Link and Multi Formatting Objects	179
default-output-intent	154		
default-page-height	145		
default-page-margin-bottom	145		
default-page-margin-left	145		
default-page-margin-right	145		
default-page-margin-top	145		
Default Page Size	46		
default-page-width	145		

E

Edit Document	30
Edit Menu	30
Edit StyleSheet	30
Editors (Other Settings Dialog)	57
element()	195
elevation	181
em	176
Embed All Embeddable Fonts	50
embed-all-fonts	154, 163

embed-font	162, 164	Extended Applies	325
embed-font-encoding	154	Extended Elements	215
Embed Fonts (Other Settings Dialog)	56	Extended Float Examples	349
Embed Fonts (SVG Output Dialog)	36	Extended Functions	216, 333
embed-std-output-intent	154	Extended Units	217
embed-subset-font-percentage	155	Extended Values	216, 326
Embedding Adobe Type1 fonts	128	Extension for European Rule	247
Embedding OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts	134	Extension for Hyphenations	263
Embedding TrueType fonts	134	extent	187
EMF	139	external-destination	186
Emphasis Marks	280	External Destination Link with Relative Address	54
empty-cells	188, 193	external-graphic	178
emQuad	167	External Link	226
emSpace	167	ExternalXSLT	74, 85
Enable copying of text, images and other content	52		
Enable text access for screen reader devices for the visually impaired	52		
encloseLineThickness	169		
encoding	166		
Encoding (TEXT Output Dialog)	40		
Encodings	23		
encryption-level	155		
end-indent	183		
End of line Mark (TEXT Output Dialog)	40		
EndPage	75, 86		
ends-row	188		
EndVolume	75, 86		
Enhancements	20		
enQuad	167		
enSpace	167		
entry	171		
Environment Variables	407		
eol-marker	166		
EPS	139		
EPS-processor	155		
EraseFontAlias	82, 93		
Error Messages	415		
error-on-embed-fault	155, 163		
error-on-missing-glyph	155		
Error on PDF/X or PDF/A fault	50		
error-on-pdfx-fault	156		
errorBackground	169		
ErrorCode	73, 75, 86		
errorColor	169		
ErrorLevel	72, 75, 86		
ErrorMessage	75, 86		
ErrorStreamType	75		
escapingMs	169		
EUC-JP	24		
EUDC (End User Defined Character)	135		
eudc-map	126		
eudc-processing	125		
eudc-range	125		
eudc-system-default	126		
Evaluation Version	25		
Event (COM)	93		
ex	217		
Example (Hyphenation)	391		
Example for Option Setting File	174		
except-non-end-of-characters	202, 261		
except-non-end-of-line-characters	261		
except-non-starter-characters	202, 261		
Exception Dictionary (Hyphenation)	391		
Executable File Name	61		
Execute	82, 93		
Exit	30		
ExitLevel	75, 86		
Export Option Setting	31		
Export Option Setting Dialog	59		
Expressions	176		
Extended Applies	325		
Extended Elements	215		
Extended Float Examples	349		
Extended Functions	216, 333		
Extended Units	217		
Extended Values	216, 326		
Extension for European Rule	247		
Extension for Hyphenations	263		
extent	187		
external-destination	186		
External Destination Link with Relative Address	54		
external-graphic	178		
External Link	226		
ExternalXSLT	74, 85		

F

Facing Page	31
fallback	154
fallback-glyph	152
fantasy	43, 154
Fast Web View	49
Fast Web View (PDF Output Dialog)	35
Features of INX Output	116
Features of MIF Output	118
fence	171
FFormat	32
field-button-face	242
field-button-face-down	242
field-button-face-rollover	242
field-button-icon	242
field-button-icon-down	242
field-button-icon-rollover	242
field-button-layout	241
field-checked	242
field-checked-style	243
field-default-text	238
field-description	237
field-editable	243
field-format	240
field-format-category	239
field-maxlen	239
field-multiline	238
field-multiple	243
field-name	237
field-password	239
field-readonly	237
field-required	238
field-scroll	238
field-submit-coordinates	244
field-submit-method	243
field-top-index	243
field-type	237
field-value	237
File Menu	29
First Page	30
First Page (Search Property Dialog)	41
First Page (Search String Dialog)	41
Fit in Window	30
Fit Page Width	31
fitwindow	219
fixed-width-space-treatment	145
float	180, 185, 191, 342
float-centering-x	346
float-centering-y	346
Float Extension	342
Float Extension Properties	342
float-float-margin-x	347
float-float-margin-y	347

float-margin-x	347	fo:multi-property-set	179
float-margin-y	347	fo:multi-switch	179
float-min-wrap-x	345	fo:multi-toggle	179
float-min-wrap-y	346	fo:page-number	178
float-move	345	fo:page-number-citation	178
Float Move Example	350	fo:page-number-citation-last	178
float-offset-x	347	fo:page-sequence	177
float-offset-y	348	fo:page-sequence-master	177
float-reference	344	fo:page-sequence-wrapper	177
Float-related Properties	185	fo:region-after	178
float-wrap	345	fo:region-before	178
float-x	343	fo:region-body	178
float-y	343	fo:region-end	178
floor()	176	fo:region-name-specifier	178
flow	178	fo:region-start	178
flow-assignment	178	fo:repeatable-page-master-alternatives	177
flow-map	178	fo:repeatable-page-master-reference	177
flow-map-name	187	fo:retrieve-marker	180
flow-map-reference	187	fo:retrieve-table-marker	180
flow-name	187	fo:root	177
flow-name-reference	187	fo:scaling-value-citation	178
flow-name-specifier	178	fo:simple-page-master	178
flow-source-list	178	fo:single-page-master-reference	177
flow-target-list	178	fo:static-content	178
fo:basic-link	179	fo:table	179, 430
fo:bidi-override	178	fo:table-and-caption	179
fo:block	178	fo:table-body	179
fo:block-container	178	fo:table-caption	179
fo:bookmark	180	fo:table-cell	179
fo:bookmark-title	180	fo:table-column	179
fo:bookmark-tree	180	fo:table-footer	179
fo:change-bar-begin	180, 325	fo:table-header	179
fo:change-bar-end	180	fo:table-row	179
fo:character	178	fo:title	178
fo:color-profile	177	fo:wrapper	180
fo:conditional-page-master-reference	178	folio-prefix	178
fo:declarations	177	folio-suffix	178
fo:external-graphic	178	font	162, 164, 189, 193
fo:float	180	Font (Format Option Setting Dialog)	43
fo:flow	178	Font (PDF Option Setting Dialog)	50
fo:flow-assignment	178	font-alias	125, 154
fo:flow-map	178	font-config	123
fo:flow-name-specifier	178	font-config.xml	122
fo:flow-source-list	178	Font Configuration File	122
fo:flow-target-list	178	Font Configuration File elements and attributes	123
fo:folio-prefix	178	Font Embedding (PDF Output)	107
fo:folio-suffix	178	font-entry	124, 170
fo:footnote	180	font-exclude	124
fo:footnote-body	180	font-face	249
fo:index-key-reference	179	font-family	182, 193, 250
fo:index-page-citation-list	179	font-folder	124
fo:index-page-citation-list-separator	179	Font Functions	177
fo:index-page-citation-range-separator	179	Font organization and necessary condition (Adobe Type1 font)	126
fo:index-page-number-prefix	179	Font organization and necessary condition (OpenType font) ...	134
fo:index-page-number-suffix	179	Font organization and necessary condition (TrueType font)	133
fo:index-range-begin	179	Font Output (PDF Output)	106
fo:index-range-end	179	Font Output (PostScript Output)	113
fo:initial-property-set	178	Font Output (SVG Output)	112
fo:inline	178	Font Output (XPS Output)	115
fo:inline-container	178	Font Selection	433
fo:instream-foreign-object	178	font-selection-mode	152
fo:layout-master-set	177	font-selection-strategy	182
fo:leader	178	font-settings	152
fo:list-block	179	Font Settings	152
fo:list-item	179	font-size	182, 193
fo:list-item-body	179	font-size-adjust	124, 182, 326
fo:list-item-label	179	font-stretch	182, 326

font-stretch-mode	152	Generic Font for Script	43
font-style	182, 193, 250	GetFormattingError	82
font-variant	182, 193, 326	GetOptionFileURI	82, 93
font-weight	182, 193, 250	ghostscript	156
fontfamily	170	GIF	138
Fonts	122 , 193	gif-pass-through	156
Fonts for Math Expression	172	glyph-list	124
footnote	180	Glyph list file	129
Footnote	304	glyph-orientation-horizontal	188
footnote-align	304	glyph-orientation-vertical	188
footnote-body	180	Go To Page	30
footnote-keep	306	Go To Page Dialog	42
footnote-max-height	306	gr	217, 348
footnote-number	307	grad	176
footnote-number-citation	307	Graphical User Interface	27
footnote-number-format	307	Graphics	137
footnote-number-initial	308	#Grayscale	334
footnote-number-reset	308	Grayscale	334
Footnote Numbering	307	grayscale-compression	156
footnote-position	305	grayscale-downsampling	156
Footnote Positioning	304	grayscale-downsampling-above-dpi	156
footnote-stacking	305	grayscale-downsampling-target-dpi	156
Footnotes/Sidenotes by CSS	348	Grayscale Images	52
force-page-count	187, 327	grayscale-jpeg-quality	157
form	171, 236	greek	24
Form Actions	246	Group-ruby	351
form-field	236	Grouping	190
form-field-option	236	grouping-separator	187
Form Fields	244	grouping-size	187
format	151, 163, 187, 328	gs-add-options	157
Format	31	GS1-128	151
Format (Format Option Setting Dialog)	44	GUI	27
Format Menu	31	gzip-compression	163
Format Option Setting	31	GZIP Compression (Other Settings Dialog)	56
Format Option Setting Dialog	42	GZIP Compression (SVG Output Dialog)	36
Format Type(Document/Stylesheet Dialog)	33		
FormattedPages	74, 86		
formatter-config	250		
formatter-settings	143		
Formatter Settings	143		
FormatterType	73, 84	hair-space-width	145
Formatting HTML	425	hairSpace	167
Formatting Large Document	437	Hanging	266
Formatting Objects	177	hanging-punctuation	269
Formatting Objects for Bookmarks	180	Header files (C/C++)	97
Formatting Objects for Indexing	179	hebrew	24
Formatting Objects for Lists	179	height	184, 192
Formatting Objects for Tables	179	Help Menu	32
Formatting Properties	180	hidemenubar	219
Forward	30	hidetoolbar	219
fracLineExtend	168	hidewindowui	219
fracLineSpace	168	Highlights	18
framelineThickness	169	How to create a Printer Setting file	70
from-nearest-specified-value()	177	How to specify the Printer Name	69
from-page-master-region()	177, 430	How to use Adobe Type1 fonts	127
from-parent()	177	How to use OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts	134
from-table-column()	177	How to use TrueType fonts	133
Full width Punctuation Trimming	44	href	173
FullScreen	219	HTML	33

G

GB18030	24
GB2312	24
GBK	24
General sibling combinator (E ~ F)	194
Generated content, automatic numbering, and lists	192
Generic Font	43
generic font family	433

H

hair-space-width	145
hairSpace	167
Hanging	266
hanging-punctuation	269
Header files (C/C++)	97
hebrew	24
height	184, 192
Help Menu	32
hidemenubar	219
hidetoolbar	219
hidewindowui	219
Highlights	18
How to create a Printer Setting file	70
How to specify the Printer Name	69
How to use Adobe Type1 fonts	127
How to use OpenType (PostScript outline) fonts	134
How to use TrueType fonts	133
href	173
HTML	33
HTML Default Charset	48
html.css	48, 407, 426
HtmlDefaultCharset	73, 84
http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Extensions	215
http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Hyphenations	265
http://www.antennahouse.com/names/XSL/Settings	250
hyphen	150
hyphenate	183
hyphenate-after	264
hyphenate-before	264
hyphenate-character	264

hyphenate-hyphenated-word	263	index-page-number-suffix	179
hyphenate-lines	264	index-range-begin	179
Hyphenation	390	index-range-end	179
hyphenation-character	183	indicate-destination	186
hyphenation-info	264	inherit	191
hyphenation-keep	184	inherited-property-value()	177
hyphenation-ladder-count	184	Initial Font Configuration File	123
hyphenation-minimum-character-count	263	initial-page-number	187
hyphenation-push-character-count	183	initial-property-set	178
hyphenation-remain-character-count	183	initial-volume-number	222
hyphenation-zone	263	inline	178
HyphenationOption	145	inline-container	178
hyphens	264	Inline-level Formatting Objects	178
Hz	176	inline-progression-dimension	184
I			
IANA	23	Installed Modules	410
ICC profile	54	instream-foreign-object	178
id	188	integralSubscriptShift	168
ID in the External Link	229	integralSuperscriptShift	168
ID in the Internal Link	230	Integrate the family name using the alias name	134
ID selectors	191	Interlaced GIF	108
Ideograph-alphanumeric Spacing	44	internal-destination	186, 331
Ignore Case (Search String Dialog)	41	Internal Link	226
ignore-leading-newline	272	Internet shortcut	28
image-color-profile	157	intrinsic-scale-value	188
image-compression	157	intrusion-displace	185
image-conversion	163	intrusion-displace-mode	145
image-downsampling	158	invisibleTimesSpace	168
image-downsampling-above-dpi	158	INX Output	30, 116
image-downsampling-target-dpi	158	INX Output Dialog	38
Image Output (MIF Output)	118	INX output mode	116
Image Output (PDF Output)	107	INX Output Settings	165
Image Output (PostScript Output)	113	inx-settings	165
Image Output (SVG Output)	111	InxOutputMode	81, 92
Image Output (XPS Output)	115	IRI	431
image-processing	164, 165	ISO-10646-UCS-2	23
Image Processing (Other Settings Dialog)	56	ISO-10646-UCS-4	24
image-resolution	318	ISO 15924	21
image-smoothing	318	ISO 15930-1:2001	99
image/bmp	137	ISO 15930-3:2002	99
image/cgm	141	ISO 15930-4:2003	99
image/emf	139	ISO 15930-5:2003	99
image/gif	138	ISO 15930-6:2003	99
image/jp2	138	ISO 15930-7:2008	99
image/jpeg	137	ISO 19005-1:2005	101
image/png	138	ISO-2022-JP	24
image/svg+xml	140	ISO 3166	391, 393
image/tiff	138	ISO 639-2	22
image/wmf	139	ISO_646.irv	24
Images, Multimedia	318	ISO 8632	141
Import All Annotations	55	ISO-8859-1	23
import-annotation-types	158	ISO-8859-10	24
Import Option Setting	31	ISO-8859-11	24
Import Option Setting Dialog	59	ISO-8859-13	24
import-tagged-pdf	158	ISO-8859-14	24
important	191	ISO-8859-15	24
in	176	ISO-8859-16	24
Incompatibility of XSL1.0 and XSL1.1	430	ISO-8859-2	23
indent-here	275	ISO-8859-3	24
indentingnewline	168	ISO-8859-4	24
index-class	186	ISO-8859-5	24
index-key	186	ISO-8859-6	24
index-key-reference	179	ISO-8859-7	24
index-page-citation-list	179	ISO-8859-8	24
index-page-citation-list-separator	179	ISO-8859-9	24
index-page-citation-range-separator	179	iso-ir-149	24
index-page-number-prefix	179	ISO646-US	24
		issue-scale-to-fit	145
		italicizeMi	169

J

japanese-glyph	290
Japanese Numerals	287
jar scheme	137
Java Interface	95
Java VM issues	95
JIS X 0213:2004	289
JIS X 4051:2004	259, 433
joboptions	159
JPEG	137
jpeg-quality	159, 164
JPEG Quality	53
JPEG2000	138
jpn	44
jpt	217
Jukugo (kanji compound word)-ruby	351
justify-leader	146
justify-nbsp	275

K

kansuji-grouping-letter	288
kansuji-letter	287
kansuji-style	287
Keep Output Directory	58
keep-together	185
keep-with-next	185
keep-with-previous	185
Keeps and Breaks Properties	185
kerning	206, 268
kerning-mode	268
keywords	218
kHz	176
kor	44
korean	24
KS_C_5601-1987	24

L

label-end()	177
lang	191
language	151, 183, 248
Language	59
languages	21
Languages	21
Languages (Hyphenation)	390
Large Document	437
largeop	171
largeopmultiplier	166
largeopmultiplierInt	167
last-line-end-indent	184
Last Page	30
Last Page (Search Property Dialog)	41
Last Page (Search String Dialog)	41
Latin-9	24
latin-ligature	146
Latin Ligature	44
latin1	23
latin10	24
latin2	23
latin3	24
latin4	24
latin5	24
latin6	24
latin8	24
layer	247

layer-settings	247
layout-master-set	177
Layout-related Properties	185
LD_LIBRARY_PATH	95, 407
leader	178
leader-alignment	186, 331
Leader and Rule Properties	186
leader-expansion	274
leader-length	186
leader-pattern	186
leader-pattern-width	186
leader()	195
left	180, 183, 191
letter-spacing	185, 193
letter-spacing-side	271
letter-value	187
Ih	217
Library files (C/C++)	97
Library files (Java)	95
libXfManagerInterface.dylib	97
libXfManagerInterface.so	97
libxslt	47
Ligature	289
ligature-mode	289
Limitation (MIF Output)	119
Limitations (INX Output)	116
line-break	259
Line Breaking	259, 433
line-continued-mark	300
Line Continued Mark	300
line-continued-mark-background-color	301
line-continued-mark-color	301
line-continued-mark-font-family	301
line-continued-mark-font-size	301
line-continued-mark-font-style	301
line-continued-mark-font-weight	301
line-continued-mark-offset	302
line-height	184, 192
line-height-shift-adjustment	184
line-number	295
line-number-background-color	295
line-number-color	295
line-number-display-align	296
line-number-font-family	296
line-number-font-size	296
line-number-font-style	296
line-number-font-weight	296
line-number-format	297
line-number-initial	297
line-number-interval	297
line-number-offset	297
line-number-orientation	298
line-number-position	298
line-number-prefix	298
line-number-reset	298
line-number-start	299
line-number-text-align	299
line-number-text-decoration	300
line-number-width	300
Line Numbering	295
line-stacking-strategy	184
linear-gradient()	195, 334
linearized	159
Linearized PDF	35, 49
linebreakstyle	171
linefeed-treatment	184
link	291
Linux 64bit version	21
Linux version	21
list-block	179

list-item	179	Message	73
list-item-body	179	meta	218
list-item-label	179	Methods (.NET)	82
list-style	192	Methods (COM)	93
list-style-image	192	MIF Output	30, 118
list-style-position	192	MIF Output Dialog	39
list-style-type	150, 192, 285	MIF output mode	118
Lite	24	MIF Output Settings	165
.lnk	28	mif-settings	165
Log Window	29 , 31	MiflpMode	81, 92
logical-height	338	MifOutputMode	81, 92
logical-width	338	min-height	184, 192
lspace	171	min-logical-height	339
		min-logical-width	339
		min-width	184, 192
		min()	176
		minsize	171
		Miscellaneous (PDF Output)	110
		Miscellaneous Properties	188
		missing-font	153
		missing-glyph	153
		missing-glyph-all	153
		Mixing Markup	389
		mm	176
		.MMM	127
		Mono-ruby	351
		monochrome-compression	159
		monochrome-downsampling	159
		monochrome-downsampling-above-dpi	159
		monochrome-downsampling-target-dpi	159
		Monochrome Images	52
		monospace	43, 154
		movablelimits	171
		Move Menu	30
		ms	176
		msxml	173, 174
		msxsl	47
		multi-case	179
		Multi-column Float Examples	349
		multi-properties	179
		multi-property-set	179
		Multi Separate Volume	220
		multi-switch	179
		multi-toggle	179
		Multi Volume (PDF Output Dialog)	35
		multimedia	151
		Multimedia (PDF Output)	108
		MultiVolume	75, 86
		MVO	152

M

Macintosh version	21
Mail to Support	32
Main Window	27
Making Bookmark	223
Making Link	226
Mapping rule in .AFM file	127
Mapping rule in .PFM file	127
margin	189, 191
margin-after	338
margin-before	338
margin-bottom	183, 191
margin-break	272
margin-end	338
margin-left	183, 191
margin-right	183, 191
margin-start	338
margin-top	183, 191
marker	180
marker-class-name	186
master-name	187
master-reference	187
Matching attributes and attribute values	190
Math	217
MathML	140
MathML Conformance	379
mathml-settings	166
MathML Settings	166
mathsizeBig	167
mathsizeSmall	167
MathType Fonts	172
mathvariant	170
matrix()	195
max-height	184, 192
max-logical-height	339
max-logical-width	339
max-width	184, 192
max()	176
maximum-repeats	187
maxsize	171
media-duration	321
media-extraction-policy	321
media-play-mode	321
Media types	191
media-usage	187
media-volume	321
mediumLine	168
mediummathspace	167
Menu	29
Menu Bar	27
merge-pages-across-index-key-references	186
merge-property-values()	177
merge-ranges-across-index-key-references	186
merge-sequential-page-numbers	186

N

name	173, 174, 218
name-processing-mode	123
nameddest	227
.NET Interface	72
New Features	20
Next Page	30
no-accessibility	160
no-addng-or-changing-comments	160
no-assemble-doc	160
no-changing	160
no-content-copying	160
no-fill-form	160
No Gutter Between Facing Pages	58
noembed-font	163
Non-CID font	134
non-starter-ideographic-space	146
normal-line-height	146

normalize	146, 283
normalize-exclude	284
ns	173
number-columns-repeated	188
number-columns-spanned	188
Number Functions	176
number-rows-spanned	188
number-transform	284
number-type	294
Numbering to One Page File (Other Settings Dialog)	56

O

Object Class Name (COM)	84
object-compression	160
Object Compression	53
oblique-skew	146
odd-or-even	187
omit-uppercase-word-accents	146
OneColumn	219
onFormatPage	93
Online Manual	32
onMessage	93
Open	29, 32
Open INX (INX Output Dialog)	38
Open MIF (MIF Output Dialog)	39
Open New Window	32
Open PDF (PDF Output Dialog)	35
Open PostScript (PostScript Output Dialog)	37
Open SVG (SVG Output Dialog)	36
Open Text (TEXT Output Dialog)	40
Open XPS (XPS Output Dialog)	37
openaction	219
OpenType (PostScript outline) font	134
OpenType (TrueType outline) font	132
OpenType fonts	122
operator	171
operator-dictionary	171
Operator Dictionary	389
Option Setting File	143
OptionFileCount	73, 84
OptionFileURI	73, 84
origin-id	293
orphans	185, 192
OS/2 table	133
.OTF	134
otf-metrics-mode	123
Other Extensions	217
Other Formatting Objects	180
Other Restrictions (XPS Output)	115
Other Settings	31
Other Settings Dialog	56
Others (Other Settings Dialog)	58
Others (PDF Option Setting Dialog)	54
Out-of-Line Formatting Objects	180
outline	193
outline-color	225
outline-expand	225
outline-external-destination	229
outline-font-style	226
outline-font-weight	226
outline-group	225
outline-internal-destination	229
outline-level	225
outline-title	225
output condition identifier	100
Output Glyph by SOFT HYPHEN	265
Output ICC Profile in Images	54
output indent	100

Output Log File	58
output-mode	165
Output Mode (INX Output Dialog)	38
Output Mode (MIF Output Dialog)	39
Output Page Labels	54
Output Range (INX Output Dialog)	38
Output Range (MIF Output Dialog)	39
Output Range (PDF Output Dialog)	35
Output Range (PostScript Output Dialog)	37
Output Range (SVG Output Dialog)	36
Output Range (TEXT Output Dialog)	40
Output Range (XPS Output Dialog)	37
Output to Single File (Other Settings Dialog)	56
Output to Single File (SVG Output Dialog)	36
output-volume-break	222
output-volume-filename	223
output-volume-info	220
OutputFilePath	74, 85
OutputFOPath	74, 85
OutputVolumeCount	75, 86
overflow	185, 192, 332
overflow-align	322
overflow-condense	322
overflow-condense-limit-font-size	323
overflow-condense-limit-font-stretch	323
Overflow Extensions	322
overflow-limit	324
overflow-limit-block	146, 324
overflow-limit-inline	147, 324
overflow-replace	324
overLineOffset	168
overprint	160, 254
Overview	18
owner-password	160

P

padding	189, 191
padding-after	182, 339
padding-before	182, 339
padding-bottom	182, 191
padding-end	182, 340
padding-left	182, 191
padding-right	182, 191
padding-start	182, 340
padding-top	182, 191
page	227, 340
Page (Format Option Setting Dialog)	46
Page Background	325
page-break-after	189, 192
page-break-before	189, 192
page-break-inside	189, 192
page-citation-strategy	189
Page Control Extensions	255
Page Float Examples	349
page-height	187
page-labels	161
Page Limit	58
page-number	178
Page Number	291
page-number-citation	178
page-number-citation-last	178
Page Number in the External Link	230
Page Number in the Internal Link	230
page-number-prefix	293
page-number-treatment	186
page-position	187
page-sequence	177
page-sequence-master	177

page-sequence-wrapper	177	PdfPrintingAllowed	77, 88
page-width	187	PdfPutImageColorProfile	77, 88
Paged media	192	PdfRasterizeResolution	79, 90
pagelayout	219	PdfReversePage	76, 87
pagemode	219	PdfRGBConversion	79, 90
Pagination and Layout Properties	187	pdftag	220
pair-kerning	147	PdfTag	76, 87
Pair Kerning	44	PdfUseLaunchForRelativeURI	79, 90
PANTONE® Option	334, 394	PdfUserPassword	76, 87
param	173	PdfVersion	76, 86
param-option	173	.PFA	127
path	151	.PFB	127
PATH	95, 407	.PFM	127
pause	189	physical page number	210, 293
pause-after	181	physical-page-number	293
pause-before	181	pitch	181
pc	176	pitch-range	181
PDF	141	play-during	181
PDF Embedding	55, 104	PNG	138
PDF Option Setting	31	Popup Menu	32
PDF Option Setting Dialog	48	position	189, 191
PDF Output	30, 99	poster-content-type	320
PDF Output Dialog	35	poster-image	320
PDF Output in Multi Separate Volume	220	PostScript Output	30, 113
PDF Output Settings	154	PostScript Output Dialog	37
PDF Output to the Web Browser (.NET)	82	PostScript Output Settings	162
PDF Output to the Web Browser (COM)	93	precedence	187
pdf-settings	154	Presentation Markup	379
PDF Standard 14 Fonts	132	Previous Page	30
pdf-version	161	Print	29
PDF Version	49	Print Dialog	34
PDF/A	101	printer-bin-selection	254
PDF/X	99	printer-duplex	254
PdfColorProfile	79, 90	Printer Font ASCII	127
PdfCompressContentStream	79, 90	Printer Font Binary	127
PdfConvertImageColorSpace	79, 90	Printer Font Metrics	127
PdfEmbedAllFontsEx	77, 87	printer-marks	252
PdfEmbedFonts	77, 88	Printer Marks	251
PdfEmbedSubsetFontPercentage	77, 88	printer-marks-line-color	252
PdfEncryptLevel	76, 87	printer-marks-line-length	147, 253
PdfErrorOnEmbedFault	77, 88	printer-marks-line-width	147, 253
PdfErrorOnMissingGlyph	77, 88	printer-marks-spine-width	253
PdfErrorOnPDFXFault	80, 91	printer-marks-zero-margin	147, 253
PdfGrayscaleImageCompression	78, 89	Printer Setting file	70
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSampling	78, 89	PrinterName	73, 85
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingDPI	78, 89	PrinterOrientation	147
PdfGrayscaleImageDownSamplingTarget	78, 89	PrinterSettingURI	74, 85
PdfGrayscaleJPEGQuality	78, 89	printing-allowed	161
PdfImageCompression	77, 88	Printing Allowed	51
PdfImageDownSampling	77, 88	Printing Control	254
PdfImageDownSamplingDPI	78, 89	priority	171
PdfImageDownSamplingTarget	78, 89	PrnCollate	81, 92
PdfImport3DAnnotation	79, 90	PrnCopies	81, 92
PdfJPEGQuality	77, 88	Programming Example (.NET)	83
PdfLinearize	79, 90	Programming Example (COM)	93
PdfMonochromeImageCompression	78, 89	Progressive JPEG	108
PdfMonochromeImageDownSampling	79, 90	Properties – INX Settings (.NET)	81
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingDPI	79, 90	Properties – INX Settings (COM)	92
PdfMonochromeImageDownSamplingTarget	79, 90	Properties – MIF Settings (.NET)	81
PdfNoAccessibility	76, 87	Properties – MIF Settings (COM)	92
PdfNoAddingOrChangingComments	76, 87	Properties – PDF Settings (.NET)	76
PdfNoAssembleDoc	77, 87	Properties – PDF Settings (COM)	86
PdfNoChanging	76, 87	Properties – Printer Settings (.NET)	81
PdfNoContentCopying	76, 87	Properties – Printer Settings (COM)	92
PdfNoFillForm	76, 87	Properties – SVG Settings (.NET)	80
PdfNoPrinting	76, 87	Properties – SVG Settings (COM)	91
PdfOutputHeight	79, 90	Properties (.NET)	72
PdfOutputScale	79, 90	Properties (COM)	84
PdfOutputWidth	80, 91	Properties for Dynamic Effects Formatting Objects	186
PdfOwnerPassword	76, 87	Properties for Indexing	186

Properties for Markers	186	Restrict editing and printing of the document	51
Properties for Number to String Conversion	187	Restrictions (Float Extension)	350
Property Value Functions	177	Restrictions (Font)	135
proportional-column-width()	177	Restrictions (GUI)	60
provisional-distance-between-starts	189	Restrictions (Hyphenation)	393
provisional-label-separation	189	Restrictions (SVG Conformance)	362
ps-settings	162	Restrictions (SVG Output)	112
PscriptPassThrough	147	Restrictions (TEXT Output)	121
pt	176	Restrictions for Printing	71
punctuation-spacing	147, 269	retrieve-boundary	187
punctuation-trim	147, 266	retrieve-boundary-within-table	186
Punctuation Trimming	44	retrieve-class-name	186
pvh	217	retrieve-marker	180
pvmax	217	retrieve-position	187
pvmin	217	retrieve-position-within-table	187
pvw	217	retrieve-table-marker	180
px	176	Return Value	69
px unit size	45	Reverse (Search Property Dialog)	41
pxpi	147	Reverse (Search String Dialog)	41

Q

q	217
Q&A	32
quotes	192

R

rad	176
radial-gradient()	195, 334
Raster Images (PDF Output)	108
Raster Images (PostScript Output)	113
rasterize-resolution	161, 164
Rasterize Resolution	53
Recent File	30
ref-id	189
ref-index-key	186
reference-orientation	185
region-after	178
region-before	178
region-body	178
region-end	178
region-name	187
region-name-reference	187
region-name-specifier	178
region-start	178
Registration color	334
relative-align	184
relative-position	183
Reloads Hyphenation Dic	32
rem	217
Remarks (Appending Option Setting Information)	251
Remarks (Making Bookmark)	226
Remarks (Making Link)	230
rename-copy-image	164
Render	82
rendering-intent	185
repeat-cell-content-at-break	316
repeat-footnote-in-table-footer	317
repeat-footnote-in-table-header	317
repeat-page-sequence-master	255
repeatable-page-master-alternatives	177
repeatable-page-master-reference	177
repeating-linear-gradient()	195, 335
repeating-radial-gradient()	195, 335
Require a password to open the document	51
Reset Font Settings	44
Reset Option Setting	32
restrictions	187
revision-bar-color	302
revision-bar-offset	302
revision-bar-position	302
revision-bar-style	303
revision-bar-width	303
rgb-conversion	161
RGB Conversion	54
rgb-icc()	177, 333
rgb()	177
rgba()	216
richness	181
right	180, 183, 191
rlh	217
role	180
root	177
rootPosition1x	169
rootPosition1y	169
rootPosition2x	169
rootPosition2y	169
rootPosition3x	169
rootPosition3y	169
rootPosition4x	169
rootPosition4y	169
rootThickness1	169
rootThickness2	169
rootThickness3	169
rootThickness4	169
rotate()	195
round()	176
roundedboxRadius	169
Rounding Border	315
rowlineThickness	169
rspace	171
ruby	353
ruby-align	147, 354
ruby-base	353
ruby-color	359
ruby-condense	359
Ruby Extended Elements	353
Ruby Extended Properties	354
Ruby Extension	351
ruby-font-family	358
ruby-font-size	358
ruby-font-stretch	359
ruby-font-style	358

ruby-font-weight	358	Show Border	31
ruby-limit-overhang	356	show-controls	320
ruby-limit-space	357	show-destination	186, 227
ruby-minimum-font-size	358	Show Printer Mark	31
ruby-offset	355	Show Ruler	31
ruby-overhang	356	sidenote	304
ruby-position	355	simple-page-master	178
ruby-small-kana	357	Single Page	31
ruby-text	353	single-page-master-reference	177
rule-style	186	singlefile	164
rule-thickness	186	singlefile-number	164
Ruler	31	SinglePage	219
Run with Parameters	59	size	189, 332
run.sh	61	skew()	195
Running Command-line program from a shell script	61	skewX()	195
Running Command-line program on Windows	61	skewY()	196
Running the Sample Program (Java)	95	skip-glyphname-mapping	124
running()	195	Skipping the glyph name mapping	130
<hr/>			
S		small-caps-emulation-size	147
<hr/>			
s	176	Smoothing	59
Sample programs (C/C++)	97	soft-hyphen-treatment	265
sans-serif	43, 153	Solaris version	21
Save AreaTree	29	source-document	180
Save AreaTree Dialog	33	space	151, 248
Save FO	29	space-after	183
Save FO Dialog	34	space-after-punctuation	151, 247
Save FOTree	29	space-before	183
Save FOTree Dialog	33	space-before-punctuation	151, 247
Saxon	47	space-between-digit-and-punctuation	151, 247
scale-option	189	space-between-punctuation-and-digit	151, 248
scale()	195	space-end	183
scaleX()	195	space-start	183
scaleY()	195	Spacing and Alignment	270
scaling	184	span	185
scaling-method	184	speak	181
scaling-value-citation	178	speak-header	181
score-spaces	189	speak-numeral	181
script	150, 151, 153, 170, 183, 217	speak-punctuation	181
Script	43	speech-rate	181
script-chars	150	Spot color	334
script-font	153	square	150
script-language-in-CJK	151	src	154, 171, 189, 249
scriptmaxsize	166	SStop Format	32
scriptminsize	166	Standard 14 Fonts	106
scriptsizemultiplier	166	start-indent	183
Search Next	30	starting-state	186
Search Previous	30	Starting Window Position	58
Search Property	30	StartPage	75, 86
Search Property Dialog	41	starts-row	188
Search String	30	StartVolume	75, 86
Search String Dialog	41	static-content	178
Security (PDF Option Setting Dialog)	51	Status Bar	28, 31
Select All	30	STIX Fonts	172
Selectors	190	Stop Format	31
Separate Volume	220	stress	181
SeparatePrinterDuplexJob	147	stretchy	171
#Separation	334	string-set	340
Separation color	334	string()	195
separator	171	stylesheet	173
serif	43, 153	Stylesheet(Document/Stylesheet Dialog)	33
SetFontAlias	82, 93	StylesheetURI	73, 84
SetXSLTParam	82, 93	subject	218
Shell Open	32	Support	26
Shift_JIS	24	Supported font formats	122
Shortcut link	28	suppress-at-line-break	185
Shorthand	431	suppress-duplicate-footnote	307
Shorthand Properties	189	suppress-duplicate-page-number	291
		suppress-folio-prefix	294
		suppress-folio-suffix	294
		suppress-if-first-on-page	256

SVG	140	Text	193
SVG Conformance	360	text-align	184, 193, 340
SVG Option (Other Settings Dialog)	56	text-align-first	273
SVG Output	30, 111	text-align-last	184, 341
SVG Output Dialog	36	text-align-string	273
SVG Output Settings	163	text-altitude	188
svg-settings	163	Text and Line-Art Compression	53
svg-version	164	Text and Line-Art Compression (PDF Output Dialog)	35
SVG Version (Other Settings Dialog)	56	text-and-lineart-compression	162
SVG Version (SVG Output Dialog)	36	text-autospace	148, 270
SvgEmbedAllFonts	80, 91	text-autospace-width	148, 271
SvgEmbedFonts	80, 91	text-combine	341
SvgErrorOnEmbedFault	80, 91	text-combine-horizontal	278
SvgFormat	80, 91	text-decoration	185, 193, 277
SvgGzipCompression	80, 91	text-decoration-color	277
SvgImageConversion	80, 91	text-decoration-line	277
SvgImageCopyPath	80, 91	text-decoration-mode	148
SvgImagePrefix	80, 91	text-decoration-style	278
SvgImageProcessingType	80, 91	text-depth	188
SvgImageRename	80, 91	text-emphasis-color	282
SvgJPEGQuality	81, 92	text-emphasis-font-family	282
SvgRasterizeResolution	81, 92	text-emphasis-font-size	282
SvgSingleFile	80, 91	text-emphasis-font-stretch	282
SvgSinglePageNumber	80, 91	text-emphasis-font-style	282
SvgVersion	80, 91	text-emphasis-font-weight	282
SVO	152	text-emphasis-offset	281
switch-to	186	text-emphasis-position	281
Symbolic Links	408	text-emphasis-skip	281
symmetric	171	text-emphasis-style	280
Syntax and basic data types	190	text-indent	184, 193
system-color()	177	text-justify-mode	148
system-font()	177	text-justify-trim	267
System Requirements	20	text-kashida-space	148, 275

T

table	179, 430	text-line-color	276
Table	316	text-line-style	276
table-and-caption	179	text-line-width	276
Table Auto Layout	432	text-orientation	278
table-auto-layout-limit	147	text-orientation-mode	148
table-body	179	Text Output	30
table-caption	179	TEXT Output	121
table-cell	179	Text Output Dialog	40
table-cell-repeated-marker	316	TEXT Output Settings	165
table-column	179	text-replace	284
table-column-span	317	Text Select	30
table-footer	179	text-settings	165
table-header	179	text-shadow	185, 283
table-is-reference-area	147	Text Shadow	283
table-layout	188, 193	text-transform	185, 193, 333
table-omit-footer-at-break	188, 333	Text Transformation	283
table-omit-header-at-break	188, 333	text-underline-mode	148
Table Properties	187	text-underline-position	276
table-row	179	thickLine	168
table-row-span	318	thickmathspace	167
table-summary	317	thin-space-width	148
Tables	193	thinLine	168
tagged-pdf	162	thinmathspace	167
Tagged PDF	49, 101	thinSpace	167
target-counter()	195	TIFF	138
target-counters()	195	title	178
target-presentation-context	186	Title Bar	27
target-processing-context	186	Tool Bar	28, 31
target-stylesheet	186	ToolTip	28
target-text()	195	top	180, 183, 191
Technical Notes	425	TotalVolumeCount	75, 86
Temporary File	437	transform	256
TeX Dictionary (Hyphenation)	392	transform-origin	257
		Transformation	256
		translate()	195
		translateX()	195
		translateY()	195

transparency-color-space	162	vertical-underline-side	149, 277
treat-as-word-space	185	verythickmathspace	167
Trimming and Hanging	266	verythinmathspace	167
TrueType font	132	veryverythickmathspace	167
TrueType fonts	122	veryverythinmathspace	167
.TTC	133	vh	217
.TTF	133	video	151
two-pass-formatting	148	video/*	109
TwoColumnLeft	219	Video/Audio	142
TwoColumnRight	219	view	227
TwoPageLeft	219	View Menu	30
TwoPageRight	219	viewport-length-units-mode	149
TwoPassFormatting	74, 86	viewrect	227
Type selectors	190	visibility	189, 192
Type1 fonts	122	Visual effects	192

U

UNC	432
Underline in Vertical Writing-mode	44
underLineOffset	168
Unicode and glyph mapping using the .AFM file	128
Unicode and glyph mapping using the .PFM file	128
unicode-bidi	188, 191
unicode-range	124, 170
unintended link	231
Unit	58
Unit 'gr' to specify spanning columns	348
units	69, 81, 92, 143, 165
Units (MIF Output Dialog)	39
Universal Naming Convention	432
Universal selector	190
URI	431
URI and Link	291
.url	28
url()	195, 431
US-ASCII	24
use-default-page-margin-CSS	149
use-default-page-margin-XSL	149
Use External XSLT Processor	47
use-launch-for-relative-uri	162, 163
Use MSXML	47
use-preferred-family	124
use-windows-api	153
UseNone	219
UseOC	219
UseOutlines	219
user-password	162
User Stylesheets	48
usercss	151
UseThumbs	219
Using the interface in an application server	95
UTF-16	23
UTF-32	23
UTF-8	23
UTR50	152

V

value	173, 174, 218
variant-font	170
Variation Sequence	433
Vector Images (PDF Output)	107
Vector Images (PostScript Output)	113
Version	73, 84
Version (PDF Option Setting Dialog)	49
vertical-align	189, 192, 341
vertical-block-width-mode	149

vertical-underline-side	149, 277
verythickmathspace	167
verythinmathspace	167
veryverythickmathspace	167
veryverythinmathspace	167
vh	217
video	151
video/*	109
Video/Audio	142
view	227
View Menu	30
viewport-length-units-mode	149
viewrect	227
visibility	189, 192
Visual effects	192
Visual formatting model	191
Visual formatting model details	192
vmax	217
vmin	217
voice-family	181
volume	181
vw	217

W

watermark-font-family	149
watermark-font-style	149
watermark-font-weight	149
watermark-text	149
watermark2-font-family	149
watermark2-font-style	149
watermark2-font-weight	150
watermark2-text	150
wch	217
white-space	189, 193
white-space-collapse	184
white-space-treatment	184
widows	185, 192
width	184, 192
Window (Other Settings Dialog)	57
Windows-31J	24
windows-registry	124
Windows version	20
Windows x64 version	20
WindowsFontAPI	150
WindowsName mode	132
WMF	139
WOFF (Web Open Font Format)	122
word-break	261
word-spacing	185, 193
word-wrap	262
Workflow	19
wrap-option	185
wrapper	180
writing-mode	188, 341
Writing-mode-related Properties	188
WYSIWYG	28

X

Xalan	47
XfoComCtl	84
XfoDotNet35Ctl.dll	72
XfoDotNet40Ctl.dll	72
XfoException	72
xfoifc_c.h	97
xfoifc.h	97
XfolInterface.dll	97

XfoInterface.lib	97	xsl:param	47
XfoObj	72, 84	XSLT (Format Option Setting Dialog)	47
XHTML	33	XSLT Processor	24, 47
xlink:href	217	xslt-settings	173
xml:base	217	XSLT Settings	173
xml:id	217	XSLTParamFormat	74, 85
xml:lang	189, 217		
XML+CSS	33		
XmlDomDocument	75	Z	
XMLDOMDocument	86		
XmlDomStylesheet	75	z-index	189, 191
XMLDOMStylesheet	86	zho-CN	44
xmp	218	zho-TW	44
XPS Output	30, 115	zoom	227
XPS Output Dialog	37	Zoom	31
XSL-FO	33	Zoom Dialog	42
XSL-FO 1.1 Conformance	176	Zoom In	31
XSL/CSS Extensions	215	Zoom Out	31
XSL/CSS Properties List	197	zwsp-mode	150